



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

THE STUDENTS' SERIES

OF LATIN CLASSICS

CÆSAR

DE BELLIS GALICIS ET CIVILIBUS

LIBER PRIMUS

DE BELLIS GALICIS

1

Educ T 1000.471.906



Harvard College Library
THE GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY

1.10



3 2044 097 076 616





CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(British Museum.)

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

CAESAR

GALLIC WAR, BOOKS I-V

EDITED

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, SYNONYMS, WORD-
GROUPS, AND VOCABULARY

BY

HAROLD W. JOHNSTON, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE INDIANA UNIVERSITY

AND

FREDERICK W. SANFORD, A.B.

FELLOW IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

οὐ πόλλ' ἀλλὰ πολὺ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

BOSTON, U.S.A.

Edw T 1000.471.906

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN & COMPANY
MARCH 17, 1927

COPYRIGHT, 1906,
BY HAROLD W. JOHNSTON
AND
FREDERICK W. SANFORD.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE portion of Caesar's *Gallic War* most commonly read in schools comprises the first four books. Many teachers, however, desire additional material from which to make selections in place of the portions that are particularly difficult or lacking in interest. The fifth book contains three leading narratives, each complete in itself, — the Second Campaign in Britain, the Defeat of Sabinus and Cotta, and the Siege of Cicero's Camp. The first is of peculiar interest to English-speaking peoples, the second and third are singularly graphic, while all are fairly simple in style. This book has therefore been included in the present edition, as being well adapted to meet the purpose mentioned above.

The text is based upon that of Meusel's School Edition, but where portions are inclosed in brackets as probably not genuine, in some cases the words have been omitted, in others the brackets; otherwise, with few exceptions, only certain changes in orthography and punctuation have been admitted. The quantity of long vowels has been marked in conformity with other volumes of the Student's Series.

To facilitate the acquiring of a vocabulary, each word occurring more than once in Books I–V, with the exception of proper nouns, has been printed in heavy-faced type at the place of first occurrence. A third of these

fifteen hundred words the pupil should be familiar with when he finishes his First Book in Latin. Careful drill on these words, with frequent reviews, will familiarize a pupil with ninety per cent of the words on an average page of the text by the time he has read the first two books.

In the introduction, the sketch of Caesar's life is intended to set forth in brief compass the facts most pertinent to Caesar's part in the history of the Roman republic.

The chapters devoted to military and Gallic antiquities, the editors believe, contain as much information as a student needs to have at hand in a text-book. As these topics are naturally to be consulted often by the student, they have been arranged in numbered sections for convenience of reference in the notes.

In the preparation of a commentary it has been kept in mind that a text-book is at best but a supplement to the teacher's work. The editors have therefore endeavored to write as concise notes as possible, while giving adequate assistance to the mastery of Latin idiom and to the understanding of difficult passages. Consideration of disputed questions of antiquities, history, and grammar has in general been reduced to dogmatic statement, in the belief that teachers prefer to have such questions left mainly to the fuller discussion appropriate to the class-room. At the end of the notes on each chapter of the Helvetian War in the first book, and similarly throughout the notes on the second book, questions have been appended relating chiefly to principal parts of verbs and to case and mood constructions. These questions, it is thought, will be of no little assistance, particularly in

the reiteration of the commoner syntactic principles so essential at this stage of study.

The value of tables of synonyms and of related and contrasted words has been demonstrated in a preceding volume of this series, — D'Ooge's *Cicero, Select Orations*. In this volume, as in the former, only broad distinctions in synonyms and contrasted words have been attempted, references being given to the text, where each word may be studied at first hand.

Definitions in the vocabulary have been based on a careful study of the meanings of each word in all the passages in which it occurs. Of idiomatic phrases, only the more common have been given in the vocabulary, while those less frequent or unusually difficult have been explained in the notes.

Maps and illustrations have been taken chiefly from the works of Napoleon, Stoffel, and Rheinhard.

To Professor E. M. Pease, editor-in-chief of the Students' Series, the editors express their grateful appreciation of his many stimulating and helpful suggestions during the preparation of manuscript and the reading of the proof.

HAROLD W. JOHNSTON.
FREDERICK W. SANFORD.

APRIL, 1906.



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
LIST OF MAPS, PLANS, AND ILLUSTRATIONS	vii
LIFE OF CAESAR	ix
THE ROMAN ARMY	xxv
THE ROMAN FLEET	xlili
THE GALLIC ARMY	xlvi
TRANSALPINE GAUL	xlvi
CAESAR'S PROVINCES	liii
BRITAIN	lvi
GERMANY	lvii
TEXT, BOOKS I-V	1
NOTES	
Introduction to Book I	163
Notes on Book I	166
Introduction to Book II	228
Notes on Book II	230
Introduction to Book III	262
Notes on Book III	264
Introduction to Book IV	282
Notes on Book IV	285
Introduction to Book V	306
Notes on Book V	310
TABLE OF SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS	337
GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS	351
VOCABULARY	1

MAPS, PLANS, AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

Caius Julius Caesar. British Museum	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
Coin of Caesar	xxiv
Plan of a Roman Camp	xxxvi
Cohort of Three Hundred and Sixty Men in Eight Ranks	xxxviii
Legion arrayed in Three Lines	xxxix
Scene in a Roman Camp	xliv
Coin: The Subjugation of Gaul	xlvi
Roman War Galley	lii
Map: Gaul in Caesar's Time	1
Map: Caesar's Fortifications along the Rhone	7
Map: Campaign of 58 B.C.	8
Gallic Soldier, Standard-bearer, and Officer	10
Imperator, Legatus, Centurio, Lictor	18
Plan: The Battle with the Helvetii	20
Besançon (Vesontio)	32
Signum	33
Map: The Campaign against Ariovistus	36
Pila	41
Plan: The Battle with Ariovistus	45
Gladius	46
Glans	47
Map: Campaign of 57 B.C.	48
Plan: The Battle at the Aisne	53
Funditor, Levis Armaturae Pedes, Legionarii Milites	55
Gallic Wall	58
Plan: The Battle with the Nervii	61
Galea	64
Signiferi, Tubicen, Bucinator	66

viii MAPS, PLANS, AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Oppidum Atuaticorum	70
Testudo Arietaria	72
Plutei	74
Map: Octodurus and Vicinity	75
Camp Rampart and Ditch	78
Map: The Campaign against the Veneti	84
Falx Muralis	85
Vinea	90
Caliga	95
Map: Campaigns of 55 and 54 B.C.	98
Equites	103
Caesar's Bridge across the Rhine	107
Ballista, Catapulta	112
Aquila	113
Helmet with Crest	121
Map: Campaigns in Britain 55 and 54 B.C.	122
Testudo	128
Roman Legionary Soldier	137
Funda	145
Aquila	146
Gallic Swords	149
Turris	150
Caius Julius Caesar. National Museum, Naples	162
Scutum	227
Writing Materials	284
Coins of Caesar	309
Standard Bearer with Eagle	336

INTRODUCTION.

LIFE OF CAESAR.

Boyhood. — Caius Julius Caesar was born in Rome, 100 B.C., on the 12th of the month *Quintilis*, afterwards called July (*mensis Iulius*) in his honor. The Julian *gens* was of high standing and claimed a divine descent. Of Caesar's father we know only that he had held the office of praetor, and that he died in 84. Caesar's mother, Aurelia, who lived until the year 54, seems to have been a woman of admirable character, devoted to her home and children, like Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi. Of Caesar's early education little is known, except that he had at one time for tutor a citizen of Gaul, Gniphon, who may have aroused his pupil's first interest in the Gallic people. Caesar's early years, 100 to 82 B.C., witnessed the bitter strife of two political parties, the optimates and the democrats, resulting in revolution, counter-revolution, and massacre of political opponents now by the one party, now by the other. The most prominent leader of the democratic party during this period was the distinguished general, Caius Marius, Caesar's uncle by marriage. In 82 the optimates, or the party of the senatorial oligarchy, gained the ascendancy, supported by the legions

of their general, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, fresh from his victories over Rome's enemies in Asia Minor. Sulla was then made dictator, and before resigning his office in 79 revised the constitution of the republic by a series of laws intended to establish his party in a secure place of power.

Young Manhood. Political Affiliations. — In his political sympathies Caesar may well have been influenced by the career of Marius. At all events he early identified himself with the democratic party, and while yet a mere stripling refused obedience to the dictator Sulla, who bade him divorce his wife, Cornelia, daughter of one of the most active democratic leaders, Lucius Cinna. Confiscation of his property and enforced flight from Rome did not break the young Caesar's resolution. The intercession of influential friends at length obtained for him an unwilling pardon from Sulla, who is said to have warned the petitioners that there was many a Marius in the young man, and that he would some day prove the ruin of the party of the optimates.

Military Service in Asia. — Withdrawing for the present to Asia Minor, where Mithridates had resumed hostilities, Caesar saw his first military service, distinguishing himself for bravery at the storming of Mitylene in 80, and participating later in an expedition against the pirates of the Asiatic coast.

The Years 78-74. — At the news of Sulla's death in 78 Caesar returned to Rome. In 77 and 76 he made his appearance in a public capacity by prosecuting for extortion and plunder of provincial subjects two prominent

Sullan partisans. Though the defendants were acquitted, Caesar attracted much attention by conspicuous oratorical powers. In 76 he went to Rhodes for instruction under Molo, a celebrated rhetorician of the time. Further military service in Asia Minor followed in 74.

POLITICAL CAREER.

Military Tribune. Priestly Honors. — Returning to Rome shortly after, Caesar was elected military tribune, having been elected in absence to a place in the college of *pontifices*, the high priests of the Roman religion.

Political Activity. — He now entered zealously into a movement, already in progress several years, for the repeal of Sulla's legislation. In 70 this agitation culminated in depriving the optimates of most of the added power which Sulla had secured for them. The main agents in the reform, though not the original movers, were the consuls, Cnaeus Pompeius and Marcus Crassus, both destined to close connection with Caesar in political life.

Pompey and Crassus. — Pompey, six years older than Caesar, and already a distinguished general, was a man of integrity both in public and private life, and for many years to come the foremost figure in the popular imagination, although his lack of political acumen prevented him from being an effective leader in affairs of state. Crassus was the wealthiest citizen of Rome. He was a man of unscrupulous character, his controlling motive mercenary, although not unmixed with an ambition for high place in public life and for military renown.

The Growing Leader. — The next ten years Caesar spent mostly in Rome, ingratiating himself with the people and seeking to advance the interests of the democratic party. His own allegiance to it he endeavored to emphasize upon one occasion by displaying the image of Marius in the funeral procession of Marius's wife, Julia, to the delight of the democratic faction in the city; upon another, by restoring the statue of Marius and the trophies of his victories, which had been removed from the Capitol under Sulla's régime.

Quaestor. — In 68 he held the quaestorship, an office connected with state finances. Assigned to service under the governor of Farther Spain, he is said to have displayed marked ability in the discharge of his duties.

Second Marriage. Pompey goes to Asia. — Upon returning to Rome in 67 Caesar married Pompeia, granddaughter of Sulla the dictator, having lost his first wife, Cornelia, a year or two before. In this and the following year he gave earnest support to two democratic measures intrusting Pompey with extraordinary powers and means in order to suppress piracy in the Mediterranean and to end the third Mithridatic war.

Aedile. — In 65 Caesar held the office of aedile, which involved, along with other duties, the management of public games and exhibitions. Following the custom of the time, he spent his own money lavishly in order to win popularity and so pave the way to higher offices. He was unsuccessful in an attempt to have Egypt assigned to him, as an ex-aedile, for organization into a province.

Pontifex Maximus and Praetor.—In 63, by means of profuse bribery, Caesar was elected over older rivals to the highest religious office, that of Pontifex Maximus. He was also elected to the praetorship for the following year, an office invested with judicial functions.

Catiline's Conspiracy.—In this same year the energetic efforts of Cicero, one of the consuls, frustrated a conspiracy formed by Lucius Catilina for the overthrow of the government. Caesar himself was charged more or less openly with complicity in the plot. As Catiline was attached to the democratic party rather than to any other, Caesar had doubtless countenanced his earlier ambition to obtain the consulship by the usual means. When Catiline's lack of success led him to adopt a method promising a reign of terror, Caesar, in all probability, withdrew his support.

Caesar courts Pompey's Favor.—At the beginning of 62 it was known that Pompey would soon return to Italy. His high place in popular esteem, greater now than ever before from his recent conquests in Asia Minor, made his political support seem of the utmost importance to parties and to individuals. Caesar endeavored to insure his favor by proposing to intrust him with the rebuilding of the Capitol, and by supporting a bill to give him a military command in Italy in order to protect the state against Catiline's forces. Caesar was deprived of his praetorship by the angry senate, but was soon restored. Both measures failed of enactment.

Governor of a Spanish Province.—As proprætor, in 61, Caesar governed the province of Farther Spain. His

political career had plunged him deeply in debt. Before going to his province he was enabled to pacify pressing creditors by a heavy loan from Crassus. In Spain, he subdued a number of tribes not before in subjection to the provincial government, and was equally successful in readjusting civil and economic affairs, which had fallen into much confusion.

The First Triumvirate. — Returning to Italy in the spring of 60, Caesar came forward as a candidate for the consulship. To strengthen his candidacy and his political position in general, he formed with Pompey and Crassus a private political alliance, known in history as the first triumvirate. Both Pompey and Crassus needed the aid of Caesar's political adroitness to further their own interests. Pompey, in particular, who had returned from Asia in 62, was driven into the alliance by the senate's refusal to ratify his admirable settlement of Asiatic affairs and to assign lands in Italy to his discharged veterans.

Caesar's Consulship. — As consul, in 59, Caesar held the highest regular office in the gift of the people. His colleague was Marcus Bibulus, a devoted optimate. Caesar laid before the senate a bill providing for the purchase of lands for the more needy of Pompey's veterans. The senate refused its sanction, whereupon the measure was taken before the popular assembly and carried amid much violence. Pompey's Asiatic arrangements were also ratified. Another measure, presented probably at the instance of Crassus, relieved the tax-gatherers of Asia, who had bid too high for the privilege of collection. Other laws were

passed, of much importance, but of less immediate political effect. Bibulus at first resisted Caesar's legislation. Finding opposition useless, he finally retired from the contest, protesting the validity of Caesar's acts. The humorists of the day termed it "The consulship of Julius and Caesar."

Marriage of Pompey and Julia.—A strong personal bond between Caesar and Pompey was now formed by the marriage of the latter to Caesar's daughter, Julia. Despite political considerations involved in this marriage, which the critics of the time were quick to discover, Pompey and Julia lived a life of mutual devotion until the wife's death in 54. Caesar married Calpurnia, daughter of Calpurnius Piso, consul-elect for 58, having divorced Pompeia in 62.

Assignment of Provinces.—In 60, the senate, following the custom of assigning promagisterial duties two years in advance, had decreed that the consuls of 59 should, as proconsuls in 58, have charge of forests and roads in Italy. This seems to have been done in anticipation of Caesar's election and in order to prevent him from obtaining an important proconsular position. As the foremost leader of the democracy he was not to be set aside so easily. The popular assembly nullified the senate's arrangement and voted him the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, with an army of three legions. On Pompey's motion the senate added the province of Transalpine Gaul, with one legion. Caesar's term of office as a provincial governor dated from March 1st, 59.

CONQUEST OF GAUL.

During the following nine years, 58–50, Caesar was engaged in the conquest and pacification of extra-provincial Gaul. He usually spent his winters in Cisalpine Gaul, attending to administrative duties, at the same time keeping informed of events in Rome. The details of successive campaigns may be studied best in connection with his own narrative. The renewal of his governorship for another five years enabled him to complete the subjugation of the Gallic people. A crisis came in 52, when the Gauls, under the leadership of Vercingetorix, a young Arvernian noble and a general of unusual ability, organized in a last desperate attempt to maintain their independence. The campaign, culminating in the siege and capture of the stronghold of Alesia, tested as never before Caesar's ability as a general and the endurance and capacity of his soldiers. The following winter Caesar spent in winter quarters at Bibracte, the summer of 51 in completing the work of conquest in various districts, the next winter and part of 50 in conciliating the conquered people and in effecting a temporary provincial organization.

CIVIL WAR.

Renewal of the Triumvirate. — The entire period of Caesar's absence in Gaul was marked by political strife in Rome and by mob rule increasing in violence toward the end. The triumvirs renewed their compact in a conference at Lucca in 56. Pompey and Crassus were con-

suls the next year, and secured the prolongation of Caesar's Gallic command for a second term of five years. For themselves they obtained the government for an equal period of the provinces of Spain and Syria respectively.

Estrangement of Caesar and Pompey. — The death of Julia in 54, and of Crassus in 53, opened the way for the estrangement of Caesar and Pompey, the latter gradually becoming jealous of Caesar's growing prestige, and coming to a better understanding with the optimates. The optimates, afraid of further political humiliation and loss of power at the hands of a successful democratic general, when he should return to Rome, were determined effectually to check his career. For three years, 52–50, their efforts were directed to the winning of Pompey and to the termination of Caesar's command before the time contemplated in the terms of his appointment. Their object in this was to reduce Caesar to a private station, in which he would be subject to attacks in the courts on the ground of provincial maladministration. With the courts in their control, his conviction and political ruin were a foregone conclusion.

Civil War Begins. — Caesar, through friends in Rome, sought by various measures to obtain the privilege of candidacy in absence for a second consulship, upon which he might enter immediately after returning from Gaul, thus leaving no interval of unofficial standing. All efforts at a compromise proved vain, as the Pompeians would not accept Caesar's proposal that both he and Pompey lay down their arms. Early in January, 49, in

reply to a virtual declaration of outlawry against him made by the senate, Caesar cast the die by crossing the river Rubicon, the southern boundary of his Cisalpine province.

Pompey's Flight. Campaign in Spain. — Pompey and the senate, having made no adequate preparations for war, assembled their forces at Brundisium and escaped across the Adriatic in March. Unable to follow for the present from lack of transport facilities, Caesar proceeded to Spain by land, and in a campaign of three months forced the surrender of the Pompeian legions stationed there.

Battle of Pharsalus. — Early in 48 he crossed the Adriatic, and near Dyrrachium attempted to blockade the army which Pompey had gathered. In the course of the operations Pompey's superior numbers enabled him to break through the blockade and almost inflict a disastrous defeat. Caesar withdrew into Thessaly, followed by his opponent. Their armies finally joined battle near Pharsalus on August 9th. To Pompey's 47,000 legionaries, 7000 cavalry, and auxiliaries, Caesar could oppose but 22,000 legionaries and 1000 cavalry, with auxiliaries, perhaps 30,000 in all. The Pompeian army was utterly routed, 15,000 falling and more than 23,000 being captured. Caesar lost 200 of his rank and file and 30 centurions. Pompey fled and was murdered by order of Ptolemy, king of Egypt, on attempting to land at Pelusium.

Campaigns in Egypt and Asia Minor. — The months from October, 48, to June, 47, Caesar spent in Alexandria,

where the small force with him was besieged by the Egyptians, but finally saved by reënforcements brought by Mithridates of Pergamum. Caesar settled a contest for the throne of Egypt by installing Cleopatra together with a younger brother. Proceeding to Asia Minor, he adjusted disputes in various districts, and routed Pharnaces of Pontus in the victory which he is said to have reported to a friend in the laconic dispatch, *veni, vidi, vici*. In September he was again in Rome, bringing order out of the confusion following upon his long absence.

Campaign in Africa. — In December, 47, Caesar crossed with his troops to Africa, where Cato and other adherents of Pompey and the republic had gathered a large army, supported by King Juba of Numidia. On April 6th, 46, Caesar annihilated these forces at Thapsus. Cato committed suicide at Utica rather than survive the republic or humiliate himself by surrendering. In July Caesar returned to Rome and celebrated a magnificent triumph for his victories over foreign peoples. He was then chosen dictator for ten years.

Second Campaign in Spain. — Administrative work was interrupted by the necessity of another campaign in Spain, where the adherents of Pompey and the senatorial party made their last stand, led by a son of Pompey and by Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War, but one of his bitterest foes in the Civil War. Their forces were defeated in a desperate battle at Munda on March 17th, 45, Labienus being among the slain. In September Caesar returned to Rome to resume the task of reorganization.

REORGANIZATION OF GOVERNMENT.

Caesar's Policy. — Caesar's policy of reorganization contemplated, so far as mechanism was concerned, the concentration of large powers in his own hands. In purpose it looked to the welfare, not only of Rome, but of Italy and the provinces. This purpose had been, more or less definitely, the ideal of the democratic party.

His Titles and his Powers. — The steps by which Caesar attained a power virtually supreme were taken at different times in the years 49 to 44. The tribunician power for life was granted in 48; the censorship, under another name, in 46, and later the titles of *imperator* and *parens patriae*. Caesar also held the consulship several times, and probably retained proconsular power when not actually consul. By increasing the senate's numbers to nine hundred he was able to control it through appointment of his own supporters. Directly or indirectly he exercised control over legislation, the selection of candidates for office, and the appointment of provincial governors.

Measures of Reform. — To improve political and economic conditions in Rome itself, Caesar endeavored to found colonies in the provinces, in which to settle the poor of the city. The number, too, participating in the distribution of cheap grain was reduced from 320,000 to 150,000. His own discharged veterans Caesar planned to distribute among the new colonies or in small numbers in different parts of Italy. Public lands were destined to division among small farmers in order to foster waning agricul-

ture. A law was enacted requiring the employment of a certain proportion of free laborers among the pastoral classes in Italy. State finances were better systematized and supervised, while important laws were passed relating to debt and rates of interest.

Public Works. — A new Forum was constructed north of the old Forum; south of the latter the Basilica Julia, begun in 54, was dedicated, though unfinished, in 46. Other public works were projected for Rome or elsewhere, among them a library of Greek and Latin authors. The calendar, now in much confusion, was scientifically corrected in 46 to correspond to the solar year.

Municipal Charters. — A measure of the greatest importance provided a charter for the towns and cities of Italy, in order to give them a uniform local government. Possibly Caesar intended eventually to extend this law, with modifications, to the cities of the empire. In 49 he carried out his long-cherished project of bestowing full Roman citizenship on those Gauls of the Cisalpine province who lived between the Po and the Alps, thus placing them on the same political footing with the Cisalpine Gauls south of the Po.

The Provinces. — The appointment of provincial governors by Caesar was a step of the utmost importance, making, as it did, each governor directly responsible to a central authority vested in one man. Though this system was not followed in its entirety by Caesar's successors, yet from this time the provinces began to enjoy a degree of prosperity and freedom from oppression in marked contrast to the past.

CAESAR'S DEATH.

Upon returning to Rome from Spain Caesar varied the task of administration by preparations for a campaign against the Parthians, intending to set out in March, 44. During the early months of the year lavish honors were heaped upon him, in addition to the bestowal of the perpetual dictatorship. These honors served to increase the long-standing dissatisfaction with the change in government, particularly among the adherents of the old senatorial party. This discontent in fact had affected many of Caesar's own followers, who were dissatisfied with the position they occupied and with what they deemed the small personal gains accruing from the Civil War. In consequence a plot was formed to assassinate the dictator, participated in by some of Caesar's most trusted and favored friends. Though warnings of danger, more or less specific, were given him from time to time, Caesar turned a deaf ear to them and neglected to take precautions for his safety. The plot culminated on the 15th of March, 44, when Caesar was stabbed to death at a meeting of the senate in the portico attached to Pompey's theater.

It was the hope of those implicated in the assassination to restore the old form of the republic; but Caesar's death created a condition in the state which the conspirators had not the ability to control. A period of civil war followed, terminated only by the complete subjugation of the Roman world to Caesar's great-nephew, Augustus, thirteen years later.

CAESAR'S WRITINGS.

Minor Works. — Of Caesar's literary works the most important were incidental to his later public career. Certain compositions of his earlier years are mentioned by Suetonius, a *Laudes Herculis*, a tragedy entitled *Oedipus*, and a collection of witticisms, which appears to have been continued in the later years of his life. Augustus forbade the publication of these works after Caesar's death. A treatise entitled *De Analogia*, dedicated to Cicero, dealt with the theory of correct usage in Latin and the means of determining it. It was written while Caesar was crossing the Alps to rejoin his army, probably in the spring of 54. An *Anticato* replied, in vindication of Caesar's own career, to the panegyrics published by Cato's friends and admirers after his suicide at Utica. *Iter* was the title of a poem composed by Caesar when on the way to his last campaign in Spain, in 46. Collections of speeches and letters were also preserved in later times. With the exception of meager fragments and a few letters still to be found in Cicero's collected letters, all of these minor works are lost.

The Commentaries. — Caesar's literary fame rests on his commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars. The *Gallic War* is a work in seven books, each book detailing the events of a single campaign, the whole covering the years 58–52. A friend, Aulus Hirtius, added an eighth book describing the events of 51 and 50, thus bridging over the gap between the *Gallic War* and the *Civil War*. Caesar's seven books were published probably in 51. The *Civil*

War in three books, covering the years 49 and 48, were published after Caesar's death; they are evidently in an unfinished condition, as shown by the limited period dealt with and by lapses both of a stylistic and historical character. Supplementary works by unknown authors describe the remaining campaigns of the Civil War under the titles, *Bellum Alexandrinum*, *Bellum Africum*, and *Bellum Hispaniense*.

Purpose of the Commentaries. — Caesar's aim in writing memoirs of his two great wars was primarily political, not literary. In the *Gallic War* he doubtless wished to inform the educated public of Rome and Italy of what he had done to enhance his country's glory, and how he had added a great territory to her domain; further, to demonstrate that his policy of conquest, in its inception at least, had been forced upon him by the necessity of guarding Roman interests in the north against the barbarians beyond the Rhine. The manifest purpose of the *Civil War* is to show that Caesar had done everything within reason to avoid war, and that, in contrast to his enemies, a spirit of forbearance and kindness had not failed him amid the hardships and bitterness of military operations.



COIN OF CAESAR.

THE ROMAN ARMY.

COMPOSITION.

1. **The Legions.** — The chief strength of a Roman army lay in the legions (*legiones*) of infantry, composed of Roman citizens between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. Since the time of Marius service in the ranks had been restricted practically to the lower and poorer classes, men of the upper classes serving only as officers. The legionary took oath for a service of twenty years. Levies were authorized regularly by the senate, though we find Caesar levying troops on his own responsibility in anticipation of the senate's sanction.

2. The legions were distinguished by numbers. Before the end of the Gallic War Caesar's forces comprised the 1st, and the 6th to the 15th inclusive.

3. The ideal numerical strength of a legion is uncertain. Caesar's legions at their best probably numbered not more than five thousand each. The actual number available for effective service must have varied according to losses and such supplementary drafts as may have been made.

4. Each legion was divided into ten cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort into three maniples (*manipuli*), each manipule into two centuries (*centuriae*).

5. **Infantry Auxiliaries.** — Rome's infantry auxiliaries (*auxilia*) were furnished by Roman provinces and by

allied or independent nations and tribes. Those in Caesar's army included slingers (*funditores*, p. 55¹) from the Balearic islands, archers (*sagittarii*) from Crete and Numidia, and other light-armed troops (*milites levis armaturae*, p. 55). Though considerable in number, they were not much relied upon. They were commanded by native and by Roman officers (*praefecti*). Those from the provinces, at least, were organized into cohorts. Light-armed troops, not archers or slingers, were armed with light javelins of various kinds, and in common with the slingers probably carried a round shield (*parma*). The slingers used as missiles stones and elongated lead bullets (*glandes*, p. 47).

6. **The Cavalry.** — The cavalry (*equitatus*) at this time formed part of the auxiliaries. Caesar's cavalry came from Gaul, Spain, and Germany. The greater part was levied in Gaul each summer, disbanding in the fall. Possibly a small contingent was permanently attached to each legion and wintered with it. The cavalry in Caesar's army ranged in number between 4000 and 5000. Its divisions were squadrons (*alae*) of 300 to 400, divided into troops (*turmae*) of 30 to 40, each troop comprising probably three decuries (*decuriae*). The chief cavalry officer was a Roman. The officers of the squadrons and troops (*praefecti* and *decuriones*) were sometimes Roman, sometimes of the same nationality as the soldiers under them.

The cavalryman carried a round shield (*parma*), wore

¹ This and similar references are to illustrations scattered through the Latin text.

a metal helmet (*cassis*), and perhaps a cuirass (*lorica*). His offensive weapons were a sword, longer than that of the Roman legionary, and a spear (*tragula*). See p. 103.

7. **Miscellaneous Elements.** — *Optiones*, assistants and substitutes for the centurions.

Evocati, veterans who reënlisted at the expiration of their term of service. They received higher pay than other common soldiers, were exempt from camp duties, and were furnished horses on the march.

Beneficiarii, soldiers assigned to special duties in attendance on higher officers.

Speculatores, individual scouts.

Exploratores, small detachments, usually of cavalry, employed in reconnaissance.

Signiferi, *Aquiliferi*, standard bearers (§ 28, and p. 66).

Tubicines, *Cornicines*, *Bucinatores* (§ 27, and p. 66).

8. Caesar seems to have had with him the usual *contubernales*, tent companions, young men in particular, who on the ground of personal or political friendship accompanied him in Gaul to acquaint themselves with military service under his immediate supervision.

9. The engineers (*fabri*) were skilled artisans of various kinds, probably not forming a separate corps, but drawn from the ranks as occasion demanded. The chief engineer was called *praefectus fabrum*.

10. **Non-combatants.** — *Calones*, slaves employed as camp servants, especially in attendance upon the officers.

Mercatores, traders, sutlers, who followed the army, selling the soldiers provisions not included in the regular rations, and purchasing booty of them.

OFFICERS.

11. **Commander-in-Chief.** — The commander-in-chief of the army was called *dux*, leader, general, or *imperator*, the latter a title of honor bestowed by his army after a victory. See p. 18.

12. **Lieutenants.** — The *legati*, Caesar's highest officers, were of senatorial rank and were nominated by himself. They held no fixed commands, but were assigned to various duties, such as the command of one or more legions in battle, the conduct of independent expeditions, the command of winter quarters, the levying of troops, and the building of fleets. They participated in councils of war. See p. 18.

13. **Tribunes.** — The military tribunes (*tribuni militum*), six in each legion, in earlier days had commanded the legion, two at a time. Caesar's tribunes were nominated by himself, though as a rule part of them were elected by the people. Political considerations had more or less to do with their appointment. In consequence they formed a less capable body of officers than the lieutenants, such commands as were assigned to them consisting of detachments smaller than a legion. They were also employed in other capacities, judicial and administrative, and participated in councils of war. See p. 18.

14. **Quaestor.** — The quaestors (*quaestores*) were finance officers elected annually by the Roman people and assigned by lot to their respective places, one accompanying each of the provincial governors. With the army a quaestor had charge of the pay of the troops, of the commissariat,

and of the sale of booty and prisoners. Occasionally Caesar's quaestor commanded troops.

15. **Centurions.**—The plebeian centurions (*centuriones*), one for each century, were appointed from the ranks by the commander-in-chief on the basis of merit, and could not rise to higher commands. They were of different grades, but the order of promotion is uncertain. Probably one centurion commanded each cohort. Certain centurions in each legion, known as centurions of the first rank (*centuriones primorum ordinum*), ranked higher than the others and were admitted to councils of war. The first centurion of the first cohort of a legion was styled chief centurion (*primipilus*), and in battle had under his special protection the legionary eagle (§ 28). A centurion carried a staff (*vitis*) as an emblem of authority, and wore on his helmet a transverse crest (*crista transversa*). See p. 18.

16. **Prefects.**—The prefects (*praefecti*) have already been noted as the officers of the auxiliary forces and of the engineers (§§ 5, 6, 9).

DRESS AND EQUIPMENT.

17. **Dress.**—The legionary wore no uniform. His clothing was as follows: *tunica*, the usual woolen tunic, close-fitting, short-sleeved, reaching to the knees and confined at the waist by a girdle (*cingulum*); *sagum*, a thick woolen cloak for inclement weather, provided possibly with a hood,—it was fastened at the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free; *caligae*, low boots of leather, hob-

nailed, fastened across the instep and around the lower part of the leg. See pp. 55, 95, and 137.

As a mark of distinction the commander in chief wore a scarlet cloak (*paludamentum*), while the lieutenants and tribunes wore red tunics.

18. **Défensive Armor.** — *Galea*, a helmet of metal or of leather strengthened by metal strips, surmounted by a detachable crest. See pp. 64 and 120.

Lorica, cuirass, a sort of leather tunic reënforced across the breast and back by metal strips.

Scutum, a concave shield worn on the left arm in battle. It was approximately two and a half feet by four, made of boards covered outside with cloth and leather, and metal-rimmed. From the center projected a metal boss (*umbo*). When not in use the shield was protected by a leather covering (*tegimentum*), and on the march was carried hanging at the left side or on the back.

It is uncertain whether the soldiers wore greaves (*ocreae*) — bronze shields protecting the legs from the knee down. The higher officers carried no shield, but wore cuirasses.

19. **Offensive Weapons.** — *Pilum*, a heavy javelin with round or square wooden shaft, and an iron head, of which all but the tip was of soft metal. After piercing the enemy's shield the head might bend and so become useless to the enemy for hurling back. The total length of the javelin was about six and one half feet. It could be hurled eighty feet or more. See p. 41.

The *pilum murale*, wall-javelin, was a heavier weapon hurled from intrenchments, walls, and towers.

Gladius, a sword about two feet long, straight, double-edged, and pointed, used for thrusting rather than for cutting. It was worn at the right side in a leather-covered scabbard (*vagina*), held by a belt (*balteus*) hung from the left shoulder. As higher officers carried no shields, their swords hung at the left side. See p. 46.

BAGGAGE.

20. **Soldiers' Packs.**—In addition to arms and armor soldiers carried individual packs (*sarcinae*) on the march. These were attached to forked poles carried over the shoulder, a contrivance introduced by Marius. The packs comprised rations for a number of days varying according to circumstances, a cooking utensil, several stakes for the camp rampart, saw, hatchet, spade, basket, the whole weighing probably forty-five pounds. When loaded with his pack the soldier was said to be *impeditus*, incumbered, without it *expeditus*, unincumbered. Before a battle the packs were deposited in one place and guarded.

21. **Heavy Baggage.**—The heavy baggage, *impedimenta*, consisted of extra supplies of arms and clothing, tents, hand-mills, artillery, provisions for long marches, etc. It was carried chiefly by pack animals (*iumenta*), though wagons and carts must have been used also, especially for the artillery. Pack animals and draft animals for a legion may well have numbered five or six hundred, requiring many muleteers (*muliones*).

Each legion had its own baggage train and when im-

mediately followed by it, was incumbered, *impedita*, without it unincumbered, *expedita*.

PROVISIONS, PAY, ETC.

22. **Provisions.** — The soldiers' diet was chiefly vegetable, consisting of bread or of a sort of porridge, both of wheat, though it was sometimes necessary to substitute barley. Unground grain was issued usually every fifteen or sixteen days, to be ground into coarse flour in hand-mills. The amount per day was about two pounds. Meat was used occasionally. Grain was supplied by allied or subject Gallic tribes, probably without pay. Extra provisions might be purchased from the sutlers (§ 10).

23. **Pay.** — The pay of a legionary was 125 denarii a year, which Caesar increased to 225 toward the beginning of the Civil War. This sum had a greater purchasing power than what is usually given as its equivalent, \$45. Deductions were made for such parts of the food, clothing, and equipment as were furnished by the state. A soldier's resources were materially increased by the sale of booty and by special gifts from the commanding general. A centurion received double the pay of a common soldier.

After discharge a soldier received a sum of money (3000 denarii in the time of the Empire, possibly also in Caesar's time) or a tract of land.

24. **Rewards.** — Special bravery might be rewarded by presents of money, by promotion, or by badges of honor such as armlets, chains, necklaces, brooches, medals, crown-wreaths.

25. Punishments. — These, according to the offense, were corporal, deprivation of pay for a stated period, degradation from a higher to a lower rank, public dismissal from the service, and even the death penalty.

If whole bodies of troops were at fault, they might be given barley instead of wheat for food, be compelled to bivouac outside the camp, or be subjected to *decimatio*, the choice by lot of every tenth man for the death penalty.

26. Work. — In addition to performing the work entailed by regular warfare, soldiers were also frequently employed in time of peace on public works, canals, bridges, roads, and buildings.

SIGNAL INSTRUMENTS AND STANDARDS.

27. Signal Instruments. — *Tuba*, trumpet, a straight instrument of metal used for various signals, particularly of attack and retreat. See p. 66.

Cornu, horn, probably one for each manipule, used to repeat the main signals of the *tuba* in battle.

Bucina, used to mark the night watches.

Lituus, the signal instrument of the cavalry.

28. Standards. — The standard of the legion was a silver eagle (*aquila*, pp. 113 and 146) carried by the eagle bearer (*aquilifer*); in battle it was under the special protection of the *primipilus* (§ 15).

The minor standards belonged to the maniples; probably the standard of the first manipule of each cohort served as the standard of the cohort. These standards in general consisted of a staff with a cross-bar near the

top, from which hung streamers. Below were various silver ornaments; the disks (*phalerae*) were probably presented to the maniples for distinguished services. Possibly a small banner with appropriate lettering was attached to each standard to identify the maniple. See p. 33.

The *vexillum*, a square flag fastened to a cross-bar on a staff, was the standard of the cavalry troops (§ 6), and probably of the infantry auxiliaries; also of legionary detachments sent out on special service. A red *vexillum* displayed on the general's tent served as a signal to form for battle, sometimes as the signal for attack.

In camp the standards were planted in the ground, under a shelter which constituted a shrine (*sacrarium*). On the march they were probably kept to the front of the maniples, in battle probably in or behind the second rank, the soldiers of the first rank, perhaps also of the second, being called *antesignani*. In battle the standards played an important part, as it was the bearers to whom commands were directed with the signal instruments.

The loss of a standard was considered an extreme disgrace. To spur on the soldiers, the bearer sometimes threw his standard forward into the ranks of the enemy.

ARTILLERY.

29. The machines for hurling missiles were called in general *tormenta* (*torquere*, to twist). As the Latin name implies, their power came from twisted materials, such as ropes and the sinews and hair of animals.

The *ballista* hurled heavy stones or beams (p. 112).

The catapult (*catapulta*) shot large arrows (p. 112).

The *scorpio*, the only piece mentioned by name in the *Gallic War*, was probably a small catapult or ballista.

Artillery was employed most often in the attack on, and defense of, fortified towns, to some extent on ships of war, and occasionally in the field, especially for the defense of a camp or redoubt.

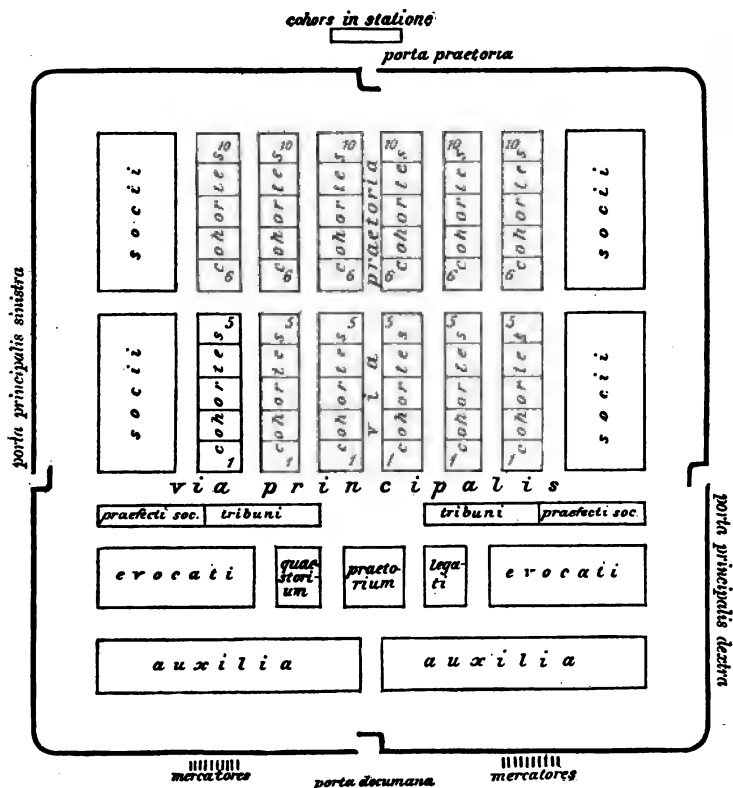
THE CAMP.

30. The Roman army constructed a fortified camp at the end of each day's march. Officers sent in advance laid out the camp in a suitable spot, preferably on the crest and slope of a hill, due regard being paid to proximity of water, fuel, and forage. The work of intrenching was done by the soldiers, who soon became expert at the task. The shape of the camp, rectangular theoretically, was necessarily adapted to the ground chosen.

The intrenchments (see p. 78) consisted regularly of a trench (*fossa*) of varying dimensions, and a rampart (*agger*, *vallum*) formed for the most part of the earth thrown inward from the trench and faced with sod when possible. A palisade (*vallum*) of wooden stakes crowned the outer edge of the rampart. Between rampart and tents, on all sides, a space of about two hundred feet was left to afford protection from missiles, to maneuver troops, and to store the baggage train. The four gates were so arranged with elbows in the rampart that an enemy upon entering had to expose his unprotected right side.

Tents were usually made of skins, ten men occupying

each one. In winter quarters (*hiberna*) the barracks were huts roofed with straw or skins. Winter camps,



also field camps on occasions of special danger and when occupied for some length of time, might be provided with towers, redoubts, and various other defenses.

The time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), the third beginning at midnight. The night guards were relieved at the end of each watch. The watchword for the night was communicated to the troops written on wooden tablets (*tesserae*).

THE MARCH.

31. When not threatened by attack, a marching army (*agmen*) was headed by a vanguard (*primum agmen*), usually of cavalry, sometimes reënforced by infantry auxiliaries; then came the main body, each legion followed by its baggage train (§ 21). When near the enemy, several legions marched in front, with the entire baggage train placed behind them and protected by other legions acting as a rear guard (*novissimum agmen*). Sometimes, for further protection of the baggage, troops marched at the sides of the train, forming a hollow parallelogram. Or, when marching a short distance in expectation of an immediate engagement, the legions in front laid aside even their light baggage (§ 20), and marched in three columns of cohorts, so arranged as to swing into line of battle at a moment's notice.

A day's march under ordinary circumstances covered something more than fifteen miles, a forced march (*magnum iter*) as much as twenty miles or even more.

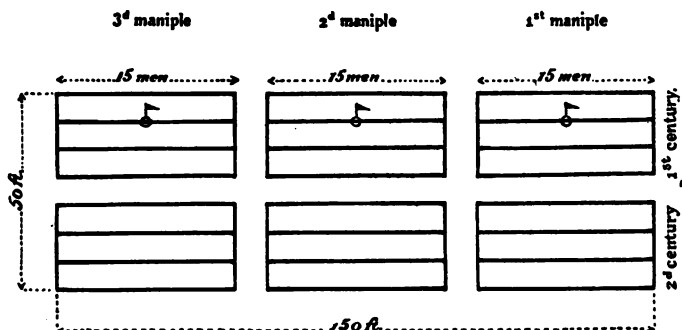
THE BATTLE.

32. **The Battle Line.** — In battle the legions were stationed side by side, doubtless preserving their identity by narrow intervals. Each legion was most frequently

arrayed in three lines of cohorts (*triplex acies*), sometimes in two (*duplex acies*). Our knowledge of the formation is far from definite. The following account of the triple line seems plausible:—

Four cohorts stood side by side in the first line, three side by side in each of the other two. In each cohort the maniples were arranged side by side, with one of the two centuries in each maniple behind the other. The depth of the line may have varied in different battles; we may assume a normal depth of eight ranks, *i.e.* four ranks to each century.

The following figure represents a cohort formed eight ranks deep in close array, the formation employed in parades, reviews, and when marching to battle, but still at a distance from the enemy. Before the actual shock



COHORT OF 360 MEN IN 8 RANKS, NOT DEPLOYED.

of battle it would be necessary to deploy the cohorts of the first and second lines at least, in order to give each soldier sufficient room in which to wield javelin and

sword. The next figure shows a legion in three lines, the first and second deployed for battle.

Standards.



LEGION ARRAYED IN THREE LINES, THE FIRST TWO
DEPLOYED FOR BATTLE.

33. **The Battle.** — Before a battle the general usually made his troops a brief address of encouragement (*cohortatio*). At the signal for attack the first line of cohorts advanced, quickening its pace as it neared the enemy. The two front ranks, when within striking distance, hurled their javelins, those of the second rank probably hurling theirs through the intervals of the first, if we may assume the men to be arranged in checker-board fashion. The ranks behind as they came within the distance of a javelin's cast hurled their javelins in rapidly succeeding volleys over the heads of those in front. Each rank drew swords immediately after its javelin volley. The first shock of the hand-to-hand fighting with swords fell upon the *antesignani*, who were the pick of the legion (¶ 28). As the front ranks became thinned or fagged,

the men in the ranks behind pressed forward to take their places. The second line of cohorts followed the first at some distance. If the first line failed to rout the enemy and became decimated or exhausted in the fight, the second line gradually worked its way into the fight until it had relieved the entire first line. The third line of cohorts constituted a reserve, to be employed according to occasion. It might face about and meet a division of the enemy coming from another direction than the front. At times a spirited enemy would advance so rapidly as to afford no chance for the javelin volleys.

The terms right wing (*dextrum cornu*), left wing (*sinistrum cornu*), and center (*media acies*) were used without indicating tactical divisions of the line.

Other occasional formations were the wedge (*cuneus*), a formation in column of attack, to break through superior numbers; the *orbis*, a circle or a square with rounded corners, hollow or solid, for defense against superior numbers attacking on all sides.

The cavalry, stationed usually on the wings, was employed most often in pursuit of a fleeing enemy. The infantry auxiliaries seem to have had no fixed part or place in battle, but to have been employed in skirmishing, in protecting the baggage, and in other capacities as circumstances dictated.

ASSAULTS AND SIEGES.

34. Three methods of attack on fortified places may be distinguished, though features of the different methods were often combined.

(1) **Assault.** — In attack by assault (*repentina oppugnatio*) the trench was first filled with earth and fascines (*crates*), while part of the troops, especially the light-armed, attempted to drive the defenders from the wall. Soldiers then advanced to scale the wall with ladders (*scalae*) or to break down the gates, sometimes adopting the "tortoise" formation (*testudo*, p. 128), composed of a detachment of soldiers in close array, those in the first rank holding their shields closely locked in front, while those behind held their shields overhead.

35. (2) **Siege.** — Regular siege (*oppugnatio*) was employed against the stronger towns. If the ground at the point chosen for attack was not unduly broken, it was leveled, the trench filled in, and an attempt made to breach the wall by undermining it, by pulling down stones and timbers with huge mural hooks (*falces murales*, p. 85) attached to long poles, or by use of the battering-ram (*aries*); the latter was a long, heavy beam with a metal head, swung by ropes in a movable shed (*testudo arietaria*, p. 72). In approaching the wall the troops were protected by galleries of open-ended sheds (*vineae*, p. 90), by screens (*plutei*, p. 74), and by strongly built sappers' huts (*testudines, musculi*), all of these devices being movable. One or more movable towers (*turres ambulatoriae*, p. 150) were sometimes employed to protect attacking parties by driving defenders from walls. A tower extended several stories high, moved on wheels or rollers, and carried soldiers and artillery. A battering-ram might be installed in the first story. Towers and sheds were often protected against fire by fresh hides or wet coverings.

36. If the ground was so broken or steep as to require it, a siege mole (*agger*) was constructed, usually at right angles to the wall. It was begun out of missile range, galleries, screens, and a movable tower furnishing protection to the builders. The mole probably consisted of two parallel retaining walls of cross-laid timbers, the space in and between the walls being filled with logs, stones, and earth. The whole formed a causeway, possibly sixty feet in width normally, extending up to the foot of the enemy's wall. It afforded a way of approach for attacking parties, together with the appliances employed in breaching a wall; also for the movable tower located on the mole itself and advanced as the work of construction was pushed forward.

The defenders resisted by sorties, by countermines under the mole, by hurling weapons of various sorts, by setting fire to screens, sheds, tower, and even to the mole when much wood was used in its construction, and by catching the battering-ram with grappling contrivances.

37. (3) **Blockade.** — Blockade, or investment (*obsidio*), was resorted to in the case of towns too strong to be taken otherwise. Its object was to starve the defenders into submission. The blockade was accomplished by constructing around the town a line of intrenchments (*circumvallatio*), crowned with palisades and towers, and strengthened at intervals by redoubts (*castella*). By another line of intrenchments, facing in the opposite direction, the attacking army might protect itself against reinforcements coming to the aid of the besieged.

THE ROMAN FLEET.

38. At the beginning of the Gallic War Caesar had no fleet, but was obliged to build and equip one when occasion demanded. The vessels employed were as follows:—

Naves longae, war galleys, in comparison with ordinary merchantmen were longer in proportion to breadth, more lightly built, of less draught, and speedier. In rough weather, at least, they were drawn up on the beach. They were propelled partly by sail, but mainly by oars, which were arranged in banks or tiers, each rower handling an oar. Caesar's galleys probably contained not more than three banks. The steering of the galleys, as well as of other vessels, was effected by means of two large paddles, one at each side astern.

A galley was provided with a beak (*rostrum*) of metal, or at least tipped with metal, under the prow near the water line, for ramming opposing vessels. Wooden towers were erected on deck, from which to work artillery, or to render more effective the discharge of other weapons. The most effective and the regular mode of attack, in addition to ramming, was to board an enemy's vessel and engage in a hand-to-hand battle. The galleys were, therefore, provided with grappling contrivances (*copulae*), with which to seize and hold the enemy's ships. In the sea fight with the Veneti (Bk. III, 14–15) a special invention, consisting of strong hooks attached to long poles, was employed to cripple the sailing vessels of the enemy by breaking or cutting their rigging.

Sailors (*nautae*) and rowers (*remiges*) were provincials, the rowers possibly slaves. Upon one occasion the legionaries worked the oars. The fighting crew was composed of legionaries.

39. *Speculatoria navigia*, scout ships, were smaller than the war galleys, and had no *rostra*.

40. *Naves onerariae*, freight ships, were employed as transports along with the war galleys. As already indicated, they had a greater proportionate breadth and a greater draught than the war galleys. Sails were depended upon more than in the case of the galleys, though oars were also used. These vessels were anchored in port.

41. *Naves actuariæ*, transports, were swifter than those last described, and were propelled by sails and oars. They were also made lower and broader to facilitate loading and beaching.

42. *Vectoria navigia*, transports, is a general term covering both of the classes last mentioned.

43. The fleet as a whole was commanded by a lieutenant in Caesar's absence, single ships by tribunes and centurions.



SCENE IN A ROMAN CAMP.



THE GALLIC ARMY.

44. **Clothing.** — The Gallic soldier's clothing consisted of a tunic-like coat with or without sleeves, a mantle (*sagulum*), and trousers (*bracae*). Coats and mantles were frequently woven with gayly colored stripes. Ornaments of bronze and gold were worn, rings, armlets, and necklaces.

45. **Defensive Armor.** — The armor of the common soldier was a wooden shield, of different forms and sizes. The leaders wore iron or bronze coats of mail, and helmets decorated most often with horns. See p. 10.

46. **Offensive Weapons.** — The Gallic sword, of bronze or iron, was usually longer and broader than that of the Roman legionary, and was used more for cutting than for thrusting (p. 149); the *gaesum* was a heavy javelin; *tragula*, a spear either for hurling or thrusting; *matara*, a broad-tipped spear; *verutum*, a dart or lance; *lancea*, a lance, carried by the cavalry in particular. Bows and slings were also in use.

47. **Standards.** — The figure of a boar carried on a pole seems to have been the most common, if not the only, standard. See p. 10.

48. **The Camp.** — Gallic camps as a rule were mere encampments, not like the fortified Roman camps. The Aquitani (Bk. III, 23), however, speedily imitated the

Roman method of fortifying camps, and later other Gauls did the same.

49. **Gallic Strongholds.** — The Gallic strongholds or towns (*oppida*) most often occupied high positions naturally defended; these were strengthened further by trenches, by well-constructed walls (p. 58) of timber and stones, sometimes crowned with towers.

50. **The Gauls in Battle.** — The Gauls sometimes adopted the *phalanx* formation, resembling the *testudo* (§ 34), but applied to a much larger body of troops; the men in the front rank presented a solid barrier of shields, while those behind held their shields overhead.

51. In attacking Roman camps the Gauls learned in the later campaigns to employ Roman devices, movable towers (§ 35), sappers' huts (§ 35), scaling ladders (§ 34), mural hooks (§ 35), and fascines (§ 34). They also employed the *testudo* formation (§ 34).



COIN: THE SUBJUGATION OF GAUL.

TRANSALPINE GAUL.

THE COUNTRY.

52. **Extent.** — Transalpine Gaul in Caesar's time comprised the region now known as France, together with the larger portion of Switzerland, Alsace, Lorraine, Belgium, and southern Holland.

53. **Character of the Country.** — The generally level character of the country and the presence of navigable rivers rendered communication easy among the Gallic tribes. Forests and marshes covered a more extensive area than in modern times.

54. **Climate and Products.** — The climate, north of the Cevennes, was probably more rigorous than now. The various cereals of southern Europe were cultivated quite extensively, though pastoral husbandry was held in higher repute, especially in the northern districts. The southern district, already a Roman province, had much the same climate as Italy and produced the same fruits. The mining of iron, copper, silver, and gold was carried on in parts of Gaul.

THE PEOPLE.

55. **Origin.** — The Gauls, or Celts, had for many centuries occupied the country in which Caesar found them.

They came from east of the Rhine, destroyed or conquered the population already in the land, and intermarried to some extent with the survivors. The language of the invaders came to prevail.

56. Divisions. — Without an attempt at scientific accuracy, Caesar describes the Gauls in three divisions or ethnological groups, on the basis of language, customs, and laws. The inhabitants of the central division called themselves Celts. They were, however, of the same origin as the Belgae north of them, and there was probably no great divergence in the language of the two. The Belgae, who came into Gaul probably at a later date than the Celts, claimed to be descended from the Germans, and there may have been an admixture of German blood in them. In the third division, Aquitania, the Celtic element had not established itself in numbers relatively so large as in other parts of Gaul, nor was the Celtic language in general use. The precise origin of the population which the Celtic invaders found in Aquitania is not certain. It was doubtless a mixture of race elements, largely Iberian, and is represented by the modern Basques.

57. Characteristics of the Gauls. — The Gauls in general were of greater stature than the Romans. Their complexion was fair, their hair a reddish blond. In dress they were especially fond of bright colors. The chiefs decorated themselves with golden rings, bracelets, and necklaces, though such ornaments were not unknown among other classes. In temperament the Gauls were boastful, impulsive, and hasty in forming resolves and

plans, often disastrous in outcome. These qualities were augmented by a childish curiosity and credulousness of chance rumors and of stories told them by traders. In battle they were courageous and impetuous, but lacked staying qualities, being easily disheartened by defeat. They showed no little cleverness in imitating the military contrivances of their enemies.

58. **Houses.** — The Gallic houses were made of wood and wickerwork, dome-shaped and with thatched roofs. Those in the country were placed, if possible, in the vicinity of forests and streams for the sake of coolness.

59. **Towns.** — Walled towns constituted strongholds of refuge in time of war for the inhabitants of villages and of the open country.

60. **Stage of Civilization.** — The Gauls of Caesar's time had advanced far beyond a state of barbarism. Cattle-breeding, agriculture, mining, and intertribal commerce were conducted in an orderly way. Duties or tolls were levied on merchandise conveyed on the rivers, and a system of coinage had been developed. Traffic was carried on with the Britons, as well as with traders from the Roman province and the Greek city of Massilia. The more southern tribes, at least, had reduced their language to writing, employing Greek letters. Latin, too, was more or less familiar to the southern Celts. Education, rude as it was, must have been confined to a small portion of the inhabitants, particularly the druids. The tribes nearer the Roman province had lost something of their native vigor through contact with civilization, while the more remote Belgae retained in a greater degree their

originally rugged character. One strong Belgic tribe refused to allow the importation of wine and other enervating luxuries.

61. Religion. — The religion of the Gauls probably presented many variations of a local character. It was dominated by a priestly caste, the druids, who were not subject to military service or to taxation. One of their number held supreme authority as a sort of druidical pope. The druids exercised great influence, largely through their power of excommunicating those who refused obedience to their mandates. They had jurisdiction in religious matters, often also in civil cases. The secrets of their religious teachings were handed down orally, never committed to writing. Many novices were constantly under instruction, submitting to a long period of study. Those who wished to attain unusual proficiency in the mysteries went to Britain for study, where the Gauls themselves believed the druidical system to have originated.

Among their teachings was the immortality of the soul and its transmigration into other human beings. This belief, they thought, by removing the fear of death, afforded the most powerful inspiration to valorous conduct. Human sacrifices were still practiced, apparently, in Caesar's time. The victims were by preference criminals. Under Roman names, Caesar gives as the chief Gallic divinities Mercury, Apollo, Mars, Jupiter, and Minerva.

62. Political and Social Organization. — The Gallic states, or tribes, were divided into districts. Each tribe

had its council of elders, which Caesar calls by the Roman term *senatus*. Certain tribes had kings, probably all at an earlier date. By revolutions the majority had done away with monarchy, substituting an annually elected magistrate in some cases, while in others the senates alone seem to have exercised the powers of government.

63. In addition to the druids, there existed one other powerful class, that of the nobles or knights. It was perhaps from their numbers that the senates were formed. As the wealthy class, they appear to have held a monopoly of the land, and owned slaves. In the absence of well-organized institutions to secure justice, the lower classes were often oppressed by the more powerful, or were overwhelmed by debt. Large numbers, therefore, attached themselves to members of the nobility as free clients (*clientes*) or retainers, or even entered into a relation of serfdom or virtual slavery to their masters, expecting protection in return. A noble whose resources and retainers were sufficient might maintain a status virtually independent of the state.

64. **Factional Spirit.** — As a result of political and social conditions, each tribe was riven by factions. The same factional spirit so prevailed among the various tribes as to prevent the maturing of a national spirit. No regular councils of the Gallic tribes as a whole were held, though upon occasion delegates from a number of tribes would meet and agree to make common cause in war.

65. **Hegemony.** — Powerful tribes were sometimes able to establish sovereignty of varying degrees over their

a number of men noted in Latin literature, among them Vergil and Livy. The people north of the Po were clamoring for full Roman citizenship. In 67, on his journey home from Spain at the end of his quaestorship, Caesar is said to have urged these Transpadani to press their claim. Not until he himself gained control of the Roman government was the coveted citizenship bestowed.

Caesar refers to this province as *Gallia cisalpina*, *Gallia citerior*, *citerior provincia*, or simply as Italy.

THE TRANSALPINÉ PROVINCE.

68. To secure a land route to their Spanish domain, acquired at the close of the third century, it was necessary for the Romans to control the Gallic country along the Mediterranean. The first step toward this end was taken in 154, when Rome aided the allied Greek city of Massilia against the Ligurians, west of the Maritime Alps. Another campaign occurred in 125, likewise to assist Massilia. In 123 the Romans formed treaty relations with the Haedui, giving them the title of friends and allies. In 122 the town of Aquae Sextiae was founded. In 121 the Allobroges were brought under subjection, and at the same time a severe blow was dealt the power of the Arverni, who, with their client tribes, had come to the aid of the Allobroges. In 118 the colony of Narbo was founded, and about the same time the conquered territory was organized into a province, Massilia retaining its independence. From this time forward the process of introducing Roman civiliza-

tion went steadily on, Roman men of business settling in the country in large numbers.

The boundaries of the province were for the most part natural, the Alps, the Cevennes, and the river Rhone. Caesar refers to this province as *Gallia ulterior*, *Gallia provincia*, *ulterior provincia*, *provincia nostra*.

ILLYRICUM.

The province of Illyricum comprised the eastern coast of the Adriatic from the peninsula of Histria to Epirus.

The Romans first came into contact with the Illyrians about 233 B.C., when their Italian allies were suffering from the depredations of Illyrian pirates. A Roman army was sent to chastise the offenders. A second war occurred in 219, and further troubles in 168 caused the Romans to annex the country as a province. The ancient Illyrians are thought to be the ancestors of the modern Albanians.

This province played a relatively small part in Caesar's administrative duties as a provincial governor. He records but two visits to it, in the years 57 and 54.

BRITAIN.

69. The term Britain as used by Caesar included England, Scotland, and Wales. Ireland is mentioned under its ancient name of Hibernia. Mona is to be identified with Anglesey. Before Caesar's time there was but the vaguest idea of the island, though its tin mines seem to have been long known. Caesar's contribution to the knowledge of Britain, while not extensive, had at least the merit of first-hand information. He conceived its shape as triangular, estimating its circumference at two thousand Roman miles, somewhat more than the actual measurement.

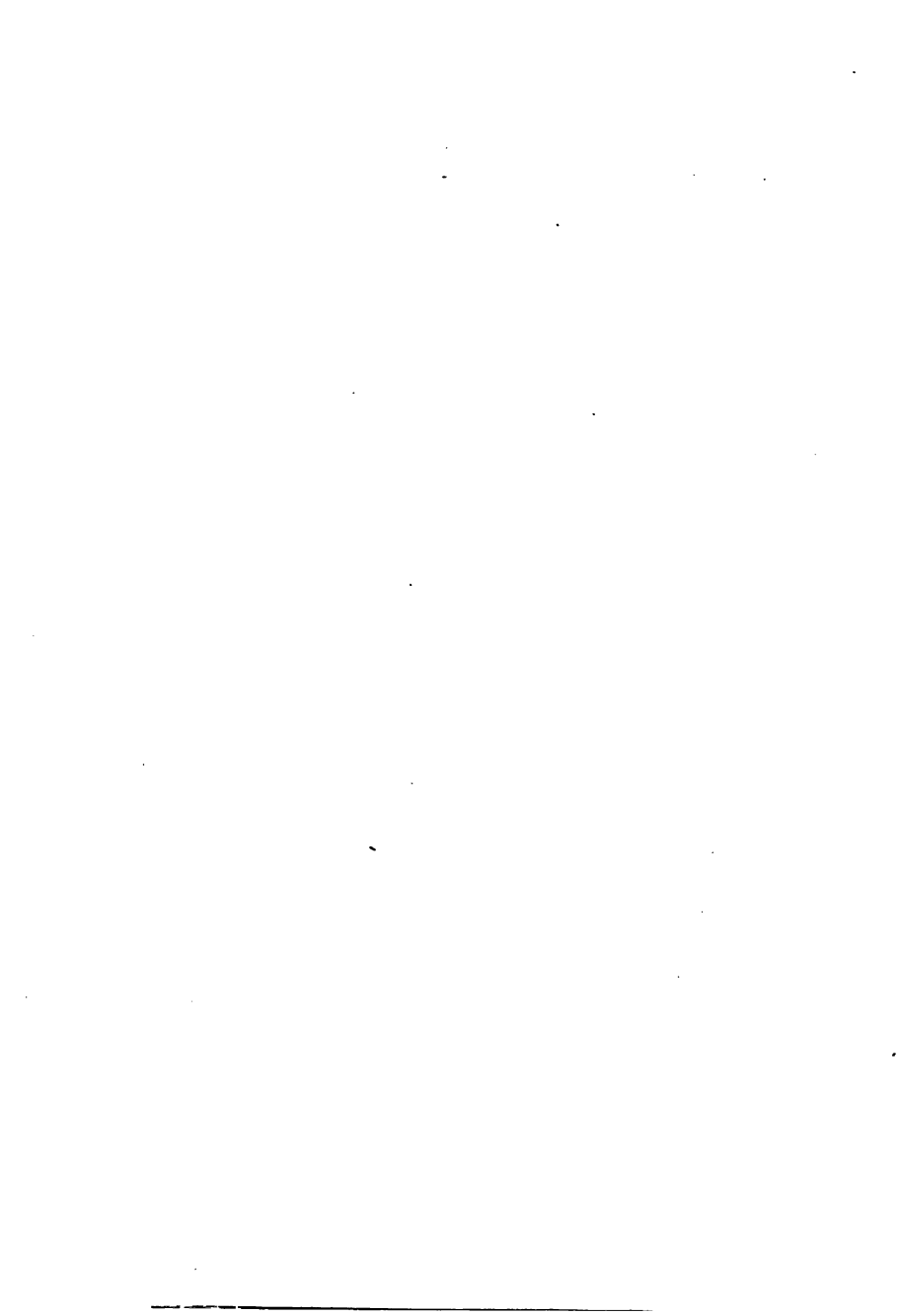
The Britons of Cantium, or Kent, on the southeast coast, were in a more advanced stage of civilization than those farther inland. According to our author they were descendants of invaders from Belgium, differing but little from the northern Gauls. The tribes of the interior believed themselves to be indigenous. Probably all the inhabitants of Britain and Ireland were mainly of Celtic stock. The details of Caesar's description are found in Bk. V, 12-14.

The Romans did not gain a firm foothold in Britain until a century after Caesar's invasion, under the Emperor Claudius.

GERMANY.

70. The information given by Caesar with reference to Germany is the earliest from an authentic source. It is not extensive (Bk. IV, 1-3, and Bk. VI, 21-28), and must be supplemented from sources of a later date, Tacitus's *Germania* in particular.

Compared with the Gauls, in physical characteristics the Germans were of larger stature, but much resembled them otherwise. Their manner of life was of a ruder type, though no little diversity existed in the civilization of different tribes. The classes below the nobility enjoyed a much greater degree of independence and individual freedom. Some tribes had kings; in others, popular forms of government existed. According to the information obtained by Caesar, there was no private and individual ownership of land. Allotments of land, made to clans and families, were changed annually. Agriculture was not practiced so extensively as in Gaul. Caesar notes the absence of the druidical system. We know from Tacitus that there was a priestly caste possessing no little influence and power. The gods, according to Caesar, were those of nature, the Sun, Vulcan, Luna. Caesar's narrative will give sufficient information as to the prowess and military tactics of the Germans.





1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

C. IULI CAESARIS
BELLI GALLICI
LIBER PRIMUS.

WAR WITH THE HELVETII, 1-29.

The divisions and peoples of Gaul.

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallios ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. 5

Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximi-
mque sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, qui-
buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallios virtute praecedunt, quod
ferre cotidiana proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum
aut suis finibus eos prohibent aut ipsi in eorum finibus
bellum gerunt. 15

Eorum una pars, quam Gallios obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumnâ flumine, Oceanô, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab

Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; **vergit** ad **septentrionēs**. Belgae ab **extrēmīs** Galliae finibus **oriuntur**, pertinent ad **inferiōrem** partem flūminis Rhēnī, **spectant** in septentrionem et orientem **sōlem**. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs **montēs** et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter **occāsum** sōlis et septentrionēs.

The Helvetii, led by Orgetorix, plan to migrate.

2. **Apud** Helvētiōs longē **nōbilissimus** fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne **cōnsulibus**, **rēgni**
 10 **cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit**, et **civitatī persuāsit**, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus **cōplīs exirent**; **perfacile** esse, cum virtūte omnibus **praestarent**, **tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri**.

Their motives.

Id hōc **facilius** eis persuāsit, quod **undique loci nātūrā**
 15 Helvētiī continentur: **ūnā ex** parte flūmine Rhēnō **lātissimō** atque **altissimō**, quī **agrum** Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; **alterā** ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā **lacū** Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.
 20 **Hīs rēbus fiēbat**, ut et **minus lātē vagārentur** et minus facile **finitimis** bellum **inferre possent**; quā ex parte **homīnēs** bellandī **cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur**. **Prō multitudīne** autem hominum et **prō gloriā** belli atque fortitudinis **angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur**, quī
 25 in **longitudinem milia passuum CCXL**, in **lātitudinem CLXXX** patēbant.

Preparations for departure.

3. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiendum pertinerent, comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum perfectionem lege confirmant.

Orgetorix and certain other Gallic chiefs plot to gain supreme power in their states.

Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix dux deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscipit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multis annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduo, fratri Diviciaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conareretur, persuadet eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Perfacile factum esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et ius iurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

The plot is discovered. Death of Orgetorix.

4. Ea res est Helvētiis per iudicium **ēnūntiāta**. **Mōri-**
bus suis Orgetorīgem ex **vinculis** causam dicere **coēgērunt** ;
damnātum poenam sequi **oportēbat**, ut **igni** cremārētur.
Diē cōstitutā causae dictionis Orgetorix ad **iūdicium**
 5 omnem suam **familiam**, ad hominum mīlia **decem**, undique
 coēgit, et omnēs **clientēs** obaerātōsque suos, quōrum māg-
 num numerum habēbat, **eōdem** **condūxit**; per eōs, **nē**
 causam diceret, sē **ēripuit**. Cum civitās **ob** eam rem **inci-**
tāta armis iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur multitudinemque
 10 hominum ex agrīs **magistrātūs** cōgerent, Orgetorix **mor-**
tuus est; **neque** abest **suspiciō**, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur,
 quIn ipse sibi **mortem cōnsciverit**.

The Helvetii continue their preparations. Other peoples join them.

5. **Post** eius mortem **nihilō** minus Helvētiī id, quod
 cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant.
 15 **Ubi iam** sē ad eam rem **parātōs** esse arbitrātī sunt, **oppida**
 sua omnia, **numerō** ad **duodecim**, **vicōs** ad **quadringentōs**,
 reliqua **privāta aedificia** **incendunt**, frūmentum omne,
praeter quod sēcum **portātūrī** erant, **combūrun**t, ut **domum**
 reditiōnis **spē** **sublātā** parātiōrēs ad omnia **pericula sub-**
 20 **eunda** essent; trium **mēnsium** molita **cibāria** sibi **quemque**
 domō **efferre iubent**.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finiti-
 mīs, utī eōdem **ūsī cōnsiliō**, oppidis suis vicisque exustīs,
unā cum eīs proficiscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum
 25 incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum **trāpsierant** Nōreīamque
oppugnārant, **receptōs** ad sē **sociōs** sibi **adasciscunt**.

The routes open to them.

6. Erant **omninō** itinera **duo**, quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et **difficile**, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, **vix** quā **singuli** carrī dūcerentur, mōns autem altissimus **impendēbat**, ut facile **perpauci** prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, **multō facilius** atque **expeditius**, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī **nūper** **pācāti** erant, Rhodanus **fuit** isque nōn **nūllis** locis **vadō** trānsitur.

They plan to pass through the Roman province.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque **10** Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō **pōns** ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē **vel** persuāsūrōs, quod **nōndum bonō animō** in populum Rōmānum **vidērentur**, **existimābant**, vel **vi** coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs **ire paterentur**. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis **15** diem dīcunt, quā diē ad **ripam** Rhodani omnēs **conveni-**
ant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Caesar arrives at Geneva.

7. Caesarī cum id **nūntiātum** esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, **mātūrat** ab **urbe** proficīscī, et **20** quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriōrem** contendit et ad Genavam **pervenit**. Prōvinciae tōti quam māximum potest **militum** numerum **imperat**, — erat omninō in Galliā **ulteriōre legiō** ūna, — pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet **rescindī**.

The Helvetii ask permission to go through the Roman province.

Ubi dē ēius **adventū** Helvētiī **certiōrēs** factī sunt, **lēgātōs** ad eum **mittunt** nōbilissimōs cīvitatīs, cūius lēgātīōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius **prīncipem** locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō **sine ūllō maleficiō** iter per
5 prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; **rogāre**, ut ēius **voluntāte** id sibi facere **liceat**.

To gain time, Caesar delays his reply.

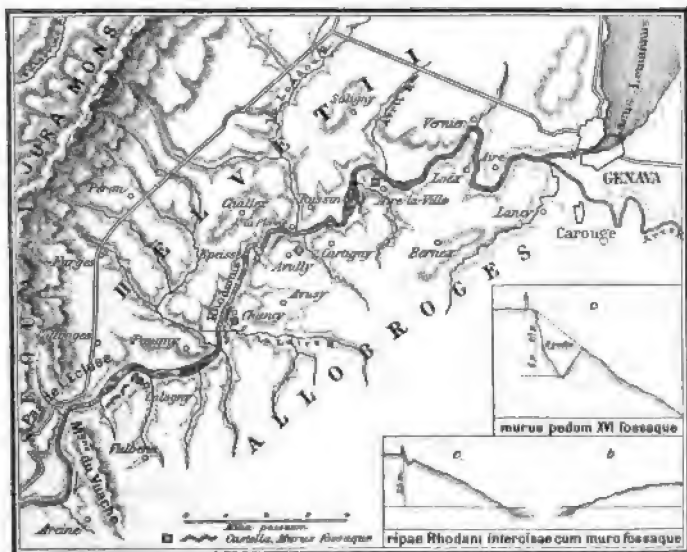
Caesar, quod **memoriā tenēbat**, L. Cassium cōnsulem **occīsum** exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs **pulsum** et **sub iugum** missum, **concēdendum** nōn **putābat**; neque homi-
10 nēs **inimicō** animō, datā **facultate** per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, **temperātūrōs** ab **iniuriā** et maleficiō exīstimābat. **Tamen**, ut **spatium intercēdere** posset, dūm milītēs, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātīs **respondit** diem sē ad **dēliberandum sūmptūrum**; **sī quid vellent**, ad **Id. April.**
15 **reverterentur**.

He fortifies the southern bank of the Rhone.

8. **Intereā** eā legiōne, quam sēcun habēbat, milītibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum **influit**, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, milia passuum
20 XVIII **mūrum** in **altitūdinem pedum** sēdecim **fossamque** **perducit**. Eō opere **perfectō** **praesidia dispōnit**, **castella** **commūnit**, quō facilius, sī sē **invitō** trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The request of the Helvetii is denied.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, **vēnit** et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, **negat**, sē mōre et **exemplō** populi Rōmānī posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōentur, prohibētūrum **ostendit**. Helvētīī eā



CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE.

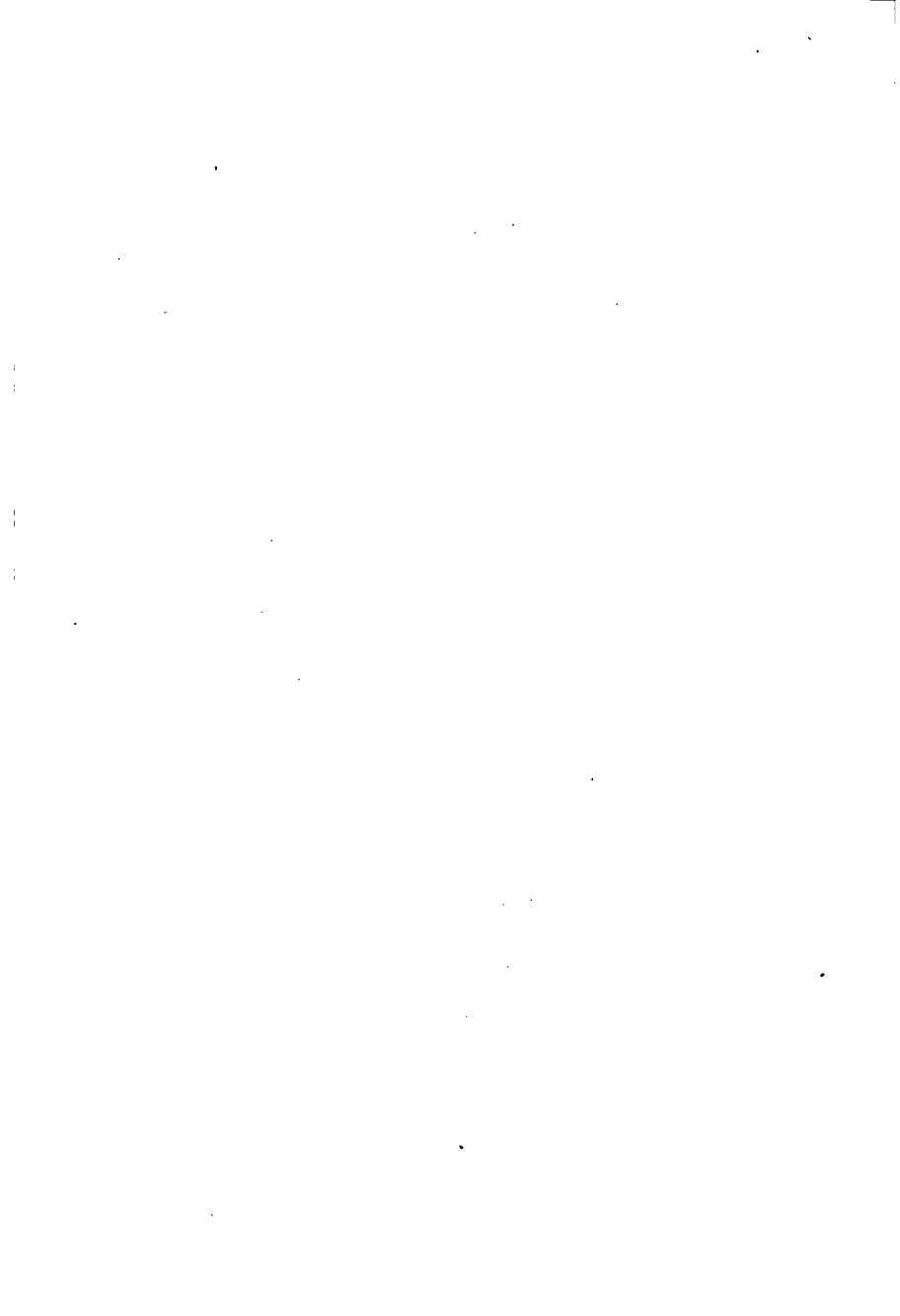
spē dēiecti, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, 5 aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā **minima** altitudō flūminis erat, nōn **numquam** interdiū, saepius **noctū**, sī **perrumpere** possent, cōnātī, operis **mūnitiōne** et militum **concursū** et **tēlis re-**
pulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

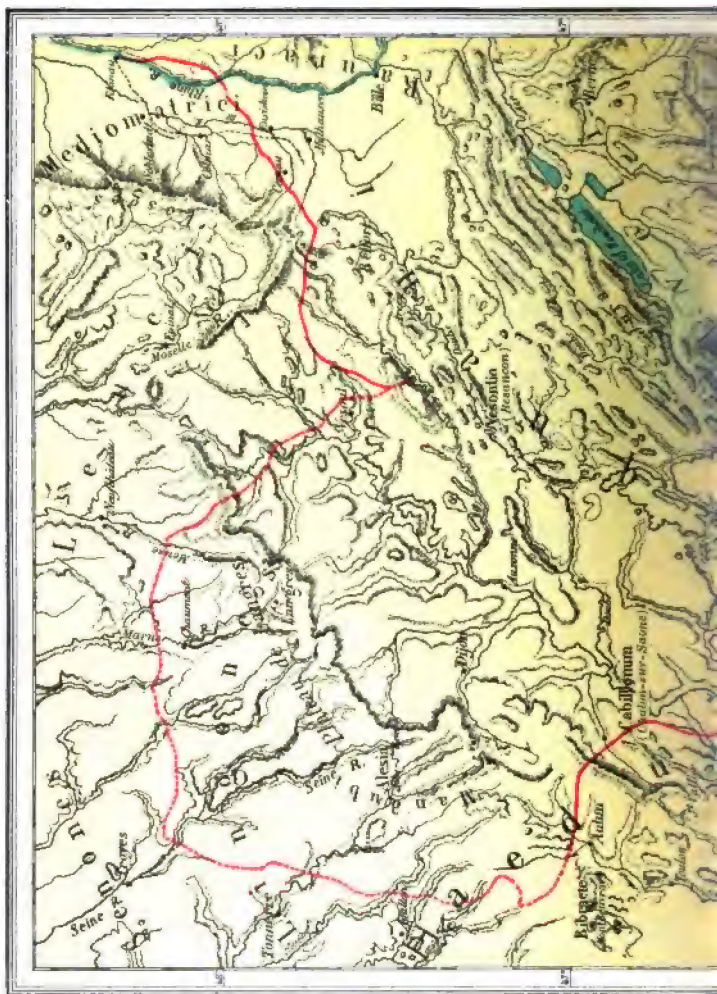
The Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their country.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs *via*, quā Sēquanīs invītīs **propter angustias** ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā **sponte** persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs **impetrārent**. Dumnorīx **gratiā** et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plurimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgni adductus **novis** rēbus **studēbat**, et quam plurimās cīvitātēs suō **beneficiō** habere **obstrictās** volēbat. 10 **Itaque** rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, **obsidēs**que utī. inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

Caesar resolves to prevent the migration of the Helvetii. He goes to Cisalpine Gaul to bring up additional troops.

10. Caesarī nūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per 15 agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, **intelligēbat** māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs **bellicōsōs**, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque **frū-** 20 **mentāriis** finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum **praeficit**; ipse in Italiam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque **ibi** legiōnēs **cōnscribit**, et trēs, quae **circum** Aquilēiam **hiemābant**, ex **hībernīs** **edūcit** et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Gal- 25 liam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs **quīnque** legiōnibus ire contendit.







On his return the mountain tribes attack him, without success.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graioceli et Caturigēs locis **superiōribus** occupātis itinere exercitum prohibere cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum **citeriōris** prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē **septimō** pervenit; **inde** in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt **extrā** prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum **primī**.

The Haedui and Allobroges appeal to him for protection against the Helvetii.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās **trādūxerant**, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs **populābantur**. Haedui, cum sē suaque ab eīs **dēfendere** nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum **auxilium**: **ita** sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō **meritōs** esse, ut **paene** in **cōnspectū** exercitūs nostrī agrī **vāstāri**, liberī eōrum in **servitūtem** abdūcī, 15 oppida **expūgnāri** nōn **dēbuerint**.

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, **necessariī** et **cōnsanguinei** Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē, **dēpopulātis** agris, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim **hostium** prohibere. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs **possessiōnesque** 20 habēbant, **fugā** sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et **dēmōstrant**, sibi **praeter** agrī solum **nihil** esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn **expectandum** sibi **statuit**, dum omnibus **fortūnis** sociōrum **cōnsūptis** in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

Caesar routs a division of the Helvetii at the river Saône.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, **incrēdibili** lēnitāte, ita ut oculis, in **utram** partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac **lintribus** iūctis trānsībant. Ubi per **ex-**



GALLIC SOLDIER, STANDARD-BEARER, AND OFFICER.

5 **plōrātōrēs** Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētīōs id flūmen trādūxisse, **quārtam** ferē partem **citrā** flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā **vigiliā** cum legiōnibus tribus ē **castris** profectus ad eam partem

pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs **impeditōs** et **inopināntēs adgressus** māgnam partem eōrum **concidit**; reliquī sēsē fugae **mandārun**t atque in proximās **silvās** **abdidērunt**. Is **pāgus** appellābātur Tigurinus; **nam** omnis cīvitās Helvētia in **quattuor** pāgōs dīvīsa est. 5

He thereby avenges the defeat of a Roman army.

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem **interfēcerat** et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita **sive cāsū** sive cōnsiliō **deōrum** **immortālium**, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiaē **insignem calamitātem** populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās per-10 solvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn **solum** **pūblicās**, **sed** etiam **prīvātās** iniūriās **ultus** est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis **avum**, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

He crosses the Saône. The Helvetii send a deputation to him.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut 15 **cōnsequi** posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum **cūrat** atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī **repentinō** ēius adventū **commōti**, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus **xx aegerrimē** cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō 20 princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico's speech.

Is ita cum Caesare **ēgit**: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluis-

set; **sin** bellō **persequi** **perseverāret**, **reminiscerētur** et **vet**
eris **incommodi** **populi** **Rōmānī** et **pristināe** **virtūtis** **Hel**
vētiōrum. Quod **imprōvisō** ūnum **pāgum** **adortus** **esset**,
 cum **eī**, **quī** **flūmen** **trānsissent**, **suīs** **auxilium** **ferre** **nōn**
 5 **possent**, **nē** **ob** **eam** **rem** **aut** **suae** **māgnopere** **virtūtī**
tribueret **aut** **ipsōs** **dēspiceret**. Sē **ita** **ā** **patribus** **māiōri**
busque **suīs** **didicisse**, **ut** **magis** **virtūte** **contenderent**, **quam**
dolō **aut** **insidiis** **nīterentur**. **Quārē** **nē** **committeret**, **ut**
 is **locus**, **ubi** **cōstitissent**, **ex** **calamitatē** **populi** **Rōmānī** **et**
 10 **interneciōne** **exercitūs** **nōmen** **caperet** **aut** **memoriam** **prō**
deret.

Caesar's reply.

14. Hīs **Caesar** **ita** **respondit**: **eō** **sibi** **minus** **dubitatīōnis**
dari, **quod** **eās** **rēs**, **quās** **lēgātī** **Helvētiī** **commemorāssent**,
memoriā **tenēret**, **atque** **eō** **gravius** **ferre**, **quō** **minus** **meritō**
 15 **populi** **Rōmānī** **accidissent**; **quī** **sī** **alicūius** **iniūriae** **sibi**
cōnsciū **fuisse**, **nōn** **fuisse** **difficile** **cavēre**; **sed** **eō** **dē**
ceptum, **quod** **neque** **commissum** **ā** **sē** **intellegeret**, **quārē**
timēret, **neque** **sine** **causā** **timendum** **putāret**. **Quod** **sī**
veteris **contumēliae** **oblivisci** **vellet**, **num** **etiam** **recentium**
 20 **iniūriarum**, **quod** **eō** **invītō** **iter** **per** **prōvinciam** **per** **vim**
temptāssent, **quod** **Haeduōs**, **quod** **Ambarrōs**, **quod** **Allo**
brogas **vexāssent**, **memoriam** **dēpōnere** **posse**? **Quod** **suā**
victōriā **tam** **insolenter** **glōriārentur**, **quodque** **tam** **diū** **sē**
impūne **iniūriās** **intulisse** **admirārentur**, **eōdem** **pertinēre**.
 25 **Cōnsuēsse** **enim** **deōs** **immortālēs**, **quō** **gravius** **hominēs** **ex**
commūtatiōne **rērum** **doleant**, **quōs** **prō** **scelere** **eōrum**
ulcisci **velint**, **hīs** **secundiōrēs** **interdum** **rēs** **et** **diūturniō**
rem **impūnitatem** **concēdere**.

He offers terms of peace. The Helvetii reject them.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae **polliceantur**, factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniuriīs, quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus **satisfaciant**, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.

5

Divicō respondit : ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis **insti-
tūtōs** esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nō dare cōsuērint ; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse **testem**. Hōc **respōnsō** datō **discessit**.

The Roman cavalry meets with a reverse. Caesar continues his pursuit of the enemy.

15. **Posterō** diē castra ex eō locō **movent**. Idem facit 10
Caesar **equitātumque** omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, **praemittit**, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī **cupīdius** novissimum **agmen in-
secūtī aliēnō** locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium com-
mittunt ; et **pauci** dē nostrīs **cadunt**. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod **quīngentis equitibus tantam** multitudinem equitum **prōpulerant**, **audācius** subsistere nō numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs **laccessere coepērunt**. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in **praesentiā** hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs **circiter xv** iter fēcērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nō **amplius** quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum **intere-**
resset.

25

The Haedui fail to furnish grain.

16. **Interim** **cotidiē** Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent **pūblicē** pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter **frīgora**, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, **posita** est, nōn **modo** frūmenta in agrīs **mātūra** nōn erant, **sed** nē **pābuli quidem** satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī **āverterant**, ā quibus discēdere **nōlēbat**. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; **cōnferri, comportāri, adesse** dicere.

Caesar censures their chiefs.

10 Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem **instāre**, quō diē frūmentum militibus **mētiri** oportēret, **convocātis** eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī **summō** magistrātui **praeerat**, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus **15 et vitae** necisque in suōs habet **potestātem**, graviter eōs **accūsāt**, quod, cum neque **emi** neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam **propinquis** hostibus, ab eīs nōn **sublevētur**; **praesertim** cum māgnā ex parte eōrum **precibus** adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam **grā- 20 vius**, quod sit dēstitūtus, **queritur**.

Liscus informs Caesar that one faction of the Haedui is hostile to the Romans.

17. **Tum dēmum** Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod **anteā** tacuerat, **prōpōnit**: esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum **valeat**, quī **privātim** **plūs** possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque

improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem **dēterrere**, nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia **perferre**; neque **dubitāre** dēbere, quīn, sī Helvētiōs **superāverint** Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs **libertātem** sint ēreptūrī. Ab isdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūtiārī; hōs ā sē **coērcērī** nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coactus Caesarī ēnūtiārit, intellegere sēse, **quantō** id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potu-10 erit, tacuisse.

Dumnorix the leader of the anti-Roman faction.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī **sentiēbat**; sed, quod plūribus **praesenti-**bus eās rēs **iactārī** nōlēbat, **celeriter concilium dimittit**, Liscum **retinet**. **Quaerit** ex sōlō ea, quae in **conventū** 15 dixerat. Dīcit **liberius** atque audācius.

His ambitions.

Eadem **sēcrētō** ab aliīs quaerit; **reperit** esse **vēra**; ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter **liberalitātem** grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs **portōria** reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum **20 vectīgālīa** parvō **pretiō redēpta** habēre, proptereā quod, illō **licente**, **contrā** licērī **audeat nēmō**. Hīs rēbus et suam rem **familiārem auxisse** et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū **semper alere** et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī, sed **25** etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius

potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illīc nōbi-
 lissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs
 uxōrem habere, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās
 nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāsse. Favere et cupere
 5 Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō
 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū
 potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum
 locum grātiaē atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat
 Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī
 10 venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed
 etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

His treachery in the cavalry skirmish.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proe-
 lium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum,
 initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius
 15 equitibus — nam equitātū, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī
 miserant, Dumnorix praeerat; — eōrum fugā reliquum
 esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar plans to have Dumnorix punished.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnītis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs
 certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum
 20 Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs
 cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitatīs,
 sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū
 Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur,
 quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem
 25 animadvertere iubēret.

He summons Diviciacus to an interview.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum **repūgnābat**, quod Dīviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum **studium**, summam in sē voluntātem, **ēgregiam** fidem, **iūstitiam**, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam, nē eius **supplicio** Dīviciāci animum offenderet, **verēbatur**. Itaque **priusquam quicquam** cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē **vocārī** iubet et, cotīdiānis **interpretibus remōtis**, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō **conloquitur**; **simul** commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in concilio Gallōrum 10 dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae **sēparatim** quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. **Petit** atque **hortatur**, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuāt, vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

Diviciacus intercedes for his brother.

20. Dīviciācus multis cum **lacrimis** Caesarem com-15 plexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid **gravius** in frātrem statueret: **scīre** sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus 20 **opibus** ac nervis nōn solum ad **minuendam** grātiā, sed paene ad **perniciem** suam ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et **existimātiōne vulgī** commoverī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn 25 suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Caesar pardons Dumnorix, with a warning.

Haec cum plūribus **verbis flēns** ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius **dextram** prēndit; **cōnsōlātus** rogat, finem **ōrandi** faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et **rei pūblicae** iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac
 5 precibus **condōnet**. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātre**m** **adhibet**; quae in eō **reprehendat**, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit; **monet**, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs **vitet**; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī **custōdēs**
 10 pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum **loquātur**, scīre possit.



IMPERATOR, LEGATUS, CENTURIO, LICTOR.

Caesar plans to attack the Helvetii.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte **cōnsēdisse** mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris

octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. **Renūntiātum** est, facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis **ascendere** iubet; 5 quid suī cōsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei **militāris peritissimus** habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et **postea** in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemit-10 titur.

The plan fails through the mistake of an officer.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus abesset, neque, ut **postea** ex **captivis comperit**, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius 15 equō **admissō** ad eum **accurrit**, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque **insignibus** cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum **collem subducit**, **aciem instruit**.

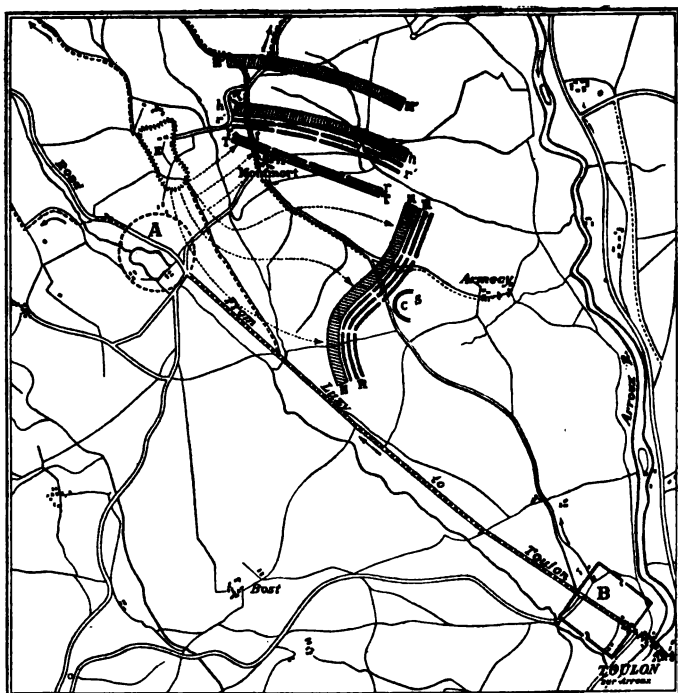
Labiēnus, ut erat ei **praeceptum** ā Caesare, nē proelium 20 committeret, **nisi** ipsius cōpiāe **prope** hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs **impetus** fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō **dēnique** diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōn-25 sidium **tīmōre** perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat **intervallō**, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

The Roman army turns towards Bibracte for supplies. The Helvetii harass the Roman rear-guard.

23. **Postridiē** eius diēi, quod omnīnō **biduum** supererat, cum exercituī frumentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei
5 **frumentariae prōspiciendum** existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūtiātur. Helvētiī, **seu** quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis, quod **pridiē**,
10 **superiōribus locis occupātis**, proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frumentariā **interclūdi** posse **cōfiderent**, **commūtātō** cōnsiliō atque itinere **conversō** nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacescere coepērunt.

Both sides are arrayed for battle. The Helvetii attack.

24. **Postquam** id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar
15 in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, quī **sustinēret** hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle **mediō triplicem** aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre **proximē** cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, ac
20 tōtum montem hominibus **complēri**, et intereā **sarcinās** in ūnum locum cōferri et eum ab eis, quī in superiōre acie cōstitērant, **mūniri** iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris secūtī **impedimenta** in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, **cōnfertissimā** acie **relectō** nostrō equitātū, **phalange** factā
25 sub prīmam nostram aciem **successērunt**.



Milia passuum
0 1 2

THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A. Helvetian camp on morning of battle.</p> <p>B. Roman camp on morning of battle.</p> <p>S. Summit of hill of Armedy.</p> <p>C. Intrenchment made by recruits.</p> <p>RR. Four veteran legions in line of battle.</p> <p>HH. Helvetii in first attack.</p> <p>H'H'. Helvetii in retreat.</p> <p>TT. Boii and Tulingi.</p> | <p>r'. Roman 1st and 2d lines facing Helvetii.</p> <p>rr. Roman 8d line facing Boii and Tulingi.</p> <p>hh. Helvetii renewing attack.</p> <p>E. Helvetian baggage in park.</p> <p>—— Roman line of march.</p> <p>----- Helvetian line of march.</p> |
|---|---|

A hard fight ensues.

25. Caesar, **primum** suō, **deinde** omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, **cohortātus** suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre **pīlis** missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgerunt. Eā **disiectā**, **gladiis** dēstrictis in eōs impetum 5 fecērunt. Gallis māgnō ad **pūgnam** erat impedimentō, quod plūribus eōrum **scūtis** unō ictū pilōrum **trānsfixis** et conligātis, cum **ferrum** sē **inflexisset**, neque ēvellere neque **sinistrā** impedītā satis **commodē** **pūgnāre** poterant, multū ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum **manū** **emittere** et nūdō corpore pūgnāre.

The Helvetii give way. They are reinforced and rally again.

Tandem **vulneribus** dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium **claudēbant** et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere **apertō** adgressi **circumvenire**, et id **cōnspicātī** Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, **rūsus** instāre et proelium **redintegrāre** coepērunt. Rōmānū conversa **signa bipertitō** intulērunt; **prīma** et **secunda** 20 **aciēs**, ut **victis** ac **submōtis** **resisteret**, **tertia**, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Their forces are finally crushed.

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque **ācrit** pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad 25

impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc
 tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad **vesperum** pūgnātum
 sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam
noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, propterea
 5 quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in
 nostrōs venientēs tēla cōiciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs
raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque **vul-**
nerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis cas-
 trisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque
 10 ūnus ē filiis captus est.

Caesar pursues the survivors.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfu-
 erunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt, nūllam partem
 noctis itinere **intermissō**; in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō
 pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter
 15 sepultūram occisōrum nostrī **trīduum morātī** eōs sequī nōn
 potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas **litterās nūntiōsque** mīsit,
 nē eōs frūmentō **nēve** aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent,
 sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō
 intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

They sue for peace.

20 27. Helvētīi omnium rērū **inopiā** adductī lēgātōs dē
dēditōne ad eum mīserunt. Quī cum eum in itinere
 convēnissent sēque ad pedēs **prōiēcissent** suppliciterque
 locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō
 tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, **pāruērunt.**
 25 Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, **servōs**, quī
 ad eōs **perfūgissent**, **poposcit.**

Six thousand flee, but are recaptured. Of the survivors, all but the Boii are sent back to their homes.

Dum ea **conquīruntur** et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs **trādītis** supplicio adficerentur, sive spē **salūtis** inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne **dēditiciōrum** suam fugam aut **occultārī** aut omnīnō **ignōrārī** posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum **ēgressi** ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contēderunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et **redūcerent**, sī sibi **pūrgātī** esse 10 vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, **perfugis** trādītis in dēditionem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus 15 **āmissis** domī nihil erat, quō **famem tolerārent**, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eis frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā māximē **ratione** fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, **vacāre**, nē propter bonitatem 20 agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs, petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, 25 quōsque postea in **parem** iūris libertātisque **condiciōnem**, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

29. In castris Helveticorum tabulae repertae sunt literis Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis **nominatim** ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim, 5 **quot pueri**, senes **mulieresque**. Quarum omnium rerum **summa** erat **capitum** Helveticorum milium cclxiii, Tulingorum milium xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiiii, Rauracorum xxiii, Boiorum xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia 10 ccclxviii. Eorum, qui domum **redierunt**, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, 30-54.*Caesar receives the congratulations of Gallic chiefs.*

30. Bello Helveticorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum 15 convenerunt: intellegere sese, **tametsi** pro veteribus Helveticorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello **repetisset**, tamen eam rem non minus ex **usu terrae** Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio **fortissimis** rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti 20 Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque **domicilio** ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia **opportunissimum** ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasque civitates **stipendiarias** haberent.

He sanctions their plan for a general council.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam **indicare** idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret; sēsē habere **quāsdam** rēs, quās ex **commūnī cōnsēnsū** ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē **permissā**, diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrādō, nē quis **ēnūntiāret**, nisi quibus com- 5 mūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

The chiefs return to Caesar and request a private interview.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, Idem prīncipēs cīvitātum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs 10 prōiēcērunt: nōn minus sē id contendere et **labōrāre**, nē ea, quae dixissent, **ēnūntiārentur**, quam utī ea, quae velent, impetrārent, proptereā quod, sī **ēnūntiātum** esset, summum in **cruciātum** sē ventūrōs vidērent.

Speech of Diviciacus. Two factions divide the Celtic states.

Settlement of Germans in Gaul.

Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtius 15 **factiōnēs** esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde **arcesserentur**. Hōrum **primō** circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; **post-** 20 **eāquam** agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs **feri** ac **barbarī** adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; **nunc** esse in Galliā ad c et xx mīlium numerum.

The downfall of the Haeduan faction.

Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs **semel** atque **iterum** armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque **frāctōs**, quī
 5 et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī **hospitiō** atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis et iūre iūrāndō civitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō **implōrātūrōs** neque **recūsā-**
 10 **tūrōs**, quōminūs perpetuō sub illōrum **dictiōne** atque imperiō essent. Unum sē esse ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum, quī addūci nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte **profūgis** et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium **postulātum**, quod
 15 sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

The Sequani are even more unfortunate.

Sed pēius **victōribus** Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, **rēx** Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset **optimus** tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset,
 20 et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs **dēcēdere** iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum **xxiiii** ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac **sēdēs parārentur**. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī
 25 Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc **cōnsuētūdinem** victūs cum illā comparandam.

Tyranny of Ariovistus. Only Caesar and the Roman people can save the Gauls.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crudēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, Iracundum, temerarium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrant, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortunamque, **quaecumque** accidat, **experiantur**.

Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quā dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctoritāte suā atque 15 exercitūs vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrere posse, nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

Oppression of the Sequani by Ariovistus.

32. Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī ad-20 erant, magnō fletū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius rei quae causa esset, **mirātus** ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed 25 in eādē tristitiā tacitī **permanēre**. Cum ab hīs saepius

quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciacus Haeduus respondit: hoc esse miseriores et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

Caesar sets forth his reasons for determining to check the settlement of the Germans in Gaul.

10 33. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curae futuram; magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hanc oratione habitam concilium dimisit.

15 Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret, in primis, quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio
20 populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur.

Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, 25 populo Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbrum Teutonum

que fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiā contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret; quibus rēbus quam **mātūrrimē occurrendum** putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi **spīritūs**, tantam **arrogantiam** sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

He summons Ariovistus to an interview. Ariovistus refuses to come.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium **utriusque conloquiō** dēligeret; velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātīōnī Ariovistus respondit: sī quid ipsī ā Caesare **opus** esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. **Praetereā** sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar **possidēret**, neque exercitum sine māgnō **commeātū** atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum **contrahere** posse. Sibi autem **mīrum** vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō **negōtī** esset.

Caesar makes certain demands of Ariovistus.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs **mandātīs** mittit: **quoniam** tantō suō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populūque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in conloquium venīre **invitātus** gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē discendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae

ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, **redderet**, Sēquanisque permetteret, ut, quōs illi habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret; **nēve** Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferret.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō **perpetuam** grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus 10 cēnuisset, utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod **commodō** rei publicae facere posset, Haeduōs ceterosque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn **neglētūrum**.

Ariovistus replies defiantly.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī, ut, 15 quī vicissent, eis, quōs vicissent, quem ad **modum** vellent, imperārent. Item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn **praescriberet**, quem ad modum suō iūre ūteretur, nōn oportere sē ā populō 20 Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri.

Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam temptāssent et armīs **congressi** ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs red- 25 ditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō **manērent**, quod convēnisset, **stipendiumque** quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent,

longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar **dēnūntiāret**, sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēcturum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contēdisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur; intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī, **exercitātissimī** in armīs, quī inter ānnōs 5 XIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

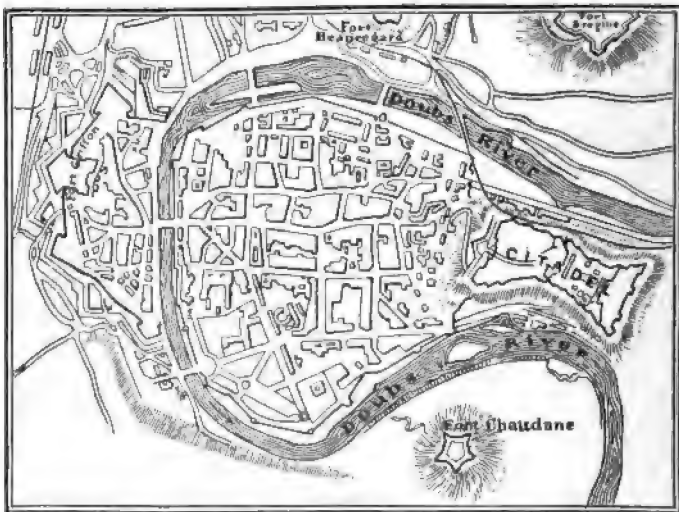
The Haedui and Treveri complain of German oppression. Caesar hastens against Ariovistus:

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam **trānsportātī** essent, finēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus qui-10 dem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs **centum** Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar **vehementer** commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, 15 sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē **coniūnxisset**, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contēndit.

He forestalls Ariovistus in the occupation of Vesontio.

38. Cum trīduī viam **prōcessisset**, nūntiātum est eī, 20 Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontionē, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar

existimābat. **Namque** omnium rerum, quae ad bellum
 ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque
 nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum
 bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis
 5 ut circinō **circumductum** paene tōtum oppidum **cingit**;
 reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum MDC,



BESANÇON (VESONTIO).

quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine,
 ita, ut rādicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flū-
 minis **contingant**. Hunc mūrus **circumdatus** arcem **efficit**
 10 et cum oppidō coniungit. **Hūc** Caesar māgnis **nocturnis**
 diurnisque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi
 praesidium conlocat.

Reports of German prowess cause a panic in the Roman army.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frumentariae commeātūque causā morātur, ex **percontātiōne** nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī **ingenti māgnitūdine** corporum Germānōs, incredibīlī virtūte atque **exercitātiōne** in armīs esse **praedicābant**, — saepenumērō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē **vultum** quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus **subitō** timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium **mentēs** animōsque **perturbāret**.

Hīc prīmum ortus est ā **tribūnis** militum, 10 **praefectis** reliquisque, quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat, ut eiūs voluntāte 15 discēdere liceret; nōn nullī **puḍōre** adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, **remanēbant**. Hī neque vultum **ingere** neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum 20 familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtis castris testāmenta ob-signābantur.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam ei, quī māgnum in castris ūsum habēbant, 25 militēs **centuriōnēs**que quīque equitatū praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum, quae in-



SIGNUM.

tercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē **supportārī** posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nullī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore **diotō audi-**
5 entēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar reproves his officers for their fears. Character of the enemy.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque **ōrdinum** ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus vehementer eōs **incūsāvit**: primum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam **adpetisse**; cūr hunc tam **temerē** quisquam ab **officiō** discessūrum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suis **postulātis** atque aequitāte condiciōnum **perspectā** eum neque suam
 10 neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum.

Quod sī **furōre** atque **āmentīā impulsus** bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? Aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius **diligentiā** dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et
 20 Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem **laudē** exercitus quam ipse **imperātor** meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servili **tumultū**, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac **disciplīna**, quam ā **nōbis** accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iudicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs **aliquamdīū inermēs** sine causā
 25 timuissent, hōs postea **armātōs** ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum sae-

penero Helvetiū congressi nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus **plērumque** superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commoveret, hōs, si quaerent, reperire posse, **diūturnitate** bellī **dēfatigātis** Gallis, 5 Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castris sē ac **palūdis** tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pūgnā et **dispersōs** subito adortum magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque **imperitōs** locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum 10 quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Fears are groundless. It is the business of subordinates to obey without question. The army will march on at once.

Qui suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae **simulatiōnem** angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, 15 Leucōs, Lingonēs **subministrāre**, iamque esse in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs **brevi** tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scire enim, quibus-20 cumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam **dēfuisse**, aut aliquō **facinore** compertō avāritiam esse convictam. Suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helvetiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in **longiōrem** diem conlātūrus fuisset, 25 repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset,

utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum solā **decimā** legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibi que eam **praetōriam cohortem** futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat māximē.

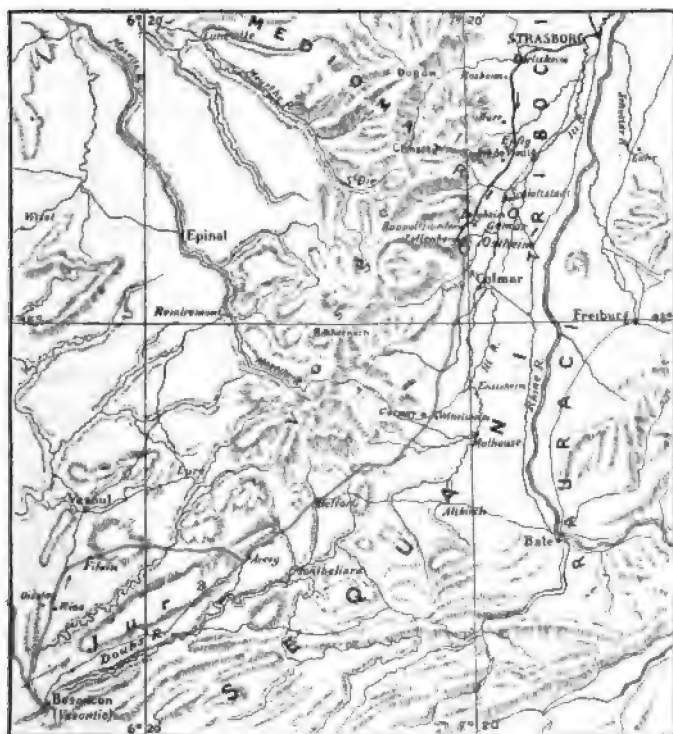
The soldiers apologize for their conduct. Caesar advances against Ariovistus.

41. Hāc orātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque **alacritās** et cupiditās belli gerendī inlāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per 10 tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parā-tissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnibus ēgerunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē neque **umquam** 15 dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere **exquisitō** per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius **quīnquāgintā** circuitū locīs apertīs 20 exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, pro-fectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia passuum IIII et xx abesse.

Ariovistus seeks an interview. Caesar consents, but takes precautions for his safety.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad 25 eum mittit: quod antea dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per



THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.

sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbitrābatur, cum id, quod antea petenti dēnegāssset, **ultrō** pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniebat, prō suis tantis populique 5 Rōmāni in eum beneficiis, cōgnitis suis postulātis, fore, uti **pertināciā** dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē **quintus**. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem **peditem** ad conloquium Caesar addūceret; verēri sē, nē per insi-10 diās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū veniret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.

Caesar, quod neque conloquium **interpositā** causā tolli volēbat neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis 15 Gallis equitibus **dētractis**, eō **legiōnāriōs** milites legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē cōfidebat, **impōnere**, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, si quid opus factō esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, nōn inridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: plūs, quam pollicitus esset, 20 Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

The interview. Caesar reminds Ariovistus of the favors conferred upon him.

43. **Plānitēs** erat magna et in eā **tumulus** terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus **aequum** ferē spatium ā castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad con-25 loquium vērērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equis **dēve-**

xerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur et prāter sē **dēnōs** ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

- 5 Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūs-que in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera **amplissima** missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī **docēbat**; illum, cum
10 neque **aditum** neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate suā ac senātūs ea **praemia** cōnsecūtum.

Friendship of the Romans and Haedui. Caesar renews his demands.

- Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae
15 senātūs cōsulta, **quotiēns** quamque honorifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil **dēperdere**, sed
20 grātiā, **dignitāte**, honore auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī **attulissent**, id eis ēripī quis patī posset?

- Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum Infer-
25 ret, obsidēs redderet, sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum **remittere** posset, **at** nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

Ariovistus defends his occupation of Gallic territory.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōsue- rint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eas omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō 10 proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce ūti velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit.

Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ornāmētō et praesidiō, 15 nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dediticiū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amicitiam, quam adpetierit.

He denies Roman authority in this part of Gaul.

Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, 20 id sē sui mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppūgnandae causā facere; eius rei testimoniū esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae 25 prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in

suās possēssiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, **sicut** illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn opor-
tēret, sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs
esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

*He makes light of the friendship of the Romans and Haedui,
and warns Caesar from the region.*

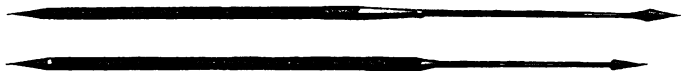
5 Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn
sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut
nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs
Rōmānīs auxiliū tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs **contentiōni-**
bus, quās Haedui sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent,
10 auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbere sē **suspiciārī**, **simulātā** Caesarem amicitīā, quem
exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī **opprimendī** causā habēre.
Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum **dēdūcat** ex hīs **regiōni-**
bus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum.
15 Quod sī eum interfēcērit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīn-
cipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, — id sē
ab ipsīs per eōrum nūtiōs compertum habēre, — quōrum
omnium grātiam atque amicitiam ēius morte redimere
posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et **liberam** possēssiōnem Gal-
20 liae sibi trādīdisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerā-
tūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius
labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.

Caesar asserts the priority of Roman authority in Gaul.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam **sententiam** dicta sunt,
quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: neque suam neque

populī Rōmānī cōnsuetūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs sociōs **dēsereret**, neque sē iudicāre, Galliam **potius** esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs a Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus **ignōvisset** neque in prōvinciam **redēgisset** neque 5 stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs **observārī** oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus utī voluisset. 10



PILA.

The German cavalry attacks the Roman cavalry. The conference breaks up.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, **lapidēs** tēlaque in nostrōs cōicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. 15 Nam **etsi** sine ullō periculō legiōnis dēlectae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dicī posset, eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elātum est, quā arrogantīā in conloquiō Ario-20 vistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs **interdixisset**, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs

conloquium dīrēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī **in**iectum est.

Ariovistus seeks another interview.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: velle sē dē eīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque
 5 perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēi Germānī retinēri nōn potuerant, quīn tēla in nostrōs cōicerent.
 10 Lēgātum ex suis sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum misūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat.

Caesar sends representatives. Ariovistus puts them in chains:

Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et humānitāte
 15 **adulēscētem**, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae **scientiam**, quā multā iam Ariovistus **longinquā** cōnsuetūdine utēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et unā M. Metium, quī hospitio Ariovistī utēbātur.

20 Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus **cōnspexisset**, exercitū suō praesente **conclāmāvit**: quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in **catēnās** coniēcit.

Ariovistus marches past Cæsar's camp. Cavalry skirmishes. The German style of cavalry battle.

48. Eodem diē castra **prōmōvit** et milibus passuum vi ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi præter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duobus **ultrā** eum castra fecit eō cōnsiliō, uti frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs sup- 5 portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs **continuōs** v Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās **prōdūxit** et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās nōn deesset.

Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris conti- 10 nuit, equestri proeliō cotidie contendit. **Genus** hoc erat pugnae, quō sē Germānī **exercuerant**. Equitum milia erant vi, **totidem** numero peditēs vclōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salutis causā dēlēgerant; cum his in proeliīs **versābantur**, ad eōs sē equitēs 15 recipiebant; hī, si quid erat **dūrius**, **concurrēbant**, si quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, **circumsistēbant**; si quō erat longius **prōdeundum** aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne **celeritās**, ut iubis sublevātī equōrum cursum **adaequārent**. 20

Caesar establishes a second camp. Ariovistus attacks it unsuccessfully.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, **ultrā** eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs dc ab his, castris **idōneum** locum dēlēgit acieque triplici instructā

ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs dc, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum xvi mīlia expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs **terrērent** et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō **sētius** Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītis castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra
10 redūxit.

Caesar offers battle. The Germans await the new moon.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, **paulumque** ā māiōribus castrīs **prōgressus** aciem instrūxit hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit,
15 circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dē-
mum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. Acrīter **utrimque usque** ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra
20 redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperīebat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuetūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae eōrum **sortibus** et vaticinātiōnibus dēclārarent,
25 utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset, necne; eās ita dicere: nōn esse **fās** Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam **lūnam** proeliō contendissent.

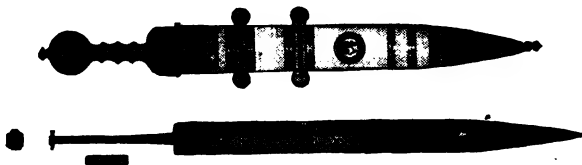
Caesar attacks the German camp. The Germans array for battle by tribes.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris, quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, **ālāriōs** omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudīne militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad **speciem** ālāriis ūteretur; ipse triplici instrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum **necessariō** Germānī suās cōpiās castris eduxerunt generatimque cōstituērunt paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs 10 circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuerunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentēs militēs **passis** manibus flentēs implorābant, nē sē in servitūtem Romānis trāderent.

A general engagement ensues. The Roman right wing victorious. The left in danger, reinforced by the reserves.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et 15 **quaestōrem** praefecit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtutis habēret; ipse ā dextrō **cornū**, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs signō datō impetum fecerunt, itaque hostēs **repente** celeriterque **prōcurrerunt**, ut 20 spatium pila in hostēs cōiciendī nōn darētur. Reiectis pilis **comminus** gladiis pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōsuetūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiatorum **excēperunt**. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in

phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehe-



GLADIUS.

menter multitudine suōrum nostram aciem **premēbant**. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs **subsidiō** mīsit.

The Germans are completely routed. Caesar's deputies are rescued.

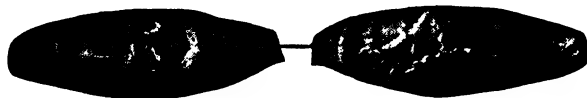
53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs **10 terga vertērunt** nec prius **fugere** dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter v, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfisī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus **inventis** sibi salūtem reperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam **dēligā-**
15 tam ad ripam **nactus** eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba **nātiōne**, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā **perit**; duae 20 filiae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum à custōdibus in fugā **trinis** catēnis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem **incidit**. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria **voluptātem** attulit, quod hominem **honestissimum** prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et **hospitem**, ereptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum videbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et **grātulatiōne** quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus **cōsultum** dīcēbat, utrum ignī **statim necārētur**, an in aliud tempus **reservārētur**; sortium beneficiō sē esse **incolumem**. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Caesar establishes his army in winter quarters and departs for Cisalpine Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt; insecūtī māgnū ex eis numerum occidērunt.

Caesar, ūnā **aestāte** duōbus māximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius **paulō**, quam tempus anni postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs **20** profectus est.



GLANS (used in the Civil War. Feri Pomp(eium)).

LIBER SECUNDUS.

WAR WITH THE BELGAE, 1-33.

The Belgae form a league. Their motives.

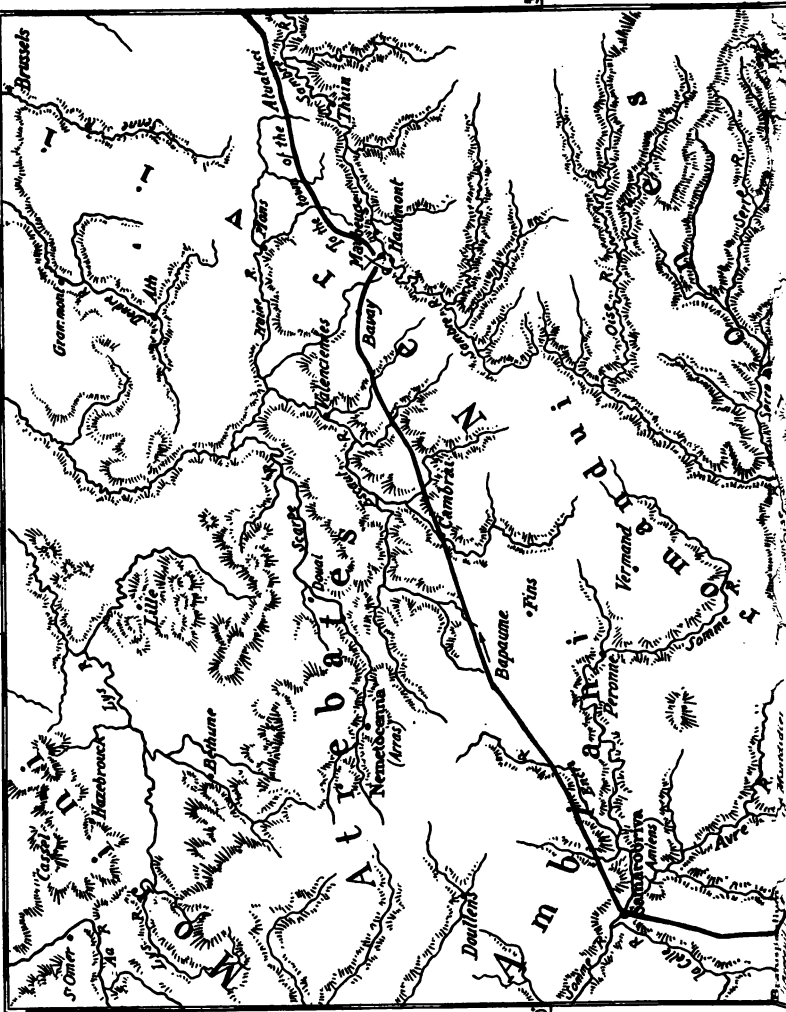
1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliä, ita uti **suprā** dēmōnstrāvimus, **crēbrī** ad eum **rūmōrēs** adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā
5 populum Rōmānum **coniūrāre** obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur, nē omni pācātā Galliä ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis **solicitārentur**, **partim** quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliä versārī nōluerant, ita
10 populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque **inveterāscere** in Galliä molestē ferēbant, partim quī **mōbilitāte** et **levitāte** animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nullis etiam, quod in Galliä ā potentiōribus atque eis, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, **vulgō** rēgna occupā-
15 bantur; quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

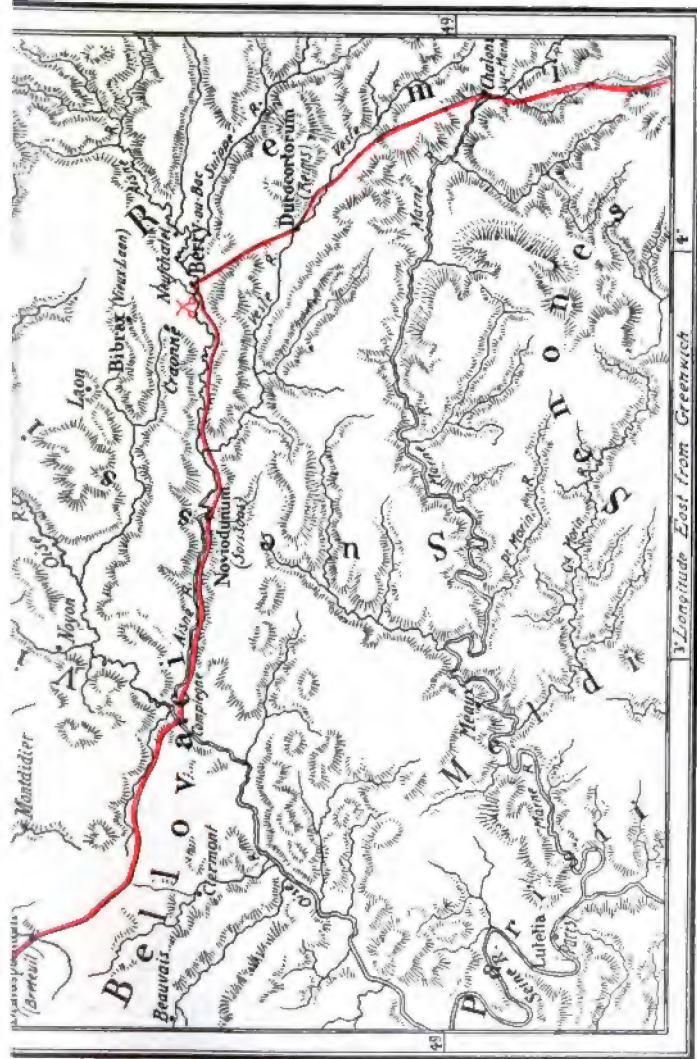
*Caesar enlists two new legions and advances against the Belgae.
The Remi ally themselves with him.*

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriøre Galliä novās cōscripsit et **initā**



3° Longitude East from Greenwich





CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium
lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse
inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus
reliquīsque Gallīs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae
apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certio- 5
rem faciant. Hī **cōstanter** omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs
cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō
dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur.
Rē frūmentāriā prōvisā castra movet diēbusque circiter
xv ad finēs Belgārum pervenit. 10

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium **opiniōne**
vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad
eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis,
mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, sē suaeque omnia in fidem atque
potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum 15
reliquīs Belgīs **cōnsēnāsse** neque contrā populum Rōmā-
num coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et **im-**
perāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque
rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Ger-
mānōsque, quī **cis** Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs con- 20
iūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē
Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī
eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium
ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potu-
erint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent. 25

Origin of the Belgae. Strength of the Belgian contingents.

4. Cum ab eīs quaereret, quae civitātēs quantaeque in
armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat:

plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque anti-
quitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse
Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, **expulisse**, sōlōsque
esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā ve-
5 xātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs **ingredi** pro-
hibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā
māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mili-
tārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre **explōrāta** Rēmī
10 dicēbant, propterea quod **propinquitātibus** adfinitātibus-
que coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in com-
mūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit,
cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte
et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōn-
15 ficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta
mīlia LX tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Sues-
sionēs suōs esse finitimōs; fīpēs lātissimōs ferācissimōs-
que agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā
etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum,
20 quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam
Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Gal-
bam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam
tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte **dēferri**; oppida habēre
numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nervīōs,
25 qui māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque ab-
sint; xv mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs x mīlia, Morinōs
xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Velio-
cassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuaticōs xviii mīlia;
Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine
30 Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

The Remi give hostages. The Haedui are directed to invade the country of the Bellovaci. Caesar encamps across the river Aisne.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus **liberāliterque** orātiōne **prōsecūtus** omnem senātum ad sē convenire prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs **diligenter** ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei **pūblicae** commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium **distinēri**, nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore **cōnfigendum** sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum **intrōdūxerint** et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. 10

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coactās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab eis, quōs miserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae **15** rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, **tūta** ab hostibus reddēbat et, comēātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis **20** Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum **sex** cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum **xii** vāllō fossāque **duodēviginti** pedum mūnīrī iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax, stronghold of the Remi.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum **viii**. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū **25** Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē **sustentātum**

est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum **oppugnātiō** est haec. Ubi, circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtīs **moenibus**, undique in mūrū lapidēs **iaci** coepti sunt mūrusque **dēfēnsōribus** nūdātus est, **testūdine** factā succēdunt mūrūque
 5 subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad
 10 Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi **submittātur**, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

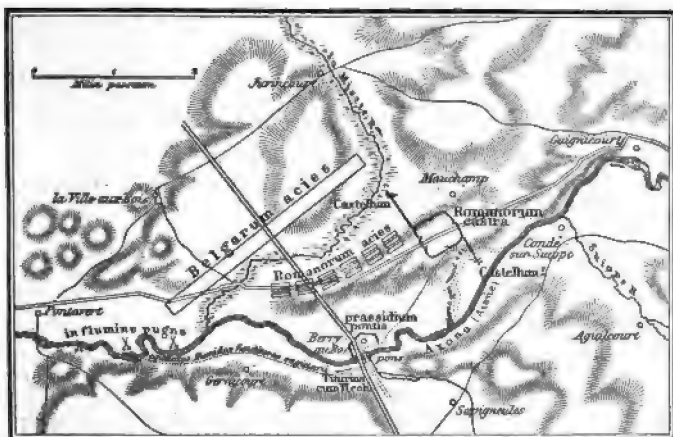
Caesar sends aid. The Belgae march against him.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiū ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas **sagittariōs** et **funditōrēs** Baleārēs subsidiō **oppidānis** mittit; quōrum
 15 adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium **prōpugnandī** accessit et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque **paulisper** apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiis-
 que, quō **adire** potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris om-
 20 nibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut **fūmō** atque ignibus **significābātur**, amplius milibus passuum VIII in lātitudinem patēbant.

Caesar tests his men in cavalry skirmishes. He prepares for battle. Description of the ground.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinē hostiū et
 25 propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre

statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī auderent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitie ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum



THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE.

locī aciēs instructa occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris **dēlectūs** habēbat et in **fronte lēniter** fastīgātus paulatim ad plānitie redibat, ab utrōque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum 10 cccc, et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique **tormenta** conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiō-

nibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidio dūci possent, reliquās vi legiōnēs prō castris in acie cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpias ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

The Belgae are repulsed in crossing the river.

- 5 9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent, hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut impeditōs adgrederentur, parātī in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duās acies contendebātur.
- 10 Ubi neutri trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra redūxit. Hostēs **prōtinus** ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum cōpiarum trādūcere cōnāti sunt
- 15 eō cōsilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent, si minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui māgnō nōbis ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.
- 20 10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitatum et **levis armātūrae** Numidās, funditorēs sagittariōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressi māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum
- 25 corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine telōrum reppulērunt primōsque, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.



1. FUNDITOR. 2. LEVIS ARMATURAE PEDES. 3. LEGIONARIUS MILITES.

They decide to retire to their respective territories.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine transeundō spem sē **fefellisse** intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria **dēficere** coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt, optimum esse domum suam quemque 5 revertī, et quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et **domesticis** cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs 10 dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bello-

vacōrum **adpropinquāre** cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

Retreat of the Belgae. The Roman cavalry is sent in pursuit and inflicts great loss.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum **strepitū**
 5 ac tumultū castris ēgressī nullō certō ordine neque imperiō,
 cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum
 pervenire **properāret**, fēcerunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae pro-
 fectiō viderētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per **speculātōrēs**
 cōgnitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent,
 10 nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris
 continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explorātōribus,
 omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,
 praemisit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam
 lēgātōs praefecit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus
 15 tribus **subsequī** iussit.

Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī
 māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt,
 cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsiste-
 rent **fortiterque** impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent,
 20 **priōrēs**, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā ne-
 cessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, **exaudītō olāmōre**
 perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium
 pōnerent. Ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multi-
 tudinem nostrī interfecērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium;
 25 sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut
 erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Caesar attacks Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender.

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex **terrōre** ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod **vacuum** ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnitīs **vīneās** agere, quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. 10 Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, **aggere** iactō **turribus**que cōstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum pērmōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur, impetrant. 15

Caesar marches into the country of the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs primīs cīvitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō 20 Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum v abesset, omnēs maiōrēs **nātū** ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.



GALLIC WALL.

Caesar receives them under his protection, out of deference to the Haedui. The Ambiani also submit.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus—nam post **discessum** Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat—facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis prīncipibus, quī dicerent, Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs defēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsili prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitāti intulissent,

in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā **clēmēntiā** ac **mānsuētūdine** in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multītūdine praestābat, de obsidēs 10 poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine **morā dēdidērunt**.

Character of the Nervii. Caesar invades their country.

They encamp south of the river Sambre.

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: nūl- 15 lum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī **vini** reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; **inceptāre** atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō 20 Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius 25 mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre ūnā

cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis — nam his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur; — expectari etiam ab eis Atuaticorum copias atque esse in itinere; mulieres, qui que per aetatem ad pugnam inutilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniecisse, quō propter paludes exercitui aditus nōn esset.

Caesar selects a site for a camp. The Nervii plan to surprise his troops.

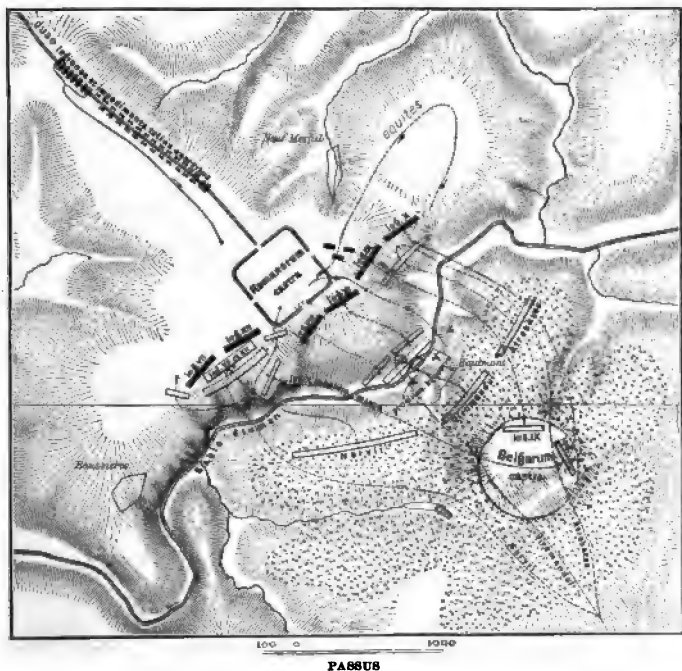
17. His rebus cognitīs exploratōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, qui locum castris idoneum deligant. Cum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem
10 secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum diērum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitū perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt, inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse
15 quicquam negoti, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc subsarcinis adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque directis futurum, ut reliquae contra consistere nōn auderent.

Adiuvabat etiam eorum consilium, qui rem deferēbant,
20 quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent, — neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copias, — quō facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causā ad eos venissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis, et rubis sentibusque
25 interiectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae saepes munimentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrari, sed nē perspicī

quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōsiliū Nervī existimāvērunt.

Description of the battle-ground.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs delēgerant. Collis ab summō aequaliter dēclivis ad flū-



THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII.

men Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et

contrārius, passūs circiter cc infimus apertus, ab superiore parte **silvestris**, ut nō facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae **stationēs** equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

Arrangement of the Roman line of march. The enemy beat back the Roman cavalry and attack the men at work on the camp.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis **aliter** sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā Caesar vi legiōnēs expeditās 10 dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant.

Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen 15 trāsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinebant, **cēdentēs** insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs vi, quae 20 primae vēnerant, opere **dimēnsō** castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis, qui in silvis abditī **latēbant**, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, sub 25 itō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incredibilī celeritāte ad flūmen **dēcucurrērunt**, ut paene unō

tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Hasty arrangements. Value of discipline and intelligence in an emergency.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum 5
prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere **revocandī** militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem tem-10
poris **brevitās** et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs **difficultātibus** duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nō minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singu-15
lisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs **vetuerat**. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, **administrābant**.

Caesar encourages his troops at various points. The men fall into line as best they can.

21. Caesar necessariīs rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs 20
militēs, quam in partem **fors obtulit**, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam **dēvēnit**. Militēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent **neu** perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum

fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum **adigi** posset, proeli committendī sīgnū dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit
 5 **exiguitās** hostiumque tam parātus ad **dimicandum** animus, ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in
 10 quaerendīs suis pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.



GALEA.

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectus-
 que collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei mīlītāris
 ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum **dīversae** legiōnēs aliae
 aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque **dēnsissimis**,
 15 ut ante-dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs **prōspectus** impedīrē-
 tur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque, quid in quāque
 parte opus esset, **prōvidērī** neque ab ūnō omnia imperia

administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum **iniquitāte** fortūnæ quoque **ēventūs** varī sequēbantur.

Various stages of the infantry battle.

23. Legiōnis **nōnæ** et decimæ milītēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstitēbant, pilīs ēmissīs cursū ac **lassitudīne** **exanimātōs** vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs — nam hīs 5 ea pars obvenerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen **compulērunt** et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūsus resistentēs hostēs, redintegrātō proeliō, in fugam 10 coniecērunt.

Item aliā in parte diversæ duæ legiōnēs, **undecima** et **octāva**, prōfligātīs Viromandūis, quibuscum erant congressæ, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs **proeliābantur**. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte 15 nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō **duodecima** et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, 20 pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The Roman cavalry and light-armed troops flee again. The cavalry of the Treveri depart for home and report a Roman defeat.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent,

adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rŭrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent
5 et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs



1. SIGNIFERI. 2. TUBICEN. 3. BUCINATOR.

fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor **fremitus**que oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum 10 inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est **singulāris**, quī auxili

causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multi-
tūdine hostium castra nostra complēri, legiōnēs premī et
paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs,
Numidās dispersōs **dissipātōs**que in omnēs partēs fugere
vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; 5
Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque
eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

*Caesar rallies the 12th legion, stationed on the right wing. The
enemy are checked.*

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum
cornū profectus, ubi suōs **urgērī** sīgnisque in ūnum locum
conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs 10
ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis
omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō
āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus
aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō
Baculō, fortissimō **virō**, multis gravibusque vulneribus 15
cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse
tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō
excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre
locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre
et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium, 20
quod submitti posset, scūtō ab novissimis mīlitī dētractō,
quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prō-
cessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs
cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna inferre et manipulōs laxāre
iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū 25
spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē

quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis
rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus
tardātus est.

The 12th and 7th legions are rearranged for mutual protection.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōn-
stiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum
monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et con-
versa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs
aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent, nē āversī ab
hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius
10 pūgnāre coepērunt.

The rear-guard and the 10th legion come to the rescue.

Interim militēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō
agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō,
cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciē-
bantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō
15 superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōn-
spicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī
cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset
quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor
versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī
20 fēcērunt.

The tide of battle turns decisively.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta,
ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuisse,
scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs

hostēs cōspiciātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlerent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs milītibz **praeferrent**.

Bravery of the Gauls.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtutem 5 praestitērunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus **insisterent** atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent, hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs cōicerent et pīla **intercepta** remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis 10 hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

*The non-combatants of the Nervii send envoys to beg for mercy.
Caesar spares them.*

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem **gente** 15 ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in **aestuāria** ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxērāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribz nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt 20 sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitatīs calamitātē ex dc ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus lx vix ad d, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōnservāvit suisque 25

fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et finitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Atuatuaci gather in a strongly fortified town.

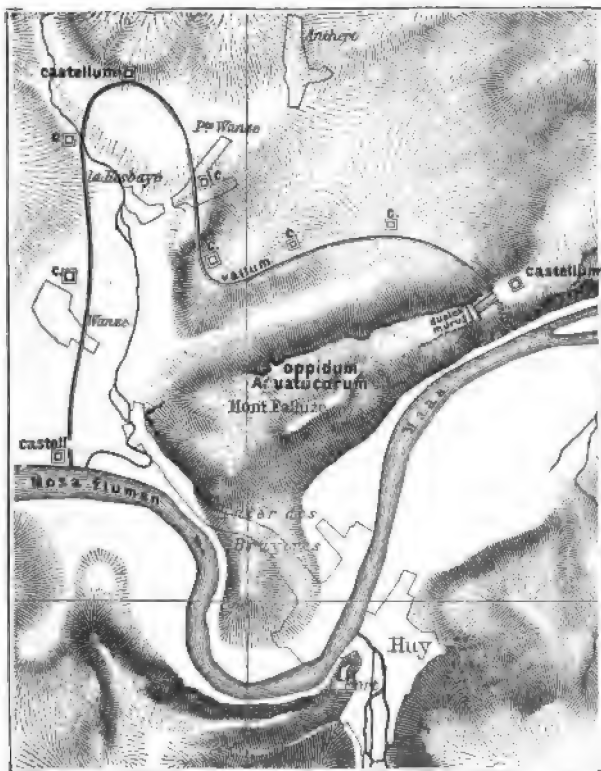
29. Atuatuaci, dē quibus suprà dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venirent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērent; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum **ēgregiē** nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter **acclivis** aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius 10 pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum **duplici** altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī **ponderis saxa** et **praeacūtās trabēs** in mūrō conlocābant.

Their origin.

Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis 15 impedimentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs **custōdiam** ex suis ac praesidium vi mīlia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs **exagitātī**, cum **aliās** bellum inferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōn- 20 sēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They at first jeer at the Roman siege-works.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant, **parvulisque** proeliis cum



Passus.

OPPIDUM ATUATICORUM.

nostris contendebant; postea vallō pedum XII, in circuitū XV milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis actis, aggere **extructō**, turrim **procul** cōstitui viderunt, primum inridere ex mūrō atque increpitare vōcibus, quod tanta **māchinātiō** a tantō spatiō Institueretur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus, praesertim hominēs **tantulae** statūrae, — nam plerumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitās nostra contemptui est, — tanti **oneris** turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōfiderent?

Frightened by the advance of the tower, they offer to surrender, but beg to retain their arms.

31. Ubi verō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs viderunt, novā atque **inūsitatā** speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn sē existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac **dēprecārī**: si forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis audirent, statuisset, Atuātucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidere; a quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, si in eum cāsum dēducerentur, **quamvis** fortunam a populō Rōmānō pati quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

Their request is denied, but they are promised protection against their neighbors. They secretly retain part of their arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: sē magis cōsuētūdine



TESTUDO ARIETARIA.

suā quam meritō eōrum
cīvitātem cōservātūrum,
sī, prius quam mūrū ariēs
attigisset, sē dēdidissent;
sed dēditionis nūllam esse
condiciōnem nisi armīs

trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nervīis fēcisset, factūrum finitīmisque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī
10 iniūriam inferrent.

Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequā-
15 rent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

They treacherously attack the Romans at night.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus
20 iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae
25 subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellībūs indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mū-

nātiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō **ēruptiōnem** fecērunt.

They are repulsed. Caesar sells them into slavery.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, Ignibus **significā-tiōne** factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursus est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācrius est, ut ā viris fortibus in 5 extrēmā spē salutis iniquo locō contrā eōs, quī ex vallō turribusque tela iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in unā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret. Occisīs ad hominum milibus IIII, reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt.

Postridiē eius diēi refractis portis, cum iam dēfenderet 10 nēmō, atque **intrōmissis** militibus nostris sectiōnem eius oppidi **ūniversam** Caesar **vēdidit**. Ab eis, quī ēmerant, caputū numerus ad eum relātus est milium LIII.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN, 34-35.

Publius Crassus reports the submission of certain states on the northwest coast.

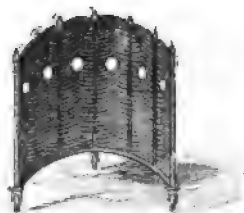
34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne unā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esu- 15 viōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt **maritimae** cīvitātēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eas cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redactās.

Tribes across the Rhine send deputations to Caesar. He establishes his army in winter quarters and proceeds to Cisalpine Gaul.

35. His rēbus gestis, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius 20 bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eis nātiōnibus,

quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē
5 revertī iussit.

Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque
rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xv **supplicātiō dēcrēta** est,
10 quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

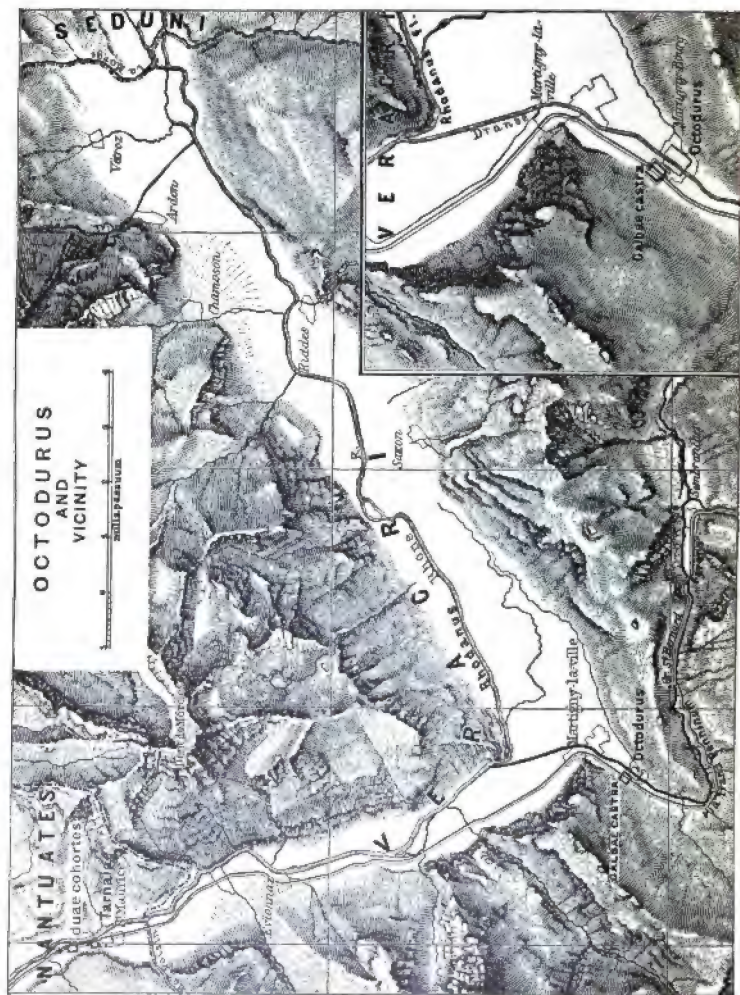


PLUTEI.

12

13

14



LIBER TERTIUS.

EVENTS AT OCTODURUS, 1-6.

Servius Galba is sent to open an important road across the Alps.

He decides to winter at Octodurus. Hostility of the natives.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, 5 quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātorēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, si opus esse arbitrāretur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret.

Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliis factis castellisque com-10 plūribus eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle nōn māgnā adiectā 15 plānitie altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine divideretur, alteram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossaque mūnivit. 20

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent, frumentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorā-

tōrēs certior factus est, ex eā parte vicī, quam Gallis concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

- 5 Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Galli belli **renovandī** legiōnisque opprimendae cōsilium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam **plēnissimam**, detractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus **singillatim**, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter
10 **paucitātem** dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla cōicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn
15 solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae **adiungere** sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Galba calls a council of war. It is decided to defend the camp.

3. His nūntiis acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē
20 frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditione factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset ac iam
25 omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modī sententiae dicē-

bantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptione facta isdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salutem contenderent. Maiorī tamen parti placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōsiliō interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

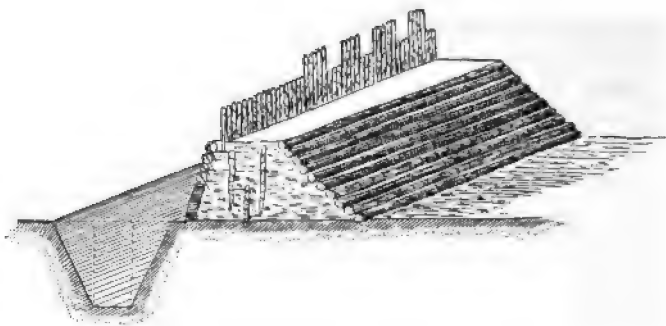
5

The enemy attack with greatly superior numbers.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus, quās cōstituissent, conlocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum cōicere. Nostrī primō **integrīs** viribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ullum **frūstrā** tēlum ex 10 locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfensōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs viribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fieri 15 nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē **sauciō** quidem eius locī, ubi cōstitērat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

The Romans determine upon a sally.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pūgnārētur ac nōn solum virēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque 20 hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum **scindere** et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī **pili** centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tri- 25



CAMP RAMPART AND DITCH.

būnus mīlitum, vir et cōsilī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre **reficerent**, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The movement is successful. Galba returns to the Transalpine province.

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs 10 ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī, quid fieret, neque sui **colligendī** hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum. vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum 15 ad castra vēnisse **cōnstābat**, plūs tertiā parte interfectā

reliquos perterritos in fugam cōiciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque **exūtis** sē intrā mūnitiōēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre 5 Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus viderat, māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vicī aedificiis incēnsis in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nullō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante 10 incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perduxit ibique hiemāvit.

RISE OF THE VENETI, 7-16.

Publius Crassus levies upon the coast tribes for supplies.

7. His rēbus gestis, cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātis Belgis, expulsis Germānis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita initā **hieme** 15 in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōēs adire et regiōēs cōgnōscere volēbat, **subitum** bellum in Galliā **coortum** est.

Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus **mare** Ōceanum in Andibus 20 hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectos tribūnosque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frūmentī causā dīmisit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esviōs, L. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs. 25

Description of the Veneti. They form a league with neighboring states, detain Roman officers, and demand back their hostages.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs **antecēdunt**, et in māgnō impetū maris **vāstī** atque apertī, paucīs **portibus** interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent **vectigālēs**.

Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Silī atque Velānī, quod
10 per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, **recuperātūrōs** existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentinā cōnsilia — eādē dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē con-
15 iūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortunae **exitum** esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā libertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem pērfere mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam
20 sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Cras-
sum mittunt: sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar orders a fleet built on the river Loire. The Veneti and allies make diligent preparations. They rely much upon their naval strength.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās **aedifi-**

cārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, **nautās gubernātōrēs**que comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. 5

Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīssissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculi bellum 10 parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod **multum** nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis, **nāvigātiōnem** impeditam propter **inscientiam** locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs 15 exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, 20 **insulās** nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclusō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant.

Hīs initis cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem 25 primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt. 26

In spite of all difficulties Caesar determines to subdue them.

10. Erant hae difficultatēs bellī gerendī, quās suprà ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, **rebelliō** facta post dēditionem, **dēfectiō** datīs obsidibus, **tot** cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in primīs, nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret, omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbilit̄er celeriterque **excitārī**, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem
10 servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius **distribuendū** exercitum putāvit.

To prevent a general uprising Caesar sends troops to important points in Gaul. Decimus Brutus is placed in command of the fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic
15 mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci
20 iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscēntem **classī** Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās
25 ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus

convenire iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum possit, in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

Location of the towns of the Veneti. Difficulty of attacking them.

12. Erant eius modi ferē **sītūs** oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē **aestus** incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuenta aestū nāvēs in vadīs **adfectārentur**. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur. Ac si quandō magnitudine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī **aggere** ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātis, dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium **adpulsō**, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem **opportunitātibus** loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs **tempestātibus** dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, **rāris** ac prope nullis portibus difficultās nāvigandī.

The naval equipment of the Veneti.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō **plāniōrēs** quam nostrārū nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae **admodum** ērēctae atque item **puppēs**, ad magnitudinem **flūctuum** tempestātumque **accommodātae**; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbre ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus

in altitudinem trabibus, cōfixa clāvis **ferreis** digitī pollicis crassitudine; **ancorae** prō **fūnibus** ferreis catēnis **revinctae**; pellēs prō **vēlis** alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae, hae sive propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs Inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vērī **simile**, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs **ventōrum** sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat, ut unā celeritāte et pulsū **rēmōrum** praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent **aptiōra** et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eis nostrae **rōstrō nocēre** poterant, — tanta in eis erat **fīrmitūdō**, — neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigebātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdebāt, ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent **tūtius** et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The enemy escape by sea when their towns are taken. The Roman fleet arrives. The naval battle.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellexit, frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eis nocērī posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ōrnatissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō,



Milla Passuum.

MAP OF THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI.

quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātis, tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus 5 superābat, ut neque ex Inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Una erat māgnō ūsuī rēs **praeeparāta** ā nostrīs, **falcēs** praeacūtāe insertae adfixaeque **longuriis**, nōn absimili **fōrmā mūrālium** falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī **antemnās** 10 ad mālōs dēstinābant, **comprehēnsi** adductique erant, **nāvigio**

FALX MURALIS.

rēmīs incitātō prae-rumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō 15 **concidēbant**, ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlīs **armāmentis**que cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat **certāmen** positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis 20 exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nullum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

Defeat of the Veneti.

15. Dēiectis, ut diximus, antemnīs, cum singulās **binae** 25 ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus

nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent.

5 Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

They surrender and are severely punished.

10 16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubique fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs

15 reliquī neque, quō sē reciperent, neque, quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaeque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī

20 senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

SABINUS AMONG THE VENELLI, 17-19.

The Venelli declare War. Sabinus proceeds cautiously.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum eīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovix ac sum-

mam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae defēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulerci Eburovices Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod **auctōrēs** bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī **cultūrā** et cotidiānō labōre **sēvocābat**.

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat, 10 cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in **contemptiōnem** Sabinus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris prae- 15 buit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat. 20

The enemy are induced to attack the Roman camp.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eis, quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnis praemiis **pollicitātiōnibusque** persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fieri velit, edocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem 25 Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur, docet, neque longius abesse, quā

proximā nocte Sabīnus **clam** ex castris exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs, **occāsiōnem** negōti **bene** gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra iri
5 oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur; superiorū diērum Sabīni **cūctātiō**, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eīs erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter homi-
10 nēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimit-
tunt quam ab eīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti, ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis, quibus fossās
15 Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

*The Romans make a sortie and defeat them. They submit to
Sabinus.*

19. Locus erat castrōrum editus et paulātim ab **imō** acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnē-
20 runt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subito duābus portis ēruptionem fierī iubet. Factum est oportūnitāte locī, hostium īnsientiā ac defatīgātiōne, virtūte militum et superiorū pūgnārū exercitātiōne, ut nē
25 prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integris vīribus milites nostrī cōn-
secūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs

equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquē-
runt. Sic tūc tempore et dē **nāvālī** pūgnā Sabīnus et dē
Sabīnī victoriā Caesar est certior factus, civitatēque
omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella
suscipienda Gallōrum **alacer** ac prōmptus est animus, sic **5**
mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs ferendās mēns
eōrum est.

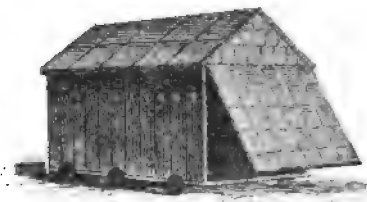
CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA, 20-27.

Crassus undertakes the conquest of Aquitania.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitā-
niam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et
regiōnum lātitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertiā 10
parte Galliae est **aestimanda**, cum intellexeret, in eīs locīs
sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius
Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset atque
unde L. Mānlius prōcōsul impedimentīs āmissīs profū-
gisset, nōn **mediocrem** sibi diligentiam adhibendam intel- 15
legēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitā-
tūque comparātō, multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā
et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prō-
vinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminatim **ēvocātis**, in
Sotiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū 20
cōgnitō Sotiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coactīs equitātūque, quō
plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī
prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde, equitātū
suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs
cōpiās, quas in **convalle** in insidiīs conlocāverant, osten- 25
dērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

Defeat and Surrender of the Sotiates.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācritē, cum Sotiātēs supēriōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtū Aquitāniae



VINEA.

salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātore et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulescentulō duce efficere possent, perspicere cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsq̄ ēgit. Illi aliās ēruptione temptātā, 15 aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs, — cūius rei sunt longē perītissimī Aquitānī, proptereā quod multis locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt, — ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut 20 recīpiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī faciunt.

Sortie of Adiatunnus.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtiis, quōs illi soldūriōs ap- 25 pellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodīs unā cum eīs fruantur, quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsū

unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōis sublātō, cum ad arma milītēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādē dēditiōis condiciōe ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

The Aquitani summon aid from Spain. They adopt Roman military methods. Crassus determines to force a battle.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnoverant, lēgātōs quōque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitudīne bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō ei dēliguntur, quī unā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habere exīstīmābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstītuunt.

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi

supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūctandū existināvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit.

The Aquitani try to avoid a decisive battle for the present.

5 24. Primā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōsiliī caperent, exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbi-
10 trābantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine vulnere victōriā potiri, et sī propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs,
15 sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium
20 castra contendit.

Crassus attacks their camp.

25 25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs et ad ag-
25 gerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter

ac nōn **timidē** pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs **circumitiis** hostium castris Crassō renūntiāverunt, nōn eādē esse diligentia ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habere.

*The Roman cavalry effects an entrance at the rear of the camp.
The Aquitani are routed.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnis 5 praemiis pollicitatiōibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis eis cohortibus, quae praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque 10 ad pūgnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quās dīximus, mūnitiōnēs pervēnerunt atque hīs prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidēri aut, quid rei gereretur, cōgnōsci posset. Tum vērō, clāmōre ab eā parte auditō, nostrī redintegrātis vīribus, quod plērumque 15 in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus, ex milium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā 20 Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian states submit to Crassus.

27. Hāc auditā pūgnā māxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō

fu^rerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiani, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae **ultimae** nātiōnēs anni tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems **suberat**, id facere neglēxerunt.

THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 28-29.

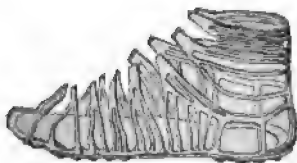
Caesar leads an expedition against the Morini and Menapii.

5 **28.** Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē
10 aliā ratiōne ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, **continentēs**que silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnis-
15 set castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae evolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fecērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt et, complūribus interfectis, longius impedi-
20 tiōribus locis secūti paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

The enemy avoid a decisive battle. Caesar is compelled to abandon the expedition. The Roman army goes into winter quarters.

29. Reliquis **deinceps** diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** instituit, et nē quis inermibus **imprudentibus**que militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam **māteriam**, quae

erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae, 5 utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum 10 fēcerant, in hibernīs conlocāvit.



CALIGA.

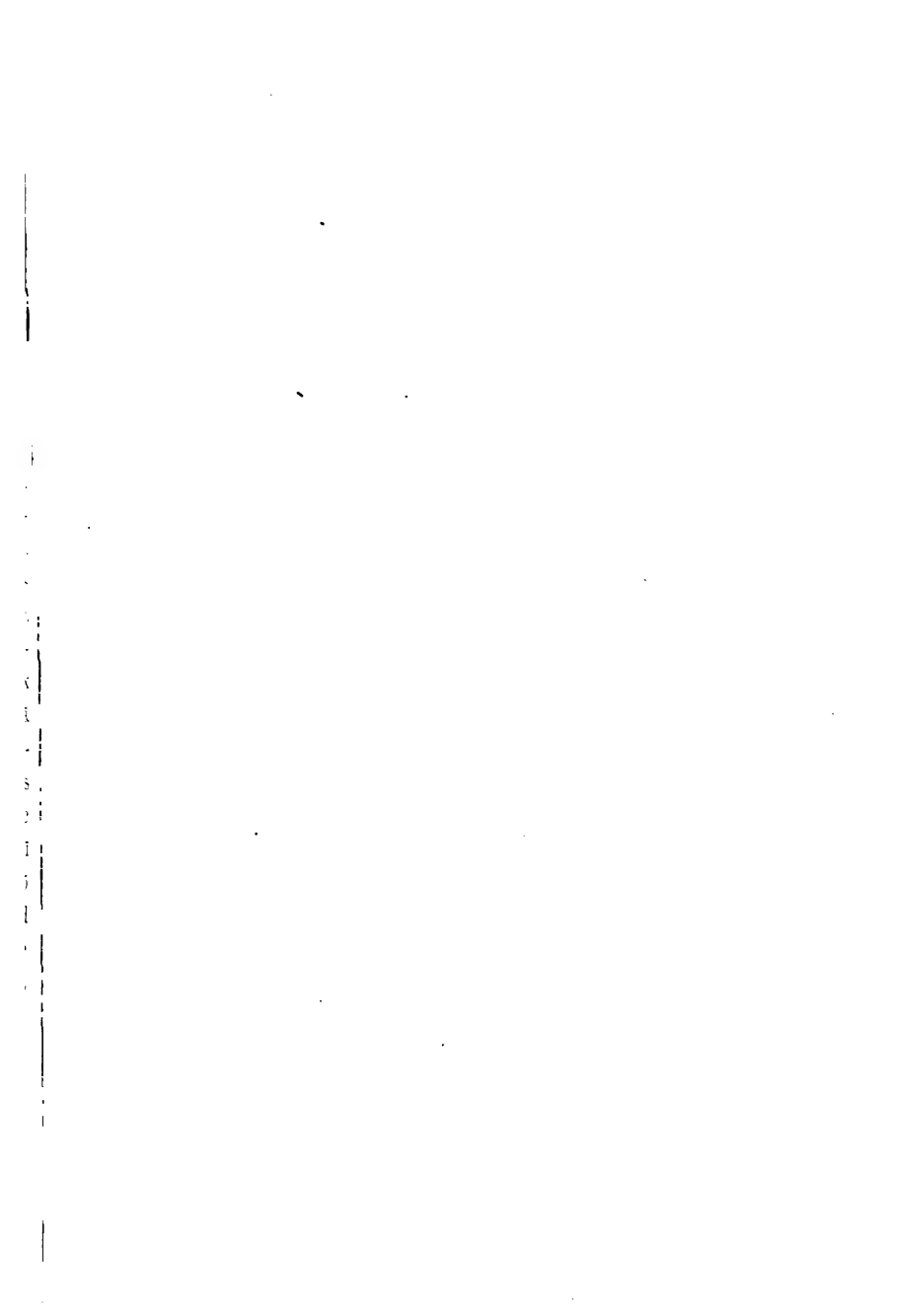
LIBER QUARTUS.

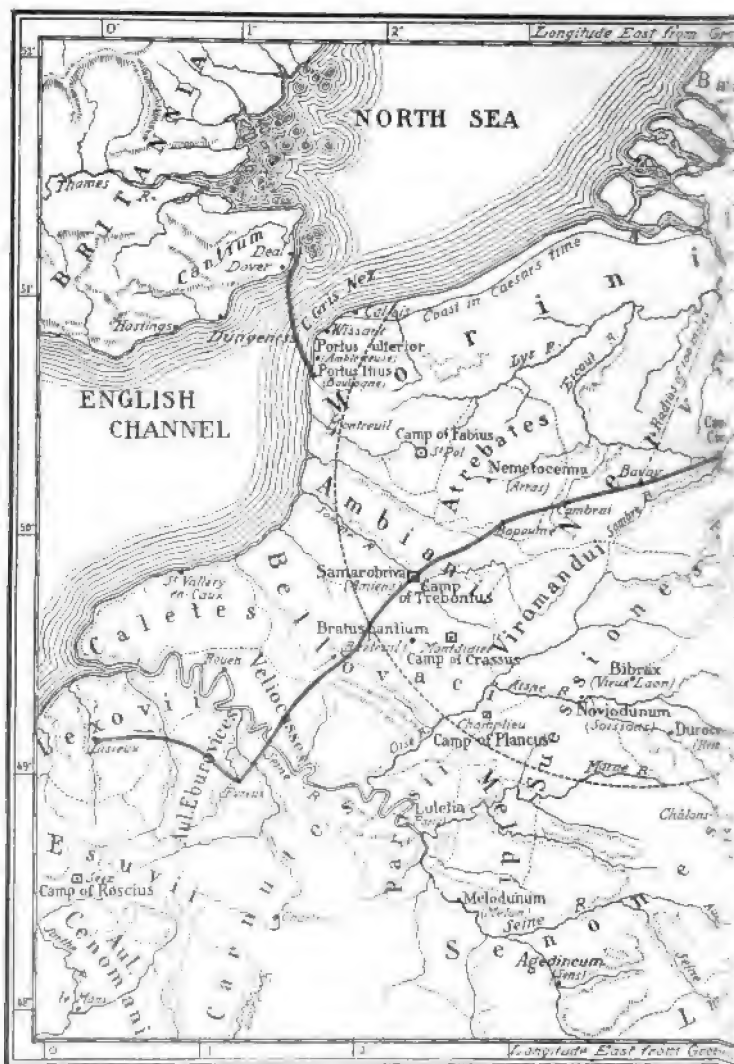
THE USIPETES AND TENCTERI, 1-15.

Germans in Gaul. Description of the Suebi.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā cum multitudīne hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus influit.
5 Causa trānseundi fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotanni singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā
10 ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agrī culturā nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvatī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō
15 in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitae, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem
20 faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidiśsimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs

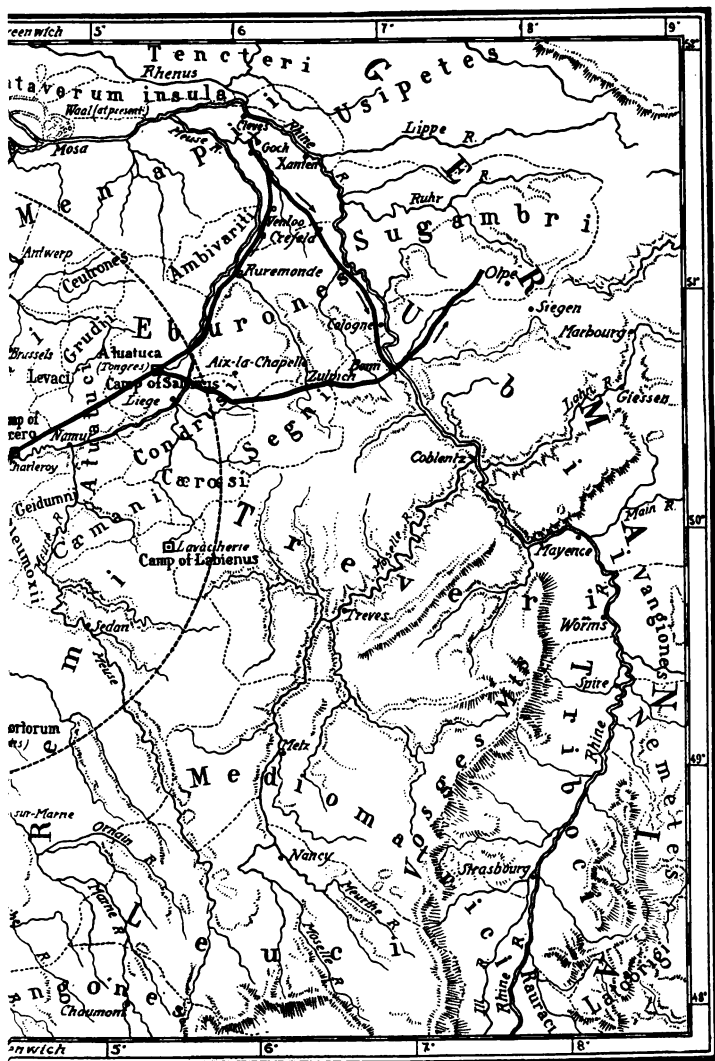




0 10 20 30 40 50

MILIA PASS.

CAMPAIGNS OF 55



habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their skill as horsemen. Their oppression of the Ubi.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī **dēsīderent**. Quī etiam iūmentīs, quibus 5 māximē Gallī delectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs **dēsiliunt** ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem 10 remanēre **vestigio** adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē im- 15 portārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Publicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē sīgnificārī, māgnum numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn 20 posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter milia passuum c agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; ei paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs **hūmāniōrēs**, proptereā quod 25 Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs **ventitant**, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis

expertī propter amplitūdinem **gravitātemque** cīvitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō **humiliōrēs** infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri invade the country of the Menapii.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs
5 **suprā** dīximus; quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuerunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed
10 tantae multitudinis adventū perterritī ex eīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, **dēmigrāverant** et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.

Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custodiās
15 Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūsus revertērunt, atque omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō insciōs inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs factī
20 sine **metū** trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs **remigrāverant**. His interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs
25 aluērunt.

Curiosity and temerity of the Gauls.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et **infirmiātem** Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs

et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quid quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumstiat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogat. His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio paenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta re-
spondeant.

*Certain Gallic states invite the Germans to advance farther in Gaul.
Caesar resolves to resist the encroachments of the Germans.*

6. Quā consuetudine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, maturius, quam consuērat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit: missas legationes ab non nullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rhēnō discēderent; omnia, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Quā spē adducti Germani lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburonum et Condrūsorum, qui sūnt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Principibus Galliae evocātis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et cōfirmātis equitatūque imperātō bellum cum Germanis gerere cōstituit.

He advances against them and is met by envoys.

7. Rē frumentariā comparatā equitibusque dēlectis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos

audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōratiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armīs contendant, 5 quod Germānōrum cōnsuetūdō sit ā māiōribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere; vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse eīs utilēs esse amicōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs 10 armīs possederint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēmīnem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Caesar orders the Germans from Gaul, offering them lands in the country of the Ubii. They seek to gain time, in the hope of reinforcements.

8. Ad haec Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit; sed 15 exitus fuit ōratiōnis: sibi nullam cum eīs amicitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniuriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in 20 Ubiōrum finibus cōsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniuriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; 25 intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petierunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cōgnōverat

enim, māgnam partem ēquitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs expectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Course of the rivers Meuse and Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus 5
Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae
appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum neque
longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit.
Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et
longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanō- 10
rum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus
fertur et, ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit
partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars
māgna ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex qui-
bus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vīvere existi- 15
mantur, — multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

*Caesar again receives the German envoys, and arranges for
another conference.*

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII
milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī rever-
tuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius
prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petē- 20
bant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen antecessissent, prae-
mitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem
faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs
ac senātus sibi iūre iūrاندō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne,

quae à Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem IIIō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, 5 reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam **frequentissimī** convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē 10 hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, **quoad** ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

The German cavalry treacherously attacks the Roman cavalry.

Bravery of two brothers, Aquitanians, in Caesar's cavalry.

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, quōrum erat v mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī, quī frūmentandī 15 causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timen-
tibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante à Caesare discesserant atque is diēs **indūtīs** erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus hīs resistentibus, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt sub-
20 fossisque equis complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et 25 LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus Pisō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus à senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī inter-

clūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō ex-



EQUITES.

cesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus 5 obtulit atque interfectus est.

Caesar ends negotiations, and prepares for battle.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab

eīs, quī per dolum atque insidiās petitā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitate, quantum iam
 5 apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī, sentiebāt; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat.

His cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre **commūnicātō**, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, 10 opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēi **māne** eādē et simulātiōne et **perfidia** ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium
 15 prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid pōssent, dē indūtīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus, illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs edūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

The Germans are thrown into confusion by Caesar's unexpected attack on their camp.

20 14. Acīē triplici institūtā et celeriter VIII milium itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritate adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsili habendī neque arma
 25 capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et con-

cursū significārētur, milites nostrī pristinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra **inrūpērunt**. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus 5 suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

They flee and are cut to pieces.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs **abiectis** signisque militāribus 10 relictis sē ex castris eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucis 15 vulnerātis, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs, quōs in castris retinuerat, discēdendi potestātem fēcīt. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum 20 velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

CAMPAIGN IN GERMANY, 16-19.

Caesar recounts his reasons for a campaign in Germany.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit

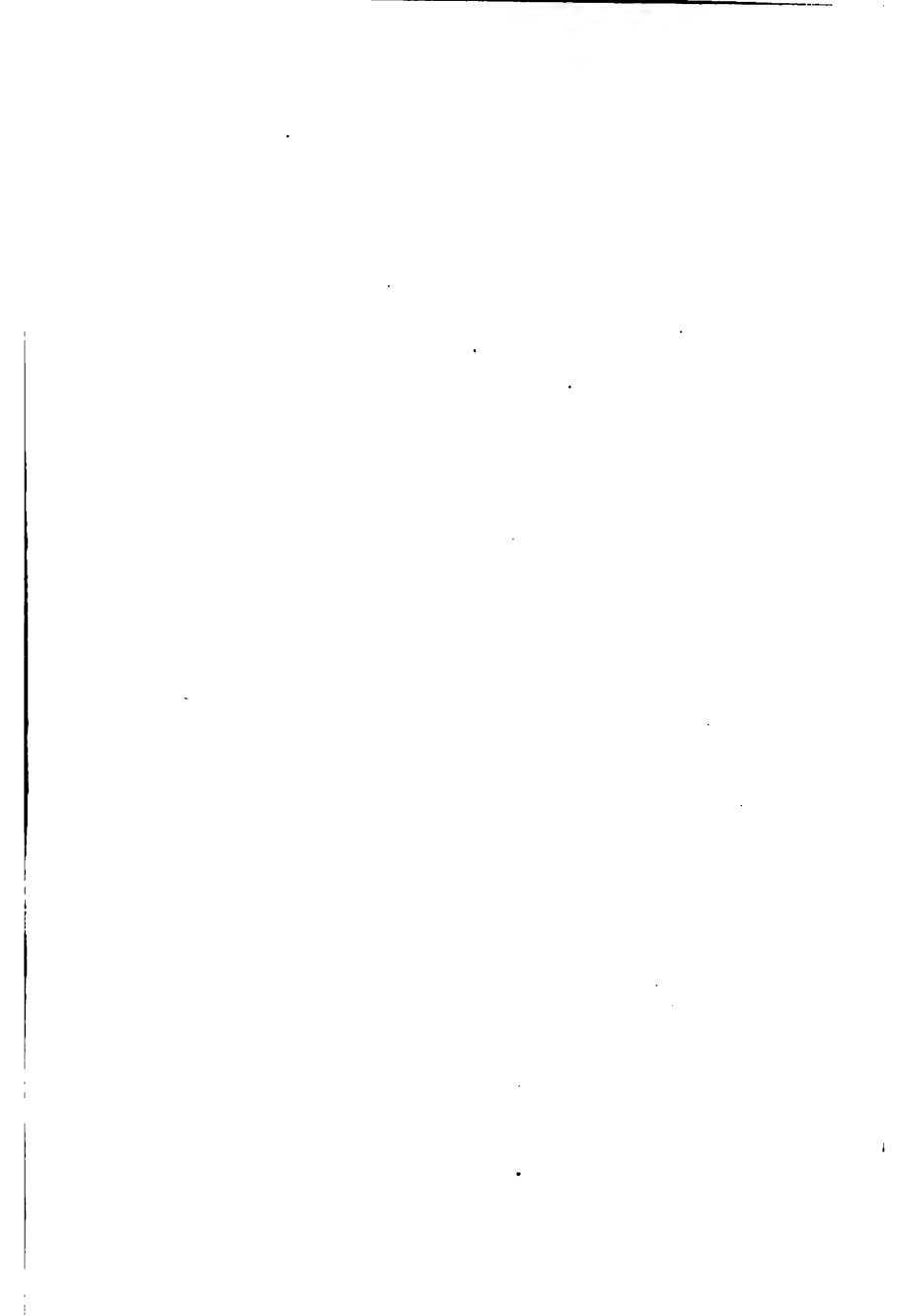
iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.

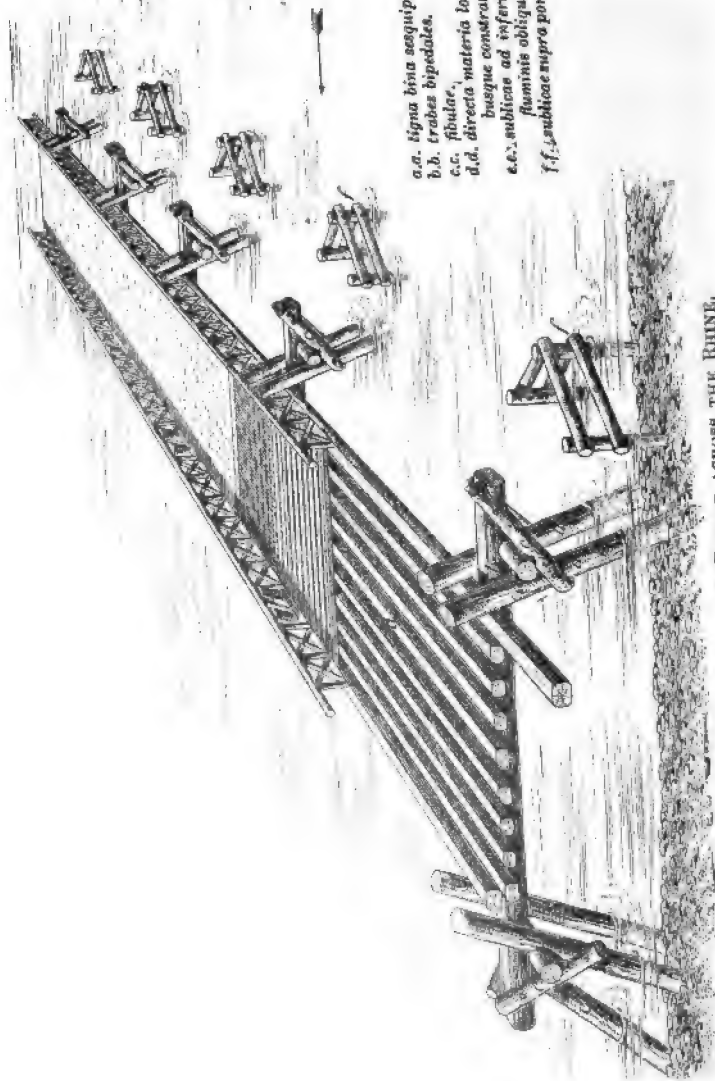
5 Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frumentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūxerat. Ad
10 quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis
15 trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiā fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere **occupātiōnibus**
20 rei publicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum transportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne
25 et amīcitiā populi Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiā ad transportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

He constructs a bridge across the Rhine.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcreverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis





a.a. signa bina aequipedalia.

b.b. trabses bipedales.

c.c. fluitae.

d.d. directa materia longioris cras-

busque constrata.

e.e. sublicae ad inferiorem partem

fluminis oblique actae.

f.f. sublicae supra pontem immissae.

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum ex- 5
Istimābat.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc Instituit. **Tigna** bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab Imō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus **immissa** in flūmen **dēfixerat** 10 festūcīsque adēgerat, nōn **publicae** modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūrā flūminis prōcumberent, eīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa 15 statuēbat. Haec utraque Insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tīgnōrum iūnetūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīctīs, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, 20 quō māior vīs **aquae** sē incitāvisset, hōc artius **inligāta** tenērentur. Haec dērēctā mātēriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs **crātibus**que cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius **publicae** et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere con- 25 iūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēficiendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur neu pontī nocērent.

After a short campaign Caesar returns to Gaul.

18. Diēbus x, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad 5 eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiā petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns institui coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus eīs, quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis exciserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs frūmentisque **succisīs**, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, si ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteaquam per explorātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent atque omnēs, quī arma 20 ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent. Hunc esse dēlectum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum expectāre atque ibidem dēcertāre cōstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōfectis, 25 quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs **obsidiōne liberāret**, diēbus omnīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōsūptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem profectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

FIRST CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 20-36.

Objects of the campaign.

20. **Exiguā** parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsu fore arbitrābatur, si modo Insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant **incōgnita**. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quicquam 10 praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, **nōtum** est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset Insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus Institūtis ūterentur, neque quī 15 essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

Mission of Volusenus. Arrival of envoys from Britain.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus 20 ad sē quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam **trāiectus**. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat, classem iubet convenire. 25

Interim cōsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis, liberā
 5 liter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum eis unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cūius et virtutem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī
 10 habēbatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, quī nāvī egredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quīntō
 15 diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

Submission of the Morini. The Roman fleet assembles.

22. Dum in hīs locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, 20 quod hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperiī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāssent, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidissee arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī
 25 tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnū eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX **onerāriis** coāctis, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārū habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum VIII ventō tenē-
bantur, quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō 5
praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

The fleet sets sail and reaches the British coast.

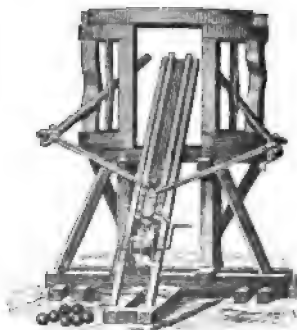
23. His cōstitutis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigan- dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā **solvit** equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs **cōnscendere** et sē 15
sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus **expositās** hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus **angustē** mare continēbātur, utī 20
ex locis superiōribus in **litus** tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnisque militum convocātis et, quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et, quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem **mōtum** habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs admi-

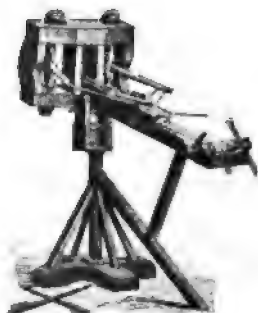
nistrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

The Britons attack the Roman troops as they attempt to land from the transports.

- 5 24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et **essedāriis**, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in altō



BALLISTA.



CATAPULTA.

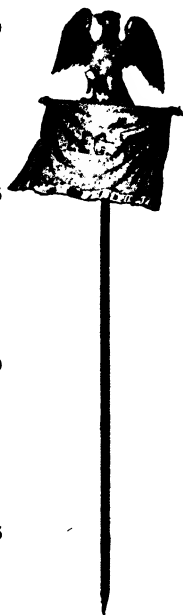
- 10 cōstitui nōn poterant, militibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex **aridō** aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs 15 expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audacter tēla cōicerent et equōs

insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōnsuērāt, ūtēbantur.

The war galleys are sent to their aid.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitiōrior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitutū atque inde **fundīs**, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpelli ac submovērī iussit; 10 quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiōtō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs militibus cūctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis **aquilam** ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, “dēsillite,” 20 **inquit**, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego **certē** meum rei publicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-



AQUILA.

versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

After a stubborn contest a landing is effected.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsq̄ue ācrit̄er. Nostri tamen, 15 quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cō- 10 spexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla cōiciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri 15 iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fecērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn 20 potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesari defuit.

The Britons sue for peace. Caesar demands hostages.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce miserunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāss̄et, factūrōs 25 sēsē polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem sup̄rā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Bri-

tanniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs orātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et, propter **imprudentiam** ut 5 ignōscerētur, petivērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem 10 ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The cavalry transports are scattered by a severe storm. The rest of the fleet is much damaged by storm and tide.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum 15 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprà dēmōstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cur-20 sum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant propectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum flūctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum 25 **prōvectae** continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs
maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuevit,
nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita tūnō tempore et lon-
gās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trāsportandum cūrā-
5 verat, quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat,
et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās
adflētābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī
aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis,
reliquae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armā-
10 mentīs āmissis, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod
necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta
est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus **reportāri**
possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs
erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā
15 oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum
nōn erat.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities. Caesar repairs his fleet.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī
post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē con-
locūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis
20 deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum
exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra,
quod sine impedīmentis Caesar legiōnēs trāsportāverat,
optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā frūmentō
commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prō-
25 dūcere, quod, hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem
postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum
cōfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim

ex castris discēdere et suos clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum cōsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suarum et ex eo, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. 5 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotīdiē in castra cōferēbat et, quae gravissimē **adfectae** erant nāvēs, earum māteriā atque **aere** ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eas rēs erant ūsul, ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum 10 summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut nāvīgārī satis commodē posset, effēcit.

The seventh legion is attacked.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuetūdine unā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars homi- 15 num in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī, quī prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt, pulverem māiōrem, quam cōnsuetūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar — id quod erat — suspicātus, aliquid novī ā bar- 20 baris initum cōsili, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et **cōnfectim** sēsē subsequī iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suos ab hos- 25 tibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla cōici animadvertit. Nam quod,

omni ex reliquis partibus demessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs, hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvis delituerant; tum dispersōs depositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque **essedīs** circumdederant.

The British chariots in battle. Caesar withdraws his troops from battle.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōiciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātīm ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita **currūs** conlocant, ut, si illi ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclivī ac praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōrē recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt.

The Britons collect larger forces and march to attack the Roman camp. They are defeated.

Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suis praedicāvērunt et, quanta **praedae** faciendae atque in perpe- 5
tuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudīne **peditātūs** equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acci- 10
derat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum **effugerent**, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum 15
hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt, deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēperunt.

The number of hostages required of them is doubled. Caesar returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem 20
dē pāce vērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūci iussit, quod propinquā diē **aequinociti** infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn. exstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam 25

noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continen-
tem pervēnerunt; sed ex eis onerariae duae eōdem portūs,
quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infrā delātae
sunt.

THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 37-38.

*A detachment of troops, attacked by the Morini, is rescued by the
cavalry.*

5 37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs cir-
citer ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs
Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē
praedae adducti, primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō
circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere
10 iussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter
ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vi convēnerunt.
Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis
auxiliō misit. Interim nostri militēs impetum hostium
sustinuerunt atque amplius hōris iiii fortissimē pūgnāvē-
15 runt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occi-
derunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum
vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vertērunt magnusque
eōrum numerus est occisus.

*Labienus leads an expedition against the Morini. The legions go
into winter quarters among the Belgae.*

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eis
20 legiōnibus, quās ex Britannia redūxerat, in Morinōs, qui
rebelliōnem fēcerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitātēs
palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō per fugiō
superiōre annō erant usi, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labi-

enī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. 5

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō civitatēs ex Britannīā obsidēs mīserunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



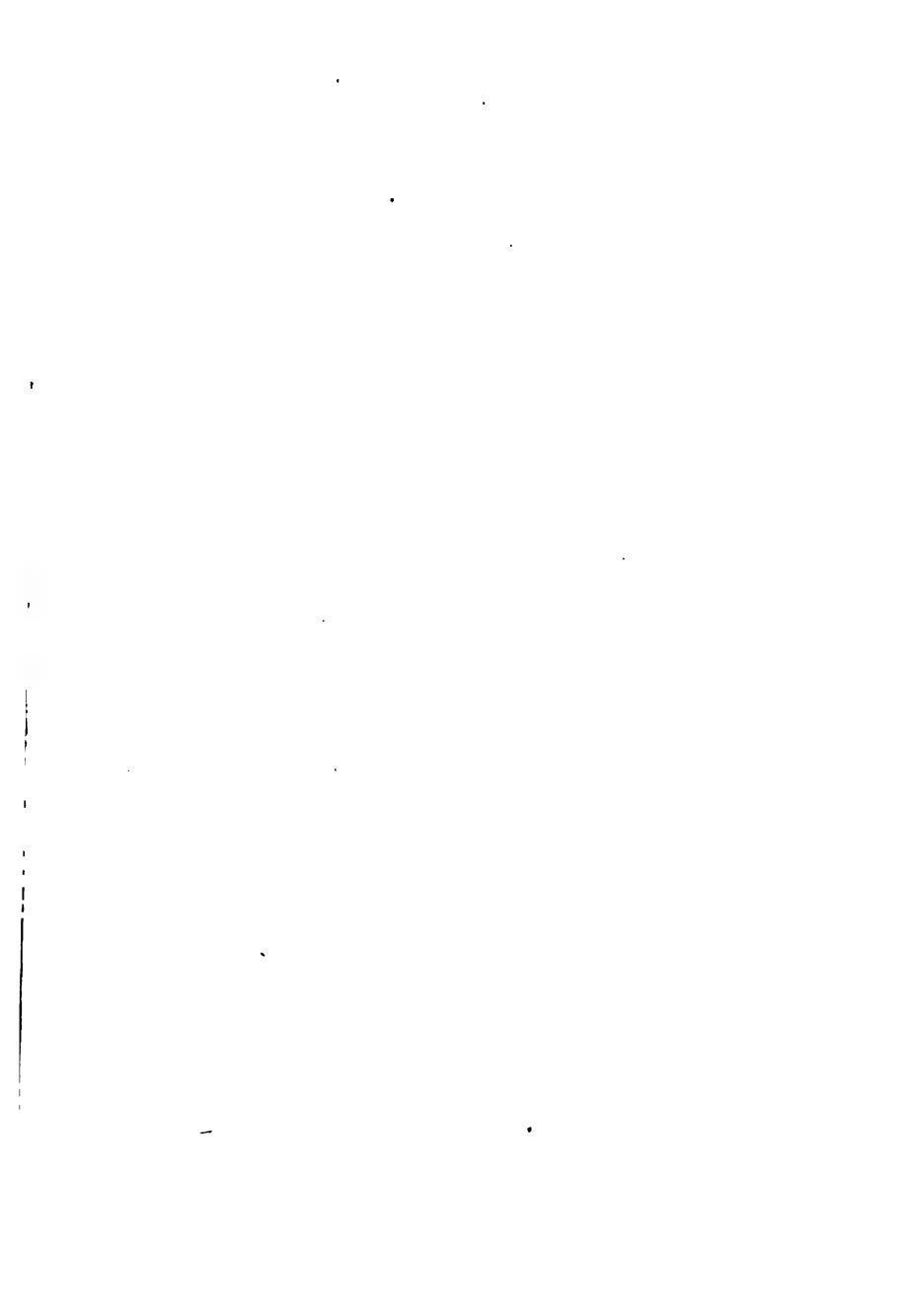
HELMET WITH CREST.

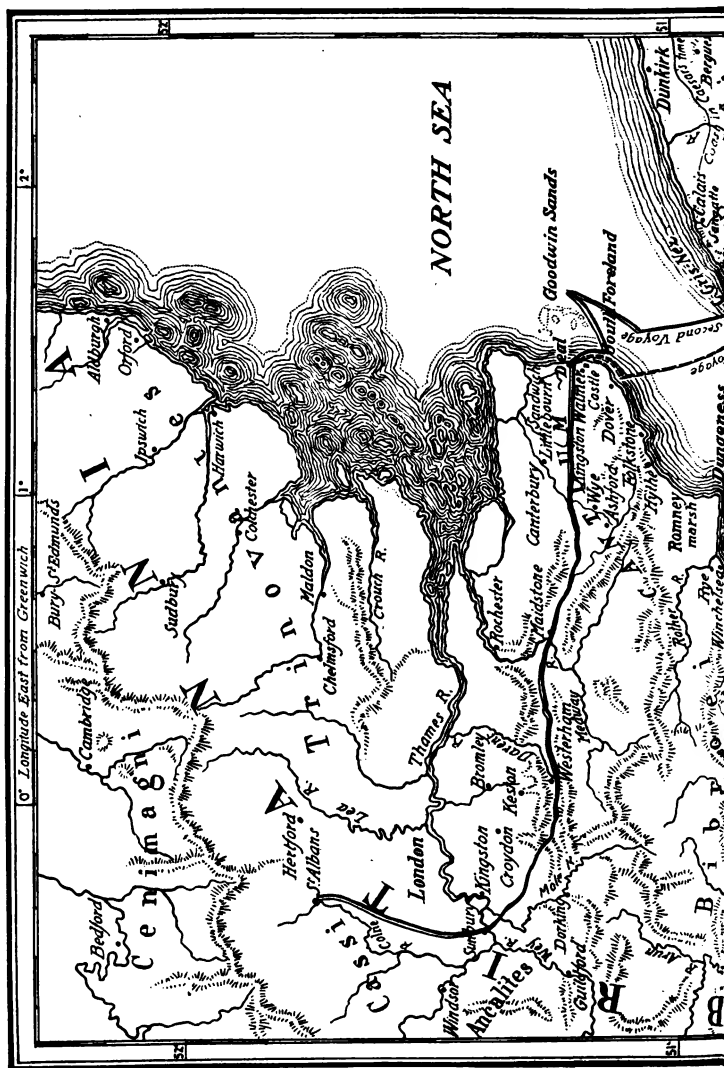
LIBER QUINTUS.

SECOND CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 1-23.

Caesar orders the construction of a larger fleet. He visits Illyricum.

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hī-
bernīs Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat,
lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī, quam
plūrimās possint, hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque re-
5 ficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat.
Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit hu-
miliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī utī cōsuēvimus,
atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs
aestuum minus māgnōs ibi flūctūs fierī cōgnōverat, ad
10 onera ac multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō
lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās
omnēs actuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum
humilitās adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās
nāvēs, ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet.
- 15 Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris **perāctis**, in Illyricum
proficiscitur, quod ā Pīrūstis finitimam partem prōvinciae
incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitā-
tibus milītēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet.
Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī
20 doceant, nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsē-
que parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniū-



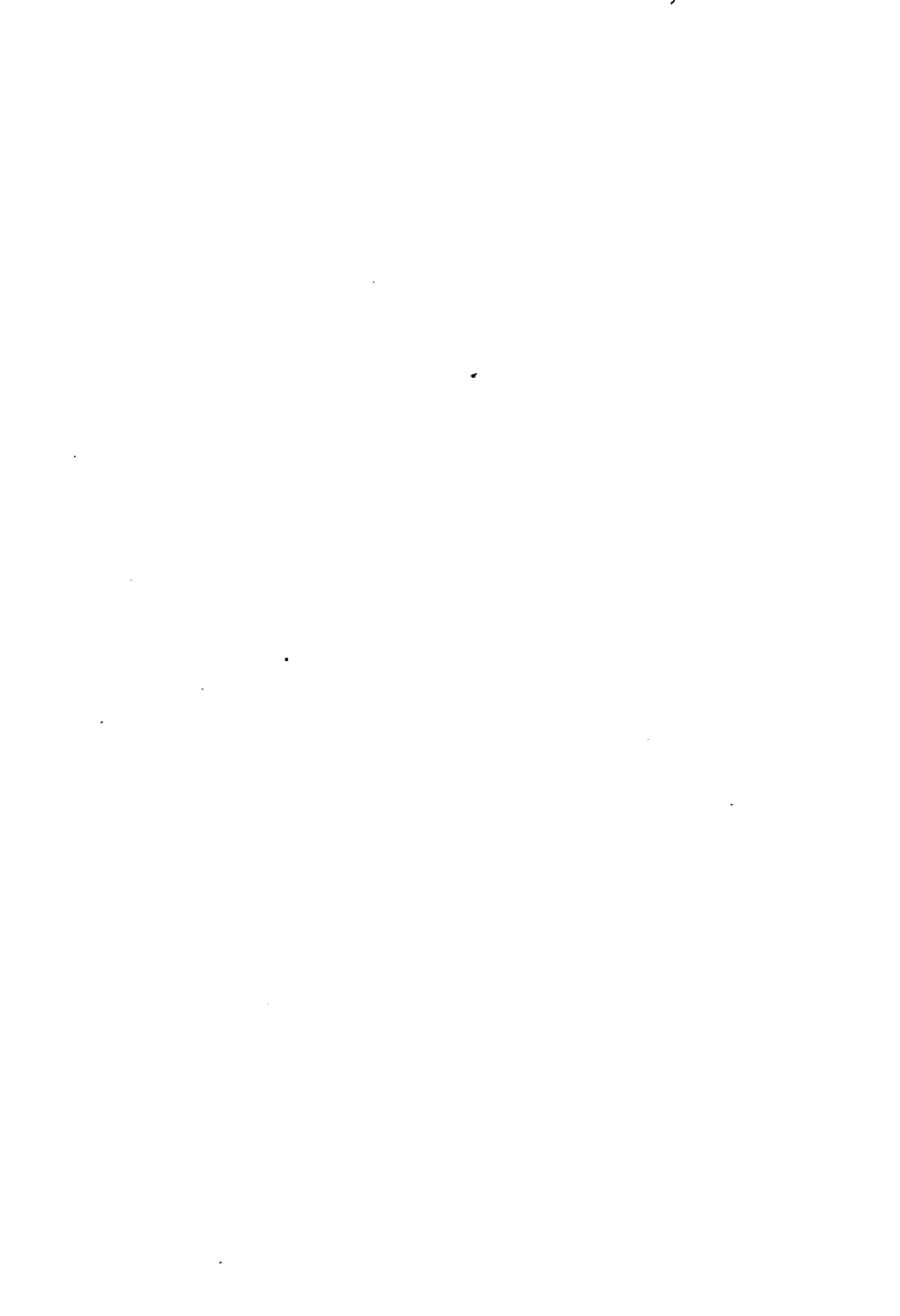




10 5 0 10 20 30 40

MILIA PASSUUM

CAMPAIGNS IN BRITAIN 55 and 54 B.C.



riis satisfacere. Perceptā orātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Eīs ad diem adductīs, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātēs dat, quī litem aestiment poenamque cōstituunt. 5

Caesar rejoins his army and finds the new fleet ready.

2. His cōfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citiōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hibernīs, singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC eius generis, cūius suprà dēmōstrāvimus, 10 nāvēs et longās XXVIII invenit instrūctās neque multum abesse ab eō, quā paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātīs militibus atque eīs, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam 15 trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter milium passuum XXX ā continentī; huic rei, quod satis esse vīsum est militum, relinquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germā- 20 nōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

Dissensions among the Treveri. Rivalry of Cingetorix and Indutiomarus.

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitatū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cin-

getorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legio-
numque adventum cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque
omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani
defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treveris gererentur,
ostendit.

At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere eisque,
qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam
Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios
fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum
pertinet, bellum parare instituit; sed posteaquam non
nulli principes ex ea civitate et auctoritate Cingetorigis
adducti et adventum nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem
venērunt et de suis privatis rebus ab eo petere coeperunt,
quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab
omnibus desereretur, legatos ad Caesarem mittit: sese
idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse,
quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis
nobilitatis discessum plebs propter imprudentiam liberetur;
itaque civitatem in sua potestate esse, seque, si
Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum et suas
civitatisque fortunās eius fidei permissurum.

Caesar favores Cingetorigis.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, quam de causā ea dicerentur,
quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen,
ne aetatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus
25 rebus ad Britannicum bellum comparatis, Indutiomarum
ad se cum cœ obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in
eis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim
evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est,

utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius, prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis, hōs singillatim Cingetorigi conciliāvit, quod cum meritō eius ab sē fieri intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābatur eius auctōritātem inter suos quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē 5 voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomārus, suam grātiam inter suos minuī, et, quī iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

The army assembles for a second expedition to Britain.

5. His rēbus cōstitūtis Caesar ad portum Itium cum 10 legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit, LX nāvēs, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instructās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae 15 convenit, numerō milia IIII, prīncipēsque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbatur. 20

Dumnorix, the Haeduan, refuses to accompany the expedition.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēteris Dumnorix Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō 25 Haeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi ā Caesare rēgnum

cīvitātis dēferri; quod dictum Haedui graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandi aut dēprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat.

5 Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinqueretur, partim, quod insuetus nāvigandi mare timēret, partim, quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi negari vidit, omni spē impetrandi adēptā, principēs Galliae sollicitāre, 10 sēvocāre singulōs hortārique coepit, uti in continentī remanērent; metū **territāre**: nōn sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem 15 reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, cōmūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

He escapes, but is pursued and killed.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitāti Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coērcendum atque dēterrendum, qui- 20 buscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac rei pūblīcae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod chōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, qui māgnam partem omnis 25 temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorīgem contineret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.

At omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quā rē nūtiatā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum Insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pāreat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe **clāmitāns**, liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Labienus is left in command in Gaul. The passage to Britain.

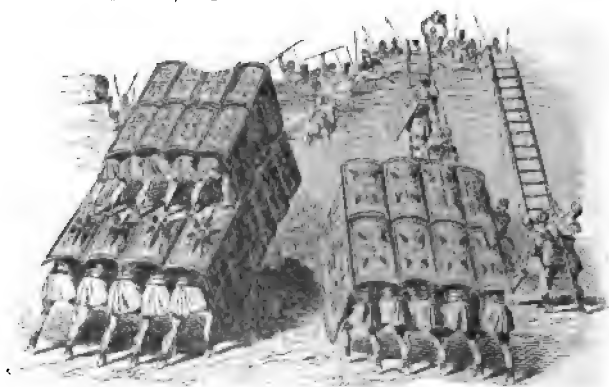
8. His rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur, cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit. Et lēnī Africō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et longius delātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem Insulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiiis nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunť.

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridi-

anō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs privātisque, quās suī quisque commodi causā fēcerat, amplius dccc unō erant visae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdidérant.

The landing. Caesar attacks and defeats the enemy.

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictīs et
10 equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore molli atque apertō deligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium prae-fecit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter xii
15 hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est.



TESTUDO.

Illi equitatū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō
superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coe-
pērunt. Repulsi ab equitatū sē in silvās abdidērunt,
locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem
domesticī belli, ut vidēbatur, causā iam ante praeparā- 5
verant; nam crēbris arboribus succisīs omnēs introitus
erant praeclūsi. Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant nos-
trōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs
legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs
adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis 10
vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar
prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod,
māgnā parte diēi cōsumptā, mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus
relinqui volēbat.

The fleet is damaged by a storm.

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne tripertitō militēs equi- 15
tēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs, qui fūgerant, per-
sequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum
iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs a Q. Atrio ad
Caesarem vērunt, qui nūntiārent, superiōre nocte mā-
ximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs adflētās atque 20
in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sus-
tinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis
pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnū
esse incommodum acceptum.

11. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar legiōnēs equitatūque 25
revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs
revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis cōgnōverat, cōram
perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL nāvibus reliquae

tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūrimās possit, eīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subducī et cum castrīs unā mūnitiōne coniungi. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōsumit, nē nocturnis quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis.

The Britons unite forces under one leader.

10 Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnītis, eādem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellique administrandī commūni
15 cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūius finēs ā maritimis civitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs civitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc
20 tōtī bellō imperiōque praefecerant.

Origin of the Britons. Resources of the country.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars ab eīs, quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgio trānsiērunt — quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum
25 appellantur, quibus ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnerunt —

et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnīta multītūdō, crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi 5 plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī volup-10 tātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Shape and extent of the island.

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter *angulus*, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, 15 ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus tenet circiter milia passuum D.

Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia insula, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trāsmīssus 20 atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae insulae exīstimantur, dē quibus insulīs nōn nullī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiē-25 bāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, dcc milium.

Tertium est contrā septentrionēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum dccc in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū
5 vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

Character and customs of the inhabitants.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuetūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt
10 pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et lābrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnique inter sē
15 commūnēs et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēscue cum liberīs; sed, quī sunt ex eis nātī, eōrum habentur liberī, quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Baffling character of British tactics.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnfixērunt, ita tamen, ut nostrī
20 omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs, cupidius insecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs eiēcērunt
25 impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt, duābusque missīs subsidio

cohortibus à Caesare, atque hīs primīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. 5 Illi plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac prō castris dīmicārētur, intellēctum est, nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequi cēdentēs possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad 10 hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedis dēsilīrent et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proeli ratiō et cēden- 15 tibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōfertī, sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis proeliārentur statīōnēsque dispositas habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātis succēderent. 20

The Britons are defeated. Their forces break up.

17. Posterō diē procul à castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex 25 omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcē-

runt, quoad subsidiō cōfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedis dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nobīs cum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames. Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit, ad alteram flūminis ripam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefixisque mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis ā captivīs perfugisque, Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent ripāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omni dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissis ampliōribus cōpiīs, milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eis regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effunde-

ret, omnibus viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstandis incendis⁵que faciendis hostibus nocērētur, quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī militēs efficere poterant.

Certain tribes submit to Caesar.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, — cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnū obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sēsē ei deditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātē mittat,¹⁵ quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī militum²⁰ iniuriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiāci, Ancalitēs, Bibroci, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit, nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvis palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum au-²⁵tem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenire cōsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus;

locum reperit egregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum ;
 tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit.
 Hostēs paulisper morātī militum nostrōrum impetum
 nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi eiēcērunt.
 5 Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā
 sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

Attack on the Roman naval camp. Caesar returns to Gaul.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad
 Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, qui-
 bus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius,
 10 Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat,
 utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō
 adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent,
 nostrī ēruptione factā multis eōrum interfectīs, captō
 etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt.
 15 Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō. nūntiātō, tot dētrimentīs
 acceptīs, vāstātīs finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfec-
 tiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē
 dēditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōstituisset
 hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs,
 20 neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahi
 posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et, quid in annōs
 singulōs vectigālīs populō Romānō Britannia penderet,
 cōstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē
 Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.
 25 23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum reducit ad mare,
 nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum
 māgnū numerum habēbat et nōn nullae tempestāte dē-
 perierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre



ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER.
(From Tuell and Fowler.)

instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsiderārētur, at ex eis, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās postea Labiēnus 5 faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum cape- rent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit ac, summā tranquil- 10 litāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

ASSIGNMENT OF WINTER QUARTERS, 24-25.

The legions are distributed in winter quarters. Murder of Tasgetius, king of the Carnutes.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrī- vae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac supe- 15 riōribus annīs exercitum in hibernīs conlocāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs civitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esviōs L. Rōsciō, quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōfiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre 20 iussit, trēs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefecit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōscripse- rat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis 25

et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titurium Sabinum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae rei frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit. Atque
 5 harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam L. Roscio in pacatissimam et **quietissimam** partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum c continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones conlocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Galliam morari constituit.

10 **25.** Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum
 15 regnantem inimici palam multis ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, L. Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque
 20 opera cognoverit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus, legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

DEFEAT OF SABINUS AND COTTA, 26-27.

Attack of the Eburones on the winter camp of Sabinus and Cotta.

Conference with the Gauls.

26. Diebus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est,
 25 initium repentinum tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab

Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; quī cum ad finēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs **concitāvērunt** subitōque oppressīs lignātōribus māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vērērunt. Cum celeriter 5 nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque unā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, 10 quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus **contrōversīās** minui posse spērārent.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quidam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Am-15 biorīgē ventitāre cōsuērat. Apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est:

Speech of Ambiorix. The Romans are urged to abandon their camp, and are treacherously promised protection.

Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimū eī cōnfītērī dēbēre, quōd eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset, quōd Atuatucīs, finitimīs suis, pendere cōsuēsset, quodque eī 20 et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Atuatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id, quōd fēcērit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coactū civitātis, suaque esse eius modī imperia, ut nōn minus 25 habēret iūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdinem.

Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quōd repentināe

Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit im- peritus rērum, ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; 5 omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

10 Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiīs Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre *Titūrium prō hospitio, ut suae ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trāns- isse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, ve- 15 lintne, prius quam fīnitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter 1, alter paulō am- plius ab eīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōn- firmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs fīnēs datūrum. Quod 20 cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritīs grātiā referre. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

Sabinus and Cotta disagree. Cotta is opposed to the abandon- ment of the camp.

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audierant, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea 25 dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda exīstimābant, māxi- mēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō

bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia.

L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque 5 ex hibernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītis hibernīs docēbant; rem esse testimoniō, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultrō vulneribus inlātis fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; in-10 tereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; **postrēmō**, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

Sabinus favors acceptance of the offer of the Gauls.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctis Germānis convēnissent, 15 aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiā; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiundī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī 20 ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānis dolōri Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdere Galliā tot contumēliis acceptis sub populi Rōmāni imperium redāctā, superiōre glōriā rei militāris exstinctā. 25

Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuāderet, sine certā spē Ambiorigem ad eius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā: sī nihil

esset dūrius, nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānis cōsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dissentīrent, cōsiliū quem habere exitum? In quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

After a long dispute Sabinus's view prevails.

30. Hāc in utramque partem **disputātiōne** habitā, cum ā Cottā primisque ordinibus ācritur resisteretur, “vincite,” inquit, “sī ita vultis,” Sabīnus, et id clāriore vōce, ut 10 māgna pars militum exaudiret; “neque is sum,” inquit, “quī gravissimē ex vōbis mortis periculō terrear. Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximis hibernis coniūcti commūnem cum reliquis belli 15 cāsū sustineant, nōn reiecti et relēgati longē ā ceteris aut ferrō aut fame **intereant**.”

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēducant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu 20 proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nullam sē salutem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīni. Prōnūtiātur, primā luce itūrōs.

25 Cōnsūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgeretur. Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec sine periculō maneātur et lan-

guōre militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Primā luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine māximisque impedimentis.

The Romans are led into an ambushade.

32. At hostēs, posteaquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliis- 5
que dē profectione eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātis insidiis bipertitō in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam convallem dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendē- 10
runt, novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostris locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et **concursāre** cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen 15
ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere cōsuēvit, quī in ipsō negotiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāssset, haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūni salutī 20
deerat et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātoris et in pūgnā militis officia praestābat.

Cum propter longitudinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūtiārī, ut impedimenta 25
relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostris militibus spem

minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspēratiōne id factum vidēbatur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgō milites ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret, clamōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

The Gauls tire them out by dilatory tactics.

34. At barbaris cōsiliū nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoriā posita existimārent. Erant et virtūte et studiō pūgnandī parēs nostrī; tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla cōiciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant—levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil eis nocēri posse,—rūsus sē ad signa recipi-
entēs insequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eis diligētissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vėlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant prōgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab eis, quī cesserant, et ab eis, quī proximī steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquebātur neque ab tantā

multitūdine cōiecta tela cōfertī vitāre poterant. Ta-
 men tot incommodis cōflictātī, multis vulneribus accep-
 tīs resistēbant et magnā parte diēi cōsūptā, cum ā
 primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil, quod
 ipsis esset indīgnum, committēbant. Tum
 T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō primum
 pilum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctō-
 ritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trālcitur;
 Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē
 pūgnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit,¹⁹
 interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs
 ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā
 vulnerātur.



FUNDA.

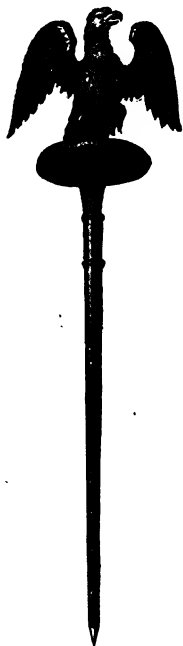
Sabinus is treacherously slain. Fate of the remainder.

36. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Am-
 biorigem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem¹⁵
 suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi
 militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: sī velit
 sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī
 posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil
 nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.²⁰
 Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā
 ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige unā conloquantur; spē-
 rāre sē, ab eō dē suā ac militum salutē impetrārī posse.
 Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō
 perseverat.

25

37. Sabinus, quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum cir-
 cum sē habēbat, et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē
 sequī iubet, et cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset,

iussus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur
 5 **sermō**, paulatim circumventus interficitur.



AQUILA.

Tum vero suo more victoriam clamant atque ululatum tollunt impetūque in nostros facto ordines
 10 perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine
 15 hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proicit; ipse pro castris fortissimè pugnans occiditur. Illi aegrè ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; nocte ad unum omnes desperata sa-
 20 lute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in

hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiores faciunt.

SIEGE OF CICERO'S CAMP, 38-53.

The Gauls attack the winter camp of Quintus Cicero.

25 **38.** Hæc victoriâ sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Atuaticos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, proficiscitur, neque noctem neque diem intermittit, pedi-

tātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōstrātā Atuatucisque concitātis posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, nē sui in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs pro eis, quās accēperint, iniuriis occāsiōnem dīmittant. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duos 5 māgnamque partem exercitūs interisse dēmōstrat; nihil esse negōti, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interfici; sē ad eam rem profitetur adiūtorem. Facile hāc orātiōne Nervius persuādet.

39. Itaque cōfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, 10 Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, qui omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās possunt mānūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nulli milites, 15 qui lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circumventis māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Atuatuci atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, 20 vāllum cōscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adepti victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōfestim ā Cicerōne lit- 25 terae, māgnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis, missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritāte; quae deesse operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiō- 30

ribus coactis cōpiis castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. A nostris eādē ratiōe, quā prīdiē, resistitur.

Hōc idē reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās ~~quiētis~~ datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppūgnātiōem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeustae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuis-
10 simā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinqueret, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgeretur.

The Gauls try in vain to lure Cicero from his camp.

41. Tum ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habē-
15 bant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppūgnārī. Addunt etiam de Sabīni morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidē
20 faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eis praesidī spērent, quī suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populūque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuetūdinem nōlint; licēre illis per sē incolumibus
25 ex hibernis discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficisci.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: nōn esse cōnsuetūdinem populī Rōmāni, accipere ab hoste armātō

condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtore ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

Desperate siege of the camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annō- 5 rum cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed nullā



GALLIC SWORDS.

ferramentōrum cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum mul- 10 titūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum III in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vāllī, falcēs testudinēsque, quās idem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt. 15

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō, ferventēs fūsiles ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum dis- 20

tulērunt. Hostēs m̄ximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque



TURRIS.

explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testudinēsq̄e agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt.

5 At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit, ut, cum undique **flammā** torrērentur m̄ximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur sua-
10 que omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre

intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūg-
15 narent.

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē m̄ximus numerus hostiūm vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant.
20 Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsq̄e omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex
25 omni parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

Rival exploits of two centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, qui iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vo-

rēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī *anteferrētur*, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, “quid dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probāndae virtūtis exspectās? 5 Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.” Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem subsequitur. 10

Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pilum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitudīne prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla cōiciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et *verūtum* in 15 balteō dēfigitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāginam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illī Vorēnus et laborantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitudō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbi- 20 trantur. Gladiō cominus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude 25 sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt.

Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimicus auxiliō salūtique esset neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur. 30

Cicero communicates with Caesar.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūg-
nātiō, et māximē quod, māgnā parte militum cōfectā
vulneribus, rēs ad paucitatem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat,
tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūtiīque ad Caesarem mittē-
5 bantur; quōrum pars **dēprehēssa** in cōspectū nostrōrum
militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Ner-
vius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā
obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem
praestiterat. Hic servō spē libertātis māgnisque per-
10 suādet praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās
ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine
ullā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē
periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar acceptis litteris hōrā circiter undecimā diēi
15 statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius
hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā
nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit
cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum
mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi
20 iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei pūblicae
commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorum
veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat
longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc
ex proximis hībernīs cōgit.

Caesar goes to his rescue.

25 47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī ad-
ventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgreditur.

Crassum Samarobrivæ præficit legiōnemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās publicās frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne 5 occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīni et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiæ vēnissent, veritus, nē, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victoriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, 10 quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernis ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus **perscribit**; docet, omnēs equitātūs peditātusque cōpiās Trēverōrum III milia passuum longē ab suis castris cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōsiliō eius probātō, etsi opīniōne trium 15 legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum cōmūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs 20 praemiis persuādet, uti ad Cicerōnem **epistulam** dēferat. Hanc Graecis cōscriptam litteris mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Si adire nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. 25 In litteris scribit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur, ut pristinam virtūtem retineat.

Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostris bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōnspicitur, 30

dēmta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitīā adfcit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls raise the siege and hasten to intercept Caesar. Caesar is warned by Cicero.

- 5 49. Galli rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprà dēmōstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc
 10 admonet, iter cautē diligenterque faciat. Perscribit in litteris, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat.
- 15 Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōnspiciātur. Erat māgnī periculi rēs, tantulīs cōpiis iniquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat; cōnsidit et, quam
 20 aequissimō potest locō, castra commūnit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viārum, quam māximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contempliōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in
 25 omnēs partēs dīmissis explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

The enemy are deceived by Caesar's pretence of fear.

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant, Caesar, si forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet; si 5 id efficere nōn posset, ut explorātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra 10 altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstrui atque in hīs administrandis rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

They attack his camp and are repulsed with heavy losses.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque iniquō locō cōstituunt; nostris vērō 15 etiam dē vāllō dēductis, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praecōnibusque circummissis prōnūtiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs con- 20 tempsērunt, ut, obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus caespitem, quod eā non posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, alii vāllum manū scindere, alii fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic 25 uti omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnumque ex eis numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

Caesar joins Cicero. He decides to spend the winter with the army.

52. Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēque intercēdebant neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtās turrēs, testudinēs
5 mūnitiōēsque hostium admīratur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō
eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōēs singillā-
10 tim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīni et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit.

Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, milites cōnsolātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et
15 temeritatē lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibili celeritate dē victoriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernīs Cicerōnis milia passuum abesset circiter LX eōque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō
25 fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā, Indūtiomārus, qui posterō diē castra Labiēni oppugnāre dēcreverat, noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs reducit.

Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum III legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnis

hībernīs hiemāre cōstituit, et quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrevit. Nam, illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte perlātō, omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs lēgatiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid 5 reliquī cōsiliī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant nocturnaue in locīs dēserti concilia habebant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn aliquem dē cōsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. 10

In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī tertiāe decimāe prae-fēcerat, certior factus est, māgnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum cīvitātum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlibus passuum VIII ab hībernīs suis āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victoriā 15 Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis discessus viderētur.

REVOLT OF THE SENONES AND TREVERI, 54-53.

The Senones expel the king appointed over them by Caesar.

54. At Caesar, prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātis, aliōs territandō, cum sē scīre, quae fierent, dēnūntiāret, aliōs cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō 20 tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstituerat, cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque maiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere publicō cōsiliō cōnātī, 25 cum ille praesēnsisset ac profūgisset, usque ad finēs in-

secūti rēgnō domōque expulērunt, et missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātis, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venire iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt.

Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs
5 repertōs principēs bellī inferendī, tantamque omnibus
voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Haeduōs
et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit,
alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum
fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallici bellī officiis, nūlla ferē
10 civitās fuerit nōn suspecta nobīs. Idque adeō haud sciō
mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliis dē causis, tum
māximē, quod, quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus prae-
ferēbantur, tantum sē eius opiniōnis dēperdidisse, ut
populi Rōmāni imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Indutiomarus, of the Treveri, leads a revolt.

15 55. Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtius hiemis
nūllum tempus intermiserunt, quā trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs
mitterent, civitatēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur,
māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minorem
superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitatī
20 Germānōrum persuādērī potuit, ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum
sē bis expertōs dicerent, Ariovisti bellō et Tencterōrum
trānsitū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc
spē lapsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere,
exercēre, ā finitimis equōs parāre, exulēs damnātōsque
25 tōtā Galliā māgnis praemiis ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac
tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctoritatem compa-
rāverat, ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent,
grātiā atque amicitiam publicē privātimque peterent.

56. Ubi intellēxit, ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnutēsque cōscientiā facinoris instīgārī, alterā Nerviōs Atuatucoēsque bellum Rōmānis parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex finibus suis prōgredi coepisset, armātum concilium indicit. Hōc mōre Gallō- 5 rum est initium bellī; quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex eis novissimus venit, in cōspectū multitudinis omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur.

In eō conciliō Cingetorigem, alterius prīncipem facti- 10 ōnis, generum suum, quem suprà dēmōstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque eius publicat. His rēbus cōfectis in conciliō prōnūntiat, arcessitum sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque complūribus Galliae cīvitatibus; hūc itūrum per 15 finēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppugnātūrum.

He attacks Labienus's camp, but is defeated and killed.

57. Quae fierī velit, praecipit. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnitissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis periculō nihil timēbat, nē quam occāsiōnem 20 rei bene gerendae dīmitteret, cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque eius propinquīs ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitimās cīvitatēs equitēsque undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotidiē cum omni equi- 25 tātū Indūtiomārus sub castrīs eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās conloquendī aut terri- tandī causā; equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum

cōiciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem, quibuscumque poterat rēbus, augēbat.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtiomārus ad
5 castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissis equitibus omnium
finitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā
diligentiā omnēs suōs custōdiis intrā castra continuit, ut
nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūtiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferri
posset. Interim ex cōnsuetūdine cotidiānā Indūtiomārus
10 ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cōsūmit;
equitēs tēla cōiciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbōrum
nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostris datō re-
spōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati
discēdunt.
- 15 Subitō Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equitātum
ēmittit; praecipit atque interdicit, perterritis hostibus
atque in fugam coniectis — quod fore, sicut accidit, vidē-
bat — ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum, neu quis quem
prius vulneret quam illum interfectum viderit, quod
20 morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat;
māgna prōpōnit eis, quī occiderint, praemia; submittit
cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsi-
lium fortūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō
flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus interficitur,
25 caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equitēs, quōs
possunt, cōnsectantur atque occidunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā
omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviorum, quae convēnerant, cōpiaē
discēdunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quie-
tiōrem Galliam.

NOTES.



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR, MUSEO NAZIONALE, NAPLES.

BOOK I.

INTRODUCTION.

War with the Helvetii.— While Caesar was still in Rome, early in 58, preparing to depart for his provinces, news came that a powerful Gallic tribe, the Helvetii, was about to start upon a westward migration. Of this movement, which the Helvetii had set on foot in 61, the Romans had probably received some information before. That the Helvetii were restless, at least, had been known for some time. Two years previously, in 60, they were reported in arms and making raids into the Transalpine province. The alarm felt in Rome at that time prompted the sending of an embassy to prevent other Gallic tribes from supporting them.

The Helvetii quite likely were being harassed by the Germans, of whom more in another connection. At all events, they felt cramped in their present country, a part of modern Switzerland, and had determined to remove to western Gaul. The leader in the movement was the powerful chieftain Orgetorix, to whose direction were confided the preparations for departure. Orgetorix betrayed his trust by intriguing with two other Gallic chieftains to gain supreme power in their respective states. His trial and death did not deter the Helvetii from proceeding with their plan. In the early spring of 58 they were ready for the march, having decided upon a route that led through the Roman province. Two other and smaller tribes had cast in their lot with them. The news of the danger threatening

the province brought Caesar on a hurried journey to Geneva. His refusal to grant right of way through the province forced the Helvetii to adopt the only other route readily available, through the Pas de l'Écluse and the country of the Sequani. Caesar, however, had no intention of permitting their migration without a struggle. In western Gaul they would still be dangerous neighbors to the province, while the country they were leaving was certain to be occupied by the Germans. The slow progress of the Helvetian host enabled Caesar to muster sufficient forces to follow them as they advanced up the valley of the Saône, and finally to rout them in a desperate battle late in June. The survivors were sent back to their former home.

So far as we know, Caesar had received no explicit instructions from the Roman senate with reference to the Helvetii. His policy was dictated by regard for the interests of the province and by the necessity of securing the frontier. The possibility of further German aggressions was, in all probability, the danger that seemed to Caesar most pressing and the problem with which he was expecting immediately to concern himself upon assuming his provincial command. It was with these Germans that he now came in conflict.

War with Ariovistus. — Two leagues of Gallic tribes (Introd. 65) had long been at strife for various causes, one led by the Haedui, the other by the Sequani, the former having at one time been the stronger. The weaker Sequani, however, had recourse to an alliance with German mercenaries from beyond the Rhine, and repeatedly defeated the Haedui in battle. The Haeduan Diviciacus finally visited Rome, probably in 61, in a vain attempt to secure help for his people as friends and allies of Rome (Introd. 68). The senate issued a conventional decree directing any governor of Gaul to protect Rome's allies. Shortly after, in 61 or 60, the disastrous battle of Magetobriga completed the humiliation of the Haedui. Upon Caesar's arrival Haeduan hostages were in the hands of the Sequani and Germans, the latter exacting a yearly tribute in addition. But the condition of the Sequani was even more deplorable than

that of the vanquished Haedui. The Germans, attracted by the superiority of the Gallic land, had determined to remain in Gaul. Under their redoubtable leader, Ariovistus, their numbers had already increased from fifteen thousand to one hundred and twenty thousand. One third of the Sequanian country was now in their possession and a second third demanded. The Sequani had ample reason to repent their rash alliance. Indeed, it is quite possible that they joined forces with the Haedui at Magetobriga against the Germans.

After the defeat of the Helvetii, which occurred in Haeduan territory, the Gallic tribes which had felt or feared German oppression appealed to Caesar for protection. In the relation of friendship between the Romans and the Haedui, and in the injuries to the latter at the hands of the Germans, Caesar found a ready pretext for entering into communication with Ariovistus. His professed purpose was to free the Haedui from subjection to the Sequani and Germans, and to exact assurance of no further German encroachments in Gaul. Of Ariovistus and his ambitions Caesar was doubtless more or less informed before coming to Gaul. In his own consulship, and apparently with his approval, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the title of "king and friend," which did not mean that Caesar would necessarily treat him as such a year later. Caesar's march to meet the German host, the amusing panic in his own army, the masterly speech in which he restored courage, the fruitless negotiations between the resolute Roman and the no less resolute German, the hard-fought battle in the valley of the Rhine, form one of the most interesting episodes of the Gallic war. By the overwhelming victory of the Roman army the Germans were driven from this region of Gaul; and that, it is not hard to believe, was Caesar's purpose from the outset.

At the conclusion of the campaign Caesar established his legions in winter quarters among the Sequani. He himself went to his Cisalpine province for the winter, in order to attend to administrative duties.

BOOK I.

WAR WITH THE HELVETII, 1-29.

Page 1. C. Juli Caesaris : for the names, *praenomen*, *nomen*, and *cognomen*, see A. 108 (80) ; G. p. 493 ; H. 354 ; H-B. 678. For the genitive in *i* see A. 49, b (40, b) ; B. 25, 1 ; G. 33, R. 1 ; H. 83, 6 ; H-B. 71, 2.

CHAPTER 1, Line 1. **Gallia omnis** : *Gaul as a whole*. *Gallia* is also frequently used of some one of the divisions of Gaul. The context usually makes the meaning clear. **est dīvisa** : *is divided*. Perfect participles may be employed as predicate adjectives. **quārum** : *of these*, gen. of the whole, the so-called partitive genitive. The relative pronoun when introducing an independent sentence should be translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. **ūnam** : sc. *partem* (also with *aliā* and *tertiam*).

2. **incolunt** : *is inhabited*. The Latin emphasis and order are often preserved best by translating an active verb in the passive. **quī** : for *eī quī*, *those who*. The antecedent of a relative pronoun may be omitted if readily understood from the context. **ipsōrum linguā** : *in their own language* ; lit. *in the language of themselves*.

3-5. **nostrā** : sc. *linguā*. **linguā, institūtis, lēgibus** : *in language, etc.* ; for the case see ¹A. 418 (253) ; B. 226 ; G. 397 ;

¹ Grammars : A. = Allen and Greenough's *New Latin Grammar*, 1903, numerals in parentheses referring to the edition of 1894 ; B. = Bennett's *Latin Grammar* ; G. = Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar* ; H. = Harkness's *Complete Latin Grammar* and Harkness's *Short Latin Grammar* ; H-B. = *Latin Grammar*, Hale and Buck. References to the Introduction (Introd.) are to the numbered sections, unless otherwise indicated.

H. 480, 3; H-B. 441. **inter sē**: *from one another*, reciprocal use of *sē*; how lit.? **Gallōs**: . . . **dīvidit**: *the Gauls are separated*; see note on *incolunt*, 2, above. **Gallōs**: equivalent to *Celtās*. **dīvidit**: singular verb, the Marne and Seine being regarded as a single boundary.

6. **Hōrum**: gen. of the whole; cf. *quārum*, 1, above. **prop-tereā quod**: differs from *quod*, used alone, no more than English for *the reason that* differs from *because*.

7. **cultū**: *manner of life*. **hūmānitāte**: *civilization*. Translate the two together, *civilized life*. **prōvinciae**: the Transalpine province; see *Intro.* 68.

8-9. **minimēque** . . . **commeant atque** . . . **important**: the second reason. **minimē saepe**; *very seldom*. **mercātōrēs**: especially from the Greek city of Massilia. **ea, quae**: *those things which*; i.e. luxuries, wine in particular. **ad** . . . **pertinent**: *tend to weaken character*. **effēminandōs**: for the gerundive construction see A. 503, 506 (296, 300); B. 338, 3, 339, 2; G. 427, 432; H. 628; H-B. 612, III.

10. **proximique sunt**, etc.: the third reason, the main point lying in *quibuscum* . . . *gerunt*. **Germānis**: for the dat. depending on *proximī* see A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, III. **quibuscum**: for *cum* enclitic see A. 150, d (104, e); B. 142, 4; G. 413, R. 1; H. 182, 2; H-B. 418, a.

11-12. **Quā dē causā**: *for this reason*. For translation of *Quā* see note on *quārum*, 1, above. **dē**: a monosyllabic preposition often stands between a noun and a modifier in agreement with it. **virtūte**: abl. of specification, like (second) *linguā*, 3, above.

13-15. **proeliis**: *in battles*. **cum** . . . **prohibent** . . . **aut** . . . **gerunt**: *when they either keep out the Germans*, etc., or translate by a participial construction, *either keeping out the Germans*, etc. **finibus**: for the case see A. 401 (243, a); B. 214, 2; G. 390, 2; H. 464, 1; H-B. 408, 2. **suīs** and **ipsī** refer to the Helvetii, **eōs** and **eōrum** to the Germans.

16. **Eōrum**: (*of them*) instead of *Galliae*, the people being

put for the country, as often. **quam . . . dictum est**: *which the Gauls occupy (as) has been said*. The infinitive clause stands as subject of *dictum est*. **Gallōs**: i.e. *Celtās*.

17-18. **Garumnā**: abl. of means. **ab**: *on the side of*, a not infrequent use of *ā* and *ab*, to indicate the standpoint.

Page 2. 1. **vergit ad septentrionēs**: *trends towards the north*, perhaps with reference to the course of the rivers in general.

2. **Belgae**: the people instead of the country; cf. *Eōrum*, 1, 16. **extrēmīs**: *farthest*, from the standpoint of the province or of Rome. **Galliae**: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

3. **spectant in**: cf. *vergit ad*, 1, above. The course of the main rivers is northeast.

6. **est ad**: *is near, lies next to*.

Explain the construction (page 1) of **partēs**, **ūnam** 1, **Celtae**, **Gallī** 3, **sē**, **Aquitanīs** 4, **prōvinciae** 7, **eōs** 8, **Rhēnum** 10, **bellum**, **causā** 11, (second) **finibus** 14; (page 2) **Galliae** 2, **Ōceanī** 6. Give the principal parts (page 1) of **est** 1, **differunt** 4, **dīvidit** 5, **gerunt** 11, **contendunt** 13, **dictum est** 16.

9. CHAPTER 2. **M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus**: *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*, i.e. 61 B.C. For the case see A. 419, a (255, a); B. 227, 1; G. 409, 410; H. 489; H-B. 421, 1. The Roman chief magistrates were two consuls, elected annually, and holding office jointly. Their names in the ablative absolute with *cōsulibus* are regularly employed to indicate Roman years. In such phrases *et* is usually omitted. **rēgnī**: objective genitive after *cupiditāte*.

10-11. **nōbilitātis**: see Introd. 63. **cīvitātī**: (*his*) *state*, for (*his*) *countrymen*, hence the plural verb *exirent*. For the case see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 2; H-B. 362, I. **ut dē . . . exirent**: *to leave*; for the mood see A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 502, 3. **cōpīis**: *forces, population*, including women and children.

12-13. **perfacile esse . . . potīrī**: verbs of saying and

the like are often to be inferred from the context; (*saying*) *that it was very easy to gain supremacy over all Gaul, since they surpassed all in valor.* **potiri**: subject of *esse*. In direct discourse, *perfacile est, cum . . . praestētis, . . . potiri.* **praestarent**: subjv. with *cum* causal. **omnibus**: for the dat. governed by *praestarent* see A. 370 (228); B. 187, III, 1; G. 347; H. 429; H-B. 376. **imperiō**: for the abl. with *potiri* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429.

14-15. **Id . . . persuāsit**: *he persuaded them (to) this (course of action) the more easily.* *Id* refers to the plan of emigration. For the acc. with *persuāsit* see A. 227, f (369); B. 176, 2, a; G. 332; H. 404, 1; H-B. 364, 4. **hōc**: abl. of cause, explained by the causal clause, *quod*, etc. **nātūrā**: abl. of cause. **finā ex parte**: *on one side*; *ex*, like *ab*, 1, 18, indicating the standpoint.

16. **qui**: the relative here and in 19 takes the name of the river as antecedent; usually *flūmen* is the antecedent in such combinations.

17-18. **alterā**: *second.* *Ūnus* and *alter* frequently have ordinal meanings, especially when followed by *tertius*. **tertiā**: *sc. ex parte.*

20-21. **Hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut**: *from these facts it resulted that*, etc.; *rēbus* is an abl. of cause; for the force of *fiēbat* and the following imperfects see A. 470 (277); B. 260, 1; G. 231; H. 534; H-B. 468, 2. **ut . . . possent**: subject of *fiēbat*, A. 569, 1 (332, a); B. 297, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, I; H-B. 521, 3, a. **fnitimis**: like *omnibus*, 12, above, dat. after a compound, *inferre*; here the verb is transitive and governs a direct object also, *bellum*. **quā ex parte**: *from this fact, for this reason.*

22. **hominēs**: (*as they were*) *people.* **bellandi cupidī**: *fond of making war*; for the gen. *bellandi* see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374, 5; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354.

23-26. **Prō multitudine hominum**: *in proportion to their population.* In chapter 29 the migrating host is given as 263,000. **glōriā belli atque fortitudinis**: *renown for bravery in war.* The English idiom leads us to expect *bellicae fortitudinis*, noun and adjective instead of coördinate nouns. For the hendiadys

see A. 640 (385); B. 374, 4; G. 698; H. 753, 3, N. 1; H-B. 631, 5
sē habēre arbitrābantur: *thought that they had*. **quī . . .**
patēbant: as the clause is not part of the indirect discourse,
 but a statement of fact added by the author, the mood is indic-
 ative. **mīlia**: for the case see A. 425 (257); B. 181; G. 335;
 H. 417; H-B. 387, I. **passuum**: the plural of *mille* is a
 substantive and is regularly followed by a genitive.

Construction of **Helvētiōs** 8, **cupiditāte**, **nōbilitātis** 10,
cōpiis 11, **virtūte** 12, **eīs** 14, **flūmine** 15, **dolōre** 22, **multitū-**
dine 23. Principal parts of **fēcit** 10, **persuāsit**, **exīrent** 11,
potīri 13, **flēbat** 20, **Inferre**, **possent** 21. Compare **minus**,
lātē 20, **facile** 21.

Page 3. 2-3. CHAPTER 3. **ea, quae . . . comparāre**:
to make those preparations which, explained in detail by the fol-
 lowing infinitives. **ad proficiēdum**: *to departure*, or *to*
the journey; for the gerund see A. 506 (300); B. 338, 3; G. 425;
 H. 628; H-B. 612, III. **pertinērent**: subjunctive due to
 informal indirect discourse, A. 591, 1 (341, d); B. 323;
 G. 628; H. 649, I; H-B. 535, 1, a. **quam māximum nu-**
merum: *the largest number possible*; for the superlative with
quam see A. 291, c (93, b); B. 240, 3; G. 303; H. 159, 2;
 H-B. 241, 4.

4-5. **ut . . . suppeteret**: *in order to have on hand*; for the
 mood see A. 531, 1 (317, 1); B. 282; G. 545, 1; H. 568;
 H-B. 502, 2.

6. **Ad . . . cōficiendās**: *to complete these preparations*,
 gerundive construction, like *ad effēminandōs animōs*, 1, 9. **rēs**:
 should be translated definitely, according to the context, here
preparations.

7. **sibi**: *for them*. **dūxērunt**: *deemed, considered*, as a verb
 of thinking governs indirect discourse, *biennium . . . esse*.
in: for.

8. **cōfirmant**: the historical present, A. 469 (276, d);
 B. 259, 3; G. 229; H. 532, 3; H-B. 491, 1.

10. **sibi suscipit**: *takes upon himself, undertakes*. **cōvitātēs**.

i.e. the neighboring Gallic tribes. **persuādet**: this historical present, as often, is followed by a past tense in the dependent clause, *occupāret*, 14, although the present subjunctive might have been employed.

12. **rēgnū**: see Introd. 62. **annōs**: for the case see A. 423 (256, 2); B. 181, 1; G. 336; H. 417; H-B. 387, II.

13-14. **senātū**: abl. of the agent. **amicus**: predicate nominative after *appellātus erat*. The title of "friend" was sometimes conferred by the Roman senate on foreign princes for friendly services or to secure their allegiance. **ut . . . occupāret**: to seize. **habuerit**: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *occupāret*; or we may read with the manuscripts *habuerat*, indicative in an independent statement of the author's, like *obtinuerat* and *appellātus erat*, above.

15. **Dumnorīgī**: dat. governed by *persuādet*, 17. **Dīviciāci**: an influential leader among the Haedui and a member of the priestly order of druids. He was at the head of the faction friendly to Rome. Some years before he had visited Rome in a vain attempt to secure aid against the Germans and Sequani. **quī**: refers to *Dumnorīgī*. **tempore**: abl. of time when.

16-17. **māximē plēbī acceptus**: a special favorite with the common people. **plēbī**: for the dat. dependent on *acceptus* see A. 384 (234); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, I. **eī**: dat. of indirect object.

19. **Perfacile factū**: very easy; *factū*, to do, may be omitted in translation; for the supine see A. 510 (303); B. 340, 2; G. 436; H. 635, 1; H-B. 619, 1. **illīs**: dat. of indirect object after *probat*. **perficere**: subject of *esse*.

20. **obtentūrus esset**: expected to gain, intended to gain; subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The periphrastic is employed to report a past intention.

21-22. **nōn esse dubium, quā . . . possent**: there was no doubt (he said), that the Helvetii were the most powerful (people) of all Gaul. For the subjunctive with *quā* see A. 558, a (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1; H-B. 521, 3, b. **plūrimū**: acc. expressing degree with *possent*, see A. 390, c (238, b); B.

176, 3, a; G. 334; H. 416, 2; H-B. 387, III. **illis**: dat. of indirect object. **conciatūrum**: sc. *esse*, often omitted in the future active and perfect passive infinitives.

23-24. **inter se dant**: *they exchange*. For the reciprocal use of *se* cf. 1, 4. **fidem et ius iurandum**: *an oath-bound pledge*, another instance of hendiadys. **regnō occupātō**: *by seizing supreme power, or if they should seize, etc.*; lit. *the supreme power having been seized*, abl. absolute, A. 420, 4 (255, 4); B. 227, 2, b; G. 409, 593, 2; H. 489, 1; H-B. 421, 6. **per**: with the accusative expresses indirect agency.

25-26. **Galliae**: the genitive, instead of the ablative, is sometimes governed by *potior*. **seesē . . . posse spērant**: *hope to be able*.

Construction of **sēmentēs** 4, **frūmentī** 5, **lēge** 8, **dux** 9, **Casticō**, **filiō** 11, **frātrī** 15, **Perfacile** 19, **cōpīs**, **exercitū** 22, **seesē** 25. Principal parts of **cōficiendās** 6, **dēligitur** 9, **suscipit** 10, **dat** 18. Compare **māximum** 3, **plūrimum** 21.

Page 4. 1. CHAPTER 4. **Ea res**: *this plan, this plot*. **per indicium**: abstract for concrete, equivalent to *per indicēs*, *by informers*. **Mōribus suis**: *in accordance with their custom*; for the case see A. 418, a (253, N.); B. 220, 3; G. 397; H. 475, 3; H-B. 414.

2. **ex vinculis**: *in chains*; lit. ? **coēgērunt**: like its English equivalent, *compel*, *cōgō* may govern an infinitive clause, here *Orgetorigem . . . dicere*. In the sense of *bring together*, 6, it governs an accusative alone.

3. **damnātum . . . oportēbat, ut Ignī cremārētur**: *if convicted, punishment by burning must befall him*; lit. *the punishment that he be burned must befall (him) convicted*. **damnātum** limits *eum* to be supplied as object of *sequi*. For the participle equivalent to a conditional clause see A. 496 (292); B. 337, 2, b; G. 667; H. 638, 2; H-B. 604, 3. **poenam**: subject of *sequi* and forming with it an infinitive clause, subject of the impersonal *oportēbat*. **ut . . . cremārētur**: substantive clause in apposition with *poenam*, A. 561, a (329, 2); B. 297, 3; G. 557;

H. 564, III; H-B. 502, 3, a, n. 1. Further mention of this form of punishment is made in Bk. VI, 16, 19, and Bk. VII, 4.

4. **Diē . . . dictiōnis**: *on the day set for pleading his case. causae*: objective genitive after *dictiōnis*.

5. **familiam**: *household*, especially those retainers whose condition was one of virtual slavery. See Introd. 63. **ad**: *about*, an adverb modifying *decem*. **mīlia**: *acc.*, in apposition with *familiam*.

6. **clientēs, obaerātōs**: for their status see Introd. 63.

7-9. **per eōs**: *through them*; not necessarily by actual violence, but by the fear their large numbers inspired. **nē diceret**: a clause of purpose, to be translated freely with *sē ēripuit, avoided standing trial*. **cum . . . cōnārētur**: for mood and tense see A. 546 (325); B. 288, 1, B; G. 585; H. 600, II, 1; H-B. 524.

11-12. **neque abest suspiciō . . . quīn**: *and the suspicion is not lacking . . . that*, etc., an instance of litotes, and so equivalent to *there is a strong suspicion*. *neque abest suspiciō* is akin in meaning to *nōn esse dubium*, 3, 21; see note there for the *quīn* clause. Observe *neque*, meaning *and not*, and *ut, as*, a frequent meaning with an indicative following. The emphasis in *ipse* is sufficiently preserved in the English *suicide*.

Construction of **Helvētiīs** 1, **ignī** 3, **Diē** 4, **hominum** 5, **quōrum** 6, **rem** 8, **armīs** 9, **sibi** 12. Principal parts of **coēgērunt** 2, **sequī**, **oportēbat** 3, **cōnstitūtā** 4, **mortuus est** 10, **cōnscīverit** 12.

13. CHAPTER 5. **nihilō**: *abl. of degree of difference*; with *minus*, *nevertheless*; *lit. less by nothing*.

14. **ut ē . . . exeant**: (*viz.*) *to leave*, a substantive clause in apposition with *id*.

15. **Ubi iam**: *when at length*. In narration *ubi* is most frequently followed by the perfect indicative. **parātōs**: predicate adjective, *sē* being the subject of *esse*. **oppida**: towns with natural or artificial fortifications.

16. **numerō**: *in number*, *abl. of specification*. **ad**: *about*, an adverb as in 5, above. **vīcōs**: unprotected villages.

17. **privāta aedificia**: isolated dwellings in the country.

18-19. **praeter quod**: *except what*, equivalent to *praeter id quod*. **portātūrī erant**: *they intended to take*. **ut . . . parātiōrēs . . . essent**: *in order to be better prepared*, a clause of purpose. **domum**: acc. after the idea of motion in *reditiōnis*, A. 427, 2 (258, b); B. 182, 1, b; G. 337; H. 419, 1; H-B. 450, b. **spē ablātā**: abl. absolute, *by removing the hope*.

20-21. **trium mēnsium**: *to last three months, a three months' supply of*, gen. of measure, A. 345, b (215, b); B. 203, 2; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. **quemque . . . efferre**: for the construction after *iubent* see A. 563, a (331, a); B. 331, II; G. 423, 2, n. 6; H. 565, 3; H-B. 587. **domō**: for the case see A. 427, 1 (258, a); B. 229, 1, b; G. 390, 2; H. 462, 4; H-B. 451, a.

23-24. **utī . . . ūsī . . . exustis . . . proficiſcantur**: lit. *having adopted the same plan, their towns having been burned, to set out along with them*, but translated best by three infinitives, *to adopt . . . to burn . . . and to set out*. **cōnsiliō**: for the abl. with *utor* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477; H-B. 429. **eīs**: referring to the Helvetii, used instead of the reflexive *sē* to avoid applying *suīs* and *sē*, in close proximity, to different persons.

24-26. **Bōiōsque . . . receptōs . . . adsciscunt**: *and they admit to their numbers and ally with themselves the Boii*. **receptōs** is equivalent to a finite verb coördinate with *adsciscunt*; cf. *damnātum*, 3, above, equivalent to a conditional clause. **oppugnārant**: contracted from *oppugnāverant*.

Construction of **ſius**, **mortem**, **id** 13, **reditiōnis**, **pericula subeunda** 19, **sibi** 20, **finitimis** 22. Principal parts of **incendunt** 17, **sublātā**, **subeunda** 19, **efferre**, **iubent** 21, **ūsī** 23, **proficiſcantur** 24, **receptōs** 26.

Page 5. 1-2. CHAPTER 6. **Erant**: *there were*, a common meaning of the verb *sum* standing at the beginning of a sentence. **omnīnō itinera duo**: *only two routes*, i.e. for migration westward. **itineribus**: omī in translation. In Latin an antecedent may be repeated in the relative clause. The

ablative is employed to express the way by which. **quibus** . . . **possent**: a clause of characteristic, A. 535, a (320, a); B. 283, 1, 2; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 5; H-B. 521, 1. **per Sēquanōs**: *through (the country of) the Sequani*. **angustum**: the narrowest point is at the Pas de l'Écluse.

3-5. **vix quā** . . . **dūcerentur**: *where carts could hardly be hauled one at a time*. For the mood see references on **possent**, 2, above, but H-B. 517, 2. The normal order, **quā viz**, is reversed to emphasize **vix**. **quā** is an adverb. **ut** . . . **possent**: *so that*, etc., for the mood see A. 537, 1 (319, 1); B. 284, 1; G. 552, 1; H. 570; H-B. 521, 2. **prohibēre**: sc. **eōs** as object.

6. **multō**: adverb, in origin the abl. neuter of *multus* expressing degree of difference.

7. **Allobrogum**: the Allobroges as far back as 121 B.C. had submitted to Roman domination. A deputation came to Rome in 63 asking for a redress of certain grievances. Failing of their object, the tribe rose in revolt in 62, but was subdued by the praetor C. Pomptinus.

8-9. **nōn nullis locis**: *in several places*; for the abl. without a preposition see A. 429, 1 (258, f); B. 228, 1, b; G. 385, N. 1; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436. **vadō trānsitur**: *is forded, can be forded*; the abl. is one of means.

11. **finibus**: dat. after *proximum*.

13. **bonō animō**: *in a friendly mood*, in the predicate after **vidērentur**. For the case see A. 415 (251); B. 224, 1; G. 400; H. 473, 2; H-B. 443. **in**: *towards*. **vidērentur**: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

14-15. **ut** . . . **paterentur**: *to allow*, substantive clause, object of **persuāsūrōs** and **coāctūrōs**. An infinitive clause is the normal construction in Caesar after **cōgō**, *compel* (cf. 4, 2); the **ut** clause here is due to **persuāsūrōs**. **suōs**: refers to the Allobroges, **eōs** to the Helvetii. See note on **eis**, 4, 24. **eōs ire**: infinitive clause, the usual construction in Caesar after *patior*, *allow*, *permit*. **omnibus** . . . **comparātis**: abl. absolute, *having made all preparations for departure, or when they had made*, etc.

16. **quā** . . . **omnēs conveniant**: *on which all are to assemble*

(omit *diē* in translation). For the mood see A. 531, 2 (317, 2); B. 282, 2; G. 630; H. 590; H-B. 502, 2.

17-18. **diēs**: observe the change of gender from *diē*, and see A. 97, a (73); B. 53; G. 64; H. 135; H-B. 101. **a. d. V. Kal. Apr.**, i.e. *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs*, March 28th by the pre-Julian calendar, March 24th by the Julian. For Roman dates see A. 631, 424, g (376, 259, e); B. 371, 5, d; G. p. 491; H. 754, III, 2; H-B. 664, 667. **L. Pīōne, A. Gabīniō cōn-sulibus**; i.e. in 58 B.C.

Construction of **domō** 1, **Helvētiōrum**, **quī** 7, **Genava** 11. Compare **difficile** 2, **expeditius** 6, **Extrēmum** 10, **bonō** 13. Explain the tense of **Erant** 1, **possent** 2, **impendēbat** 4, **pācāti erant**, **fluit** 8, **existimābant** 14, **dīcunt** 16. Principal parts of **fluit** 8, **vidērentur** 13, **paterentur** 15, **conveniant** 16.

19. CHAPTER 7. **Caesarī**: dat. of indirect object. The word belongs grammatically with the subordinate *cum* clause, but is the source of a subject for *mātūrat*. In such a combination of functions a noun is frequently put first in the sentence. **id**: it, explained by *eōs . . . cōnārī*. **cum . . . nūntiātum esset**: for mood and tense see note on *cōnārētur*, 4, 9.

20. **ab urbe**: *from (the vicinity of) the city*, "the city" being Rome. As a proconsul invested with military authority Caesar could not remain within the city limits. **proficiāscī**: infinitive, complementary to *mātūrat*.

21. **quam . . . itineribus**: *by the most rapid travel possible*; *potest*, though unnecessary, is used to reënforce *quam* with the superlative. According to Plutarch the journey was accomplished in eight days. **Galliam ulteriōrem**: i.e. the Transalpine province.

22-23. **ad**: with town names after verbs of motion *ad* means *into the vicinity of*, after verbs of rest *in the vicinity of*. **Prōvinciae . . . imperat**: *calls upon the whole province for*, etc. For the dat. with *imperō* see A. 369 (227, f); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 424; H-B. 364, 4. The usual construction after *imperō* is a dative and an objective clause introduced by *ut* or *nē*; the clause is here replaced by a noun, *numerus*.

24-25. **legiō ūna**: the 10th legion, which became Caesar's favorite. **quī erat ad Genavam**: *at Geneva*. Latin frequently employs a relative clause where English uses an adjective phrase.

Page 6. 1-2. **lēgātōs . . . mittunt**: the Helvetian emigrants as a whole had not yet assembled at the Rhone. **nō-bilissimōs**: a substantive. **cūius lēgātīōnis**: *an embassy of which*. An appositional antecedent regularly stands in the relative clause, taking the case of the relative.

4-5. **quī dīcerent**: *to say*, a relative clause of purpose. **sibi esse in animō**: *that they had it in mind, that they intended*. For the case of *sibi* see A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H-B. 374. **facere**: subject of *esse*.

6. **nūllum**: placed last in the sentence for emphasis. **rogāre**: sc. *sē* as subject. The accusative subject of an infinitive is sometimes omitted, if readily understood from the context. **ut . . . sibi liceat**: *that they be permitted to do so*; for the mood see A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 530, 2. *sibi* is dat. after *liceat*, of which *facere* is the subject. **voluntāte**: *with his approval*; for the case see A. 418, a (253, n.); B. 221; G. 397; H. 473, 3; H-B. 414, a.

7-8. **Caesar**: in thought the common subject of *tenēbat* and *putābat*, and so placed first. **L. Cassium . . . occīsum exercitumque . . . missum**: indirect discourse after *memoriā tenēbat*. This defeat occurred in 107 B.C., at the time of the invasion of the Cimbri, with whom part of the Helvetii allied themselves.

9. **iugum**: *yoke*, two upright spears, with a third spear fixed crosswise, under which the defeated army marched in token of submission. **concedendum (esse) nōn putābat**: *thought permission should not be given*. The infinitive is impersonal. **neque**: *and not*; take the negative with *existimābat*.

10-11. **inimīcō animō**: *unfriendly disposed*, abl. of quality, like *animō*, 5, 13. **datā facultāte**: *if given the opportunity*, abl. absolute; lit.? **itineris faciundī**: *of marching*; for the gerundive construction see A. 503, 504 (297, 298); B. 339, 1; G. 427, 428; H. 626, 1; H-B. 612, 1.

12-13. **dum militēs . . . convenirent**: *until the soldiers . . . should assemble*; for the mood and tense see A. 553 (328); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5. **diem**: *time*.

14-15. **si quid vellent, . . . reverterentur**: *if they wanted anything, let them return*, equivalent to *si quid vultis, . . . revertimini*, in direct discourse. For the subjunctive, *reverterentur*, see A. 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642; H-B. 538. **ad**: *by, or about*. **Id. April**: *April 18th*.

Construction of **eōs** 5, 19, **facere** 20, **itineribus** 21, **pontem** 24, **rescindī** 25; **certiorēs** 6, 1, **maleficiō** 4, **habērent** 5, **posset** 12, **lēgātis** 13. Principal parts of **pervenit** 5, 22, **rescindī** 25; **occosum**, **pulsum** 6, 8, **concēdendum** 9, **intercēdere** 12, **respondit** 13, **sūmptūrum**, **vellent** 14, **reverterentur** 15.

16. CHAPTER 8. **legiōne, militibus**: abl. of means.

20-21. **mārum**: merely an earthen rampart. In all probability this was not a continuous fortification, for the southern bank of the Rhone was in most places precipitous enough to constitute a natural barrier. At the few points where the slope of the bank was gradual, the upper part of the slope was cut down, and a trench was excavated at the foot of the cutting. Colonel Stoffel estimated the total length of the works at these few places to be about 5000 meters. The *castella* were probably earthen redoubts, located, presumably, in proximity to the various sections of the rampart. The *præsidia* were detachments of troops, stationed doubtless in the *castella*. **pedum**: gen. of measure; cf. *mēnsium*, 4, 20. **dispōnit, commūnit**: the omission of a conjunction, *et* here, between coördinate verbs is called asyndeton. **castella commūnit**: *establishes strong redoubts*.

22-23. **quō facilius . . . prohibēre posset**: *that he might be able to stop them the more easily*; for the use of *quō* and the mood see A. 531, 2, a (317, b); B. 282, 1, a; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7; H-B. 502, 2, b. **si . . . cōnārentur**: *if they should attempt*, a condition future to the past verb *posset*, upon which it depends. **sē invitō**: *against his wish*, abl. absolute.

Page 7. 2. *negat*: says not, the negative to be taken with *posse*. *mōre et exemplō*: in accordance with the custom and precedent.

4-5. *prohibitūrum*: sc. *sē* and *eōs* as subject and object respectively. *eā spē dēiectī*: disappointed in this hope; *spē* is abl. of separation. *nāvibus iunctis*, etc.: abl. absolute, with accessory idea of means. Apparently bridges of boats are meant by the first phrase.

6. *alii*: another *alii*, which we should expect before *nāvibus*, may be supplied in translation, *disappointed in this hope, some of the Helvetii . . . others*, etc.

7-9. *sī . . . possent*, *cōnātī*: having tried (to see) if they could; for the mood see A. 576, a (334, f); B. 300, 3; G. 460, 1 b; H. 649, II, 3; H-B. 582, 2, a. *operis mūnitiōne*: by the protecting intrenchment. *cōnātū*: abl. of separation.

Construction of *mīlia* 6, 19, *opere* 21; *sē*, *mōre* 7, 2, *posse*, *alii* 3, *cōnentur* 4, *vadis* 6. Principal parts of *infuit* 6, 18, *dispōnit* 21; *vēnit* 7, 1, *ostendit* 4, *iunctis* 5, *dēstitērunt* 9.

Page 8. 1-3. CHAPTER 9. *Relinquēbātur*: there was left, there remained. *ūna*: one only, only the. *per Sēquanōs*: an adjective phrase limiting *via*. *Sēquanis invitis*: translate as *sē invitō*, 6, 22, or as a condition. *angustiās*: i.e. at the Pas de l'Écluse. *cum . . . possent*: since, etc.; for the mood see A. 549 (326); B. 286, 2; G. 586; H. 598; H-B. 526.

4. *eō dēprecātore*: by his intercession, abl. absolute; lit.? *impetrārent*: gain their request or object. The verb is here used absolutely, i.e. without an object.

5. *grātiā, largitiōne*: may be regarded as abl. of means or cause.

6. *plūrimum*: acc. of degree with *poterat*. *Helvētiis*: for the case depending on *amicus* see A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, II.

7. *filiam . . . dūxerat*: for the fact cf. 3, 17-18.

8-9. *novis rēbus*: revolution. For the case see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426; H-B. 362, II. *quam plūrimās*:

as many as possible. **habēre obstrictās**: to have under obligations, slightly different from *obstringere* in that the phrase emphasizes the continuance of the relation.

10-14. **rem**: task, mission. **ā Sēquanis impetrat, ut . . . patiantur**: induces the Sequani to permit; lit.? **obsidēs uti . . . dent, perficit**: brings about an exchange of hostages. For the objective clauses, *ut . . . patiantur* and *uti . . . dent*, see A. 568 (332): B. 297, 1; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3; H-B. 521, 3, a. **Sēquanī, Helvētī**: sc. *obsidēs dant*. **nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . transeant**: purposes of the exchange of hostages.

Construction of **Sēquanīs** 1, **angustiās**, **Hīs** 2, **impe-trarent** 4, **dūxerat** 7, **cupiditāte**, **rēgnī** 8, **ire** 11, **itinerē** 12. Principal parts of **Relinquēbātur** 1, **studēbat** 8, **obstrictās**, **volēbat** 9, **patiantur** 11.

14. CHAPTER 10. **Helvētīs esse in animō**: the Helvetii intend. For case of *Helvētīs* see note on *sibi*, 6, 4. The subject of *esse* is *facere*, 16.

16-17. **quae civitās**: a state which. For the position of the relative see note on *cūius lēgatiōnis*, 6, 2. **absunt, est**: indicative, because the clauses in which these verbs stand are not part of the indirect discourse, but are inserted by the narrator.

17-20. **Id si fieret**: if this should happen. **māgnō . . . futūrum (esse), ut . . . habēret**: it would be very dangerous to the province for it to have. **prōvinciae**: genitive, but best translated as above. For *ut . . . habēret* (lit. *that it should have*), substantive clause subject of *futūrum (esse)*, see A. 569, a (332, a, 288, f); B. 297, 2, 270, 3, a; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1, 619, 2; H-B. 521, 3, a, 472, c. **locīs**: dat. after *finitimōs*, as neighbors (to). The western districts of the Transalpine province are meant. **patentibus**: exposed, i.e. without a barrier of mountains or other natural protection. **mūnitiōnī**: for the dat. with *praeficit* see A. 370, a (228, n. 1); B. 187, III, 2; G. 347, 3; H. 429, 1; H-B. 376, a.

21. **T. Labiēnum**: Caesar's ablest and most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic war. In the Civil war he espoused the cause

of Pompey and the senate. He was killed at the battle of Munda.

22-23. *Italiam*: i.e. the Cisalpine province. *duās legiōnēs*: the 11th and 12th. *trēs*: the 7th, 8th, and 9th. *circum*: winter quarters were usually established in the vicinity of, not in, a town. *Aquilēsiā*: founded in 182 B.C., strongly fortified and garrisoned to resist Gauls and Illyrians.

24-25. *quā proximū iter . . . erat*: by the shortest route. See map, Campaign of 58. The route is not absolutely certain. *quinque*: these, with the 10th legion left to guard the Rhone, would give Caesar perhaps 25,000 men. He had also 4000 Gallic cavalry.

Page 9. 3. *Complūribus*: with *proeliis*. *his pulsīs*: abl. absolute. *ab Ocelō*: from the vicinity of Ocelum, A. 428, a (258, a, n. 1); B. 229, 2; H. 462, 3; H-B. 453, 1.

6. *in Segusiāvōs*: Caesar's camp was pitched probably on the heights of Sathonay, where Labienus doubtless joined him with the 10th legion. Two months may have been required for the trip to and from Italy and the recruiting of the new legions. It was now, therefore, about June 7th of the Julian calendar, which will be followed for dates in these notes.

Construction of *Caesari*, *esse* 8, 14, *periculō* 18, *populi* 19, *Aquilēsiā* 23, *legiōnibus*, *ire* 25; *prōvinciae* 9, 5, *prīmī* 8. Principal parts of *intellegēbat* 8, 17, *praeficit* 21, *cōn-scribit* 23.

9-10. CHAPTER 11. *Helvētī . . . in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant*: the unwieldy column of emigrants could move but slowly, and had gone only so far in their westward journey during the two months of Caesar's absence.

11. *Haedui*: among the first Gallic peoples to form an alliance with the Romans, about 123 B.C. See Intro. 68. *cum*: causal, since. *sē suaque*: themselves and their property.

13-16. *rogātum*: to beg; for the use of the supine see A. 509 (302); B. 340, 1, a; G. 435, n. 3; H. 633; H-B. 618, a. *ita sē . . . dē . . . meritōs esse*: their deserts as regards the Roman

people had always been such, indirect discourse after the verb of saying implied in *rogatum*. **ut . . . nōn dēbuerint**: that their fields ought not to have been laid waste, etc., a negative clause of result. For tense of *dēbuerint* see A. 485, c (287, c); B. 268, 6; G. 513; H. 550; H-B. 478, 582, 3, a.

18-19. **Caesarem certiōrem faciunt**: inform Caesar (lit. ?); a phrase of frequent occurrence, followed by indirect discourse or by *dē* with the ablative. **dēpopulātis**: perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes used as passives. **nōn facile . . . prohibēre**: translate freely, found it difficult to keep off.

22. **sibi . . . nihil esse reliquū**: they had nothing left. *sibi* is dat. of possession. For the gen. *reliquū* dependent on *nihil* see A. 346, a, 1 (216, a, 1); B. 201, 1; G. 369; H. 440, 5; H-B. 346, a.

23-25. **nōn expectandum sibi statuit**: decided that he must not wait. *expectandum (esse)* is impersonal; for the case of *sibi* see A. 374, a (232); B. 189, 1; G. 355; H. 431; H-B. 373, 1. **dum . . . pervenirent**: until they should arrive; for the mood see A. 553 (328); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5.

Construction of **tempore** 17, **certiōrem** 18, **hostium** 19, **solum** 22. Principal parts of **trādūxerant** 10, **dēfendere** 12, **dēbuerint** 16, **recipiunt** 21.

Page 10. 1. CHAPTER 12. **per**: through, the territories of the two peoples being regarded loosely as one tract.

2. **incrēdibilī lēnitāte**: abl. of quality, limiting *flūmen*.

3. **in utram partem fluat**: an indirect question.

4. **ratibus, lintribus**: abl. of means. **iūctis**: with *lintribus* only. **trāsībant**: were crossing.

5-6. **partēs . . . flūmen trādūxisse**: had led three fourths of their forces across this river; for the two accusatives see A. 395, N. 1 (239, 2, b); B. 179, 1; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413; H-B. 386.

7. **citrā**: i.e. on the east side. **Ararim**: for the acc. ending see A. 74, d, 75, a, 1 (55, d, 56, a, 1); B. 38, 1; G. 57, R. 1;

H. 102, 3, N.; H-B. 88, 1. **reliquam**: equivalent to *relictam*. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: in the course of the third watch, i.e. after midnight. *dē*, lit. *out of*, in such expressions indicates that the watch has begun. For the divisions of the night see Introd. 30.

Page 11. 1. **quae . . . trāsierat**: the attack on the Tigurini occurred probably from ten to twelve miles north of Caesar's camp.

3. **mandārun**t: contracted from *mandāvērunt*. **in**: *in*, lit. *into*, followed by the accusative because of the idea of motion in *abdidērunt*.

5. **dīvis**a est: is divided, as in 1, 1.

6-7. **cum**: *when*. **memoriā**: abl. of time when. **L. Cas-**
sium: cf. 6, 7-8, and note.

8. **sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō**: *by chance or by the intention*. The ablative of certain nouns in very common use is used to express manner without a preposition.

9-10. **quae pars . . . ea**: *that part which*; for the position of the antecedent see A. 307, b, N. (200, b, N.); B. 251, 4, a; G. 616, 1; H. 399, 3; H-B. 284, 6. **populō Rōmānō**: *on the Roman people*, dat. of indirect object after *intulerat*. **princeps persolvit**: *was the first to pay, first paid*; for use of the adjective with adverbial force see A. 290 (191); B. 241, 2; G. 325, 6; H. 497, 3; H-B. 243.

11-13. **Quā**: not *which*. **ēius**: *his*. **L. Pisōnis**: consul in this year, 58, father of Caesar's third wife, Calpurnia. **avum**: object of *interfēcerant*.

Construction of **oculis**, **possit** 10, 3, **Helvētiōs**, **trādūxisse** 6, **reliquam** 7, **profectus** 8, **fugae** 11, 3, **Tigurīnus** 4, **domō**, **exisset** 6. Principal parts of **adgressus**, **concīdit** 11, 2, **abdidērunt** 4, **interfēcerat** 7, **ultus est** 12.

15. CHAPTER 13. **Hōc proeliō factō**; *after this battle*, which occurred about June 10th. **ut**: may be removed from its normal position at the head of its clause, in order to emphasize some word or phrase, here *reliquās cōpiās*.

16. **pontem . . . cūrat**: *he causes a bridge to be built over the*

Arar; possibly a pontoon bridge is meant. **faciendum**: for the gerundive after *cūrō* and the like see A. 500, 4 (294, d); B. 337, 8, b, 2; G. 430; H. 622; H-B. 612, III.

18-19. **id**: object of *fēcisse*, is explained by the appositive clause, *ut . . . trānsirent*, A. 561, a, 568 (329, 332); B. 297, 3; G. 557; H. 571, 4; H-B. 521, 3, a, n. Translate with the clause as object, *knew that he had accomplished the passage of the river in one day, a thing which they, etc.* **diēbus vīgintī**: *in twenty days*, abl. of the time within which, or in the course of which.

21. **bellō**: abl. of time when. As Cassius's defeat occurred in 107, Divico must have been an old man in 58.

22. **sī pācem**, etc.: Divico's speech stands in indirect discourse. Review the principles in the grammar, A. 580 ff.; (336 ff.); B. 314 ff.; G. 650 ff.; H. 642 ff.; H-B. 589, 534 ff.

23-24. **faceret**: *would make*; direct, *will make*. **cōstituisset**: *should have established*; direct, *you shall have established* (second person, Divico addressing Caesar in person).

Page 12. 1. **sīn . . . perseverāret**: *but if he persisted in*; direct, *but if you persist in*, etc. **reminisceretur**: *let him remember*; direct, *remember* (imperative).

2. **incommodī, virtūtis**: for the construction with verbs of remembering see A. 350, c (219); B. 206, 2; G. 376; H. 454; H-B. 350.

3. **Quod . . . adortus esset**: *as to the fact that he (you) attacked*, etc., or *as to his (your) unexpected attack on one division*; for the use of *quod* see A. 572, a (333, a); B. 299, 2; G. 525, 2; H. 588, II, 3, n.; H-B. 552, 2.

5-7. **nē . . . tribueret**: *let him not give*, etc.; direct, *don't give any great credit to your own valor*. *tribueret* is used absolutely. **ipsōs**: i.e. the Helvetii, used instead of *sē* to avoid applying *suae* and *sē* to different persons. **ut . . . contenderent**, etc.: clauses of result; *ut* is to be understood after *quam*.

8-10. **dolō, insidiis**: the abl. without *in* is used with *nūtor*, *rely upon*. **nē committeret, ut is locus . . . nōmen cape-**

ret: let him not cause, etc.; direct, don't cause the place . . . to take its name. The *ut* clause is a substantive clause of result, object of *committeret*. **ubi cōstitissent**: where they should make their (we shall make our) stand.

Construction of **proeliō** 11, 15, **adventū** 17. What would be the mood in direct discourse of **posset** 11, 16, **intellegerent** 19; **possent** 12, 5? Principal parts of **cōsequi** 11, 16, **commōti** 18, **ēgit** 22; **adortus esset** 12, 3.

12. CHAPTER 14. **His**: sc. *lēgātis*. Caesar's reply is also in indirect discourse. Direct, *I feel less hesitation because I am aware of the facts which you (envoys) have related, and I am the more incensed the less these things happened according to the deserts of the Roman people, etc.* **eō**: abl. of cause, expl. by *quod* causal. **dubitātiōnis**: gen. of the whole after *minus*.

14. **eō, quō**: the . . . the, correlatives, abl. of degree of difference; lit. *by that much . . . by how much*. **ferre**: sc. *sē* as subject.

15. **quī sī**: if they, i.e. the Roman people. **sī alicūius**: if some; *sī cuius* would mean if any. **iniūriae**: for the gen. depending on *cōnscius* see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354.

16. **fuisset**: the same mood and tense would stand in direct discourse, in a past condition contrary to fact. **fuisse**: in direct discourse we should have. *fuit*, indicative, because the possibility of being on their guard was a fact irrespective of the condition. Caesar might have said *would have been on their guard*, for which the subjunctive, *cāvisset*, would have been employed. **eō**: by the fact, explained by the substantive appositive clause, *quod . . . putāret, that, etc.*

17-18. **commissum (esse)**, **timendum (esse)**: impersonals, *did not know they had done anything, did not think they ought to fear*. **quārē timēret**: on account of which they should fear, a relative clause with the subjunctive expressing propriety. **Quod sī**: but if, now if; for the case and force of *quod* see A. 397, a (240, b); B. 185, 2; G. 610, R. 2; H. 510, 9; H-B. 385, a, N.

19. **contumēliae**: gen. after a verb of forgetting; cf. *incommodi* after *reminisceretur*, 2, above. **vellet**: direct, *vellem*, in a present condition contrary to fact. The conclusion, **posse**, 22, represents direct *possum*, A. 586 (338); B. 315, 2; G. 651, R. 1; H. 642, 2; H-B. 591, a. **num**: introducing an indirect question, is equivalent to *-ne*.

20-21. **infūriarum**: depends on *memoriam*, 22. **quod**, etc.: *that*, etc., substantive appositive clauses explaining *iniuriarum*. **iter . . . per vim temptassent**: *had tried to force their way*.

22-24. **Quod . . . admirarentur**: *that they boasted . . . and were surprised*, substantive clauses, subjects of *pertinere*. **viōtōriā**: abl. of cause. **tam diū sē . . . intulisse**: *at having inflicted*, etc.; lit. *that they had inflicted*, depending on *admirarentur*. **eōdem pertinere**: *pointed in the same direction*, hinting apparently at their approaching punishment in accordance with divine will; cf. the following lines.

26-28. **Cōnsuēsse**: (contracted from *cōnsuēvisse*); direct, *cōnsuērunt* (lit. *have become accustomed*), *are wont*, to which *concedere*, 28, is complementary. Other verbs showing the same force of the perfect are *nōvi*, *I know*, *memini*, *I remember*, *ōdi*, *I hate*. **quō . . . doleant**: a clause of purpose; see references on 6, 22. In this sentence the tenses are all primary, the author having chosen to shift the point of view to the present in the statement of a general truth. **his**: refers to *quōs* and *hominēs*. **secundiorēs rēs**: *unusual prosperity*. When the standard of comparison is omitted the Latin comparative may be translated by *too*, *rather more than usual*, or by some equivalent; so *diuturniorem*, *unusually long*.

Page 13. 1. **sint**: for the mood see A. 549 (326); B. 309, 3; G. 587; H. 598; H-B. 526. **dentur**: direct, *dabuntur*.

2. **factūrōs (esse)**: a subject is to be understood from *eis*, 1. **Haeduīs (and Allobrogibus)**: dat. of indirect object after *satisfaciant*, *make reparation to*.

5. **factūrum (esse)**: direct, *faciam*, future indicative.

7. *utī . . . cōnsuērint*: a clause of result. *nōn*: take closely with *dare*.

8. *ēius rei . . . esse testem*: referring to the fact that the survivors of Cassius's army had been compelled to give hostages to the Helvetii.

Construction of *eō invitō* 12, 20, *sē* 23, *intulisse* 24, *hīs* 27, *ipsīs*, *sociīs* 13, 3. Subject of *fuisse* 12, 16. Principal parts of *timēret* 12, 18, *obliviscī* 19, *Cōnsuēsse* 25, *doleant* 26, *polliceantur* 13, 2, *satisfaciant* 4, *institūtōs* 6, *discessit* 9.

10. CHAPTER 15. *castra . . . movent*: as the mountains prevented a direct march west for so large a number, the Helvetii followed the valley of the Saône for some distance, then turned northwest.

13. *coāctum habēbat*: *had collected*; for the perfect participle with *habēō* see A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 431, 3; H-B. 605, 5, a. *quī videant*: *to see*, a relative clause of purpose; *quī* is plural from the implied plural in the collective antecedent, *equitātum*. *quās in partēs*: *in what direction*, etc., an indirect question, hence the subjunctive.

14-15. *Quī*: *they, these*. *cupidius*: *too eagerly*. For the comparative with the standard unexpressed see note on *secundiorēs*, 12, 27. *locō*: for the locative abl. without a preposition see A. 429, 1 (258, f, 1); B. 228, 1, b, 385, n. 1; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436.

16. *paucī . . . cadunt*: in Chapter 18 we are told that the remainder fled through the treachery of their leader, Dumnorix. *dē nostrīs*: *of our men*; for the partitive expression see A. 346, c (216, c); B. 201, 1, a; G. 372, r. 2; H. 444; H-B. 346, e.

17. *equitibus*: abl. of means.

19. *novissimō agmine*: *from their rear line*. *proeliō*, in battle.

20-22. *satis habēbat . . . prohibēre*: *deemed it sufficient to prevent*. *rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque*: abl. of separation; the plural of abstract nouns is frequently

employed in the sense of *acts of so and so*. **diēs . . . quīndecim**: June 13-27.

24. **nōn amplius . . . interesset**: *there was an interval of not more than five or six miles each day*. The distributives **quīnis** and **sēnis** are used with reference to successive days. For **milibus** governed by **amplius** see A. 406 (247); B. 217, 1; G. 296; H. 471; H-B. 416, d.

Construction of **diē** 10, **proeliō**, **sublātī** 16, **diēs** 22, **interesset** 24. Principal parts of **insecūtī** 14, **cadunt** 16, **prōpulerant** 18, **laccessere**, **coepērunt** 19. Compare **cupidius** 14, **audācius** 18.

Page 14. 1-2. CHAPTER 16. **Haeduōs frūmentum** **flāgitāre**: *kept importuning the Haedui for the grain which (as he reminded them) they had promised in the name of the state*. For the two accusatives, **Haeduōs**, **frūmentum**, see A. 396, N. (239, c); B. 178, 1, a; G. 339; H. 411, 2; H-B. 393. For **flāgitāre**, historical infinitive with subject nominative, see A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H-B. 595. **essent pollicitī**: Caesar the author reports informally the words of Caesar the general, hence the subjunctive, A. 592, 1, 3 (341, b, d); B. 323; G. 508, 3; H. 649, I; H-B. 535, a. **frīgora**: *the cold seasons, the cold climate*, the plural marking the cold as a general characteristic. To a Roman the climate would seem cold in comparison with that of Italy. The climate has probably become milder since Caesar's time.

4. **posita**: predicate adjective. **frūmenta**: the plural is used of *standing grain, crops*.

5. **nē . . . quidem**: this phrase regularly emphasizes the enclosed word. Scanty forage was doubtless due, partly, to the large number of animals belonging to the Helvetii.

6. **frūmentō**: abl. governed by **utī**, 7. **flūmine**: *up the river*, abl. of the way by which. **nāvibus**: *in boats*, abl. of means.

8-9. **Diem ex diē dūcere**: *put him off day after day*. **Diem** is acc. of duration of time, **dūcere** and **dicere** are historical

infinitives. **cōnferri**, **comportāri**, **adesse**: sc. *frūmentum* as subject.

10-11. **diūtius**: too long. **quō . . . oportēret**: when it would be necessary to issue grain to his soldiers. **mētīri**: subject of the impersonal *oportēret*. For the distribution of grain see Introd. 22.

12. **cōpiam**: equivalent to *numerus*.

13. **in his**: among them. **summō magistrātui praeerat**: held the highest office. For the dat. governed by *praeerat* see A. 370 (228); B. 187, III; G. 347; H. 429; H-B. 376.

14. **quem**: the grammatical antecedent is *magistrātui*, the logical antecedent the officer himself. **vergobretum**: a Celtic word meaning *judgment dealer*. Caesar tells us in the seventh book that the vergobret was not allowed to leave the state during his term of office. **annuus**: annually, adjective translated as adverb; cf. *princeps*, 11, 10.

15. **in suōs**: over his people.

16-20. **quod . . . nōn sublevētur**: the reason given by Caesar the general, hence the subjunctive; cf. *essent polliciti*, 2, above. **possit**: sc. *frūmentum* as subject. For the mood see A. 593 (342); B. 324, 1; G. 663, 1; H. 652; H-B. 539. **propinquīs hostibus**: abl. absolute. **māgnā ex parte**: to a great extent, largely. **sit dēstitūtus**: the subjv. again in a reported reason, like *sublevētur*.

Construction of **pābuli** 5, **cōnferri** 9, **militibus** 11, **Diviciācō**, **Liscō** 13, **vergobretum**, **annuus** 14, **tempore** 17, **suscēperit** 19, **sit dēstitūtus** 20. Principal parts of **posita** 4, **averterant**, **nōlēbat** 8, **cōnferri** 9, **mētīri** 11, **emī** 16, **queritur** 20.

22. CHAPTER 17. **quod**: antecedent unexpressed; so in English, *set forth what he had before kept silent about*. Observe the verb *taceō* used transitively. **esse nōn nūllōs**: indirect discourse; direct, *there are some whose prestige . . . is very great, who have more authority. . . . These men . . . are hindering the people*, etc. There were two factions among the Haedui, one led by Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, the other led by Dum-

norix, national and patriotic, and desirous of shaking off allegiance to Rome. The leaders of the patriotic party are here referred to in the words *nōn nullōs*.

23-24. *plūrimum, plūs*: acc. of degree. *privātim*: translate as if *privātī*, (though only) private citizens.

Page 15. 1-3. *nē... cōnferant*: from collecting; dependent on *dēterrēre*, A. 558, b (331, e); B. 295, 3; G. 548; H. 566; H-B. 502, 3, b. *praestāre*: it is better (they say); the subject is the infinitive *perferre*, 4. Liscus here summarizes (lines 2-6) the arguments of the anti-Roman agitators. *iam nōn*: no longer. *possint*: sc. *Haedui* as subject.

4-6. *neque dubitāre dēbēre*: sc. as subject *sē* (referring to the agitators), they have no reason to doubt (they say). *quīn... sint ōreptūrī*: that they (i.e. the Romans) will take away, or intend to take away. For the mood see A. 558, a (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1; H-B. 521, 3, b. The periphrastic subjunctive is generally used after *nōn dubitō quīn* to avoid any ambiguity as to the future meaning. *superāverint*: perfect subjunctive, shall have vanquished. *Haeduis*: from the *Haedui*; for the case see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G. 347, 5; H. 429, 2; H-B. 371. *ūnā cum*: along with, or as well as from. *quaeque*: equivalent to *et ea quae*.

8-10. *Quīn etiam*: with corrective force, nay in fact; and more than that; and not only that, but. *quod ōnūntiārit*: as to the fact that he has reported, or in reporting; for the use of *quod* see note on *Quod... adortus esset*, 12, 3. *coāctus*: compelled, i.e. under stress of circumstances. *quantō... fēcerit*: an indirect question.

Construction of *magistrātūs* 14, 24; *Isdem* 15, 6, *hostibus* 7, *periculō*, *fēcerit* 10. The number of *cōnferant* 15, 2. Principal parts of *tacuerat*, *prōpōnit* 14, 22, *valeat* 23; *dēterrēre* 15, 1, *perferre* 4, *coērcērī* 8.

13. CHAPTER 18. *plūribus praesentibus*: in the presence of many, abl. absolute.

14-15. *dīmittit, retinet*: sc. *sed* to connect these verbs.

The omission of an adversative conjunction is called *adversative asyndeton*. **sōlō**: sc. *eō* or *Liscō*.

17-18. **esse vĕra**: *that (these statements) are true*, referring to the speech of Liscus. **ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**: *that it is in fact Dumnorix*. **summā audāciā**: *(a man) of the utmost boldness*, abl. of quality; cf. *lĕnitāte*, 10, 2.

19. **rĕrum novārum**: objective gen. after *cupidum*.

20-22. **portōria**: import duties, and river and bridge tolls. **vectigālīa**: other taxes, on the produce of the country. **pretiō**: abl. of price. **redēpta habĕre**: *has held the contract for*. The combination of a perfect participle with *habĕo* emphasizes the continued state of affairs; cf. *coāctum habēbat*, 13, 13. The Haedui seem to have employed the same method of collecting taxes as the Romans. The contract for collection was let to the highest bidder, who was bound to pay a fixed sum into the state treasury, making what he could out of the transaction. **contrā**: *against him*, adverb.

23. **ad largiendum**: an adjective phrase is frequently placed between a noun and an adjective, here *facultātēs . . . māgnās*.

25. **neque**: *and not*. **domī**: *at home*, locative, A. 427, 3 (258, d); B. 232, 2; G. 411, 2; H. 484, 2; H-B. 449, a.

Page 16. 1. **hūius potentīae causā**: *for the sake of this power*; in this meaning *causā* regularly follows its dependent genitive.

3. **uxōrem**: for the fact cf. 3, 17-18. **sorōrem ex mātře**: *half-sister*.

4. **nūptum**: the supine; translate with *conlocāsse*, *has given in marriage*. **in aliās civitātēs**: *(to men) in other states*.

5-6. **Helvētīs**: for the dative with *favĕre* and *cupere* see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 4, n.; H-B. 362, II. **suō nōmine**: *on his own account*.

9-10. **summam in spem . . . venīre**: *is coming to have the highest hopes*. **imperīō**: *under the domination*, abl. of attendant circumstances.

11. **eā, quam habeat, grātīā**: *his present influence*. A limit-

ing clause, here *quam habeat*, may separate a noun and adjective; cf. the similar position of *ad largiendum*, 15, 23.

12-13. *in quaerendō*: upon inquiry, gerund. *quod . . . esset factum*: in regard to the disastrous cavalry battle of a few days before, lit. as to the fact that, etc.

15. *auxiliō Caesarī*: to Caesar's assistance; for the two datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2, b; G. 356; H. 433; H-B. 360, b.

Construction of *annōs* 15, 20, *redēpta* 21, *largiendum* 23, *sūptū* 24; *homīnī* 16, 1, *obtinendī* 9, *diēbus* 13, *equitātū* 15. Principal parts of *sentiēbat* 15, 13, *Quaerit* 15, *reperit* 17, *redēpta* 21, *licente*, *audeat* 22, *auxisse* 23, *alere* 25; *cupere* 16, 4, *ōdisse* 5, *dēminūta* 7, *restitūtus* 8. Compare *liberius* 15, 16.

18-19. CHAPTER 19. *cum*: causal. *quod*: that, etc., explaining *rēs*, facts.

20-21. *obsidēs . . . dandōs cūrasset*: had effected an exchange of hostages; for the gerundive with *cūrō*, see note on *pontem . . . faciendum cūrat*, 11, 16. *iniussū suō et civitātis*: without his order and that of the state, ablative of accordance.

22. *Inscientibus ipsis*: without their knowledge, abl. absolute.

23. *satis esse causae*: there was sufficient reason; *causae* is gen. of the whole.

24. *quārē . . . animadverteret*: why he should punish, relative clause with subjunctive expressing propriety; cf. *quārē timēret*, 12, 17.

25. *animadvertere*: to (do so). The Latin idiom differs from the English in repeating the verb.

Page 17. 1. *His*: dat. governed by *repugnābat*, a verb of resisting. *ānum*: one consideration, explained by the *quod* clause, that, etc.

2-3. Observe how the limiting phrases, *in populum Rōmānum* and *in sē*, separate noun and adjective.

4-5. *cōgnōverat*: knew, lit. had come to know, pluperfect equivalent to English imperfect; cf. *Cōnsuēsse*, 12, 25 and

note. **nē . . . offenderet, verēbātur**: *was afraid he would offend*; for the construction after a verb of fearing see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567; H-B. 502, 4. **Diviciaci animum**: we should say simply *Diviciacus*. **priusquam . . . cōnārētur**: *before he should attempt anything, or before attempting anything*; for the mood and tense see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, a; G. 577; H. 605, II; H-B. 507, 4, a.

8. **prōvinciae**: i.e. the Transalpine province. **cui: in whom. omnium rerum**: *in all matters, equivalent to an adjective, implicit.*

9-11. **simul . . . et**: *at the same time . . . and, almost the same as et . . . et.* **quae . . . sint dicta and quae quisque . . . dixerit** are indirect questions. **ipsō**: i.e. *Diviciacus*.

12-14. **ut . . . vel ipse iubeat**: *that . . . he (be permitted) either (to) pass judgment himself on Dumnorix after hearing his case or (to) order the state to; ipse* refers to *Caesar*.

Construction of **civitatem** 16, 24; **ēius, suppliciō** 17, 4, **sint dicta** 11, **ēius** 13. The clause **ut . . . iubeat** 17, 12-14. Tense of **repugnābat** 17, 1, **verēbātur** 5, **iubet** 6. Principal parts of **cōgnitis** 16, 18, **animadverteret** 24; **verēbātur** 17, 5, **conloquitur** 9, **Petit** 12.

16. CHAPTER 20. **nēquid gravius . . . statueret**: *not to decide upon anything too severe.*

17. **scīre sē**: *he knew (he said).* **ex eō**: *from that fact, therefrom.*

18-20. **dolōris**: gen. of the whole depending on *plūs*. **ipse**: *Diviciacus*. **ille**: (*while*) *he*, asyndeton. **crēvisset**: the subject is *Dumnorix*, *sē* referring to *Diviciacus*.

22-23. **ūterētur**: an infinitive might have been employed, A. 583, b (336, b); B. 314, 4; G. 635; H. 643, 1; H-B. 535, 1, b. **frāternō**: equivalent to *frātris*, objective genitive. **existimātiōne vulgī**: *public opinion*. **Quod sī**: *but if*, here almost *for if*.

24. **ā Caesare**: *at Caesar's hands*. **accidisset**: for a future perf. indic. or perf. subjv. of direct discourse, *shall befall, or should befall*. **eum locum**: *such a position*.

25-27. *nōn suā voluntāte*: without his approval, abl. of accordance. *quā ex rē futurum (esse)*, *utī*: the result of this would be that, etc.; for the periphrasis with *futurum esse* see A. 569, a (288, f); B. 270, 3, a; G. 248; H. 619, 2; H-B. 472, c.

Page 18. 1. *plūribus verbis*: in quite a lengthy speech. Caesar's report of it is condensed.

2. *rogat, finem . . . faciat*: begs him to end his entreaties; for the clause without *ut* see A. 565, a (331, f, r.); B. 295, 8; G. 546, r. 2; H. 565, 4; H-B. 502, 3, a, footnote 2.

3-5. *tantī*: of so much value, so great, a predicate genitive; for the case see A. 417 (252, a); B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; H-B. 356, 1. *utī . . . condōnet*: a clause of result; translate the verb as *pardon* with *iniūriam*, *forego* with *dolōrem*. *ēius voluntātī ac precibus*: in answer to his wish and entreaties. Caesar's regard for Diviciacus may well have been genuine, but a more urgent reason for leniency was the possibility of alienating the Haedui by dealing severely with so popular a character as Dumnorix, a thing to be avoided in the present crisis.

5-6. *vocat, adhibet*: asyndeton, sc. *et*. *quae . . . reprehendat*: an indirect question.

7-8. *ut . . . vitet*: to avoid. *praeterita*: the past.

9. *Diviciacō frātrī*: in deference to his brother Diviciacus, dat. of reference.

Construction of *grātiā* 17, 18, *plūrimum, domī, minimum* 19, *opibus, minuendam* 21, *eī* 24; *verbis* 18, 1, *orandī* 2, *agat, loquātur, possit*, 10; the clauses *nē quid . . . statueret* 17, 16; *ut . . . vitet* 18, 8. Principal parts of *scīre* 17, 17, *crēvisset* 20; *fiēns* 18, 1, *prēndit* 2, *reprehendat* 6, *loquātur* 10.

CHAPTER 21. Caesar now resumes the narrative of Chapter 15, interrupted by his account of the interview with the Haeduan chiefs.

Page 19. 1-2. *in circuitū*: on all sides. *quī cōgnōcerent, mīsit*: sent (men) to find out, a relative clause of purpose.

3-4. **esse**: sc. *ascēsum* or *eum* as subject. **lĕgātum prō praetōre**: lieutenant with authority of general; general is the earlier meaning of, *praetor*. In its developed and usual meaning it was the title of Roman magistrates invested with judicial functions. **eīs ducibus**: those men as guides.

6. **quid sui cōsili sit**: what his plan is; *cōsili* is gen. of the whole depending on *quid*. Apparently Labienus was to ascend the mountain at the foot of which the enemy were encamped, and to attack by a front and flank movement, while Caesar, after marching up the valley, attacked from the rear.

8-10. **rei militāris peritissimus**: very skilled in the art of war; for the genitive see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354. **L. Sullae**: Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who, after a successful military career, was dictator in the years 81-78. See *Introd.*, page x. **in**: sc. *exercitū*. **M. Crassi**: the triumvir, who conducted the war against Spartacus, 72-71.

Construction of **mīlia** 18, 12; **cōgnōscerent** 19, 2, **ducibus** 4, **sit** 6, **itinere**, **quō** 7, **peritissimus** 9. Principal parts of **cōnsēdisse** 18, 12; **mīsīt** 19, 2, **ascendere** 5, **ierant** 7.

12. CHAPTER 22. **cum**: the temporal clauses extend through *cōgnitus esset*, 15. **summus mōns**: the top of the mountain; for the adjective denoting a part see A. 293 (193); B. 241, 1; G. 291, r. 2; H. 497, 4; H-B. 244.

13. **ipse**: Caesar.

14-15. **passibus**: abl. of comparison. Notice the asyndeton, **tenērētur, abesset**. Point out two other instances in this paragraph. **neque . . . aut . . . aut**: and neither . . . nor.

16. **equō admissō**: with horse at full speed, abl. absolute.

18. **insignibus**: ornamental devices on shields and helmets.

20-21. **ut erat**, etc.: just as he had been ordered by Caesar not to bring on a battle, or in accordance with Caesar's orders, not to, etc. **eī** is dat. of indirect object depending on the impersonal *praeceptum erat*, of which the *nē* clause is subject. **ipsius**: i.e. Caesar's. **nisi . . . visae essent**: part of Caesar's instructions, hence the subjv. of a subordinate clause in indirect

discourse for a future perf. indic. of the direct, *don't bring on a battle unless you shall see.*

22. **ut . . . fieret** : a clause of purpose.

24. **Multō diē** : abl. of time when, *when the day was well advanced* ; i.e. relatively speaking, for it was probably in the forenoon.

26-27. **quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse** : *had reported to him as (having) seen what he had not seen* ; **vīsō** is the neuter perf. participle used as a substantive. **quō cōnsuērat intervāllō** : *at the usual interval*, equivalent to *eō intervāllō, quō cōnsuērat*.

29. **castra pōnit** : probably near modern Toulon-sur-Arroux.

Construction of **lūce**, **Labienō**, **tenērētur** 12, **comperit** 14, **quem** 16, **occupārī** 17, **castra** 21, **proeliō** 23, **mīlia** 28. Tense of **cōnsuērat** 27. Principal parts of **comperit** 14, **accurrit** 16, **instruit** 19, **praeceptum** 20, **fieret** 22.

Page 20. 1. CHAPTER 23. **Postridiē eius diēi** : probably June 29th.

2. **cum . . . oportēret** : *when (= before) it would be necessary to issue grain to his army.*

4-5. **rei frumentariae . . . existimāvit** : *thought he must provide for supplies* ; *prōspiciendum esse* is impersonal.

6. **Bibracte** : for the case see A. 427, 2 (258, b) ; B. 182, 1, a ; G. 337 ; H. 418 ; H-B. 450.

8. **quod**, etc. : reasons of the Helvetii reported by Caesar, therefore the subjunctives, A. 540 (321) ; B. 286, 1 ; G. 541 ; H. 588, II ; H-B. 535, 2, a.

10. **superiōribus locis occupātis** : *though having taken position on higher ground*, a move which would ordinarily indicate intention to join battle. It did in this case, but the Helvetii were ignorant of Considius's mistake.

11. **eō, quod** : *for the reason that.* **rē** : abl. of separation. **posse** : sc. *Rōmānōs*.

12-13. **ā** : *in, on* ; translate **nostrōs** and **ā novissimō agmine** together, *our rear line*.

Construction of **supererat** 1, **exercituī**, **mētīrī** 2, **oppidō** 3, **mīlibus** 4, **ire** 6, **eō** 9, **locīs occupātīs** 10. Principal parts of **prōspiciendum** 5, **contendit** 6, **discēdere** 9, **intercolūdi**, **cōnfiderent** 11, **conversō** 12.

14. CHAPTER 24. **id**: object of the phrase *animū advertit* used as equivalent to *animadvertit*.

15. **proximū collem**: the site of the battle has been fixed with certainty by Colonel Stoffel's investigations. **quī sustinēre**: *to withstand*. The Helvetii had not yet attacked in sufficient force to prevent the Romans from retracing their steps to the hill of Armecy. Here the legions were arrayed and an intrenchment was begun, while the cavalry tried to hold the enemy in check.

16. **in colle mediō**: *half-way up the hill*; for the adjective denoting a part see note on *summus mōns*, 19, 12.

17. **legionū quattuor veterānārum**: (*consisting*) of the four veteran legions, the 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th.

18-19. **duās**: the 11th and the 12th. **proximē**: for the fact cf. 8, 22-23.

20. **tōtum montem**: if Caesar really wrote these words, they would seem to refer to the slope of the hill above the triple line, i.e. they are practically equivalent to the *summū iugum* of 18. **sarcinās**: nothing is said of the heavy baggage. It may have gone on to Bibracte with a small escort.

21-22. **eum . . . mūnīrī**: this intrenchment, the location of which has been revealed by excavations, is marked *C* in the plan. **superiōre acīē**: not part of the triple line, but consisting of the two new legions and the auxiliaries. **cōstitērant**: *were stationed*, lit. *had taken position*; the pluperfect with the force of an imperfect; we have found *cōnsuēverat* and *cōgnōverat* in the same tense usage.

23. **ipsī**: the Helvetian fighting men.

24-25. **cōnfertissimā acīē**: abl. of means, or of manner. **phalange**: a compact mass of men, those in the first rank presenting a solid barrier of shields held vertically in front, while those behind held their shields horizontally overhead.

Construction of *advertit* 14, *sustinēret* 15. Compare *proximē* 19. Principal parts of *instrūxit* 17, *complēri* 20, *cōnferrī* 21, *mūniri* 22, *rēiectō* 24, *successērunt* 25.

Page 21. 1. CHAPTER 25. *suō*: sc. *equō remōtō*. *omnium*: i.e. of the mounted officers, but not of the cavalry.

2-3. *ut . . . tolleret*: a clause of purpose. *aequātō . . . periculō*: *by equalizing the danger*, abl. absolute. *cohortātus*: for the general's exhortation to his troops see *Introd.* 33.

5. *gladiis dēstrictis*: the usual hand-to-hand encounter, following the javelin volleys. See *Introd.* 33.

6. *Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō*: *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in fighting*; for the two datives cf. *auxiliō Caesarī*, 16, 15, and see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2, a; G. 356; H. 433, 2; H-B. 360, b.

7-9. *quod . . . poterant*: *that, etc.*, substantive clause, subject of *erat*, 6. *plūribus eōrum scūtis*: *their shields in many instances*. *transfixis et colligātis*: in the phalanx the shields overlapped, so that one javelin might pierce and bind together two shields. *cum*: *when*, with incidental suggestion of repeated occurrences, *whenever*. *ferrum*: *the iron head*. See *Introd.* 19. *sinistrā impeditā*: the left arm carried the shield.

10-11. *ut . . . praeoptārent*: a clause of result. *nūdō corpore*: *with body unprotected*, abl. of manner.

14-15. *Captō*: *when they had gained*. *Bōii et Tulingi*: these tribal contingents seem to have been late in reaching the scene of battle. Possibly they had formed the van of the migrating column and now had to march past the wagons to get into battle. As they were the last to arrive Caesar describes them as a "rear guard."

16. *novissimis praesidiō erant*: *formed a rear guard*; for the two datives cf. *Gallis impedimentō*, 6, above. *ex itinere*: (*straight*) *from the march, immediately*.

17. *ab latere apertō*: *on the unprotected flank*, i.e. the right.

20. *conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt*: *faced about and advanced in two divisions*, lit. *carried forward their turned stand-*

ards; the perf. participle *conversa* replaces an indicative coördinate with *intulērunt*. In reality only the third line "faced about."

21. **victis ac submōtis**: the beaten and dislodged (*Helvetii*), participles as substantives, in the dative after a verb of resisting. **venientēs**: those advancing, i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

Construction of **manū** 10, **passūs** 13, **milibus** 15. Mood of **inflexisset** 8, **ēmittere** 10, **pugnāre** 11, **sustinēret** 22. Comment on the order of **multī ut** 9-10. Principal parts of **perfrēgērunt** 4, **disiectā** 5, **trānsfixis** 7, **inflexisset** 8, **referre** 12, **claudēbant** 16, **circumvenire** 17, **victis**, **submōtis**, **resisteret** 21.

23. CHAPTER 26. **incipitī proeliō . . . pugnātum est**: a battle with double front was fought, long and fierce; *proeliō* is an abl. of manner, *pugnātum est* impersonal passive of an intransitive verb.

25. **alterī**: one division, the *Helvetii*; **alterī**, the other, the Boii and Tulingi. **ut coeperant**: cf. 13, above. **sē recēpērunt**, and **sē contulērunt**, 22, 1, are both used of an orderly retreat, further noticed in the following sentence, *Nam*, etc.

Page 22. 1-2. **hōc tōtō proeliō**: throughout this battle, abl. of time, the idea of duration lying chiefly in the adjective *tōtō*. **hōrā septimā**: the day between sunrise and sunset was divided into twelve hours, the seventh beginning at noon. **cum . . . pugnātum sit**: although the fighting lasted; observe the mood with *cum* concessive.

3-4. **āversum**: in flight, lit. turned away. **Ad multam noctem**: till late at night; cf. *multō diē*, 19, 24. **etiam**: in a temporal sense, still.

5. **prō vallō**: as a rampart. **ē locō superiōre**: the Gauls seem to have mounted the carts and wagons.

6. **venientēs**: as they came up. **cōiciēbant**: would hurl, kept hurling, imperfect of repeated action.

8. **impedimentis**, **castris**: for the abl. with *potior* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429.

10. **ūnus ē filiīs**: for the partitive expression see A. 346, c (216, c); B. 201, 1, a; G. 372, 2; H. 444, 1; H-B. 346, e. **cap-**
tus: agrees with *ūnus*, the nearer subject.

12. **partem**: acc. of duration of time.

13. **diēs quārtō**: July 2d. The Romans regularly reckoned in the day from which the count began. The exact route and stopping-place of the Helvetii cannot be determined. The map is after Napoleon.

16. **Lingonas**: for the form see A. 81, 5, 82 (63, f, 64); B. 47, 3; G. 66, 4; A. 109, 5; H-B. 95.

17. **nē . . . iuvārent**, (*commanding the Lingones*) *not to assist them*; the idea of command resides in *litterās misit*. **quī sī iūvisset**: (*saying that*) *if they did assist them*, representing a future perf. indic. of direct discourse.

18. **sē eōdem locō . . . habitūrum**: *he would consider them in the same position as the Helvetii, i.e. as enemies*. **trīduō intermissō**: *after an interval of three days*.

Construction of **possent** 21, 24; **venientēs** 22, 6, **nocte** 12, **diēs** 13, **trīduum** 15, **locō** 18. Subject of **pūgnātum** sit 2. Order of **Diū** cum 8. Principal parts of **obiēcērant** 5, **iuvārent** 17.

22-24. CHAPTER 27. **suppliciterque locūtī flentēs**; *in suppliant tones and with tears*. **eōs**; i.e. the main body, not the *lēgātī*. **iussisset**: Caesar is the subject.

25-26. **quī . . . perfūgissent**: *who (he said) had fled*, subjv. in informal indirect discourse.

Page 23. 1. **Dum ea coquūrantur**: *while these were being hunted up*; for mood and tense with *dum* see A. 556 (276, e); B. 293, I; G. 229, r; H. 604, 1; H-B. 559. A neuter pronoun, *ea* here, may be employed referring to antecedents of different gender, if some of them are inanimate things.

2-3: **mīlia . . . perterritī**: the participle is masculine according to sense, A. 286, b (187, d); B. 235, B, 2, c; G. 211, b; H. 389, 2; H-B. 325. **nē . . . adficerentur**: *that they would be visited*; for the construction after a verb of fearing see A. 564 (331, f);

B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567, 4; H-B. 502, 4. **armis traditis**: *if they should deliver up their arms.*

4-6. **quod . . . existimarent**: the reason of the Helvetii as reported by Cæsar, and so the subjv. of informal indirect discourse. **occultari**: *be concealed*, not the fact of flight, but the route taken and their destination. **omnino ignorari**: *be altogether overlooked.* **prima nocte**: *early at night*, the adjective denoting a part; cf. *colle medio*, 20, 16.

Construction of **convēnissent** 22, 22, **eōs** 23, **essent**, **expectare** 24, **pāgi**; **Verbigenus** 23, 2. Principal parts of **prōiſciſſent** 22, 22, **pāruērunt** 24, **perſūgiſſent**, **popoſcit** 26; **conquīruntur** 23, 1, **trādītis** 3, **ēgreſſi** 7.

9-11. CHAPTER 28. **Quod**: *this.* **quōrum . . . his**: relative clauses frequently precede demonstrative antecedents. English reverses this order; *his* is dat. of indirect object after *imperāvit*, the *ut* clause being the direct object, A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 502, 3, a. **si . . . vellent**: *if they wished*, part of Caesar's message, hence the subjv. of informal indirect discourse. **sibi**: *in his eyes*; for the case see A. 376 (235); B. 188, 2, c; G. 352; H. 425, 4; H-B. 370. **reductōs**: *(them) when they were brought back*, object of *habuit*. **in hostium numero habuit**: euphemistic for *put to death*.

14. **Helvētios**, etc.: the Rauraci are not accounted for in this list; a subsequent notice of them makes it probable that they were sent back to their old home.

16. **quō famem tolerārent**: *with which to relieve hunger*, or *with which they could relieve hunger*; the subjunctive is variously explained, but is best taken as potential, A. 531 (317); B. 282, 2; H. 591; H-B. 517, 2.

17. **facerent**: *furnish.* **ipsōs**: i.e. the Helvetii, etc.

19. **eā māmimē ratiōne**, **quod**: *especially for the reason that.*

22. **finitimī**: *neighbors (to)*, governing the dative following.

23-25. **Bōiōs . . . concessit**: *at the request of the Haedui Caesar granted them permission to establish the Boii in their country, because the Boii were known to be (people) of unusual valor.* **Bōiōs** is the object of *conlocārent*; *petentibus Haediis* is dat. of

indirect object after *concessit*, or abl. absolute; the clause *ut . . . conlocarent* is best taken as object of *concessit*, possibly of *petentibus*. To strengthen the friendly Haedui would redound to the advantage of the Romans. The arrangement was doubtless agreeable to the Boii, as they had no settled home when they joined the Helvetii.

26-27. *parem . . . atque ipsi erant*: *the same . . . as they themselves enjoyed* (lit. *were*); words of likeness and equality are often followed by *atque, as*. This bestowal of equal rights was probably made at Caesar's dictation and subsequent to the rebellion of 52, in which the Boii remained faithful, on the whole, to the Romans.

Construction of *purgati* 10, *domi*, *quod* 16, *eis*, *facerent* 17, *ratione* 19, *incolunt* 21, *virtute* 24. Principal parts of *resciit* 9, *conquirerent* 10, *iussit* 15, *restituere* 18, *noluit* 19, *incolunt* 21, *dedērunt* 25.

Page 24. 1. CHAPTER 29. *tabulae*: possibly the same kind of waxed writing tablets as used by the Romans. *litteris Graecis*: i.e. in the Gallic language, but written with the Greek alphabet, which had become familiar to the southern Gauls through commercial relations with the Greek city Massilia.

3-4. *nominatim*: *in detail*. *qui numerus . . . exisset*: an indirect question depending on *ratio*. *qui . . . possent*: a clause of characteristic, therefore the subjunctive.

5-6. *rerum*: *items*. *capitum*: *persons, souls*. *milium*: predicate genitive.

8-9. *ex his*, etc.: *of these (there were) about 92,000 who could bear arms*; *his* is not antecedent of *qui*; the relative clause is characterizing. *ad*: adverb, *about*; also in 9. *fuērunt*: adapted in number to the predicate noun *milia*, A. 316, b (204, b); B. 254, 4; G. 211, r. 1, Excep. c; H. 390; H-B. 332.

Construction of *litteris* 1, *domo* 3, *exisset* 4, *milia* 9, *domum*, *censu* 10. Principal parts of *repertae* 1, *confectae*, *relatae* 2, *rediērunt* 10.

WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, 30-54.

13. CHAPTER 30. **Galliae** : probably Celtic Gaul only.

14. **grātulātum** : *to offer congratulations*, the supine.

15. **intelligere sēsē** : *they knew (they said)*, indirect discourse.

16. **Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī** : *injuries inflicted by the Helvetii on the Roman people*, subjective and objective genitives.

17. **ex ūsū** : *to the advantage*.

18-20. **eō cōnsiliō . . . utī . . . Inferrent** : *with the design of making war*; the purpose clause explains *cōnsiliō*. **flōrentissimis rēbus** : abl. absolute, *though enjoying the greatest prosperity*, and therefore under no necessity of changing their abode.

21. **domiciliō** : *for a home*; for the case see A. 382, 2 (233, b); B. 191, 1; G. 356; H. 433, 3; H-B. 361. **ēx māgnā cōpiā** : *from the wide extent of country*.

22. **iūdicāssent** : *should judge*, for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse.

23. **stipendiāriās** : in the predicate.

Page 25. 1-2. **utī sibi . . . indicere . . . liceret** : *that they be permitted to call*, substantive clause, object of *petiērunt*: for the construction of *sibi* and *indicere* see A. 565, n. 2 (331, i, n. 3); B. 327, 1; G. 346, r. 2, 422; H. 615; H-B. 362, 585. **tōtius Galliae** : probably only the Celtic tribes of central Gaul are meant. **Caesaris voluntāte** : *with Caesar's sanction*. Theoretically he had no authority to forbid or sanction a council, but the Gauls wished him to understand they were not forming a league against him.

5-6. **nē quis ēnūntiāret** : *that no one should report (the result of their deliberations)*; substantive clause, object of *sānxērunt*. **inter sē sānxērunt** : *bound one another*. **nisi quibus** : *except (those) to whom*. **mandātum esset** : *the duty should be intrusted*, impersonal passive.

7. CHAPTER 31. **dīmissō** : the dismissal only is mentioned, the assembling to be inferred.

8. **fuerant**: sc. *ad Caesarem*.

10. **Caesarī ad pedēs**: *at Caesar's feet*; for the dat. see A. 377 (235, a); B. 188, 1, n.; G. 350, 1; H. 425, 4, N.; H-B. 368.

11. **id**: (*for*) *this*, acc., object of *contendere* and *labōrāre*, and explained by the appositive *nē* clause, *that what they should say should not be reported*, and by the *utī* clause.

15. **Galliae tōtius**: Celtic Gaul, and probably only the central and eastern portions.

17. **Arvernōs**: these people had suffered a severe defeat at the hands of the Romans in 121 B.C. See Introd. 68. In Caesar's time the Sequani seem to have been the real leaders of the second faction mentioned.

18. **contenderent**: *had contended*; *multōs annōs* has the same effect as *iam diū* or *iam dūdum* with the present and imperfect, A. 471, b (277, b); B. 260, 4; G. 234; H. 535, 1; H-B. 485. **factum esse**: *it had come about*, with *utī* . . . *arcesserentur* as subject.

19. **mercēde**: *for pay*.

21-23. **hominēs ferī ac barbarī**: *being a savage and barbarous people*. **trāductōs**: sc. *esse*. **nunc esse** . . . **numerus**: *now the number in Gaul was about 120,000*.

Page 26. 1. **clientēs**: see Introd. 63.

3. **omnem nōbilitātem**, etc.: the picture is overdrawn, as we know from facts stated later.

4. **quī**: equivalent to *cum eī*, *although they*; sc. as antecedent *eōs*, subject of *cōactōs esse*.

5. **virtūte**: abl. of cause. **hospitiō**: a formal relation of friendship between individuals in different nations, or, as here, between two nations, mutually guaranteeing honorable treatment and certain privileges.

6-7. **ante**: adverb. **dare**: infinitive complementary to *cōactōs esse*; in the active *cōgō* governs an infinitive clause.

8. **sēsē** . . . **repetitūrōs**: *that they would neither demand back*, etc., explaining the oath, *iūre iūrandō*.

10. **quōminus** . . . **essent**: *to be*, etc., depending on *recūsā*.

tūrōs, A. 558, b (319, c); B. 295, 3; G. 549; H. 568, 8; H-B. 502, 3, b. **illōrum**: the Sequani.

11-12. **Unum**: *the only man*. **quī . . . potuerit**: a clause of characteristic.

14. **postulātum**: the supine. For the mission of Diviciacus see Introduction to Bk. I, page 164.

16-17. **p̄sius . . . accidisse**: *a worse fate had befallen*. **victōribus**: *the victorious*, a noun equivalent to an adjective. Observe the chiasmic arrangement of *victōribus Sēquanis . . . Haeduis victis*, adjective + noun, noun + adjective. **Germānōrum**: probably the Suebi only. **tertiā partem**: now upper Alsace.

20. **alterā parte tertiā**: *a second third*.

22-23. **quibus . . . parārentur**: a relative clause of purpose. **Futūrum esse . . . utī**: *the result would be that*; for the periphrasis with *futūrum esse* see A. 569, a (288, f); B. 270, 3, a; G. 248; H. 619, 2; H-B. 472, c. **paucis annis**: abl. of time within which.

25-27. **cōferendum**: *to be compared*. **Gallicum**: sc. *agrum*; the Gallic land and mode of life was better than the German. English reverses the Latin order by putting last the thing preferred. **hanc**: of what is near the speaker, equivalent to *Gallicam*. **illā**: i.e. *Germānōrum*.

Page 27. 1. **ut**: with temporal meaning; translate with *vicerit, having once defeated*. For vivid effect the narrative is given a present standpoint through the remainder of the chapter, as the presents and perfects show. **Gallōrum**: the reference seems to be to the Haedui and their allies, though it has been suggested that the Sequani, having repented their rashness in invoking the aid of the Germans, had finally joined forces with the Haedui against Ariovistus.

2. **quod proelium**: *a battle which*; the appositional antecedent in the relative clause, as usual. **Magetobrigam**: its exact location is not known. The battle was fought in 61 or 60.

3. **superbē et crudēlīter imperāre**: *is making arrogant and cruel demands.* **nōbillissimī cōiusque**: *of all those of highest rank; quisque, each,* is frequently employed with a superlative to indicate a class.

4. **exempla cruciātūsque**: *cruelties of every sort, hendiadys.* **in eōs . . . ēdere**: *visits upon them.*

5. **ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem**: *at his (beck and) nod or to suit his wish.*

8. **quid auxili**: *some help; auxili* is gen. of the whole.

9-10. **omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum**: *all the Gauls must do the same; for the dat., Gallīs, see A. 374, a (232, n.); B. 189, 1; G. 355; H. 431; H-B. 373, 1. ut . . . ēmigrent, etc.:* i.e. *leave home, an appositive clause explaining idem.*

13-15. **quīn . . . sūmat**: *that he will exact; for the use of quīn see A. 558, a (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1; H-B. 507, 2, b.*

17-18. **dēterrēre . . . nē . . . trādūcātur**: *prevent a larger horde from being brought across; the nē clause is substantive, object of a verb of hindering. Rhēnum*: acc. after the *trāns* in *trādūcātur*, A. 395, n. 2 (236, 2, b, n. 2); B. 179, 1; G. 331, r. 1; H. 413; H-B. 386, a.

22. CHAPTER 32. **ūnōs**: *alone.* **nihil**: *none.*

23. **tristēs**: *dejectedly, adj. where English employs an adverb.*

24. **quae causa esset**: *an indirect question, felt as dependent both upon mirātus and quaeiit.*

25-26. **respondēre, permanēre**: *historical infinitives.* **saepius**: *repeatedly.*

Page 28. 1. **neque**: *and not, but not.* **vōcem**: *expression, utterance.*

2. **idem**: *again, as before, A. 298, b (195, e); B. 248, 1; G. 310; H. 508, 3; H-B. 270, a. hōc miserīōrem*: *the more wretched.*

5-6. **-que**: *but.* **velut sī cōram adesset**: *as if he were present; imperfect for the present subjv., adsit, of direct discourse, A. 524 (312); B. 307, 1; G. 602; H. 584; H-B. 504, 3, a. reliquīs: *sc. Gallīs.**

7-9. **tamen**: at any rate, at least. **Sēquanīs vērō . . . essent perferendī**: while the Sequani must endure, dative of agent, like *Gallis*, 27, 9.

11. CHAPTER 33. **sibi eam cūrae futūram esse**; the matter should receive his attention; for the two datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2, a; G. 356; H. 433, 2; H-B. 360, b.

12. **beneficiō suō**: i.e. the bestowal of the title *rēx atque amicus* the year before. Cf. 29, 22 and note.

13. **iniūriīs**: the genitive is used more frequently than the dative with *finem facere*.

15-16. **ea**: these facts, i.e. what he had heard from Diviciacus. **multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē . . . putāret**: there were many urgent reasons for thinking, lit. many things urged him, on account of which he thought; *putāret* is subjv. in a clause of characteristic; *sibi* is dative of agent. **in primīs**: especially, lit. among the first, or most important, things.

17. **quod**, etc.: that, or because, etc., explaining *rēs*, which is further explained by 23 ff. **cōnsanguineōs**: both the Haedui and Arverni appear to have claimed kinship with the Romans, the Arverni, at least, by Trojan descent.

20. **quod**: (a state of affairs) which, or and this state of affairs; a neuter relative is often employed referring to the facts of a preceding sentence. **in tantō imperiō**: considering the extended sway.

23. **Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere**, etc.: for the Germans gradually to grow accustomed to cross the Rhine, etc., infinitive clauses, subject of *esse* understood, *periculōsum* being a predicate adjective.

25-27. **sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exīrent**: would refrain from proceeding. For *sibi* governed by *temperātūrōs* see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 4, n.; H-B. 362. For the *quīn* clause see A. 558 (319, d); B. 298; G. 555, 1; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b. **occupāvissent**: should (have) overrun, had overrun, the pluperfect representing a future perfect from a past point of view. **ut**: just as. **Cimbri, Teutonī**: tribes from northern Germany who wandered south in the latter

part of the second century B.C. After committing widespread depredations in Gaul they were finally crushed by the Romans, the Teutoni near Aquae Sextiae in 102, the Cimbri in northern Italy in 101.

Page 29. 1. *fēcissent*: *had done*, subjv. by attraction.

3. *Rhodanus*: (*only*) *the Rhone*. *quibus rēbus*: lit. *things which*, i.e. *the situation*, or *the threatened danger*. The dative is governed by the compound verb *occurrendum*, impersonal, *provision must be made against*.

5. *nōn*: limits *vidērētur*; but translate with *ferendus*, *unbearable*.

7-9. CHAPTER 34. *placuit ei*: *he decided*, lit. *it pleased him*, with *ut . . . mitteret*, *to send*, as subject. *qui . . . postulārent*: a relative clause of purpose. *medium utrūque*: *midway between the two*. Ariovistus was probably on the west bank of the Rhine assembling his army.

10. *rē publicā*: *matters of state*. *summīs utrūque rēbus*: *matters of the greatest importance to both*.

11-14. *sī quid*, etc.: *if he had need of anything from Caesar*, *he would have come to him*, indirect discourse; direct, *sī quid mihi . . . esset*, *ad eum vēnissem*. *ipsi*: dative of possession; an instance of the reflexive use of *ipse*. *opus*: *need*, may take an ablative, or, as here, may stand in the predicate with the thing needed in the nominative as subject, *quid*. For the condition and conclusion see A. 517, a, 589, b, 1, 2 (308, a, 337, b, 1, 2); B. 304, 1, 2, 321, A. 2, a, B; G. 597, R. 1, 656, 1, 2; H. 579, 1, 647; H-B. 581, b. *velit*: for the direct *vult*, *wants*, the subjv. being due merely to the indirect discourse. *Volō* may govern two accusatives, *quid* and *sē*, here, if the thing desired is expressed by a neuter pronoun; translate, *if Caesar wanted anything of him*.

17-18. *quid . . . Caesarī . . . negōtī esset*: *what business Caesar had*, an indirect question, after *vidērī mirum*, *it seemed strange*. *suā Galliā*: *his (part of) Gaul*.

21-22. CHAPTER 35. *suō*: *on his part*, i.e. *Caesar's*. *ad-*

fectus: (*though*) *treated*. **cum . . . appellātus esset:** *in having been entitled*, lit. *since he had been entitled*, explaining *beneficiō*. The bestowal of the title, possibly on Caesar's motion, had in reality been only in the interest of temporary peace, not as a mark of esteem for Ariovistus.

23-25. **hanc sibi . . . grātiā referret, ut . . . gravārētur . . . putāret:** *made him . . . this requital, that, etc., or requited him . . . by refusing and by thinking, etc.*; the *ut* clause explains *grātiā*. **Neque . . . discendum sibi et cōgnōscendum:** *that he was not under obligations to learn of and investigate a matter of mutual interest.*

Page 30. 1-2. nē . . . trādūceret: *that he should not lead across*; this and the following clauses explain *haec*, 29, 25.

4. **voluntāte eius:** *with his sanction.*

5. **illīs liceret:** unnecessary to the sense; translate as if we had *permitteret . . . ut redderent*, permit the *Sequani* to restore. **nēve lacesseret:** *and that he should not attack*; *nēve*, and not, corresponds to *nē*, while *neque*, and not, corresponds to *nōn*. **iniuriā:** *unjustly, without cause*, abl. of manner.

7. **ita fēcisset:** *should do so, should act thus*, for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse. **sibi, populō:** dat. of possession.

8. **nōn impetrāret:** *should not obtain his wishes*, for a future indic. of direct discourse; the subject has shifted to Caesar.

9. **sēsē:** subject of *neglētūrum*, 18, but repeated in 12 because of the long intervening clause. **M. Messālā, M. Pisonē cōnsulibus:** i.e. in 61 B.C.

11. **quod . . . posset:** *so far as he could do so*; for the restrictive clause see A. 535, d (320, d); B. 283, 5; G. 627, R. 1; H. 591, 3; H-B. 521, 1, f. **commodō rei publicae:** *with advantage to the state*; *commodō* is an abl. of attendant circumstances. The decree referred to (see Introduction to Bk. I, page 164) had thus far been of no help to the *Haedui*, but merely a formal expression of sympathy. "Upon Caesar's arrival a change took place," as the author remarks in Bk. VI.

14-16. CHAPTER 36. **ut, quī vicissent, eis . . . imperārent:**

that those who have conquered shall rule those, etc., a substantive clause, subject of *esse*. Observe the past tenses; in English, statements of general principles usually stand in the present, even if dependent on a past tense in the main sentence. **quī**: equivalent to *et quī*. **quem ad modum**: *in such manner as, just as*; *quem* is a relative. **victis**: *the vanquished*, a participle used as a substantive. **ad**: *according to*.

18-19. **quem ad modum . . . ūterētur**: *how they were to use their rights*; *quem* is here an interrogative; the question is an indirect deliberative, A. 575, b (334, b); B. 300, 2; G. 467; H. 642, 3; H-B. 503. **oportere**: this verb, remember, is impersonal, though translated with a personal subject, *he*; the grammatical subject is the infinitive clause, *sē . . . impediri*.

21. **sibi**: dat. after *stipendiāriōs, tributary (to)*.

23-24. **Māgnam**: in emphatic position, *great was the wrong*. **quī . . . dēteriōra faceret**: *in impairing, lit. since he, etc.*, *qui* being equivalent to *cum is*; the clause explains *iniūriam*; cf. the *cum* clause, 29, 21-22. Observe *suō* and *sibi* referring to different persons; *sibi*, *his*, dat. of reference, for a possessive adjective or a genitive; cf. *Caesari*, 25, 10.

25. **neque**: *but not*, a connective, and also a correlative to the second *neque*.

26. **sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset**: *if they stood by their agreement*.

Page 31. 1. **longē . . . nōmen . . . āfutūrum**: *the title of brothers of the Roman people would be far from (helping) them*. **eīs**: dat. of reference. **frāternum**: equivalent to *frātrum*, which might have been employed.

2-3. **Quod . . . dēnūtiāret**: *as to Caesar's threatening him*; for this use of *quod* see A. 572, a (333, a); B. 299, 2; G. 525, 2; H. 588, 3, n.; H-B. 552, 2. **sibi, sēcum**: *Ariovistus*. **sē**: *Caesar*.

4-6. **congraderētur**: *let him advance*, imperfect subjunctive for present of direct discourse; *vellet* stands for a future indicative. **quid . . . virtūte possent**: *the prowess of, lit. what strength*

they had in valor, an indirect question. **invicti**: *unconquered*, implying *invincible*. **annōs quattuordecim**: not to be understood literally, but with reference to their lack of a fixed home.

7-8. CHAPTER 37. **eōdem tempore . . . et**: *at the same time that*; in Latin the two sentences are coördinate. **questum**: *to complain*, the supine.

9-11. **quod . . . populārentur**: the reason for complaint given by the Haedui, as the mood shows. **transportāti essent**: subjv. by attraction. **dati**: *by giving*. **Trēverī**: sc. *nūntiāverunt* or a supine, *nūntiātum*.

12. **pāgōs centum Suēbōrum**: it is not clear whether Caesar took this to mean the migration of a whole people or merely the invasion of an army; cf. Bk. IV, Chapter 1.

15. **mātūrāndum sibi**: *he must act quickly*; *sibi* is dat. of agent. **nē**: *for fear that*.

17. **sēsē conifūxisset**: *should unite*; the subjv. (in the perf.) might be used also in direct discourse, by attraction. **minus . . . posset**: *resistance could less easily be offered*; *resistī* is the impersonal passive of an intransitive verb.

19. **contendit**: Caesar started from some point in the country of the Lingones, whither he had pursued the Helvetii.

20. CHAPTER 38. **trīdūi**: gen. of quality or measure. **viam prōcessisset**: for the cognate acc. see A. 390 (238); B. 176, 4, a; G. 333, 2; H. 409; H-B. 396, 1.

22. **quod**: referring to a masculine antecedent, but neuter by attraction to the predicate noun, *oppidum*. **est**: indicative in a statement of the author's made in passing.

24. **Id nē accideret**: subject of *praecavendum (esse)*, *that that should not happen, diligent precautions must be taken by him*.

Page 32. 2. ūsuī: *of service*, dat. of the purpose or end. **idemque**: *and also, then too*; cf. *idem*, 28, 2, and note.

3. **ad dūcendū bellū**: *for a prolonged war*.

5-6. **ut**: *as if*. **pedū**: predicate gen. of quality or measure; *amplius* is here an adverb, with no effect on the case, A. 407, c (247, c); B. 217, 3; G. 296, r. 4; H. 471, 4; H-B. 416, d.

7. **intermittit** : leaves a gap. **altitudine** : abl. of quality.

8. **rādicēs, rīpae** : object and subject respectively of *contin-gant*.

9. **Hunc** : sc. *montem*. **mūrus circumdatus** : an encircling wall. **arcem** : predicate accusative. This hill is the citadel of modern Besançon.

10. **nocturnis** : put first for emphasis, *by night as well as by day*.

Page 33. 1-2. **CHAPTER 39.** **Dum morātur** : while delay-ing; see note on *Dum . . . cōnferuntur*, 23, 1. **ad Veson-tiōnem** : near Vesontio. **commeātūs** : (other) supplies. **ex** : from, as a result of. **vōcibus** : statements.

3-4. **māgnitudine, virtūte, exercitātiōne** : abl. of quality, in the predicate after *esse*.

6. **cum hīs congressōs** : having encountered them.

8. **nōn** : take closely with *mediocriter*, in no slight degree.

10-11. **Hic** : sc. *timor*. **tribūnis, praefectis, reliquis** : see Introd. 8, 13, and 16.

13-15. **alius aliā causā inlātā** : one adducing one reason, another another, or each adducing a different reason; for the use of *alius aliā* see A. 315, c (203, c); B. 253, 2; G. 221, R. 1; H. 516, 1; H-B. 265. **quam . . . necessariam esse diceret** : which he said made it necessary for him to leave; for the mood of *diceret* see A. 592, 3, N. (341, d, R.); B. 323; H. 649, I; H-B. 535, a. **petēbat** : would beg, imperfect of repeated action; cf. the following imperfections.

18. **ingere** : compose, control, lit. mold.

22. **tōtis castris** : throughout the camp; for the locative abl. without a preposition see A. 429, 2 (258, f, 2); B. 228, 1, b; G. 388; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436, a.

25. **in castris** : in a soldier's life.

26. **centuriōnēs** : see Introd. 15. **quique** : equivalent to *et ei qui*.

27. **Qui ex hīs** : those of them who.

29. **angustiās** : referring probably to the narrow valley of the Doubs, which Caesar finally avoided.

Page 34. 1-2. *rem frumentariam, ut . . . posset, timere*: *had fears for the supply of grain, that it could not, etc.*; *rem* would naturally stand in the *ut* clause as subject, but is made the object of *timere* in order to maintain the construction of the preceding accusatives. For *ut . . . posset*, dependent on a verb of fearing, see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567, 4; H-B. 502, 4.

4. *iussisset*: *should order*; for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse; the *cum* clause limits *fore* and *laturos*. *dicto audientes*: *obedient, lit. listening to his word*.

7. CHAPTER 40. *omnium ordinum*: usually only centurions of the first rank were admitted to a council of war. See Introd. 15.

8-10. *primum*: no formal *secondly* follows, but a *finally, denique*, 27. *quod . . . putarent*: the reason given by Caesar, the general. *sibi quaerendum . . . putarent*: *thought it their business to inquire or consider*.

11-12. *cum . . . iudicaret*: *why should any one suppose?* for the mood see A. 586 (338); B. 315, 3; G. 651, R. 2; H. 642, 3; H-B. 513, 1. In direct discourse, *iudicet*.

13-15. *Sibi quidem persuaderi*: *he, for his part, was persuaded*. Intransitive verbs governing the dative are used impersonally in the passive. *Persuadeo*, like English *persuade*, equiv. to *convince of a fact*, may govern indirect discourse, *eum . . . repudiaturum*. *cognitis*: *when he should learn*.

16-18. *Quod si*: *but if*. *quid . . . vererentur, . . . cum . . . desperarent*: *what, pray, should they fear, or why should they despair?* See note on *iudicaret*, 12. *sua*: *their own*. *ipsum*: *his*; *ipse* is necessarily employed as a reflexive, when two reflexives are required referring to different persons.

19-21. *periculum*: *trial, test*. *memoria*: *in the time, abl. of time when*. *cum*: *when*, equivalent to *and upon this occasion*, amplified by the abl. absolute, *Cimbris . . . pulsus, viz. the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutoni by Marius*. *exercitus . . . meritis (esse) videbatur*: *the army evidently deserved, lit. was seen to have deserved*.

22-23. **servīlī tumultū**: the slave revolt under Spartacus, 73-71; these slaves consisted largely of German and Gallic captives. They would know more or less of Roman military science. **quōs tamen**: *who, however, or and yet they*; the relative refers to an antecedent, *servōrum*, implied in *servīlī*. **sublevārent**: translate as a passive. **aliquid**: acc. of degree, *somewhat*.

24. **posse**: for the infinitive in a relative clause in indirect discourse see A. 583, b (336, c); B. 314, 4; G. 635; H. 643, 1; H-B. 535, 1, b. **habēret**: *has*; for the tense in the statement of a general principle cf. *ut . . . imperārent*, 30, 14-16, and note. **bonī**: gen. of the-whole depending on *quantum*.

25-26. **inermēs**: *though unarmed*. The slaves were but poorly armed at first. **hōs**: antecedent of *quōs*. **victōrēs**: several consular armies were defeated by Spartacus before Crassus crushed the rebellion.

Page 35. 1-2. **congressī**: a participle, to be translated coördinate with *superārint*, *had repeatedly encountered and defeated*. **parēs**: *a match for*, i.e. in the recent campaign.

3-4. **Sī quōs . . . commovēret**: *if any were alarmed*. **proelium**: the battle of Magetobriga, cf. 27, 2.

6. **castris**: *in camp*. The abl. of the place where is frequently used without a preposition in connection with *teneō* and *contineō*.

7-9. **sui potestātem**: *a chance to attack him*. **dēspērantes dispersōs**: limiting *eōs* to be understood as object of *adortum* and *vicisse*. **ratione et cōsiliō**: *by well-considered strategy*.

9-10. **Cui rationī . . . hāc**: *by that plan for which*; for the position of the antecedent see A. 307, b, n. (200, b, n.); B. 251, 4, a; G. 616; H. 399, 3; H-B. 284, 5, 6. **ipsum**: Ariovistus.

12-14. **Qui**: equivalent to *eōs qui*. **in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem**: *to a feigned alarm about supplies*. **cum**: *inasmuch as*. **officiō**: (*performance of*) *duty*.

15. **Haec sibi esse cūrae**: *these were matters for him to attend to*; lit.? Explain the datives.

19-20. **Quod . . . dīcantur**: as to the statement that they would not obey, etc.; for *Quod* see note on *Quod . . . dēnūtiāret*, 31, 2. Observe that *dīcantur* is personal, A. 582 (330, b, 1); B. 332, c; G. 528, 1; H. 611, 1, n. 1; H-B. 590, 1. Cf. *meritus (esse) vidēbātur*, 34, 21. **nihil**: not at all, acc. of degree; cf. *aliquid*, 34, 22.

21-24. **quibuscumque**: dat. governed by *dictō audiēns*, equivalent to a verb of obeying; another dative, *eis*, is understood, depending on *dēfuisse*. Translate freely, *whenever an army does not obey its commander, (it means) either (that) in view of some reverse fortune (is seen to have) deserted him, or (that) in the discovery of some wrongdoing (of his) avarice has been proved (against him)*. "Good luck," "good fortune," to the Roman mind, was a special gift of the gods. Sulla surnamed himself *Felix*. **avāritiam**: greed, suggesting dishonesty, referring probably to misappropriation of funds intended for the support of an army. **innocentiam**: integrity, contrasted with *avāritiam*. **perpetuā vitā**: throughout his life. **fēlicitātem**: contrasted with *fortūnam dēfuisse*.

25. **quod**: equivalent to *id quod*. **conlātūrus fuisset**: had intended to defer.

Page 36. 1. utrum pudor . . . an timor plūs valēret: a double indirect question.

4. **praetōriam cohortem**: a general's bodyguard was regularly composed of troops chosen for preëminent bravery and ability. **legiōnī**: dat. depending on *indulserat* and *cōnsulēbat*, which belong to the list of verbs, *persuade, command, obey*, etc.

9. CHAPTER 41. **prīnceps**: first, adjective where English employs an adverb.

10-11. **quod . . . fēcisset**: because he had expressed, subjv. in a quoted reason.

12-14. **cum tribūnīs . . . ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacere**: commissioned the tribunes . . . to apologize to Caesar.

15-16. **dē summā bellī iūdicium**: the decision as to the conduct of the war. **suum, imperātōris**: predicate adjective

and predicate genitive, *nor had they thought the decision . . . was theirs, but their commander's.*

17-20. **itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum**, . . . **ut . . . dūceret**: translate freely, *having, with the help of Diviciacus, determined upon a route which led the army, etc.*; **exquirō**, lit. *inquire about, ascertain*; **ut . . . dūceret** is lit. a clause of result, *so that he led*. **eī**: in him, dat. after *fidem habēbat*; cf. *legiōnē cōfultēbat*, 4-5.

millium: gen. of measure; sc. *passuum*. **amplius**: adverb, with no effect on the construction; cf. 32, 6. **locis apertis**: *along open ground*; for the abl. without a preposition see A. 429, a (258, g); B. 218, 9; H. 476; H-B. 436, a, n. This detour to the northeast, which was made to avoid the narrow and wooded valley of the Doubs, was merely part of the seven days' march. Caesar entered the valley of the Rhine by the pass of Belfort and pitched camp probably between the sites of Ostheim and Gemar.

21-22. **Septimō diē**: Caesar probably left Vesontio about August 23d. **cum iter nōn intermitteret**: *after an uninterrupted march*. **Ariovisti**: Ariovistus was encamped possibly between the sites of Dorlisheim and Rosheim.

25. CHAPTER 42. **quod**: object of *postulāisset*, with *id* as antecedent; translate freely, *Caesar's previous demand for a conference might be granted so far as he was concerned.*

Page 37. 1. **accessisset**: Caesar is the subject.

4. **petentī**: sc. *Caesarī*, dat. of indirect object; translate, *when Caesar requested it.*

5. **māgnam in spem veniēbat**: *he began to have high hopes*. **tantis**: *great* (not *so great*), the regular translation of *tantus* when coupled with a possessive or a demonstrative.

6-7. **fore, utī dēsisteret**: *that he would abandon*; for the periphrasis see note on *Futūrum esse . . . utī*, 26, 23. **pertināciā**: abl. of separation.

10. **nē**: *that*, after a verb of fearing; see note on *ut . . . posset*, 34, 2. **per insidiās**: equivalent to an adverb, *treacherously*.

11-12. **uterque . . . veniret**: *let each of them come*, for direct *uterque nostrum veniat*. **nōn**: limits *ventūrum*; but translate with *aliā ratiōne*, on no other terms.

13. **interpositā causā**: abl. absolute, *by the intervention of any pretext*.

14. **neque**: *and (yet) not*. Possibly Caesar feared collusion between his Gallic cavalry and Ariovistus. The cavalry numbered 4000 at the beginning of the campaign.

15. **esse**: the subject is *impōnere*, hence the neuter predicate adjective, *commodissimum*.

16. **equitibus**: *from the horsemen*; for the case after *dētractis* see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G. 347, 5; H. 429, 2; H-B. 371. **eō**: for *in equōs*.

18. **sī quid opus factō esset**: *if there should be any need of action*. *quid* is acc. of degree, lit. *to any extent*. For *factō* governed by *opus* see A. 497, a (243, e, N.); B. 218, 2, c; G. 406; H. 477, III; H-B. 430, 2, b.

19. **Quod cum fieret**: *while this was being done*.

22. **ad equum rescribere**: the point of the witticism lies in the double meaning, *was transferring them to the knights, was transferring them to the cavalry*. The *equitēs*, knights, formed an honorable and wealthy class in Rome. In earlier times they were identical with the *equitēs*, cavalry. In Caesar's time the cavalry was composed entirely of foreigners.

23. CHAPTER 43. **tumulus terrēnus**: *an earthen knoll*, identified by Colonel Stoffel with the Tertre de Plettig. The adjective *terrēnus* contrasts the character of the eminence with the rocky mountains not far distant.

25. **ut erat dictum**: *as had been agreed*.

26. **equis**: *on horseback*, abl. of means.

Page 38. 1-2. **passibus, intervallō**: abls. of degree of difference.

5. **Ubi eō ventum est**: *when they arrived there*; *ventum est* is an intransitive verb used impersonally in the passive.

6. **quod**: *that*, etc., explaining *beneficia*. **appellātus**

esset: subjv. of informal indirect discourse; the same verb is to be understood with *amicus*.

7. **mūnera**: cf. the gifts sent to King Masinissa, a golden crown, a golden libation bowl, a curule chair, an ivory sceptre, and embroidered robes (Liv. XXX, 15).

8. **quam rem**: *this tribute*. **docēbat**: *he tried to show*.

9. **illum**: *he (however)*. **cum**: *although*.

10-11. **aditum**: *opportunity*, lit. (*right of*) *access*; Ariovistus had not before been on such terms with Rome as to afford him any avenue of approach to the senate's favors. **suā**: i.e. Caesar's.

13-15. **quam veterēs**, etc.: indirect questions. **ipsis** . . . **intercēderent**: *existed between themselves* (i.e. the Romans) *and the Haedui*; *ipsis* is dative, lit. *for themselves*. **quae** . . . **quotiēns quamque honorifica**: *what, how frequent, and how honorable*. **in eōs**: *in regard to them*.

16. **ut**: *how*, introducing an indirect question.

18. **adpetissent**: subjv. in virtual indirect discourse, its clause depending on an indirect question; pluperfect for perfect indic. of direct discourse. **hanc**: explained by the appositive clause, *ut . . . vellet, to desire*; for *hanc* instead of *hōc* see A. 296, a (195, d); B. 246, 5; G. 211, r. 5; H. 396, 2; H-B. 326, 1.

19. **sui nihil**: *nothing of their own, nothing of what they had*; *sui* is a neuter substantive.

20-22. **grātiā**, etc.: *in influence*, etc., abls. of specification. **quod . . . attulissent**: (*as to*) *what they had brought*, etc., i.e. (*as to*) *what they had possessed before becoming friends of the Roman people*, viz. independence and leadership. **id** . . . **quis patī posset**: *who could suffer that to be wrested from them?* **eīs**: dat. of separation; cf. *equitibus*, 37, 16. **posset**: for direct *possit*; for the mood see A. 587 (338, a); B. 315, 3; G. 651, r. 2; H. 642, 3; H-B. 503.

24. **nō** . . . **inferret**, etc.: *that he should not make war, that he should return the hostages*, etc., explaining *eadem*. The form of the clause is the same as if directly the object of *Postulāvit*.

26. **at**: *yet at least*.

Page 39. 1-2. CHAPTER 44. *pauca*: *briefly*. *multa*: *at length*.

5. *habēre*: sc. *sē* as subject. *ipsi*: i.e. the Gauls.

7. *cōnsuērint*: *are accustomed*.

9. *omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs*: i.e. the Haedui and allies.

10. *castra habuisse*: *had encamped, had engaged in hostilities*.

ūnō proeliō: the battle of Magetobriga, cf. 27, 2.

11-12. *experiri*: used absolutely; for English *try it*. *velint*: for the sake of vividness present and perfect subjunctives are employed in the subordinate clauses through the greater part of this chapter, though the narrative begins with secondary tenses, *respondit, praedicāvit*, 1-2. *dēcertāre*: complementary infinitive, depending on *parātum*. Observe the force of *dē* in *dēcertāre*, *fight it out*.

13. *dē . . . recūsāre*: *object to, refuse to pay*; the infinitive is subject of *esse*.

15-16. *sibi ōrnāmentō . . . nōn dētrīmentō*: a (*source of*) *honor and protection to him, not of loss*, a dat. of the person along with a dat. of the purpose or end. *petisse*: sc. *eam* as object.

20. *Quod . . . trādūcat*: *as to his bringing across*.

21. *sui mūniendī causā*: *to protect himself*; for the construction with *sui* see A. 504, c (298, a); B. 339, 5; G. 428, r. 1; H. 626, 3; H-B. 614.

22-23. *quod . . . dēfenderit*: a substantive clause, subject of *esse*; *dēfenderit* in the sense of *ward off*, with *bellum* as object, may be translated *act on the defensive*. *nisi rogātus*: *without being asked*.

24. *populum Rōmānum*: sc. *vēnisse*; *populus Rōmānus vēnerit* (or *vēnisset*) might have been expected, but the construction is attracted to that of *sē . . . vēnisse*.

26. *Quid sibi vellet*: *what did he (Caesar) mean?* lit. *wish for himself*. Observe the imperfect, the standpoint now shifting to the past.

Page 40. 1-4. *hanc Galliam*: *this (part of) Gaul*. *illam*: sc. *Galliam*. *nostram*: sc. *prōvinciam*. *Ut ipsi concēdi*

nōn oportēret : *just as there ought to be no yielding to him.* The infinitive is an impersonal passive, subject of *oportēret*. **quod . . . interpellārēmus** : *in disturbing him, lit. because we, etc.*

5. **Quod . . . dīceret** : *as for Caesar's statement.*

6-7. **imperitum rērum** : *unacquainted with the facts*; for the gen. see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354. **bellō proximō** : in 62-61 B.C.

9. **Haedui** : the word is repeated unnecessarily.

11-12. **Dēbere** : *ought, in a logical sense, i.e. was justified, had reason.* **simulātā . . . amicitia** : *though feigning friendship.* Observe the position of **Caesarem**, grammatical subject of *habere*, but also the logical subject of the action in *simulātā*. **quem exercitum** : *the army which*; an example of an antecedent standing in the relative clause only, with no demonstrative in the antecedent clause. **sui opprimendī** : see note on *sui mūnīendī*, 39, 21.

13. **Qui nisi** : *unless he.*

15-17. **multis** : Caesar's political enemies in Rome are meant. **grātum** : an adjective as a substantive, *something pleasing*. **id compertum habere** : *had learned this*; for the perfect participle with *habeō* see A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 431, 3; H-B. 605, 5, a.

21-22. **quaecumque bella** : see note on *quem exercitum*, 11-12. **et . . . cōfectūrum** : *by carrying to completion*, explaining *praemiō*. **ſuis** : *on his part, i.e. Caesar's.*

23-24. CHAPTER 45. **in eam sententiam** : *to the effect, or purport*; translate with *quārē*, in explanation of *why*. **posset** : subjv. in an indirect question.

Page 41. 1-3. **pati, uti . . . dēsereret** : *allow him to abandon, that he abandon*; *pati* may govern an *ut* clause, instead of the usual infinitive clause, when negatived and with a thing as subject. **esse Ariovistī** : *belonged to Ariovistus.* **Bellō** : in 121 B.C., see *Intro.* 68.

4-5. **quibus** : dat. depending on *ignōvisset*, A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 2; H-B. 362. The real reason for

leaving these peoples free was their great distance from Rome and their inaccessibility.

6-7. **antiquissimum quodque tempus**: *priority of conquest*, lit. *each earliest date (of conquest)*; alluding to Ariovistus's claim, 39, 23-24.

9-10. **quam**: equiv. to *cum eam*; translate, *since, though defeated in war, (the senate) had been willing for it to enjoy its own laws*.

11. CHAPTER 46. **Dum . . . geruntur**: for the mood and tense with *dum* see A. 556 (276, e); B. 293, I; G. 229, R.; H. 604, 1; H-B. 559.

12. **propius tumulum**: for the acc. see A. 432, a (261, a); B. 141, 3; G. 359, N. 1; H. 420, 5; H-B. 380, b.

15. **nō quod omnīnō tōlum . . . rēicerent**: *not to hurl a single missile in return*.

16-19. **etsi . . . vidēbat**: *although he saw*; for the mood see A. 527, c (313, c); B. 309, 2; G. 604; H. 585; H-B. 582, 8. **committendum nōn putābat, ut, etc.**: *thought he ought not to make it possible for the enemy to say, if they were defeated, etc.*; the *ut* clause is subject of *committendum (esse)*; *pulsis hostibus* is an abl. absolute. **per fidem**: lit. *through a pledge*; may be translated, *treacherously*.

20-22. **quā arrogantia ūsus**: equivalent to *quam arroganter, how insolently*. **omni Gallia Rōmānis interdixisset**: *had denied the Romans rights in any part of Gaul*; *Galliā*, abl. of separation; *Rōmānis*, dat. of the person, the regular case after *interdicō, forbid*. **ut**: *how*, introducing an indirect question.

Page 42. 2. exercituī: dat. of indirect object after the compound *iniecū est*, *was infused in*.

4. CHAPTER 47. **agī coeptae essent**: for the passive of *coepi* see A. 205, a (143, a); B. 133, 1; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1; H-B. 199, 2. **neque**: *and not, or but not*.

5-6. **ut . . . cōstitueret**: *let him again set a day*; felt as an objective clause depending on a verb of requesting understood from the preceding sentence. **minus**: here, as frequently, a practical equivalent for *nōn*.

7-9. **Conloquendī**: in emphatic position. **causa visa nōn est**: *there seemed to be no reason*. **retinēri quīn . . . cōice-rent**: *be restrained from hurling*; for the use of **quīn** see A. 558 (319, d); B. 295, 3, a; G. 555, 1; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b.

12-13. **Procillum**: object of *mittere*, 18, which is the subject of *visum est*. **virtūte, humanitāte**: abl. of quality.

14-15. **Flaccō**: governor of the Transalpine province in 83. **cōivitāte dōnātus erat**: *had been presented with citizenship*. Roman citizenship was sometimes bestowed on a provincial subject as a mark of honor for some service rendered. The recipient commonly adopted, as in this case, the nomen and praepomen of his benefactor, retaining his former name, *Caburus* here, as a cognomen.

16-18. **quā multā . . . ūtēbātur**: *which Ariovistus now spoke readily*; observe the adjective *multā* instead of an adverb. **in eō**: *in his case*. **Germānis esset**: *the Germans had*. The subjv. *esset* is due to the informal indirect discourse introduced by *visum est*. Presumably Ariovistus would feel more kindly towards a Gaul than towards a Roman. A Gaul, too, would not be so valuable to retain as a hostage.

22-24. **quid venīrent**: for the direct *quid venitis?* **an speculandī causā**: *was it to play the spy?* for the use of *an* see A. 335, b (211, b); B. 162, 4, a; G. 457, 1; H. 380, 3; H-B. 234. **Cōnantēs . . . prohibuit**: *when they tried to speak he stopped them*.

Page 43. 3. CHAPTER 48. **praeter castra**: that Caesar did nothing to prevent this movement was due probably to the fact that Ariovistus moved along the lower slopes of the mountains, where he could not be attacked readily.

4-6. **eō cōnsiliō, utī . . . interclūderet**: *with the design of cutting off*; as in 24, 18, *cōnsiliō* anticipates, and is explained by, a clause of purpose. **supportārētur**: subjv. by attraction.

7-9. **aciem instructam habuit**: *kept his line of battle in array*. See plan, 1st position. **sī vellet**: the verb in a condition future

to a past verb (*habuit*) regularly stands in the subjv., imperf. or pluperf. **ei ut . . . nōn deesset**: *that he might not lack*, a clause of purpose, *nōn* being taken closely with *deesset*. Observe the dat. with *deesset*, lit. *be lacking to him*, and cf. the dative of possession, *Germānūs*, 42, 17, used with *esset*.

10-11. **exercitum**: here used of the infantry alone. **continuit, contendit**: adversative asyndeton, *but*.

12. **quō**: *in which*.

13-14. **totidem numerō**: *the same number of*, lit. *in number*, abl. of specification. **cōpiā**: equivalent to *multitudine*. **singuli singulōs**: with *singuli* sc. *equitēs*, with *singulōs* sc. *peditēs*; translate, *one for each horseman*.

15-17. **hīs**: sc. *peditibus*. Observe the imperfects of repeated or customary action, **versābantur**, *would engage*, etc.; also the pluperfect **dēsciderat**, *had fallen*. **hī**: the infantry. **dūrius**: *unusually serious*. **graviōre**: *unusually severe*.

18-19. **sī quō**, etc.: *if it was necessary to advance to some point farther than usual or to withdraw with unusual speed*; *erat prōdeundum* and (*erat*) *recipiendum* are impersonal. **sublevātī**: *supported by, holding on*. In the campaign of 52 Caesar himself employed some of these German cavalymen with their attendant infantry. The Gauls are reported as employing the same tactics in 52. In the Civil War Caesar also made use of similar tactics with his own men.

21-23. CHAPTER 49. **nō . . . prohibērētur**: purpose of *dēlēgit* and *mūtre iussit*. **locō**: an antecedent repeated in the relative clause, and to be omitted in translation.

Page 44. 2. **castra**: the smaller camp; see the plan.

4. **expedita**: limits *milia*, but to be translated with *hominum*.

5-6. **quae . . . terrērent**: *to terrify*; *cōpiae* (to be omitted in translation) is the appositional antecedent incorporated as usual in the relative clause, with the relative *quae* attracted to agree with it in gender. **mūnitiōne**: here used of *the work of constructing camp*.

11. CHAPTER 50. **institūtō suō**: *according to his practice, as usual.*

13. **aciem**: see plan, 2d position.

17-18. **Acriter . . . pūgnātum est**: *the battle, waged fiercely by both sides, lasted till evening; pūgnātum est is an impersonal passive.*

21-22. **quam ob rem**: *why, lit. on account of what thing, introducing an indirect question.* **proeliō dēcertāret**: *fight a decisive battle.*

23-25. **quod . . . esset**: *that it was the custom, explaining causam.* **ut . . . dēclārārent**: *for the matrons to make known, explaining cōnsuetūdō.* The lots were rods inscribed with runes. Tacitus (*Germania*, 10) assigns to the priests the interpreting of lots in regard to public matters. The practice may have varied among different tribes. The same historian tells us that the Germans attributed to their women in general a certain prophetic power. **vaticinātiōnibus**: perhaps prophecies from observing the flight and cries of birds, and the eddies of rivers, as related by Tacitus and Plutarch. **utrum . . . necne**: *whether . . . or not, a double indirect question.* **expedi**: *expedient, advantageous.*

26-27. **nōn esse fās**: *it was not decreed, it was not the will of the gods.* **si . . . contendissent**: *if they should fight, for future perf. indic. of direct discourse.* **proeliō**: the context suggests a *general or decisive battle.* **novam lūnam**: Sept. 18th. A superstitious regard for the phases of the moon is common among barbarian peoples. Tacitus (*Germania*, 11) says that the German popular assemblies were held either at the new or full moon.

Page 45. 1-2. CHAPTER 51. **Postridiēs**: *the battle was fought presumably about Sept. 14th.* **praesidiō utrisque castris**: *to guard both camps, two datives, of the purpose and the thing served.* **quod . . . visum est reliquit**: *left what seemed a sufficient (force).*

4-5. **minus . . . prō hostium numerō valēbat**: *was not so*

strong . . . as the enemy, lit. in comparison with the number of the enemy.

10. **raedīs, carrīs** : abl. of means.

11. **hō** : for *in raedās et carrōs*.

12-13. **proficiscentēs** : *as they went*, limiting **militēs**. **nō** : *not to*.

15-17. CHAPTER 52. **singullī**, etc. : five legions were commanded each by a **legatus**, a sixth by the **quaestor**. See *Introd.* 12, 14. **testēs** : *as witnesses*. **ā dextrō cornū** : *on the right wing*, i.e. of the Roman line. **eam partem** : i.e. the German left wing.

19-21. **Ita** : limits *ācriter*. **signō datō** : *when the command was given*. **itaque** : equivalent to *et ita*, *ita* limiting *repente* and *celeriter*. **spatium cōiciendī** : *time to hurl*. See *Introd.*

33. **pīla** : object of the gerund *cōiciendī*; what is the usual construction? **Rēiectīs** : *throwing aside*.

22. **comminus gladiis pūgnātum est** : *they engaged at close quarters with swords*.

23. **ex** : *according to*. **phalange** : see note on *phalange*, 20, 24. Each tribe may have formed a separate phalanx; in that case the plural should be read in 46, 1.

Page 46. 1-2. **phalanga** : acc. singular, A. 81, 3 (63, f); B. 47, 1; G. 66, 3; H. 109, 3; H-B. 95. **vulnerārent** : *inflicted wounds*, used absolutely.

5. **P. Crassus** : son of the triumvir, Marcus Crassus. He was killed by the Parthians in 53 at the battle of Carrhae. **expeditior** : *more free to act*, the cavalry not yet having joined battle.

7. **tertiā aciem** : the third line constituted a reserve force. See *Introd.* 33. **labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō** : *to the support of our hard-pressed men*.

10-12. CHAPTER 53. **prius quam . . . pervēnērunt** : for the mood see A. 551, a (327); B. 291, 2; G. 576; H. 605, I; H-B. 561. **viribus cōnfisī** : *relying on their strength*; for the case with *confisus* see A. 431 (254, b); B. 219, 1; G. 401, n. 6; H. 476, 3; H-B. 437. **mīlia quīnque** : the text is probably

incorrect, as the Rhine was about fifteen miles distant. Possibly the Germans fled down the valley of the Ill, as indicated on the campaign map.

14-15. **Ariovistus**: his death is mentioned in Bk. V. How soon after this battle it occurred is not known. **eā**: in it, abl. of means. **reliquōs omnēs**: 80,000 fell in the battle and rout, according to Plutarch and Appian.

16-20. **Duae uxōrēs**: polygamy among the Germans was confined to the chiefs, according to Tacitus. **nātiōne**: by birth, abl. of specification. **dūxerat**: had brought; in 18, had married. **duae filiae**: sc. *fuērunt*.

Page 47. 1-3. **Procillus**: cf. 42, 12. **trīnis**: triple, distributive numeral, because *catēnae* is usually employed in the plural, A. 137, b (95, b); B. 81, 4, b; G. 97, 3; H. 164, 3; H-B. 247, a. **in ipsum Caesarem incidit**: fell into Caesar's own hands. **quidem**: emphasizes the word immediately preceding, and that was a circumstance which.

7-8. **ēius calamitāte**: by disaster to him. **neque dē . . . quicquam fortūna dēminuerat**: and because fortune had not subtracted anything from, or had not diminished. **grātulātiōne**: in a reflexive sense, *self-congratulation, rejoicing*.

9-10. **ter sortibus cōsultum**: three times the lots had been consulted; *sortibus*, abl. of means; *cōsultum (esse)*, impersonal. Three was a sacred number in connection with the interpretation of lots among the Germans. **utrum**, etc.: whether he should be burned at once or be reserved for another time, double deliberative question, indirect, A. 575, b (338, a); B. 315, 3; G. 265, 651, r. 2; H. 559, 4, 642, 3; H-B. 503. **sortium beneficiō**: thanks to the lots.

15. CHAPTER 54. **Ubii**: from Bk. IV we learn that the Ubii and Suebi were enemies of long standing. **Rhēnum**: acc. after *proximi*; cf. *propius tumultum*, 41, 12.

18-19. **mātūrius paulō**: the latter part of September, or early in October. **in Sēquanōs**: the troops were probably quartered at Vesontio for the winter.

20. **ad conventūs agendōs**: *to hold court*. The governorship of a province combined both executive and judicial functions. Caesar probably left judicial duties in the Transalpine province to some subordinate, reserving Cisalpine Gaul for himself. Here he could more easily keep in touch with friends and with political affairs in Rome.



SCUTUM.

BOOK II.

INTRODUCTION.

War with the Belgae. — Whether Caesar had fully determined upon the conquest of Gaul before leaving Rome, we do not know. At all events the quartering of his army outside the province at the close of the first year's campaigns, and among a people not at war with Rome, made it clear that the project of conquest was now at least, if it had not been before, a well-defined purpose. In consequence, the Belgae of the north, alive to the meaning of the past year's events, formed a defensive league during the winter of 58-57, and prepared to resist any inroads upon their part of the Gallic land.

Caesar, informed of the situation by his trusted lieutenant, Labienus, enlisted two new legions in his Cisalpine province, bringing the total up to eight. With these legions he marched north in the summer of 57, friendly tribes meanwhile reporting the concentration of the Belgic forces. At Caesar's approach one Belgic tribe, the Remi, seized the opportunity to ingratiate themselves with the conqueror, and were thereafter as friends and allies accorded by Caesar a position of importance in the north second only to that of the Haedui in central Gaul.

The Haeduan allies were now sent to ravage the country of the Bellovaci, the most influential Belgic tribe, while Caesar entrenched his army on the north bank of the river Aisne and awaited the vast host of the Belgae. Unsuccessful in an attack on Bibrax, stronghold of the Remi, the Belgae proceeded against Caesar. Minor engagements followed, but without bringing on a decisive battle. The Belgae, learning of the movement of the Haedui, and being hard pressed for supplies,

disbanded their forces, each tribal contingent returning to the defense of its own territory. Caesar availed himself of the obvious advantage thus offered and forced the surrender of one tribe after another in rapid succession. He then marched against the Nervii and their allies. Their sudden attack upon the Roman army, while busy at the work of constructing a camp, tested to the utmost the self-reliance, discipline, and courage of the individual soldier, and resulted in a battle the most desperate of the war thus far. In the end victory fell to the Romans. The Nervii, completely crushed for the present, sent envoys to offer their submission.

Upon hearing of this victory the Atuatucae, who were on their way to reinforce the Nervii, returned home and rallied in their chief town, a place possessed of strong natural fortifications and accessible only on one side by a narrow approach. Caesar hemmed them in by lines of circumvallation and constructed a siege mole along the narrow slope. Dismayed by this method of attack and in particular by the approach of the tower, the townspeople sued for peace. Part of their arms, however, they concealed at the time of surrender, and in the dead of night essayed an attack on the Roman works. They were repulsed with heavy loss and on the following day 53,000 were sold into slavery.

Close of the Campaign.—Publius Crassus, meanwhile, with one legion had brought about the submission of certain maritime tribes of northwestern Gaul.

Before leaving for Italy Caesar distributed his legions in winter quarters in such a way as to guard the newly conquered territory, and especially that of the maritime peoples, whose submission could as yet be hardly more than half-hearted. In honor of Caesar's victories the Roman senate voted a thanksgiving of fifteen days.

BOOK II.

WAR WITH THE BELGAE, 1-33.

Page 48. 1. CHAPTER 1. **esset**: for mood and tense see A. 546 (325); B. 288, B; G. 585; H. 600, II; H-B. 524. **ita ut**: just as. **suprā**: see 47, 20.

2. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: the "editorial we" of Caesar the author. **adferēbantur**: imperfect of repeated occurrences, reached him from time to time, kept coming to him; so also *fīēbat*, 3.

3. **litteris**: most frequently singular in meaning, a letter, but here plural, *despatches*. **Labiēnī**: Labienus was in charge of winter quarters; see 47, 19. **Belgās . . . conīūrāre**, etc.: that the Belgae were forming a league, indirect discourse, A. 580 (336); B. 314; G. 650; H. 642, 643; H-B. 534.

4. **quam**: *who* (subject of *esse*), used instead of *quōs*, being attracted to agreement with the predicate noun, *partem*, A. 306 (199); B. 250, 3; G. 614, R. 3, b; H. 396, 2; H-B. 326, 1. **dirēxerāmus**: indicative in an explanatory remark of the author's; the perfect might have been employed, as in 2, above.

5. **inter sē dare**: *were exchanging*; *sē* is here and often used as a reciprocal pronoun.

6-7. **Conīūrāndī**: gen. of the gerund depending on *causās*. **hās**: *these, as follows*, explained by the *quod* clauses, *because*, or *that*, etc. **verērentur**: subjv. in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **nē**: *that*; for the construction after a verb of fearing see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567; H-B. 502, 4, a. **omnī pācātā Galliā**; abl. absolute with conditional force, *if all Gaul should be subdued*, A. 420, 4 (255, d, 4); B. 227, 2, b; G. 410; H. 489, 1; H-B. 421, 6. Celtic Gaul is meant.

8-9. **partim** (sc. *ab eis*) **quī**: *partly by those who, or some of*

whom. **ut . . . ita**: correlatives, *just as . . . so*. Beginning with *partim qui* the indirect discourse is dropped, what follows being stated as on the authority of the writer.

10-11. **exercitum . . . inveterāscere**: an infinitive clause depending on *molestē ferēbant*, *resented it, that*; cf. *Germānōs versāri*, 9, depending on *nōluerant*, *had been unwilling for*. **partim quī**: *while others*. **mōbilitāte et levitāte**: abls. of cause. Caesar more than once remarks upon the instability of the Gallic character.

12. **imperīis**: for the dative after *studēbant* see A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346, r. 2; H. 426, 1; H-B. 462, II. **ab nōn nullis**: sc. *solicitābantur*. Here appears a fourth reason for the Gallic unrest, the personal ambition of powerful chiefs, certain to be thwarted under Roman dominion.

13-14. **ad condūcendōs hominēs**: *for hiring men*, gerundive construction. For the fact compare the case of Dumnorix, 15, 24-25. **occupābantur**: conative imperfect; translate active, *the more powerful . . . were trying to gain*.

15. **quī**: *and they*. **eam rem**: referring to the acquiring of royal power. **imperīō nostrō**: *under our sovereignty*, abl. of attendant circumstances, A. 423 (256); B. 221; G. 399; H. 477, 3; H-B. 422, I.

Explain the construction of **litteris** 3, **Gallis** 8, **occupābantur** 14. Give the principal parts of **adferēbantur** 2, **fiēbat** 3, **verērentur** 6, **nōluerant** 9, **inveterāscere** 10, **studēbant** 12, **cōnsequi** 15.

17-18. CHAPTER 2. **duās legiōnēs**: the 13th and 14th. Six legions were already quartered among the Sequani; see 47, 18-19. **initā aestāte**: *at the beginning of summer*, abl. absolute. *aestās* is probably used to include the time between the spring and autumn equinoxes.

Page 49. 1. **quī dēdūceret**: *to lead*, relative clause of purpose, A. 531, 2 (317, 2); B. 282, 2; G. 630; H. 590; H-B. 502, 2. *Pedium* is the antecedent of *qui*.

2. **cum primum**: *as soon as*, usually takes the indicative.

3-5. **Dat**: historical present. **negōtium**: *the duty*, explained by the appositive clause, *utī . . . cōgnōscant*, etc., *of finding out . . . and informing him*. **Belgīs**: dat. after *finitimī*, A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1, a; G. 359; H. 434, 2; H-B. 362, III. **gerantur**: subjv. by attraction, A. 593 (342); B. 324, 1; G. 663, 1; H. 652; H-B. 539.

8. **dubitandum (esse) nōn quīn . . . proficīscerētur**: *he ought not to hesitate to proceed against them*; *dubitandum* is impersonal. For the *quīn* clause see A. 558, a, n. 2 (332, g, n. 2); B. 298, b; G. 555, r. 3; H. 595, 1; H-B. 502, 3, b.

9. **Rē prōvīsa**: abl. absolute, *after providing for supplies*. **dīēbus**: abl. of time within which, in the course of which.

Construction of **Senonibus** 3, **erant** 4, **manūs** 6. Principal parts of **initā** 48, 18; **inciperet** 49, 3, **gerantur**, **cōgnōscant** 5, **cōgī** 7, **proficīscerētur** 8.

11. CHAPTER 3. **celerius omnium opīniōne**: *sooner than any one expected*; for the case of *opīniōne* see A. 406 (247); B. 217, 1; G. 398; H. 471; H-B. 416.

12-13. **vēnisset**: for mood and tense see references on *esset*, 48, 1. **Rēmī**: these people had been more or less under the dominion of the Suessiones. **proximī ex Belgīs**: *the nearest of the Belgae*. **Galliae**: dative after *proximī*; see references on *Belgīs*, 4, above. **prīmōs**: *leading men*.

14. **quī dicerent**: a relative clause of purpose. **sē**: object of *permittere*; another *sē* is to be understood as subject; its repetition would have seemed awkward. For the principles of indirect discourse see references on *Belgās . . . coniūrāre*, 48, 3. **sua omnia**: *all their possessions*, the possessive adjective in the neuter plural as a substantive.

15. **neque**: *and not*, serves as a connective, and as a correlative with the following *neque*.

17. **coniūrāsse**: for the contracted form see A. 181, a (128, a, 1); B. 116, 1; G. 131, 1; H. 238; H-B. 163, 1. **-que**: may be translated *and*, or *but*. **dare**: infinitive, complementary to *parātōs*, *ready to give*, etc.

18. **oppidīs**: *in their towns*.

19. **Germānōs**: see 50, 29-30.

21-25. **ut . . . dēterrēre potuerint, quā . . . cōnsentirent**: *that they have not been able to deter even the Sueviones from uniting with them.* *potuerint* is subjv. in a clause of result. For the *quā* clause see A. 558 (332, g); B. 295, 3, a; G. 555, 1; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b. **iūre, lēgibus**: for the abl. with *utor* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429. Before *ūnum* a conjunction is to be supplied, *and*. The omission of a conjunction is called *asyndeton*.

Observe that the tenses in 15-25, though dependent on a past, *dicerent*, are given a present standpoint; as the present subjunctives show, for vivid effect. *cōnsentirent*, however, is imperfect depending on *potuerint*, which represents a present perfect of a direct statement. The present perfect may be followed in a dependent clause either by a present or an imperfect subjv., as the act is seen in connection with the present or the past.

Construction of **prīmōs** 13, **frūmentō** 18, **incolant** 20, **ūtantur** 23. Principal parts of **cōnsēnsisse** 16, **iuvāre** 19, **incolant**, **conifūxisse** 20, **ūtantur**, 23.

27. CHAPTER 4. **essent, possent**: for the mood see A. 574 (334); B. 300, 1; G. 467; H. 649, II; H-B. 537, b. **quid**: acc. expressing degree, with *possent*, *how strong they were*; see A. 390, c (238, b); B. 176, 3; G. 334; H. 409, 1; H-B. 387, III.

Page 50. 1. **plērōsque Belgās**, etc., to the end of the chapter, indirect discourse. **ortōs ā Germānīs**: for the abl. see A. 403, a, n. 1 (244, a, r.); B. 215, 2; G. 395; H. 469, 1; H-B. 413, b. Possibly the Belgae had some admixture of German blood, but the statement here made was based rather upon the fact that the ancestors of the Belgae had come from the country east of the Rhine, which was true also of the ancestors of the Celtae. **Rhēnum**: for the case governed by *trāns* in *trāduc-tōs* see A. 395, n. 2 (239, 2, b, n. 2); B. 179, 1, 3; G. 331, r. 1.; H. 413; H-B. 386, a.

4-5. **quī . . . prohibuerint**: the clause is characterizing and would therefore retain the subjv. in direct discourse; A.

535, b (320, b); B. 283, 1, 2; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 5; H-B. 521, 1. **memoriā**: *in the time*, abl. of time. **omni Gallia vexatā**: *when*, etc., abl. absolute. **Teutonōs, Cimbrōs**: see note on *Cimbrī Teutonique*, 28, 27. **ingredi**: *from invading*; an infinitive with or without an accusative is the regular construction employed by Caesar after *prohibeo*.

6-8. **quā ex rē fieri, uti**, etc.: *the result of this was, that*, etc.; the *uti* clause is a substantive clause of result, subject of *fieri*; see A. 569, 1 (332, a, 1); B. 297, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1; H-B. 521, 3, a. **memoriā**: abl. of cause.

9. **omnia sē habere explorata**: *they had complete information*; differs from *explorāvisse* in marking the continued result. A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 640, 2; H-B. 605, 5, a.

11. **quisque**: *each* (*Belgic representative*).

12. **pollicitus sit**: subjv. in an indirect question. For the sequence of tenses in this and the following finite verbs see note on 49, 21-25; second paragraph.

13-14. **Plūrimū**: acc. of degree with *valere*, *were the foremost*; cf. *quid with possent*, 49, 27. **virtūte, auctoritate, numerō**: *in valor*, etc., abls. of specification.

15. **armata, electa**: limit *milia*, equivalent to *armatorum, electorum*. **pollicitōs**: sc. *esse*.

20. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*.

21. **Britanniae**: probably only the southern coast is meant.

22-23. **ad hunc**: *upon him*, after *dēferri*. **omnium voluntate**: *by general consent*; for the abl. see A. 418, a (253, n.); B. 220, 3; G. 408; H. 475, 3; H-B. 414, a.

24-25. **numerō**: *in number*, abl. of specification. **Nerviōs**: sc. *pollicērī*, also with the following accusative tribal names. **ipsōs**: the Belgae.

30. **Germanī**: see 49, 19. If "German" is used in the sense now attached to it, it is nevertheless quite probable that the tribes here mentioned had intermingled with the Gallic population. At all events they were able to make the Gallic cause their own. **appellantur**: indicative in a remark inserted by the author; cf. *dixerāmus*, 48, 4. **arbitrārī**: sc. *as subject*.

sē, referring to the Roman envoys. **Condrūsōs**, etc.: subjects of *posse cōficere* to be supplied.

Construction of **quaereret** 49, 26; **sibi** 50, 7, **propinquitātibus** 10, **cōgnōverint** 13, **sibi** 16, **nōmine** 29. Principal parts of **expulisse** 3, **ingredi** 5, **possidēre** 18, **dēferri** 23.

Page 51. 1. CHAPTER 5. **liberāliter**: translate as if an adjective, with *ōrātiōne*.

2-4. **senātum convenīre**, **liberōs addūcōf**: infinitive clauses, the regular construction after *iubeō*. *Senātus* is of course a Latin term applied to a Gallic deliberative body. **Quae omnia**: all these commands. **ad diem**: punctually. **Ipse**: Caesar. **Diviciācum**: see note on *Diviciāci*, 3, 15.

5-7. **quāto opere . . . intersit**: indirect question, *how much it is to the interest of the state*, with *manūs . . . distīnērī*, *that the forces of the enemy be divided*, infinitive clause as subject of *intersit*. **rei publicae**, **salūtis**: for the case with *intersit* see A. 355 (222); B. 210, 211, 1; G. 381; H. 449, 1, 2; H-B. 345. The Roman commonwealth is meant, while *commūnis* refers to Romans and Haedui. **nē . . . cōnfigendum sit**: *in order that it may not be necessary to fight*, a clause of purpose, with impersonal use of the second periphrastic.

8-9. **Id fieri posse**: *this (Caesar shows him) can be done*. **intrōdūxerint**, **coeperint**: perfect subjunctives for future perfect indicatives of direct discourse.

11. **ūnum locum**: doubtless some point north of the Aisne.

12-15. **coāctās ad sē venīre**: *had assembled and were coming*; the perfect participle replaces an infinitive coördinate with *venīre*. **neque**: *and not*, the negative to be taken with *longē*. **ab eis explorātōribus**: after *cōgnōvit*. **flūmen**: acc. governed by the *trāns* in *trādūcere*, while *exercitum* is the direct object. Cf. *Rhēnum*, 50, 1, where the direct object has become subject of the passive. **quod**: agreeing with *flūmen* in gender. Sometimes the name of the river is the antecedent in such combinations. **ibi**: at modern Berry-au-Bac, north of the river. Remains of the entrenchments here described have

been found by excavation. **Quae rēs**: *this move, or position. rēs, thing*, should be translated definitely according to the context.

17-19: **post eum quae erant**: *the country behind him; ea* is to be understood as antecedent of *quae* and object of *reddēbat*. **tūta**: in the predicate. **commeātūs . . . ut . . . portārī possent, efficiēbat**: *made it possible for supplies to be brought*. For the substantive *ut* clause see A. 568 (332); B. 297, 1; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3; H-B. 521, 3, a. Observe the displacement of *ut* from its normal position at the head of its clause, in order to emphasize *commeātūs*. **In**: *over, across*.

20. **ibi**: i.e. at the north end of the bridge. **in alterā parte**: at the south end, the site of the *castellum* mentioned in 54, 15.

22-23. **pedum**: limits *vallō*; for the genitive see A. 345, b (215, b); B. 203, 2; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. **duodēvigintī pedum**: sc. *in lātitudinem*. The dimensions of a ditch are to be understood of the width unless otherwise specified. The depth may have been nine or ten feet.

Construction of **obsidēs**, **hīs** 3, **intersit** 6, **mandātis** 10, **vidit** 12, **miserat** 13, **rīpīs** 16, **erant** 17. Principal parts of **prōsecūtus** 1, **distinēri**, **cōnfligendum sit** 7, **intrōdūxerint** 9, **posuit** 15, **reddēbat** 17, **relinquit** 21.

24. CHAPTER 6. **nōmine**: *by name*, abl. of specification.

25. **ex itinere**: *in the course of their march*, i.e. against Caesar. **impetū**: abl. of manner, A. 412 (248); B. 220, 1; G. 399; H. 473, 3; H-B. 445, 3.

26. **sustentātum est**: *they held out, the defence was maintained*, impersonal passive.

Page 52. 1. **eadem atque**: *the same as; atque* following words of likeness and equality is to be rendered *as*, after words of difference, *than*. **haec**: *as follows*.

2-3. **circumiectā multitudīne**: abl. absolute, but translate the participle as coördinate with *coepti sunt*. The latter is to be translated *have begun*; for the passive see A. 205, a (143, a);

B. 133, 1; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1; H-B. 199, 2. **moenibus**: dat. governed by *circumiectā*, A. 370 (228); B. 187, III; G. 347; H. 429, 2; H-B. 376. **dēfēnsōribus**: abl. of separation.

4. **testūdine**: see Introd. 34 for the Roman *testūdō*. The Gallic formation was doubtless the same.

5. **Quod**: a thing which, this plan, a frequent use of the neuter relative referring to an act or state of affairs expressed by a preceding sentence. **tum**: on this occasion. **cum**: when, or since.

6-7. **cōicerent**: plural because of the individuals implied in the collective *multitūdō*. **in mūrō**, etc.: it was impossible for any one to maintain his position on the wall, lit. to no one was there the power, etc. **nūllī**: for the case see A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H-B. 374. **cōnsistendī**: lit. of standing, objective gen. after *potestās*.

8. **summā nōbilitāte**: (a man) of the highest rank, abl. of quality, A. 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2; H-B. 443. **suōs**: his people.

9. **oppidō**: dat. of indirect object governed by the compound *praeerat*; see references on *moenibus*, 2, above. **lēgātī**: as envoys, predicate nominative.

10-11. **nūntiōs mittit**: sends messengers (to say), followed by indirect discourse, *nisi*, etc. **submittātūr**: represents a future indic. of direct discourse. **sustinēre**: hold out, the verb being used absolutely, i.e. without an object.

Construction of **mīlia 51, 25, Gallōrum 52, 1, testūdine 4, cōicerent 6, oppugnandī, fēcisset 7, sibi 11**. Principal parts of *circumiectā* 2, *iacī* 3, *subruunt* 5, *cōnsistendī* 6, *submittātūr, sustinēre* 11.

12. CHAPTER 7. **dē mediā nocte**: after midnight. **duci-bus**: as guides. **ūsus**: employing. The perfect participle of *utor* and some other deponents may be employed with present force.

13. **Crētas**: for the form see A. 81, 5 (63, f); B. 47, 3; G. 66, 4; H. 109, 5; H-B. 95.

14. **subsidiō oppidānis**: to the aid of the townspeople; for

the two datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2; G. 356; H. 433; H-B. 360, b.

15-17. **quōrum adventū**: at their arrival, the abl. of time with accessory idea of cause. **Rēmīs . . . studium . . . accessit**: the Remi were inspired with eagerness. **hostibus . . . spēs . . . discessit**: the enemy lost hope; for the dative see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G. 352; H. 427; H-B. 371. **potiundī oppidī**: gerundive construction. **morātī**: limiting *hostēs* to be supplied as subject of *contendērunt* and *posuērunt*.

19-20. **quō**: adv., equivalent to *ad quae*. **incēnsīs**: translate active, in coördination with the preceding participles. **omnibus cōpīs**: with all their forces; observe that *cum* is not used, A. 413, a (248, a, N.); B. 222, 1; G. 392, R. 1; H. 474, 2, N.; H-B. 420. **ā**: away. **mīlibus**: may be abl. of degree of difference with *ā*, or abl. of comparison after *minus*. In 22 *mīlibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*. See A. 414, 406, c (250, 247, c); B. 223, 217, 3; G. 403, 296, 4; H. 479, 3, 471, 4; H-B. 424, 416, d.

21. **quae castra**: this camp. **ut**: as.

Construction of *isdem* 12, *nūntiī* 13, *Rēmīs* 15, *vicīs* 18, *potuerant* 19, *fūmō*, *Ignibus*, *significābātur* 22. Principal parts of *accessit* 10, *incēnsīs* 19, *patēbant* 23.

25. CHAPTER 8. **opiniōnem virtūtis**: reputation for valor. **proeliō**: abl. of separation.

Page 53. 1-2. **quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent**: what the valor of the enemy and what the daring of our men, indirect questions. **quid** is acc. of degree, *virtūte* abl. of specification. **periclitābātur**: tried to find, imperfect of repeated action.

3-4. **locō . . . idōneō**: abl. absolute, as the ground was naturally favorable and adapted. **prō castris**: in front of the camp; referring to the ridge southwest of the camp. **ad aciem instruendam**: for drawing up a line of battle, gerundive construction; see A. 506 (300); B. 339, 2; G. 432; H. 628; H-B. 612, III.

5-8. **paululum ēditus**: about eighty feet. **tantum . . .**

patēbat: in front extended just as far (in width), **quantum loci**, as the space which; translate freely as though **loci** (gen. of the whole) limited **tantum**, afforded just the amount of space in front which his line of battle in array could cover. **tantum** is acc. of degree or extent, **quantum** is the object of **occupāre**, **adversus** **limitis collis**. **ex utrāque parte**: on both sides, i.e. northwest and southeast. **lateris dēiectūs**: lateral declivities. **in fronte**; i.e. along the ridge to the southwest.

9-10. **ab utrōque latere**: on each side, i.e. to the northwest and southeast, Caesar meaning by *the hill* the highest part of the ridge, occupied by his camp. **passuum**: for the gen. of quality or measure see references on **pedum**, 51, 22.

11. **ad extrēmās fossās**: at the ends of the ditches; for the use of the adjective **extrēmās** see A. 293 (193); B. 241, 1; G. 291, R. 2; H. 497, 4; H-B. 244.

12-14. **tormenta**: Introd. 29. **nē . . . possent**: a clause of purpose. **Instrūxisset**: should draw up; for the mood see A. 593 (342); B. 324, 1; G. 663, 1; H. 652, 1; H-B. 508, 509. **quod . . . poterant**: equivalent to *because of their superior numbers*. **poterant** is indicative in an explanatory reason given parenthetically by the writer. **multitūdine**: abl. of specification. **ab lateribus**: on the flanks, by a flanking movement. **pūgnantēs suōs**: his men while they fought, his men in battle. **duābus**: the 13th and 14th.

Page 54. 2. **sī quō opus esset**: sc. *eās dūcī*, if it should be necessary for them to be led anywhere, if they should be needed anywhere. For the mood of **esset** see references on **instrūxisset**, 53, 12. **subsidiō**: dat. of purpose, as *reinforcements*.

4. **ēductās instrūxērunt**: led out and drew up. For the participle translated coördinately with the verb see A. 496, N. 2 (292, R.); B. 337, 5; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639; H-B. 604, 1.

Construction of **proeliis** 53, 1, **posset** 2, **nostrōs**, **inferiōrēs** 3, **patēbat** 6, **poterat** 7, **Hōc** 14; **possent** 54, 2. Principal parts of **audērent** 53, 2, **intellēxit** 3, **redībat** 9, **instrūxisset** 12; **relictis** 54, 1.

5. CHAPTER 9. **Palūs**: i.e. the marshy ground along the brook *Miette*.

6. **Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent, hostēs exspectābant**: *the enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross this, almost equivalent to were waiting to see if our men would cross*, A. 576, a (334, f); B. 300, 3; G. 460, 1, b; H. 649, II, 3; H-B. 582, 2.

7. **sī . . . fieret**: *in case they should begin to cross.* **impeditōs**: sc. *illōs*.

9. **contendēbātur**: impersonal, *a cavalry battle was going on*.

10-11. **secundiōre proeliō**: *the cavalry battle proving more favorable to our troops*, abl. absolute.

12-13. **quod**, etc.: *which, (as) has been shown, was back of our camp*; **quod** is subject of *esse*, while the infinitive clause as a whole is subject of *dēmōnstrātum est*.

15. **eō cōnsiliō**: *with the design*, explained by the clauses of purpose, *ut . . . expugnārent*, etc., *that they should storm, or of storming*, etc. **sī possent**: *if they should be able*; for the mood (also of *potuissent* below) see references on *instrūxisset*, 53, 12. **praeerat**: not attracted to the subjv. because the clause contains an explanatory statement of the author's. **oui**: for the dat. governed by the compound verb, *praeerat*, cf. *oppidō*, 52, 9.

17-18. **minus**: equivalent to *nōn*. **potuissent**: *should be able*, lit. *should have been able*. Observe here and in many other instances that Latin is fond of emphasizing the completion of a future action much more than English. **quī**: the Remi. **māgnō nōbīs ūsui**: *of great service to us*; for the two datives see references on *subsidiō oppidānis*, 52, 14. **gerendum**: for the gerundive construction see note on *instruendam*, 53, 4. **erant**: for mood see note on *praeerat*, 15, above. **comēātū**: abl. of separation.

Construction of *illis*, *trānseundi*, *fieret* 7, *adgrederentur* 8, *vadīs* 13. Principal parts of *adgrederentur* 8, *reptīs* 14, *interscinderent* 16, *gerendum* 18.

20-23. CHAPTER 10. **certior factus**: *having been informed*, i.e. of the movement of the enemy. **levis armātūrae**: *light-*

armed; for the case see A. 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. **ponte**: abl. expressing the way by which. **trādūcit**: i.e. to the south side of the river. **pūgnātum est**: impersonal, with *Ācriter*, *a fierce battle was fought*.

24-27. **per**: *over*. **reliquōs cōnantēs**; *when the rest tried*, *reliquōs* being object of *reppulērunt*. **trānsierant**: *had crossed*, i.e. before the light-armed troops came up. **equitātū**: abl. of means. **circumventōs interfēcērunt**: *surrounded and killed*. For the participle see references on *ēductās*, 4, above.

Page 55. 1-3. **dē**: *of*, after *spem*. **oppidō**: Bibrax. **spem sē fefelisse**: *that they had been mistaken in their hope*, lit. *hope had deceived them*. **neque**: *and not*, the negative to be taken with *prōgredi*. **inīquōrem**: *less advantageous*, than their present position. **causā**: for the case and the position of the word see A. 404, c (245, c); B. 198, 1; G. 373; H. 475, 2; H-B. 444, d.

4. **rēs frūmentāria**: the Gauls did not have the well-organized commissariat of the Romans. They engaged in raids rather than campaigns.

5-7. **optimum esse**: *that it was best*, with *quemque reverti*, for each to return, as subject of *esse*. The infinitive clause depends on *cōstituērunt* in the sense of *decide (upon a fact)*; in the sense of *decide (upon a course of action)* the same verb is followed by *convenirent*, *that they should assemble*, A. 580, d (332, h); B. 295, 4, 8; G. 546, R. 1, 2; H. 565; H-B. 502, 3, a. **domum**: A. 427, 2 (258, 2, b); B. 182, 1, b; G. 337; H. 419, 1; H-B. 450, b. **quōrum**: the antecedent is *eōs*. **intrōdūxissent**: the subjv. is due to the virtual indirect discourse of the passage. It represents a fut. perf. indic. in the direct statement of the Belgae. Observe the relative clause preceding the antecedent, *eōs*.

8-9. **ut . . . dēcertārent . . . ūterentur**: for the mood see A. 531, 1 (317, 1); B. 282, 1; G. 545; H. 568; H-B. 502, 2.

10-11. **cum**: *along with*. **ratidō**: explained by the *quod* clause, *that*, or *because*, etc. **finibus**: dat. after *adpropinquāre*; cf. the dative governed by adjectives of nearness.

Page 56. 1-3. **Hīs persuādērī**, etc.: *these* (the Bellovacī) *could not be persuaded to remain longer and refrain from going* (lit. *not to go*) *to the aid of their people* (lit. *take aid to*). *Persuādeō* in the active governs a dative of the person and an objective clause. In the passive *persuādeō* becomes impersonal, the dative and the clause being retained. See A. 372 (230); B. 187, II, a, b; G. 346, R. 1; H. 426, 2, 3; H-B. 364, 2.

Construction of **expūgnandō** 55, 1, **fefellisse** 2, **optimum** 5, **dēfendendōs** 7, **cōpiīs** 9; **cōgnōverint** 56, 1, **suis** 2. Principal parts of **reppulērunt** 54, 26; **fefellisse** 55, 2, **dēficere** 4, **revertī** 6; **cōgnōverant**, 56, 1.

4-5. CHAPTER 11. **strepitū**, **tumultū**, **ōrdine**, **imperio**: ablatives of manner. **castris**: the abl. of separation with or without a preposition may be employed with verbs of literal separation containing a preposition.

6. **cum** . . . **peteret**: a causal or temporal clause, but well rendered by a participial construction, *each one seeking*.

7-8. **fēcērunt**, **ut** . . . **vidērētur**: *they made their departure seem*; for the objective clause see A. 568 (332); B. 297, 1; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3; H-B. 521, 3, a. **fugae**: dat. with **cōsimilis**, A. 384 (234, a); B. 192, 1; G. 359; H. 434, 1, a; H-B. 362.

9. **veritus**: *fearing*, perf. participle with present force; cf. **usus**, 52, 12. **discēderent**: subjv. in an indirect question.

10. **exercitum**: occasionally, as here, equivalent to **pedēs**. **castris**: *in camp*. The abl. of the place where is frequently used without a preposition in connection with **teneō** and **contineō**.

11-12. **rē**: *the fact (of their withdrawal)*. **quī** . . . **morārētur**: *to delay*, relative clause of purpose.

13. **Hīs**: plural because referring to the collective noun, **equitātum**; dat. of indirect object governed by the compound **praefēcit**.

16. **milia**: for the acc. see A. 425 (257); B. 181, 1; G. 335; H. 417; H-B. 387, 1.

17-18. **fugientium**: *as they fled*. **cum**: causal. **ab extrēmō agmine**: *(those) in the rear*. **ad quōs ventum erat**: *whom (our troops) had overtaken*, the verb being used impersonally.

20. **priōrēs**: (*while*) *those in front*. Observe the adversative asyndeton, omission of an adversative conjunction. **quod . . . vidērentur neque . . . continērentur**: a reason attributed to the fugitives and reported by the writer, hence the subjv., A. 540 (321); B. 286, 1; G. 541; H. 588, II; H-B. 555, a.

22-23. **perturbātis ordinibus**: *with ranks thrown into utter confusion*.

24. **tantam . . . quantum fuit diēi spatium**: *as great . . . as the time permitted, lit. as was the space of the day*.

Construction of **rē**, **vigiliā** 4, **sibi**, **domum** 6, **perspexerat** 10, **lūce** 11, **lēgātum** 14, **subsequi** 15, **cōnsisterent** 18. Principal parts of **peteret** 6, **veritus** 9, **perspexerat** 10, **subsequi** 15, **conciderunt** 17, **cōnsisterent** 18.

Page 57. 1-2. CHAPTER 12. **priusquam sē hostēs . . . recipere**: *before the enemy should (or could) recover*; for the mood see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, b; G. 577; H. 605, I, II; H-B. 507, 4, b.

3. **Rēmīs**; for the dat. with *proximī* see references on *fugae*, 56, 7.

4. **Noviodūnum**: a Celtic name meaning *New town*. **ex itinere**: (*immediately*) *from the march, at once*, i.e. without establishing the usual siege works. See *Introd.* 34.

7. **paucis dēfendentibus**: *though the defenders were few*, abl. absolute with adversative force.

8. **vineās**: see *Introd.* 35. **quaeque**: equivalent to *et ea quae*. **ad oppugnandum**: gerund, *for an attack*. **ūsui**: *of service*, dat. of purpose or end.

9. **Interim**: Caesar's forced march, assault on the town, and beginning of preparations for a siege seem to have taken place in one day. **ex fugā**: *after their flight*.

11-15. **vineis actis**: translate this and the following abls. absolute by temporal clauses, *when*, etc. **māgnitūdine**, **celeritate**: abls. of cause or means with *permōti*. **petentibus Rēmīs**, **ut cōservārentur**: *as the Remi begged that they (the Suessiones) be spared*. For the *ut* clause, object of *petentibus*,

see A. 563 (331); B. 295, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 530, 2. The clause may be taken as object of *impetrant*.

Construction of *Noviodūnum* 4, *audiēbat* 5, *erant* 9, *nocte* 10. Tense of *mittunt* 14, *impetrant* 15. Principal parts of *reciperent* 2, *dēfendentibus* 7, *actis*, *iactō* 11.

16. CHAPTER 13. *obsidibus*: as hostages. *primis*: the leading men. *atque*: and in particular.

19. in *Bellovacōs*: into the country of the *Bellovaci*. *Quicum*: when they. *sua omnia*: as in 49, 14, all their possessions.

20-21. *contulissent*, *abesset*: observe the force of the tenses, *had gathered*, *was distant*.

22. *māiōrēs nātū*: older men, elders. *nātū* is an abl. of specification, A. 418 (253); B. 226, 1; G. 397; H. 480, 1; H-B. 441.

23-24. *vōce*: by their cries. They did not speak Latin. *sēsē . . . venire*: that they placed themselves under his protection and authority; cf. 49, 14-15, for a similar expression. *neque*: and not.

25-27. *accessisset*, *pōneret*: *had drawn near*, *was pitching*. *ex mūrō*: on (lit. from) the wall. *sū mōre*: according to their custom, abl. of accordance, A. 418, a (253, n.); B. 220, 3; G. 397; H. 475, 3; H-B. 414.

Construction of *contulissent* 20, *milia*, *abesset* 21, *sēsē* 23, *contendere* 25, *manibus* 27. Principal parts of *trādītis* 18, *contulissent* 20, *tendere* 23, *accessisset* 25.

Page 58. 1-3. CHAPTER 14. *Prō*: in behalf of. *eum*: Caesar. *facit verba*: speaks, intercedes. *omni tempore*: always, the idea of duration lying chiefly in the adjective. *in fidē atque amicitia*: under the friendly protection, i.e. the *Bellovaci* were clients of the *Haedui*. The power of the *Haedui* seems to have been merely nominal at this time, whatever it may have been in the past.

4. *impulsiōs*: limits *eōs* to be supplied as subject of *dēfēcisse* and *intulisse*.

6. *omnēs*: every kind of.

7. **populō**: dat., indirect object of the compound verb *intulisse*.

8. **Qui**: equivalent to *eōs qui*, with *eōs* as subject of *profūgisse*. **principēs**: leaders. **quantam . . . intulissent**: an indirect question.

Page 59. 1. in **Britanniam**: commercial relations and common religious interests made Britain a natural place of refuge for these Gallic leaders. See Introd. 60 and 61.

2-3. **suā**: in the not infrequent meaning, *his well-known*. in **eōs**: *towards them*.

3-6. **Quod**: *this*. The verbs in this sentence would be in direct discourse, *fēceris* (fut. perf. indic.), *amplificābis*, *incidērunt*, *cōnsuērunt*. For the force of the perfect tense of *cōnsuēscō*, *are accustomed*, see A. 476 (279, e); B. 262, A; G. 175, 5; H. 538, 4; H-B. 487. **quōrum**: refers to *Belgās*. **si qua bella**: *whatever wars, any wars that*. For the tense of *inciderint* see A. 518, b (309, c); B. 302; G. 594, N.; H. 578; H-B. 576, 579.

Construction of **dicerent** 58, 5, **cōnsillī** 8; **clēmēntiā** 59, 2, **tītātūr** 3, **auxiliis**, **opibus** 5. Principal parts of **revertat** 58, 2, **redāctōs** 6; **profūgisse** 59, 1, **inciderint** 5, **cōnsuērint** 6.

7. CHAPTER 15. **honoris . . . causā**: in deference to *Diviciacus* and the *Haedui*, lit. *for the sake of honor(ing)*. *Diviciaci* and *Haeduorum* are objective genitives.

8. **eōs in fidem receptūrum (esse)**: *would take them under his protection, would receive their submission*. Cf. the phrases in 57, 23-24, and 49, 14-15. Observe that *esse* is often omitted in the future active and perfect passive infinitives.

9. **civitās**: that of the *Bellovaci*. **auctoritāte**: abl. of quality, in the predicate.

10. **hominum multitudīne**: *in population*.

16-17. **nūllum esse aditum**, etc.: *traders had no access to them*. **mercātōribus**: for the case see A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; H-B. 374. **nihil . . . inferri**: infinitive

clause governed by *patī*; with the latter supply *eōs* as subject. **vinī**: gen. of the whole depending on *nihil*, *no wine*.

19. **ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis**: two qualities, one expressed by an adjective, the other by a genitive.

20-21. **quī**: equivalent to *cum ei*, *because they*, A. 540, c (321, b); G. 626, r.; H. 592; H-B. 523. **patriam**: an adjective.

Construction of **erat** 9, **multitudine** 10, **quaereret** 15, **rēbus** 18, **populō** 20. Principal parts of **poposcit** 11, **dēdidērunt** 13, **attingēbant** 14, **quaereret** 15, **patī** 16, **prōiēcissent** 21.

25-26. CHAPTER 16. **Sabim**: river names in *-is* have *-im* in the accusative. **mīlia**: acc. of extent of space, *amplius* as an adverb having no effect on the case.

27. **ibi**: the Nervii were south, the Romans north, of the Sambre.

Page 60. 2. **hīs utrīque**: *each of these peoples*, dat. after *persuāserant*. "The plural forms of *uterque* have the sense of each of two sides, each of the two parties, etc." (H-B). **utī** . . . **experīrentur**: *to try*, substantive clause, object of *persuāserant*.

4. **quīque**: equivalent to *et eōs quī*, *eōs* and *mulierēs* being objects of *conīēcisse*. **per**: *on account of*.

5-6. **quō** . . . **aditus nōn esset**: *to which an army had no access*. The clause is characterizing, *eum* meaning *a*, or *of such a sort*.

Construction of **trīdium**, **fēcisset** 59, 24, **passuum** 26; **finitimīs** 60, 1, **vidērentur** 5, **exercitui** 6. Principal parts of **cōnsēdisse** 59, 27; **experīrentur** 60, 2.

8-9. CHAPTER 17. **quī** . . . **dēligant**: *to choose*. **castrīs**: dat. of purpose. **ex dēditiciīs**: instead of a gen., depending on *complūrēs*, A. 346, c (216, c); B. 201, 1, a; G. 372, r. 2; H. 444; H-B. 346, e. Cf. also *quidam ex hīs*.

11-12. **eōrum diērum**, etc.: *having observed our army's usual order of march during those days*. The accumulation of genitives is noteworthy. For the order of march see Introd. 31.

13. *inter singulās legiōnēs*: *between each two legions*. *impedimentōrum māgnū numerū*: *a large amount of heavy baggage, carried in vehicles and on pack animals*.

14-18. *neque esse quicquam negōtī . . . adorīrī*: *and that there would be (lit. was) no difficulty in attacking*. *adorīrī* is the subject of *esse*. *negōtī* is gen. of the whole, lit. *not anything of difficulty*. *vēnisset*: *should arrive*, representing a fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse, while *abessent*, *should be distant*, represents a fut. indic. *castra*: *camping ground*. *hanc*: the first legion. *quā pulsā*: abl. absolute, *when, or if, this should be routed*. *futūrum (esse), ut*: *the result would be that, etc.* Caesar might have written *reliquās . . . nōn ausūrās esse*. The periphrasis, with a substantive clause of result as subject of *futūrum esse*, emphasizes the idea of result as in the corresponding English periphrasis, A. 569, a (288, f); B. 270, 3, a; G. 248; H. 619, 2; H-B. 472, c. *contrā cōsistere*: *make a stand, offer opposition*.

19. *Adiuvābat*: the subject is the substantive *quod* clause, 20 ff.; we may translate, *additional weight was given to the advice of those who reported the matter by the fact that the Nervii, etc.*

20. *Nervī*: subject of *effecerant*, 26. *cum*: causal. *nihil possent*: *had no strength*.

21. *ei rei*: *that branch of the service*, dat. governed by a verb meaning *to favor*. *quicquid possunt*: *whatever strength they have*; *quicquid* (also *nihil* above), acc. of degree.

22. *valent*: *consists*, lit. *they are strong*. *quō facilius*, etc.: a clause of purpose, *in order the more easily to impede*, A. 531, a (317, b); B. 282, 1, a; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7; H-B. 502, 2, b.

23. *vēnissent*: *should come*, for the mood and tense cf. *instrūxisset*, 53, 12, and references in the note.

24. *incisīs*: saplings were notched on the trunks and bent over; as the trees continued to grow, the branches, together with briars planted among them, formed impenetrable hedges.

26-27. *ut . . . praeberent*: substantive clause of result, object of *effecerant*, *had caused these hedges to furnish protection like a wall*. *instar* is in apposition with *mūnimentum*; it is regu-

larly followed by a genitive. **quō** : adverb, *which one not only could not penetrate, but could not even see through*. The passive infinitives are impersonal. The clause may be regarded as characterizing or as giving the reason for the previous statement. In the latter case we should translate, *since one not only could not penetrate them*, etc. These hedges were intended, not as frontier fortresses, but to protect individual fields. Hedges of a similar character are said to be found in the region to-day.

Page 61. 2. **nōn omittendum (esse) sibi cōnsilium** : *they must not neglect the advice*; for the dative of agent see A. 374, a (232); B. 189, 1; G. 355; H. 431; H-B. 373, 1.

Construction of **dēligant** 60, 8, **facerent** 10, **hīs**, 13, **spatium** 16, **equitātū**, **possent** 20, **cōpīs** 22, **praedandī**, 23; **impedīrētur** 61, 1. Principal parts of **perspectā** 12, **intercōdere** 14, **adorfī**, **dīreptīs** 17, **audērent** 18, **Adiuvābat** 19, **valent** 22, **inflexīs** 24.

4. CHAPTER 18. **locum** : an antecedent repeated in the relative clause, as frequently occurs; omit in translation.

5. **dēolīvīs** : note the force *dē*, downward, and of *ad*, upward, in *acclivitās*.

7. **parī acclivitate** : *of, or with, equal slope*, abl. of quality limiting *collis*. **adversus** : *directly opposite*. **contrārius** : *on the other bank*.

Page 62. 1-2. **īnīmus** : *along the lower part, at the base*, equivalent to *ab īmā parte*. **apertus** : contrasted with *silvestris*. **ab superiōre parte** : *along the upper part, at the top*. **perspicī** : impersonal passive, as in 60, 27.

4. **secundum** : preposition, *along*.

5. **pedum** : gen. of quality or measure, in the predicate.

Construction of **castrīs** 61, 4, **huic** 7; **passūs** 62, 1, **posset** 2, **fīumen** 4. Principal parts of **vergēbat** 61, 6, **nāscēbātur** 7.

6-7. CHAPTER 19. **omnibus cōpīs** : abl. of accompaniment without *cum*, in a military phrase, as in 52, 20. **ratio ōrdōque agminis** : *the order of march*. *ratio* and *ōrdō* are but parts of one

idea, hence the singular verb. **aliter sē habēbat, ac:** *was different from what, lit. had itself otherwise than.* After words of difference, such as *alius* and *aliter*, *ac* is to be translated *than*. How after *eadem*, 52, 1?

9. **cōnsuētūdine:** abl. of accordance. **expeditās:** *unencumbered*, i.e. without baggage train; see Intro. 21 and 31.

11. **duae legiōnēs:** the 13th and 14th.

12-13. **praesidiō impedimentis erant:** *served as a guard for the baggage train.* For the datives see A. 382, 1 (233, a); B. 191, 2; G. 356; H. 433; H-B. 360, b.

16. **Cum:** *when, while.* **sē reciperent:** *kept withdrawing.*

17-19. **neque;** and *not*, the negative to be taken with *audērent*. **quem ad finem . . . pertinēbant:** *the extent of the open ground.* **cēdentēs:** (*them*) as they fell back, limits *eōs* to be supplied as object of *insequi*.

20. **primae:** adjective, where English employs an adverb. **opere dimēnsō:** this had been done by the scouts and centurions, 60, 7. Observe that perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes used passively.

21. **prima impedimenta:** *the head of the baggage train.*

22-24. **quod tempus . . . convēnerat:** *the time which had been agreed upon*, the appositional antecedent attracted, as usual, into the relative clause. **committendī proeli:** *for beginning battle*, depending on *tempus*. **ut . . . cōfirmāverant:** *just as they had*, etc., or better *in the manner in which they had arranged their order of battle within the woods and had mutually resolved (to act)*.

26-27. **His:** the cavalry. **celeritatē:** abl. of manner. **ut,** etc.: a clause of result.

Page 63. 1. in manibus nostris: *close upon us.*

2-4. **adversō colle:** *up the hill*; abl. absolute, lit. *the hill being against (them)*. Cf. *adversō flūmine*, *up stream*. **occupātī:** *busy*, perf. participle as predicate adjective.

Construction of **hostibus**, **adpropinquābat** 8, **pertinēbant** 18, **opere** 20, **vīsa sunt** 22, **committendī** 23, **cōstituerant**

24, cōpilis 25. Full form of **conlocārat** 10. Principal parts of **claudēbant** 12, **porrēcta** 18, **cēdentēs** 19, **dīmēnsō** 20, **latēbant** 22, **dēcucurrērunt** 27.

5. CHAPTER 20. **Caesari**: *by Caesar*; for the dative of agent see references on *sibi*, 61, 2. **vexillum**: see Introd. 28.

6-7. **prōpōnendum**: sc. *erat*. **cum**: *whenever*. For the mood of *oportēret* see A. 548 (322); B. 288, 3, a; G. 584, R.; H. 601, 4; H-B. 540. **concurrī**: impersonal, subject of *oportēret*. **signum**: the signal to "fall in," given after the display of the *vexillum* on the general's tent. **opere**: *work*, i.e. on the camp.

8-10. **quī**: for *ei quī*, *ei* being the subject of *arcessendī* (*erant*). **paulō longius**: *quite a distance*; lit. *a little farther*, in comparison with the troops at work on the camp. **aggeris**: here in the sense of *material for the camp rampart*. **cohortandī**: see Introd. 33. **signum**: the signal to begin battle.

11. **impediēbat**: singular, *brevitās* and *incursus* constituting parts of a single idea. Cf. *ratio ōrdōque sē habēbat*, 62, 7.

12. **His difficultātibus . . . subsidiō**: *two things served to remedy these difficulties*. For the datives cf. *praesidiō impeditis*, 62, 12. **duae rēs**: explained by the appositive nouns, *scientia* and *ūsus* (further explained by the causal clause, *quod . . . poterant*), and by the appositive clause, *quod . . . vetuerat*, the fact of his having forbidden.

14. **quid fierī oportēret**: an indirect question depending on *praescribere* and *docēri*.

16-17. **lēgātōs discōdere**: an infinitive clause, the regular construction after *vetō*, *forbid*. **nisi mūnitīs castrīs**: *unless or before, the camp should be constructed*. An abl. absolute with *nisi* may be employed to express a condition. **HI**: the *lēgātī*.

18-19. **nihil iam**: *no longer*, lit. *not at all (now)*; *nihil*, acc. of degree, is frequently used as a stronger negative than *nōn*. **per sē**: *of their own accord*. **quae vidēbantur**: *what seemed (necessary)*.

Construction of **aggeris** 8, **proeliis**, **quid** 13, **oportēret** 14, **poterant** 15, **vidēbantur** 19. Principal parts of **concurrī**

6, oportēret 7, arcessendī, instruenda 9, docēri 15, vetuerat 17.

20. CHAPTER 21. **necessāriis rēbus imperātis**: after giving (only) such orders as were indispensable.

21. **quam in partem fors obtulit**: in the direction chance took him. For the antecedent standing in the relative clause only, cf. *quem ad finem*, 62, 18.

22-24. **nōn longiōre . . . quam utī**: in a speech just long enough to urge them to remember, lit. no longer than that they should remember. The *utī* clause contains in indirect form the substance of Caesar's exhortation. **suae**: their well-known, their usual, as in 59, 2. **neu**: the regular connective, and not, after *ut* and *nē* with imperative and optative ideas. Before *sustinērent* an *ut* is to be understood.

Page 64. 1. **quod . . . aberant**: causal, looking forward to *signum dedit*.

2. **quō tēlum adigī posset**: a javelin's cast, lit. to what (distance) a javelin could be cast. The clause is one of result, or characteristic, A. 535, c (320, c); B. 283, 2, a; G. 298; H. 570, 1; H-B. 521, 2, c.

3. **alteram partem**: i.e. the right wing.

4. **pūgnantibus occurrit**: finds (his men) already engaged.

6-8. **insignia, galeās, tegimenta**: see Introd. 18. **scūtis**: abl. of separation. **dēfuerit**: for the tense see A. 485, c (287, c); B. 268, 6; G. 513; H. 550; H-B. 478. **Quam in partem**: to what(ever) place.

9-10. **prima**: adjective for adverb. **haec**: antecedent of *quae*. **suis**: sc. *signis*. **pūgnandī**: from (lit. of) fighting.

Construction of **cohortandōs** 63, 20, **orātiōne** 22, **virtutis** 23, **animō** 24; **pūgnantibus** 64, 4, **dīmicandum** 5, **dēfuerit** 8, **dīmitteret** 10. Principal parts of **obtulit** 63, 21, **dēvsnit** 22; **adigī** 64, 2, **profectus** 4, **induendās, dēstrahenda** 7, **cōstitit** 9.

11. CHAPTER 22. **ut**: as, also in the next line.

13-15. **ratio atque ordō**: the theoretical arrangement. **cum**:

as, since. **diversae**: acting independently. **aliae aliā in parte**: some in one part (of the field), others in another, A. 315, c (203, c); B. 253, 2; G. 221, R. 1; H. 516, 1; H-B. 265. **saepibus . . . interiectis**: abl. absolute, by the intervening hedges.

16-17. **neque**: here begins the main sentence. **certa**: definite, i.e. according to a definite plan. **neque, quid . . . esset, prōvidēri** (poterat): nor was it possible to foresee what was necessary.

Page 65. 1. in tantā rērum iniquitāte: in such varying circumstances.

3-4. Chapter 23. **ut . . . cōstituerant**: according to the position which they held at the left of the battle line. **Ut** in such clauses contains a suggestion both of manner and cause. Cf. the **ut** clause, 62, 23-24. **aciēs**: gen., a form found occasionally instead of the form in -ē.

6. **hīs**: i.e. the Atrebatēs. **ea pars**: that post, opposite the Roman left. **locō superiōre**: the high ground where the two legions were at the beginning of the battle.

7. **cōnantēs**: sc. **eōs**, object of **insecuti**.

8-10. **impeditam**: hampered (as they were). **Ipsī**: the Romans. **locum iniquum**: the hill south of the river is meant. **resistentēs . . . redintegrātō**: when they turned and renewed.

12. **aliā in parte**: i.e. in the center. **diversae**: acting independently of the other legions, as in 64, 13.

14. **ex locō superiōre**: connect with **prōfigātis**.

15. **ā fronte**: along the front.

18. **cōnfertissimō agmine**: in close formation, abl. of manner. **duce Boduōgnātō**: under the leadership of Boduognatus, abl. absolute.

20-21. **ab apertō latere**: on the unprotected flank, i.e. the right, the shield being carried on the left arm. **summum castrōrum locum**: the high ground (which was the site) of the camp; the gen. is possessive.

Construction of **cursū**, **lassitudinē** 4, **hīs** 5, **proeliō** 10,

cōstitisset 17, **duce** 18. Principal parts of **cōnfectōs** 5, **obvenerat** 6, **compulserunt** 7, **prōgressi** 9, **coniēcērunt** 11, **contendērunt** 19, **coepit** 21.

23-24. CHAPTER 24. **quī**: refers to *peditēs*, while *quōs* refers to *equitēs* and *peditēs*. **quōs . . . dixeram**: *who, as I have said, had been routed*. For the tense of *dixeram* see note on *dixerāmus*, 48, 4.

Page 66. 1. **adversis hostibus occurrēbant**: *met the enemy face to face*. Their first flight had carried them back to, and beyond, the Roman camp. As they reentered from the rear or side they met the Nervii coming in from the front.

2-3. **decumānā portā**: the camp site, as usual, was the crest and slope of a hill, the rear gate resting on the crest; *ac summō iugō* merely explains the location of the gate. **nostrōs victōrēs**: *our victorious troops*; *victōrēs*, in apposition with *nostrōs*, replaces an adjective.

5. **praecipitēs**: agrees with *cālōnēs*, but may be translated with *fugae*.

6-8. **quī . . . veniēbant**: the 13th and 14th legions. **oriēbātur**: a singular verb, the two subjects being taken together as parts of one idea. Cf. *postulābat*, 64, 13, and *habēbat*, 62, 7. **alii aliam in partem**: *some in one direction, others in another*, or simply *in different directions*. Cf. 64, 13-14. **ferēbantur**: *were hurrying*.

10. **virtūtis opiniō**: *reputation for valor*.

Page 67. 2-3. **legiōnēs**: the 7th and 12th. **circumventās**: predicate adjective, forming with *tenēri* a stronger expression than *circumventās esse*.

5. **dēsperātis nostris rēbus**: *giving our cause up as lost*, abl. absolute.

6-7. **pulsōs, superātōs**: sc. *esse*. **castris, impedimentis**: for the abl. with *potior* see A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477, I; H-B. 429. **potitōs**: sc. *esse*.

Construction of **armātūrae** 65, 22, **impetū** 24; **hostibus**

66, 1, *respexissent* 4, *fugae* 6; *vidissent*, *domum* 67, 5, *civitātī* 7. Principal parts of *occurrēbant* 66, 1, *respexissent* 4, *oriēbātur* 7; *dispersōs* 67, 4.

CHAPTER 25. Caesar here resumes the narrative of his own part in the battle, interrupted at 64, 4. In the following passage the main sentence is, *Caesar . . . profectus, . . . scōtō . . . dētractō* (21), . . . *prōcessit* (22) . . . *iussit* (25). *ubi . . . posset*, 9-21, pictures the condition of the right wing at Caesar's arrival. In translating break up into short declarative sentences, *Caesar proceeded from . . . to the right wing. There he found his men hard pressed. As the standards had become massed together, the crowded soldiers of the twelfth legion hampered one another in fighting, etc.*

10-11. *sibi, impedimentō*: two datives, one of the person, the other of the end. Cf. 63, 12.

12. *signiferō, signō āmissō*: *Introductus* 28.

14. *in hīs*: *among them*. *primipiō*: *Introductus* 15.

15-16. *multis gravibusque*: *many severe, without and*, is the English idiom. *vulneribus cōfectō*: *Baculus lived to fight another day, as we find in Bk. III. ut . . . nōn posset*: a clause of result; translate *iam* and *nōn* together, *no longer*.

17. *tardiōrēs*: *rather spiritless*. *ab novissimis*: *in the rear ranks*. *proeliō*: *abl. of separation*.

18-19. *neque*: correlative with *et*, 19. In 20 we find the reverse order, *et . . . neque*. *neque . . . subeuntēs intermittere*: *and that the enemy did not stop advancing, or and that the enemy continued to advance. intermittere* is used absolutely.

20. *rem esse in angustō*: *matters were at a crisis*. *vidit*: repeated from 11, above, because of the long passage intervening.

21. *quod . . . posset*: a clause of characteristic. *militi*: *from a soldier*; for the dative of separation see A. 381 (229); B. 188, 2, d; G. 352; H. 427; H-B. 371.

25. *quō facilius*: *in order more easily*, a clause of purpose.

26. *mililibus*: *dat. of indirect object after the compound*

verb, *inlātā*. **cum prō sē quisque . . . operam nāvāre cuperet**: *since each was eager to do his best; prō sē, lit. according to his ability.*

Page 68. 1-2. etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus: *even though in extreme personal danger.*

Principal parts of **urgērī** 9, **occīsīs** 12, **excēdere** 18, **instāre** 19, **dētractō** 21; **cuperet** 68, 2.

6. CHAPTER 26. **sēsē**: object of *coniungerent*, *legiōnēs* being subject of the latter and also of *inferrent*. Translate, *directed the tribunes that the legions should gradually draw together, face about, and advance upon the enemy.* For the use of the participle, *conversa*, instead of a coördinate verb, see A. 496, N. 2 (292, R.); B. 337, 5; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639; H-B. 604, 1. The exact nature of the movement here described is difficult to determine. It had the effect, if not the form, of a hollow square.

7-9. **aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent**: *rendered mutual assistance.* How lit.? **nē . . . circumvenirentur**: *that, etc.;* for the construction after verbs of fearing see A. 564 (331, f); B. 296, 2; G. 550, 2; H. 567; H-B. 502, 4, a. **āversī**: *from the rear, lit. being turned away.* **hoste**: abl. of agent. The word is here used collectively.

13. **cursū incitātō . . . cōspiciēbantur**: *quickened their pace and were sighted.* **summō**: *top of*, adjective denoting a part; cf. *infimus*, 62, 1. **colle**: the hill on which the Roman camp lay.

16. **decimam legiōnem**: the 9th and 10th legions had driven the Atrebatas across the river and had captured their camp in the woods. **subsidio nostris**: *to the support of our troops.*

16. **Qui**: refers to *militēs* implied in *legiōnem*.

17. **quō in locō rēs esset**: *the state of affairs.* How lit.?

19-20. **versārētur**: singular, in agreement with the nearest subject. **nihil . . . fēcērunt**: *made all possible haste, lit. made themselves nothing left with respect to haste.* *reliqui* is a predicate genitive of possession.

Construction of **ut . . . Inferrent** 6-7, **Quō** 7, **praesidiō**,

impedimentis 12, **gererentur** 15, **subsidiō**, **nostris** 16, **esset** 17, **versārētur** 19.

22. CHAPTER 27. **nostrī, etiam quī**: *even those of our men who.* **prōcubuissent**: subjv. by attraction.

23. **scūtis**: for the ablative with **innitor** see A. 431 (254, b); B. 218, 3; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3; H-B. 438, 2, a.

Page 69. 1. **inermēs**: with **cālōnēs**. **armātis**: sc. *hostibus*.

3. **omnibus in locis**: *everywhere*, i.e. regardless of the character of the ground. **sē . . . praeferrent**: *tried to outdo*. How lit.?

5. **etiam in extrēmā spē**: *even though there was but slight hope*.

6-7. **ut**, etc.: a clause of result, extending to **remitterent**, 10. **prīmī eōrum**: *their front ranks*. **proximī**: *those nearest*. **iacentibus**: dat. after the compound **insisterent**, *mounted on the fallen*.

8. **his**: *and when these*. **quī superessent**: *the survivors*. The subjv. is due to attraction.

9-10. **ut**: *as if*. **intercepta remitterent**: *caught up and hurled back*. For the participle instead of a coördinate verb cf. *conversa*, 68, 6, and references in the note. Many of these javelins must have been rendered practically useless from the bending of the iron heads, Introd. 19. **nōn**: limits *nēquiquam*. **virtūtis**: gen. of quality.

13. **quae**: *things which*, i.e. the exploits in 11-12. **facilia**: in the predicate after **redēgerat**, *had rendered easy*. **ex difficillimis**: *though naturally most difficult*, lit. *from most difficult*.

Construction of **redintegrārent** 68, 23; **armātis** 69, 1, **dēlērent** 2, **pūgnandō**, **militibus** 3. Principal parts of **prōcubuissent** 68, 22, **innixi** 23; **praestitērunt** 69, 6, **insisterent** 7, **intercepta** 10, **redēgerat** 14.

16. CHAPTER 28. **redāctō**: takes the gender of the nearer noun, *nōmine*.

17. **aestuāria**, **palūdēs**: probably along the estuary of the Scheldt. **confectōs**: sc. *esse*.

18-19. **victōribus nihil (esse) impeditum, victis nihil (esse) tātum**: *there was nothing to stop the victors and no safety for the vanquished.*

23. **vix ad quīngentōs**: an exaggeration of their losses, in view of the forces raised by the Nervii in subsequent years.

24-25. **visus**: sc. *esse*. **vidērētur**: *be seen*.

Page 70. 1-2. **utī**: sc. *eōs* as subject. **suōs**: *their dependents*.

Construction of **nātā**, 69, 16, **victōribus** 18, **victis**, **arbitrarentur** 19, **vidērētur** 25; **prohibērent** 70, 2.

3-4. CHAPTER 29. **suprā**: see 60, 3. **cum**: conjunction. **cōpiis**: abl. of accompaniment without a preposition. **auxiliō Nerviis**; *to the aid of the Nervii*. **ex itinere**: *at once*. How lit.? Cf. 57. 4.

6. **oppidum**: probably on Mont Falhize, north of the Meuse, though identified by some authorities with the citadel of Namur, at the junction of the Meuse and Sambre.

7-8. **cum**: *while*. **omnibus**: *all (other)*. **ūnā ex parte**: i.e. to the northeast.

10-11. **pedum**: gen. of quality or measure, the comparative *amplius* being an adverb with no effect on the case. **tum**: *at this time, and now*.

13. **Cimbris, Teutonīs**: see note on 28, 27.

15. **agere**: *drive*, live stock forming a part of the *impedimenta*.

16-17. **custōdiam**: *custodians*, to care for the *impedimenta*. **ex suis**: *from among their number*. **praesidium**: *as a protecting force*, in apposition with *milia*. The *custōdia* and the *praesidium* seem to have been two different bodies. **ūnā**: *along with (it)*, i.e. with the *impedimenta*.

18-19. **eōrum**: referring to the main body. **cum . . . inferrent, aliās . . . dēfenderent**: *sometimes taking the offensive, sometimes the defensive*. With **inlātum** sc. *bellum*, lit. *warding off war waged upon (them)*.

20. **eōrum omnium**: i.e. their enemies. **hunc locum**: *this region*.

Construction of **auxiliō, Nerviis, venīrent** 4, **habērēt** 8,

pedum 10, **poterant** 15, **annōs** 18, **sibi**, **domiciliō** 20. Principal parts of **revertērunt** 5, **dēsertis** 6, **relinquēbātur** 10, **dēlēgerant** 21.

Page 71. 1. CHAPTER 30. **vallō**: a wall of circumvallation built by Caesar's army. It lay north of the Meuse, its ends touching the river east and west of the town. **pedum duodecim**: refers to the height.

2. **mīlium**: sc. *pedum*. **oppidō**: for the ablative without a preposition see note on *castris*, 56, 10.

3. **aggere**: constructed along the *lēniter acclivis aditus*, 70, 9.

4-6. **cōstitutū**: *being erected*. **invidēre**, **increpitāre**: for the historical infinitive see A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H-B. 595. **quod . . . instituerētur**: a reported reason; for the mood see A. 540 (321); B. 286, 1; G. 541; H. 588, II; H-B. 535, 2, a. **ā**: *away*. **tantō spatiō**: abl. of degree of difference. **quibusnam manibus**, etc.: *with what hands*, *pray*, an indirect question depending on the idea of asking implied in *increpitāre vōcibus*.

7. **praesertim hominēs**: *especially (as they were) men*. *hominēs* is in apposition with the subject of *cōnfident*.

8-9. **omnibus Gallis . . . contemptū est**: *is a (matter of) contempt to all the Gauls*, or *excites the contempt of all the Gauls*.

10. **in mūrō**: the Atuatucae evidently knew little or nothing of Roman siege operations.

Construction of **vidērunt** 4, **statūrae** 7, **Gallis** 8, **contemptū** 9, **oneris**, **cōnfident** 10. Principal parts of **extructō** 3, **invidēre** 4, **cōnfident** 10.

12. CHAPTER 31. **movērī**, **adpropinquāre**: *moving*, *approaching*; sc. *turrim* as subject.

14. **ad hunc modum**: *in this fashion*, *to this effect*. **nōn**: in emphatic position, but to be taken with *sine ope*.

16. **quī**: equivalent to *cum eī*, *since they*, A. 540, c (321, b); B. 283, 3, a; G. 633; H. 592; H-B. 523.

18-20. **Unum**: *one thing*, explained by *nē . . . dēspoliāret*,

that he should not deprive them of their arms. *suā*: his well-known, his usual. *statuisset*: should decide.

22. *virtūtī*: dat. after a verb meaning to envy. *trāditis armis*: abl. absolute, if they should surrender their arms.

23-26. *Sibi praestāre*: it was better for them; the infinitive *patī* is subject of *praestāre*. *eum casum*: such a dilemma, that of submitting to the Romans or being left to the mercy of their Gallic neighbors. *quāvis fortunam*: any fate, whatever (it might be). *ā*: at the hands of. *per cruciātum interfici*: be tortured to death. *cōsuēssent*: for the contracted form see A. 181, a (128, a); B. 116, 1; G. 131, 1; H. 238; H-B. 163, 1.

Construction of *mūris* 12, *altitudinis*, *celeritate* 16, *audirent* 19, *statuisset*, *armis* 20, *Sibi* 21, *possent* 23, *dēdicētur* 24. Principal parts of *locūtī* 14, *statuisset* 20, *invidēre* 22.

Page 72. 1-2. CHAPTER 32. *cōsuētūdine*, *meritō*: abls. of accordance.

5. *attigisset*: for a fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse. By ancient custom it was too late for entreaties after the assault began.

7-8. *nisi armis trāditis*: except to deliver over their arms. For *nisi* with an abl. absolute cf. 63, 16-17. *in Nervii*: in the case of the Nervii.

9. *finitimisque imperātūrum*: and would order their neighbors, or by ordering, explanatory of *id, quod . . . fecisset*. *nē quam . . . inferrent*: not to inflict any injury.

11. *quae imperārentur, facere dixerunt*: announced their obedience to his commands. The present infinitive, *facere*, instead of a future, is employed to indicate vividly their immediate submission; *sē* is to be understood as subject.

14. *aggeris*: the *agger* had been extended almost to the wall, probably to the outer edge of the moat, before the surrender occurred.

Construction of *dēdidissent* 5, *fēcisset* 8, *adaequarent* 14,

perspectum est 15. Principal parts of **attigisset**, **dēdidissent** 5, **iactā** 13, **retentā**, **patefactis** 16.

19-20. CHAPTER 33. **nē quam . . . acciperent**: a clause of purpose.

21. **praesidia**: stationed in the Roman *castella*.

22-23. **partim . . . partim**: *partly . . . partly, some . . . others*.

24. **ex**: governs both *cortice* and *vīminibus intextis*.

26. **minimē arduus**: *least steep*, implying that the Roman line of circumvallation was traced along high ground.

Page 73. 3. **Ignibus**: perhaps piles of brush and wood were in readiness for such an emergency.

4. **eō concursum est**: *there was a rush to that point*, impersonal passive, A. 208, d (146, d); B. 138, IV; G. 208, 2; H. 302, 6; H-B. 201, c.

5-7. **pūgnātum ab hostibus . . . est, ut ā virīs fortibus . . . pūgnārī dēbuit**: *the enemy fought as spiritedly as brave men ought to have fought*, or *freely as might have been expected of brave men*; impersonal passive of *pūgnō*. **quī . . . iacerent**: a clause of characteristic. **ūnā**: *alone, only*.

8. **ad**: adverb, equivalent to *circiter*, *about*.

13. **mīlīum quīnquāgintā**: *as fifty-three thousand*, predicate gen. This number included the survivors in the town, but not the whole tribe, as we find the Atuatuca leagued with other Gallic tribes against the Romans in the year 54.

Construction of **crēdiderant** 72, 22, **retinuerant** 23, **postulābat** 25, **cōsisteret** 73, 8, **dēfenderet** 10. Principal parts of **concursum est** 4, **Occis** 8, **refrāctis** 10, **vēndidit**, **emerant** 12.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN, 34-35.

14. CHAPTER 34. **legiōne unā**: the 7th. This legion figures in the battle with the Nervii. Crassus was probably sent against the seacoast tribes immediately after. The siege

of the Atuatuaci clearly occupied considerable time, their surrender occurring possibly in September, the battle with the Nervii towards the end of July.

16. **quae**: attracted to the gender of the predicate noun, *civitātēs*.

18. **in diciōnem**, etc.: the statement appears somewhat exaggerated, as they had only given hostages.

20. CHAPTER 35. **omni Galliā**: not to be taken literally, but applying merely to the defeated tribes.

Page 74. 1. **incolerent**: subjv. by attraction.

2. **quī . . . pollicērentur**: a relative clause of purpose. **datūrās, factūrās**: agreeing in gender with *nātiōnibus*, the envoys speaking, not for themselves, but for their respective tribes.

3. **Italiā**: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

4. **initā proximā aestāte**: *at the beginning of the next summer*.

6. **quaeque civitātēs**: for *et in eas civitātēs quae*.

8. **Ob easque**: in a prepositional phrase the enclitic *-que* is generally attached to the second word, if the first word is a preposition.

9. **ex litteris Caesaris**: *as reported by Caesar's despatches*. **supplicātiō**: a season of thanksgiving, decreed by the senate and celebrated with religious ceremonies.

10. **quod**: (*a thing*) *which*, (*an honor*) *which*, the neuter relative referring, as frequently, to the substance of a preceding sentence. The longest *supplicātiō* on record up to this time had lasted twelve days.

BOOK III.

INTRODUCTION.

Events at Octodurus.— The first episode of Book III belongs to the year 57. Servius Galba, one of Caesar's lieutenants, with one legion and a detachment of cavalry, was directed to free the road over the Alps by the Great St. Bernard from the control hitherto exercised by hostile mountaineers. The natives, though at first defeated and compelled to give hostages, finally mustered large numbers and attacked Galba's winter camp at Octodurus. The Romans succeeded in cutting their way out. Galba, however, fearful of his ability to obtain supplies, deemed it prudent to return with his force to the Transalpine province.

Rising of the Veneti.— The maritime tribes, nominally subdued by Crassus in 57, rose in rebellion under the lead of the seafaring Veneti, seized the officers sent to collect grain for Crassus's legions and demanded back their hostages. Caesar ordered the construction of a fleet in anticipation of naval operations in the summer of 56. Upon rejoining his army, he first sent detachments to various important posts to forestall a general uprising in Gaul. The attempt to reduce the Veneti by a land attack met with great obstacles, as their towns were situated on promontories cut off from the mainland at high tide. Before a capture could be effected, the inhabitants took to their fleet and escaped. The arrival of the Roman fleet under command of Decimus Brutus at last forced the enemy's fleet to battle not far from Quiberon Bay, Caesar with his army looking on from the heights near by. Strong hooks attached to long poles enabled the Roman sailors to destroy the rigging of the opposing fleet, after which the crippled vessels were boarded and taken by hand-to-hand fighting. The submission of the tribes involved followed.

Sabinus among the Venelli. — Meanwhile Caesar's lieutenant, Quintus Sabinus, had been sent to keep the Venelli and allies from uniting with the Veneti. The Ebuovices and Lexovii, in a burst of warlike fury, put to death their senates, when the latter refused to sanction hostilities, and united under Viridovix, chief of the Venelli. Sabinus, after establishing his three legions in a strong camp, assumed an attitude of fear and sent a pretended deserter over to the enemy to lure them on. The ruse succeeded, the Gauls coming to the attack in all haste, whereupon the Romans made a sortie and routed them. The disheartened Gauls submitted to Sabinus.

Crassus in Aquitania. — Publius Crassus, too, with twelve cohorts, a large cavalry force, and certain auxiliaries, was no less successful in Aquitania. After defeating the Sotiates in the open, he besieged and took their stronghold, the site of modern Sos. Other Aquitanian tribes, now thoroughly aroused, summoned aid from neighboring Spanish tribes, together with leaders who had acquired skill in war under the Roman general Sertorius. Constructing a camp fortified after the Roman fashion, they determined to avoid a decisive battle for the present, to cut off the Romans from supplies, and then to attack them if they attempted a retreat. Crassus resolved to assault their camp without further delay. During the battle it was discovered that the rear gate afforded a vulnerable point. An entrance was effected here. The Aquitani, assailed front and rear, gave way and fled, the Roman cavalry pursuing and cutting down the fugitives. The greater part of Aquitania then offered its submission.

The Morini and Menapii. — The year's events closed with an effort by Caesar to subdue the Morini and Menapii, two Belgic tribes which had not yet acknowledged Roman authority. Defeated in the open field, the Gauls retired to the forests and marshes of their country. Caesar gave pursuit, but was eventually compelled to desist, baffled by the denseness of the forests and by inclement weather. The legions were quartered for the winter among the maritime tribes lately conquered.

BOOK III.

EVENTS AT OCTODURUS, 1-6.

Page 75. 1. CHAPTER 1. Cum . . . proficisceretur : Caesar spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul, as usual. **Ser. Galbam :** Galba had already seen service in Gaul in the campaign against the Allobroges, in 61 B.C. He was Caesar's lieutenant through 55. In 44 he took part in the conspiracy against Caesar's life.

4. **summās :** *summit of, upper.*

5. **iter :** subject of *patefieri*. This is the road over the Great St. Bernard into Italy.

6. **quō :** abl. of the way or route. **periculō :** refers rather to attacks by the natives than to natural dangers. **cum :** *with, by the payment of.* **portōriis :** tolls levied by the mountaineers.

7-8. **Huic permisit, . . . , uti :** *gave him permission to, etc.* **si . . . arbitrāretur :** *if he should think, for a fut. indic. in a direct statement.*

10. **castellis :** *strongholds, fortified villages.*

11. **eōrum :** the three tribes mentioned above.

13. **in Nantuātibus :** near modern St. Maurice.

15-16. **nōn magnā adiectā plānitē :** *with a plain of no great extent adjoining, abl. absolute.* **Cum :** causal.

17. **hic :** *sc. vicus.* **flūmine :** the Dranse.

18. **alteram :** on the west bank of the Dranse. **vacuam :** predicate adjective after *relictam*.

21-22. CHAPTER 2. **hibernōrum :** *in winter quarters.* **eō :** adverb.

Page 76. 2. concesserat: indic. in an explanatory statement of the author's.

3. **ā multitudīne:** "collective nouns referring to persons, and abstract nouns when personified, may be construed as the personal agent" (B. 216, 1).

5-6. **Id: ū,** explained by the substantive clause of result, *ut . . . caperent.*

7-8. **neque eam plēnissimam:** *and that not a full legion-dētractis*, etc.: the abls. absolute give the reason for the depletion of the legion. In addition, this legion had met with severe losses in the battle with the Nervii. **duābus:** see 75, 12-13. **complūribus:** sc. *militibus*.

11. **cum . . . dēcurrerent:** *when they should run down*, the imperf. subjv. representing a future indic. of direct discourse.

13-14. **Accēdēbat, quod:** *there was the additional reason, that*, etc., lit. *it was added, that*; a substantive *quod* clause as subject. **liberōs abstractōs (esse):** *at the taking of their children*, an infinitive clause, object of *dolēbant*. **nōmine:** *under the name, or guise*.

14-17. **Rōmānōs . . . cōnārī:** *that the Romans were attempting*, indirect discourse after *sibi persuāsum habebant*, *had persuaded themselves, were convinced*. The participle *persuāsum* is neuter acc. to agree with the infinitive clause. *sibi persuāserant* might have been written; see A. 497, b (292, c); B. 337, 7; G. 238; H. 431, 3; H-B. 605, 5, a. **possessiōnis:** sc. *causā*.

18-19. CHAPTER 3. **opus:** the work as a whole, especially the quarters for the troops; see Intro. 30. **perfectae:** agrees with the nearer subject, *mūnitiōnēs*.

20. **neque esset prōvisum:** impersonal passive, *nor had sufficient provision been made*.

23-24. **tantum repentinī periculī:** *such great and sudden peril*; *periculī* is gen. of the whole.

25. **complēta:** in the predicate after *cōnspicerentur*, *were seen to be*.

26. **subsidiō:** dat. of purpose after the impersonal passive

veniri; sc. *posset* and translate, and since it was neither possible for them to be reinforced, nor for supplies to be brought up.

28. **ſus modi**: gen. of quality, of this sort, to the effect; explained by the appositive *ut* clause, that they should hasten.

Page 77. 2. **itineribus**: abl. of the way by which; cf. *quō*, 75, 6. **pervēniſſent**: subjv. by attraction.

4-5. **experiri, dēfendere**: subjects of *placuit*.

6-8. CHAPTER 4. **ut . . . darētur**: a clause of result, the conjunction yielding its regular position of first in the clause in order to emphasize *viz.* **cōſtituiſſent**: for mood cf. *pervēniſſent*, 2, above. **eīs rēbus . . . conlocandis**: for the gerundive construction in the dative see A. 505 (299, a); B. 339, 2; G. 429; H. 627, 2; H-B. 612, II. **dēcurrere**: rushed down, historical infinitive. Six others follow in the rapid and vivid narrative; see A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610; H-B. 595.

9-10. **integrīs vīribus**: while their strength was fresh.

11. **locō ſuperiōre**: i.e. the top of the rampart.

12. **dēfēnsōribus**: abl. of separation. **vidēbātur**: was seen. **eō**: to that point, for *ad eam partem*. **occurrere**: they would run, historical infinitive with the force of an imperfect indic. of repeated action, to match *vidēbātur*.

13. **hōc**: abl. of specification, in this, explained by the *quod* clause, that, etc. **superārī**: were at a disadvantage.

16-18. **nōn modo**: sc. *nōn*, A. 217, e (149, e); B. 343, 2, a; G. 482, R. 1; H. 656, 3; H-B. 299. **dēfessō, sauciō**: substantives, dat. of indirect object. **suī recipiendī**: A. 504, c (298, a); B. 339, 5; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3; H-B. 614.

19. CHAPTER 5. **Cum iam . . . pūgnārētur**: when the battle had continued; for the tense with *iam* see A. 471, b (277, b); B. 260, 4; G. 234; H. 535, 1; H-B. 485. The principle applies to the tenses of the subjunctive as well as to those of the indicative. **hōris**: abl. of comparison.

21. **languidiōribus nostris**: abl. absolute, now that our men's strength was failing.

22. **fossās**: plural with reference to different points, there being but one ditch. Cf. *ripās*, 31, 12.

24. **prīmī pīlī centuriō**: see Intro. 15. **quem . . . dīximus**: *who, as we have said*. See 67, 14. **cōnfectum**: sc. *esse*.

Page 78. 1. **cōsiliī, virtūtis**: for the genitive see A. 345 (215); B. 203, 1; G. 365; H. 440, 3; H-B. 355. Note the position and agreement of *māgnī*; it is to be taken with both genitives.

2-3. **sī ēruptiōne factā . . . experīrentur**; in form a condition, *if they should make a sortie, etc.*; best translated as the subject of *esse*, *was to make a sortie, etc.*

4. **certiorēs facit**: *directs, orders*. What is the usual meaning?

5. **intermitterent proelium**: *to check their fighting*; for the subjv. see A. 565, a (331, f, R.); B. 295, 1, 8; G. 546, R. 2; H. 565, 4; H-B. 502, 3, a.

6. **missa**: *hurled (at them)*. **exciperent**: *parry*. **post**: adverb.

9. CHAPTER 6. **Quod iussī sunt**: for *id, quod facere iussi sunt*. **omnibus portis**: *through all the gates*, abl. of the way by which.

10. **quid fieret**: an indirect question.

12-13. **in spem vēnerant**: *had conceived the hope*. **potiundōrum**: the endings *-undus* and *-iundus* of the third and fourth conjugation gerundives represent probably the original type in these conjugations. **circumventōs interficiunt**: *surround and kill*; for the participle instead of a coördinate verb see A. 496, N. 2 (292, R.); B. 337, 5; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639; H-B. 604, 1.

14-15. **ex millibus**: expressing a partitive idea after *tertiā parte*. **amplius** and **plūs** have no effect upon the constructions.

Page 79. 3. **exūtis**: with *copiis*. **armis**: abl. of separation.

5. **saepius**: *too often*.

6-7. **aliō cōsiliō**: *with one plan*; **aliis rēbus**, *different circumstances*, i.e. from what he had expected. Galba had expected no effective opposition from the mountaineers.

8. **commeātūs** : *other supplies, provisions in general.*

9. **prōvinciam** : the Transalpine province.

RISING OF THE VENETI, 7-16.

14. CHAPTER 7. **pācātām** : *in a peaceful condition.* **superrātis Belgis**, etc. : abls. absolute explaining *causis*.

15. **initā hieme** : *at the beginning of winter, i.e. in the year 57.*

16. **eās** : equivalent to *of that province.*

19. **P. Crassus** : see 73, 14.

20. **mare** : for the accusative with *proximus* see A. 432, a (234, e); B. 141, 3; G. 359, N. 1; H. 435, 2; H-B. 380, b.

22. **praefectōs** : see Introd. 16. **complūrēs** : with *civitātēs*.

Page 80. 1. CHAPTER 8. **Hūius** : *the last mentioned.*

2. **omnis orae maritimae** : equivalent to *omnium civitatum maritimarum.*

3. **in Britanniam nāvigāre** : see Introd. p. 60.

4. **cōnsuērunt** : *are accustomed.* What is the meaning of the perfects, *cōgnōvi, memini, ōdi*?

5. **in māgnō impetū** : *because of (lit. in) the great violence.*

7. **habent vectigālēs** : *they hold tributary.* Vessels from other states were made to pay harbor tolls.

9. **Ab his fit initium retinendī Sili** : *these begin (the insurrection) by detaining Silius.* The genitive is explanatory; A. 343, d (214, f); B. 202; G. 361, 1; H. 440, 4; H-B. 341.

10. **per eōs** : i.e. by holding them for exchange.

12. **ut sunt**, etc. : *just as the resolutions of the Gauls are, etc., or quite in keeping with the sudden and hastily formed resolutions of the Gauls.* *Ut* frequently introduces some general fact, to mark a particular fact as *natural, to be expected.*

14. **inter sē coniūrant** : *pledge one another.*

15. **nihil (sē) . . . āctūrōs (esse) . . . lātūrōs** : indirect discourse, giving the substance of their pledge.

17-19. **ut . . . mālint** : *to prefer*, substantive clause dependent on *solicitant.* **quam (18)** : *rather than*; the idea of *rather* is in *mālint*.

21. **velit, remittat**: in direct discourse, *via* and *remitte*. What do *suōs* and *sibi* represent?

24. CHAPTER 9. **longius**: *too far*, i.e. to give immediate personal attention to the matter. **nāvēs longās**: see Introd. 38.

Page 81. 2. prōvinciā: the Transalpine province.

3-4. **cum primum . . . potuit**: *as soon as the season permitted*. The conference of the triumvirs at Lucca occurred in April, after Caesar returned to Italy from Illyricum. See Introd. p. xvi. Probably he did not rejoin his army before the first of May.

7. **in se admīssissent**: lit. *had taken upon themselves*, i.e. *had been guilty of*; subjv. in an indirect question.

8-10. **līgātōs . . . retentōs (esse) . . . coniectōs (esse)**: *in having detained envoys, etc., explaining facinus*. The use of an infinitive clause instead of an appositive *quod* clause is doubtless due partly to the proximity of *intellegēbant*, partly to the desire not to employ *quod* too frequently in a short passage. **quod nōmen**: *a title which*. In applying the title "envoys" to officers sent merely to secure grain, Caesar is evidently trying to justify the following campaign. **ad**: *among, or in the sight of*.

12. **hōc māiōre spēs**: *with (all) the greater hope*. Explain the ablatives. **multum**: acc. of degree with *cōfidēbant*. **nātūrā**: for the ablative with *cōfidō* see A. 431, n. (254, b); B. 219, 1; G. 401, n. 6; H. 476, 3; H-B. 437.

13-14. **concīsa, impeditam**: predicate adjectives. **inscientiam**: i.e. on the part of the Romans.

15-16. **neque**: *and not*, the negative going with *posse*. **diūtius**: *too long, very long*.

17. **cōfidēbant**: *trusted that*, governing indirect discourse, *nostrōs . . . posse*. **ac iam**: *then, too*. **ut**: *even though, granted that*, A. 527, a (313, a); B. 308; G. 608; H. 586, II; H-B. 532, 2, b.

18. **plūrimum posse**: *were very strong*; the infinitive clause is governed by the continued force of *sciēbant*, 15.

19. **Rōmānōs**: (*while*) *the Romans*.

20. **gestūri essent**: *were about to wage war*. The periphrastic must be employed for past future expressions where the simple tenses would be ambiguous; *gererent* might mean *were waging*.

21-22. **ac**: *and besides, furthermore*. **longē aliam atque**: *far otherwise than, far different from what it was*. **conclūsō marī**: i.e. the Mediterranean.

26. **cōnstābat**: *it appeared, it was generally supposed*.

29. **ex Britannīā**: in Bk. IV, p. 109, 4-5, Cæsar offers as a reason for invading Britain the support furnished the Gauls from the island in previous campaigns.

Page 82. 1. CHAPTER 10. **Erant**: *there were (it is true)*.

2. **multa**: *many considerations, explained by iniūria, rebellio, etc.*

3. **iniūria retentōrum equitum**: *the wrong (done) in the detention of Roman knights*. For the explanatory gen. cf. *initium retinendi Sili*, 80, 9, and note. Observe, too, that the participle expresses the leading idea, A. 497 (292, a); B. 337, 6; G. 664, r. 2; H. 636, 4; H-B. 608, 2. In the phrase "Roman knights" allusion is made to the fact that the tribunes were of the equestrian order.

4. **datīs obsidibus**: abl. absolute, *after, or although, etc.*

5-6. **nē . . . arbitrārentur**: *(the fear) that the other tribes would think, a substantive clause on a par with the preceding nominatives in explaining multa*. **hāc parte**: *this quarter of Gaul*.

10. **cōspirārent**: *should conspire*; for the mood with *priusquam* see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, b; G. 577; H. 605, I, II; H-B. 507, 4, b.

11. **sibi**: dat. of agent.

14. CHAPTER 11. **flūminī**: what case did *proximus* govern in 79, 20? Which is the more common construction?

15. **adeat**: *to visit, dependent on mandat*. For the absence of an introductory *ut* see references on *intermitterent*, 78, 5.

16-17. **auxiliō**: dat. of purpose. **arcessitī (esse)**: for the personal construction with the passive, *dicebantur*, see

A. 582 (330, b, 1); B. 332, c; G. 528, 1; H. 611, 1, n. 1; H-B. 590, 1. Observe that *dicēbantur*, standing in a parenthetical clause, is indic., while *cōnentur* is subjv., since its clause is an essential part of the instructions. **per vim . . . trānsire:** to force their way across.

18. **legiōnāriis:** added to distinguish them from auxiliary cohorts. See Introd. 5.

23. **quī . . . cūret:** a clause of purpose, to see that their forces are kept from concentrating. For the gerundive after *cūrō* see A. 500, 4 (294, d); B. 337, 8, b, 2; G. 430; H. 622; H-B. 612, III.

25. **Pictonibus, Santonīs:** see 80, 24.

Page 83. 2. eō: adv., for in *Venetōs*. **pedestribus cōpīs:** when may accompaniment be expressed without *cum*? With Galba's force Caesar had two legions and eight cohorts with him.

5. CHAPTER 12. **extrēmīs:** the ends of. **pedibus:** by land.

6. **cum . . . incitāvisset:** at high tide; lit.? For the subjv. of repeated action see A. 548 (322); B. 288, 3, a; G. 584, r.; H. 601, 4; H-B. 540. The mood may also be explained by the principle of attraction. **quod:** (a thing) which.

8. **adflīctārentur:** subjv. by attraction to the mood of *habērent*. Why is not *accidit* also attracted to the subjv.? **utrāque rē:** from both circumstances.

9. **impediēbātur:** imperfect of repeated occurrences. Cf. also the tenses in the sentence following, in particular the pluperfect *coeperant*. **sī quāndō:** whenever, lit. if ever.

10. **operis:** i.e. the Roman works of approach.

11. **aggere ac mōlibus:** two explanations have been offered for this expression; one assumes the construction of two parallel dikes, the space between affording ground for the maneuvering of troops; the other assumes but one large dike, which served as a causeway.

12. **fortūnīs:** dat., for the outcome, lit. for their fortunes; *dēspērō* may take an accusative, a dative, or *dē* with an ablative.

13. **cūius rei**: for *quārum*. **dēportābant**: *would carry off*.
 17. **summa**: limiting *difficultās*.
 18. **vāstō marī . . . nūllis portibus**: abls. absolute, *in the wide and open sea, where the tides were high, and where there were few and in fact almost no harbors*.
 20-21. CHAPTER 13. **Namque**: frequently suggests an ellipsis; here, *the Veneti had no such difficulties*. **factae, armātae**: predicate adjectives. **carīnae**: sc. *erant*, also in the sentences following. **quam nostrārum nāvium**: *than (those) of our ships*, A. 297, f, n. (195, a, b); B. 247, 3; H. 445, 1; H-B. 273, b.
 22-23. **quō facilius . . . possent**: a clause of purpose.
 25. **tōtae**: *entirely*, adjective with force of an adverb.
quamvis: from *quīvīs*.
 26. **trānstra**: *cross-timbers*, supporting the decks.

Page 84. 1-2. **digitī pollicis crassitūdine**: *of the thickness of a thumb*. Explain the cases. **prō**: *instead of*.

3. **pellēs**: (*untanned*) *hides*. **vēlis**: i.e. *canvas sails*. **tenuiter cōfectae**: *worked thin*, as compared with the untanned skins.

4. **ēius ūsūs**: *its use*; *ēius* is an objective genitive.

5. **eō**: *for the reason*, explained by *quod . . . arbitrabantur*. The first *quod* is a relative. **vērī**: for the case with *simile* see A. 385, c, 2 (234, d, 2); B. 204, 3; G. 359, r. 4; H. 435, 4; H-B. 339, c.

7. **tanta onera nāvium**: for *tantī oneris nāvēs*; translate, *such heavy ships*. The turn given the phrase emphasizes the idea of heaviness.

9. **nostrae classī**: *of our fleet*. Explain the case.

10. **ūnā**: *only*. **reliqua**: (*while*) *all other conditions*, adverbative asyndeton.

12. **eīs**: dat. governed by *nocēre*. Give the rule. **nostrae**: sc. *nāvēs*. **rōstrō**: see Introd. 38.

15-18. **cōpulīs**: see Introd. 38. **Accēdēbat, ut . . . ferrent**, etc.: *then, too, they withstood*, etc., lit. *it was added that they*

withstood. For the substantive clause as subject see A. 569, 2 (332, a, 2); B. 297, 2; G. 553, 4; H. 571, 1; H-B. 521, 3, a. **coepisset, dedissent**: for mood see note on *incitāvisset*, 83, 6. **in vadis cōsisterent**: rode at anchor in the shallow water. **ab aestū**: abl. of agent; the tide is personified. **relictæ**: if stranded. **nihil**: not at all, acc. of degree.

19. **nāvibus**: dat., or abl.?

23. CHAPTER 14. **neque eis nocēri posse**: and that no harm could be done them. For the dative and the passive verb see A. 372 (230); B. 187, II, a, b; G. 346, r. 1; H. 426, 2, 3; H-B. 364, 2.

24. **ubi . . . primum**: as soon as.

26. **armōrum**: equivalent to *armamentōrum*.

27. **portū**: formed by the mouth of the river Auray. The army watched the battle probably from the heights of St. Gildas. **nostris**: dat. after *adversæ*.

Page 85. 1-3. neque satis Brūtō . . . cōnstābat, quid . . . agerent . . . Insisterent: it was not quite clear to Brutus . . . what to do, etc. The direct question would be, *quid agāmus aut quam ratiōnem insistāmus?* What are we to do, etc. See A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 265; H. 559, 4; H-B. 503. **Rōstrō**: abl. of means.

4-5. **nocēri . . . cōgnōverant**: knew that no damage could be done. **turribus excitātis**: even when towers were erected. See *Introd.* 38. **ex**: on, or of.

6-7. **neque**: correlative with *et*. **et missa ā Gallis**: while those hurled by the Gauls.

8. **Ūna**: emphatic, (*but*) there was one device (*rēs*). **falcēs**: in apposition with *rēs*. **māgnō ūsuī**: of great service. Explain the case.

9-10. **nōn absimili fōrmā mūrālium falcium**: in shape not unlike mural hooks, for *nōn absimili fōrmā fōrmæ* (dat.) *mūrālium falcium*. Explain the case of *fōrmā* and the supplied *fōrmæ*.

12-13. **comprehēnsī . . . erant**: for the mood and tense with *cum*, *when* (ever), see A. 542 (322); B. 288, B, 3; G. 584;

H. 601, 4; H-B. 579, N. **adducti**: *pulled taut*, lit. *pulled towards* (our ships).

16. **nāvibus**: dat. of reference, instead of a possessive genitive.

18. **ūnō tempore**: *at the same time*. **Reliquum**: *after that*.

19. **superābant**: *were superior*, absolute use of the verb.

21. **paulō fortius**: *unusually brave*.

23. **in mare**: *down on the sea*, the idea of *down* residing in the *dē* of *dēspectus*.

25-26. CHAPTER 15. **bīnae ac ternae**: it need not be inferred that the Roman ships were more numerous than those of the Veneti. As they were more easily maneuvered and had crippled many opposing vessels, they could attack, in groups of two or three, one vessel after another with comparatively little fear of interference. **circumsteterant**: for mood and tense cf. *comprehēnsi erant*, 12, above. **vi**: explain the case.

27. **Quod**: *this*.

Page 86. 1. **eī rei**: *for this emergency*.

3-4. **quō**: adverb, for *in quam*. **ferēbat**: used absolutely, *in the direction of the wind*. **malacia ac tranquillitās**: *dead calm*. The two words go to form a single idea, hence the singular verb, *exstitit*. **movēre nōn possent**: the ships of the Veneti were not supplied with oars.

6. **singulās**: *one after the other*.

8. **cum . . . pūgnārētur**: *the battle lasting*. **hōrā ferē quārtā**: the day between sunrise and sunset was divided at all seasons into twelve equal hours, the sixth ending at noon. Only at the equinoxes were the hours of equal length with the hours of modern time. As this battle probably occurred toward the close of the summer, the hours would nearly correspond in length to those of modern time; *hōrā quārtā*, then, is about equivalent to 10 A.M., for the word *hōra*, applied to a definite point of time, refers to the end of the hour.

11. CHAPTER 16. **cum**: correlative with *tum*, 13, *not only . . . but also*.

12-13. **graviōris aetātis**: genitive of quality, serving here to classify. **cōnsili, dignitātis**: genitives of the whole with *aliquid*. Likewise **nāvium** with *quod, whatever of ships there had been anywhere, all the ships they had possessed*.

15-16. **neque, quō sē recipērent**, etc.: *had no (place) to which they could retreat, and no way in which they could defend their towns*. The subjunctives are potential, *quō* and *quem* relatives. Cf. 120, 22-23, also *nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent*, 23, 16.

17. **vindicandum (esse)**: impersonal, *punishment must be meted out to them the more severely*. *eō* and *quō* are correlatives, the latter introducing a clause of purpose.

20. **sub corōnā**: *as slaves*. It had formerly been the custom to place a wreath on the head of a prisoner of war put up for sale. The sale of prisoners was managed by the quaestor, who disposed of them to traders following in the train of the army.

SABINUS AMONG THE VENELLI, 17-19.

21. CHAPTER 17. **Dum . . . geruntur**: for the mood and tense with *dum* see A. 556 (276, e); B. 293, I; G. 229, R.; H. 604, 1; H-B. 559.

22. **eīs cōpīs**: see 82, 22.

Page 87. 2. exercitum: a regularly organized army. **cōpiās**: seems to refer to troops levied for the occasion, to be employed if needed.

3. **hīs paucīs diēbus**: *within these few days*, i.e. while Sabinus was marching upon them.

5. **nōlēbant**: plural, a plural subject being supplied from the collective *senātū*.

8. **quōs**: for *ei quōs*.

10. **rēbus**: abl. of specification. **locō**: the site can not be determined with certainty. Napoleon thought it was probably to be identified with a hill about four miles east of Avranches.

11. **cum**: *although*. **spatiō**: abl. of degree of difference.

13. **hostibus**: dat. of reference, *in the eyes of the enemy*.

15. **nōn nihil carperētur** : *did not escape criticism. nihil* is acc. of degree.

18. **eō** : i.e. Caesar.

19. **nisi** : with abl. absolute, *unless the ground were favorable or some (special) advantage were offered.*

20. What is the force of **dī** in *dīmīcandum*?

25. CHAPTER 18. **prō** : *as, pretending to be.*

27. **neque longius abesse, quā**, etc. : *that no later than the next night Sabinus would lead, etc., or that Sabinus was about to lead his army out of camp the next night, etc.* For the *quā* clause see A. 558 (319, d); B. 298; G. 556; H. 595, 1; H-B. 502, 3, b.

Page 88. 4. **negōtī bene gerendī** : *of a successful engagement.* **irī** : impersonal passive, subject of *oportere*, *they ought to attack the camp.*

8. **erat prōvisum** : impersonal, *provision had been made.*

9-10. **quod . . . crēdunt** : *the fact that*, a substantive clause in apposition with *rēs*, along with the nouns, *cūctātiō*, etc.

11-12. **prius . . . quam ab eis sit concessum** : *until they give their consent*; for the subjv. see A. 551, b, N. 2 (327); B. 292; G. 577, N. 2; H. 605, I; H-B. 507, 4, c. **ut . . . contendant** : a substantive clause, subject of *sit concessum*.

13. **ut explorātā victoriā** : *as if victory were already assured.*

14-15. **quibus . . . compleant** : *with which to fill up*, a clause of purpose.

17. CHAPTER 19. **passūs mille** : acc. of extent of space, to be taken with *acclivis*.

18. **spatī** : gen. of the whole after *quam minimum*, *the least possible time.*

22. **portis** : abl. of the way by which, *through the gates.* **Factum est** : *the result was*, with *ut . . . verterent*, 24-26, as subject.

25. **ac** : here with adversative meaning, *but.*

Page 89. 1. **paucōs** : (*only*) *a few.*

4-6. **ut . . . sic** : *just as . . . so, while . . . yet.* **animus** :

spirit, which furnishes the impulse to action; *mēns*, *mind*, their disposition in general.

CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA, 20-27.

8. CHAPTER 20. **P. Crassus**: see 82, 18.

10. **ex tertiā parte**: as a third, possibly referring to Bk. I, Chapter 1. But it is there said merely that Aquitania is one of three divisions of Gaul.

12. Explain the cases of **sibi** and **annis**. **L. Valerius Praeconinus**: known only from this passage. His defeat and death occurred doubtless in the war with Sertorius.

14. **L. Mānlius**: governor of the Transalpine province, defeated in 78 by one of Sertorius's officers. On his retreat from Spain through Aquitania he was attacked and defeated by the natives. **āmissis**: with the loss of.

15. **nōn mediocrem**: no ordinary.

17. **comparātō**: agrees with the nearer noun, *equitatū*. **multis viris . . . ēvocātis**: see Intro. 7. **Tolōsā**, etc.: for the abl. of town names see A. 427, 1 (258, a); B. 229, 1, a; G. 391; H. 491, II, 2; H-B. 451.

21. **quō**: in which.

26. **Hi**: though referring to *cōpiās*, is made masculine in accordance with the sense, *cōnstructiō ad sēsum*.

Page 90. 2. CHAPTER 21. **superiōribus victōriis**: i.e. the victories over Praeconinus and Manlius. For the abl. with *frētus* see A. 431, a (254, b, 2); B. 218, 3; G. 401, n. 6; H. 476, 1; H-B. 438.

5-9. **quid . . . possent**: how strong they were, what they could (do), an indirect question depending on *perspicī*.

12. **ex itinere**: in its usual sense of at once, i.e. without resorting to regular siege works. **oppidum**: to be identified with modern Sos.

15. **cuniculis āctis**: i.e. mines were extended out under the *agger*. If the latter contained much wood, it might

be set on fire. See Intro. 36. **rei**: gen. governed by *peritissimi*, A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354

17. **sectirae**: open cuttings, probably stone-quarries.

21. **faciunt**: *they do (so), they obey.*

24. CHAPTER 22. **soldūriōs**: a Celtic or Iberian term.

25-26. **ut . . . fruantur**, etc.: *that they shall enjoy*, etc., substantive appositive clause explaining *condicio*.

27. **dēdiderint, accidat**: subjv. by attraction. **sī quid . . . accidat**: euphemistic for *if these meet a violent death*.

Page 91. 2-3. **memoriā**: abl. of time within which. **quī . . . recūsāret**: a clause of characteristic. **dēvōvisset**: why subjv.?

4. **cum his**: repeating the idea of *cum devōtis*, above, after the long explanation.

7. **tamen**: i.e. in spite of his treachery. **utī . . . ūteretur**: substantive clause of result, object of *impetravit*.

12. CHAPTER 23. **paucis diebus, quibus eō ventum erat**: *in the few days since his arrival*. **expugnātum**: sc. *esse*.

15. **citeriōris Hispaniae**: predicate genitive, *which belong to nearer Spain*, between the Pyrenees and the river Ebro.

16. **finitimae**: limiting *quae*.

18. **Ducēs**: *as leaders*, a predicate nominative.

19. **Q. Sertoriō**: Sertorius was an adherent of the Marian party. As governor of Spain he trained an army and from 82 to 72 maintained a war against the government in Rome, terminated only by his assassination. **omnēs annōs**: *all the years*, of the Sertorian war.

21. **loca**: *suitable positions*, for camps in particular. Sertorius had taught the Spaniards Roman military methods.

24. **Quod**: *this*, object of *animadvertit*; the relative refers to the facts of the preceding sentence, and in turn is expanded by the infinitive clauses, *cōpiās . . . didūci*, etc.

25. **hostem**: (*while*) *the enemy*.

26. **et**: *and yet*.

Page 92. 1-2. **nōn cūctandum** (*esse*), **quīn pūgnā dēcertāret**: *ought not to hesitate to fight a decisive battle*. For the *quīn* clause see A. 558, a, N. 2 (332, g, N. 2); B. 298, b; G. 555, R. 3; H. 595, 1; H-B. 502, 3, b.

3. **idem sentīre**: *were of the same opinion*. Construction of *idem*?

4. **pūgnae**: explain the case.

5. CHAPTER 24. **duplicī acīē**: the small number of legionaries at Crassus's disposal made it necessary to employ the double line instead of the usual triple line, in order to present a front of sufficient extent. The auxiliaries, too, were removed from their customary position on the wings to the center; this made them more nearly an integral part of the line and less likely to give way.

7. **cōnsillī**: with *quid*, *what plan*. **capere**: *would adopt*, subjv. in an indirect question; for the tense see A. 483 (286); B. 269, 2; H. 545, II, 3; H-B. 507, 3. **expectābat**: *waited to see*.

9. **etāī . . . existimābant**: for the mood see A. 527, c (313, c); B. 309, 2; G. 604; H. 585; H-B. 582, 8. **esse**: the subject is *potiri*, 11.

12. **coepissent**: *should begin*.

13. **sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō**: *less resolute because weighted by their packs*. **adoriri cōgitābant**: *they planned to attack*; the infinitive is complementary.

15. **suā**: referring to *hostēs*.

17-19. **vōcēs**: *exclamations*, followed by indirect discourse, *that they must no longer postpone an advance on the camp*. **expectāri**, impersonal passive, is subject of *oportere*. For the *quīn* clause cf. line 2. *irētur* is also an impersonal passive.

23. CHAPTER 25. **quibus**: governed by *cōfidēbant*, A. 367 (227); B. 187, II, a; G. 346; H. 426, 1; H-B. 362, 2. **ad pūgnam**: *for fighting*, may be rendered with *quibus*, *in whose fighting qualities*.

24. **subministrandīs**: *by supplying*, A. 507 (301); B. 339; G. 431; H. 630; H-B. 612, IV. **aggerem**: the *agger* on this

occasion could not have been an elaborate structure, from the shortness of the time.

Page 93. 1. *nōn timidō*: *fearlessly*. Point out other instances of litotes in this chapter. *locō superiōre*: i.e. the top of the camp rampart. The Aquitani, under the guidance of the *ducēs* mentioned in 91, 18, had constructed a fortified camp.

3. *ab*: *at*.

8. CHAPTER 26. *ab*: *in consequence of*.

11. *eās . . . mūnitiōnēs*: *that part of the fortifications*, i.e. the rear gate.

12-14. *prius quam posset*: for the subjv. see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, b; G. 577; H. 605, II; H-B. 507, 4, b, n. *vidērī*: depends on *posset*, to be supplied from *posset*. *quid rei gererētur*: *what was going on*, an indirect question depending on *cōgnōscī*. *rei* is gen. of the whole. *ab eā parte*: i.e. at the rear gate.

15. *nostrī*: i.e. those with Crassus in front of the camp. *quod*: *a thing which*, or *as*, referring to the fact in *redintegrātis viribus*.

18. *per*: *over*.

19. *apertissimīs campīs*: locative abl. without *in*, expressing the ground along which.

20-22. *quae . . . convēnisse*: infinitive clause, subject of *cōnstābat*. *multā nocte*: *late at night*.

Page 94. 3. Chapter 27. *paucae ultimae nātiōnēs*: for *paucae, quae ultimae erant, nātiōnēs*. *tempore*: abl. depending on *cōnfisae*, as in 81, 12. But cf. *quibus*, 92, 23, dat. of a person. *cōnfisae*: *relying*; for the perfect participle in a present sense see A. 491 (290, b); B. 336, 5; G. 282, n.; H. 640, 1; H-B. 601, 1.

THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 28-29.

6. CHAPTER 28. *omnī*: *all the remainder of*. *Morinī Menapiique*: (*only*) *the Morini and Menapii*.

7-8. **essent, misissent**: why subjv.? **arbitrātus**: *thinking*. See note on *cōnfisae*, 3, above. **id bellum**: equivalent to *bellum cum eis*.

9-10. **longē aliā ratiōne ac**: *according to a plan far different from*. For the force of *ac* following words of difference or dissimilarity, cf. *longē aliam . . . atque*, 81, 21.

13. **eō**: adverb.

15-16. **neque . . . visus esset**: *without having seen*.

19-20. **longius**: *too far*. **locis**: for the abl. see note on *campis*, 93, 19.

21. CHAPTER 29. **deinceps**: *continuously, one after the other*.

22. **inermibus . . . militibus**: abl. absolute, *while the soldiers were unarmed*.

Page 95. 1. **conversam ad hostem**: i.e. somewhat in the manner of an *abatis*. **prō**: *to serve as*.

3. **cōnfectō**: *having been cleared*. **extrēma**: *the rear of*.

4. **tenērentur**: the imperfect marks the imminence of the act, *were about to be seized, were almost within our grasp*. **ipsī**: (and) *they*.

6. **continuātiōne**: abl. of cause.

7. **sub pellibus**: i.e. in tents.

8. **Itaque**, etc.: comparison of these two chapters with Bk. IV, Chapter 38, shows that Caesar invaded only the country of the Morini in this campaign.

BOOK IV.

INTRODUCTION.

The Usipetes and Tencteri. — In the year 55 Caesar had again to check the danger to Gaul from German inroads. Two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, harassed by the more powerful Suebi, had crossed the Rhine in search of a home and had spent the preceding winter in the land of the Menapii. Upon Caesar's arrival at army headquarters, the newcomers were advancing farther into Gaul at the invitation of certain tribes, and were now in the country of the Eburones and Condrusi. Caesar hastened to intercept them. Learning of his approach, the Germans sent envoys with an offer of friendship and a request for an assignment of territory. They were warned to leave Gaul, but were told they might settle east of the Rhine in the land of the Ubii, who were now appealing to Caesar for aid against the Suebi. In the course of negotiations a treacherous attack on the Roman cavalry gave Caesar a pretext for a counter surprise, in which men, women, and children were massacred indiscriminately. The survivors fled across the Rhine. Caesar's dealings with these people met with severe censure in Rome, Cato declaring in the senate that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Germans for his breach of faith in detaining their chiefs and for the ruthless massacre.

Campaign in Germany. — To enforce the lesson of Gaul for the Gauls, — and Romans, — and to strike terror into these dangerous foes, Caesar determined in turn to invade Germany. Germans should be made to understand that "the army of the Roman people had both the ability and the daring to cross the Rhine." The petition of the Ubii furnished the pretext. The

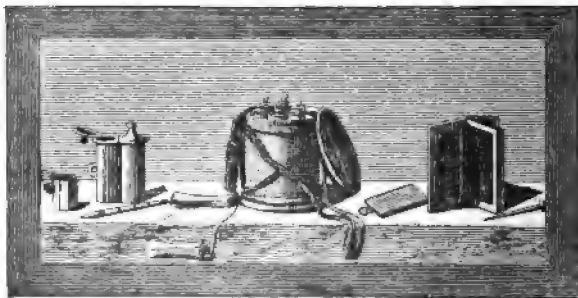
passage of the river was made more impressive to German imagination by the construction of a bridge, the work of ten days. The Sugambri, whom Caesar wished to chastise for harboring the remnant of the Usipetes and Tencteri, withdrew before his advance into the solitude of their forests. As the Suebi adopted the same tactics, Caesar decided to proceed no farther, but recrossed the river and destroyed the bridge. A campaign of eighteen days on German soil was scarcely more than a demonstration in force. Conquest of Germany was beyond Caesar's resources. His wisdom was displayed in recognizing his limitations.

First Campaign in Britain.—An expedition to Britain next claimed Caesar's attention. As a reason therefor he alleges the assistance given his Gallic enemies by the Britons in previous campaigns. A spirit of adventure doubtless played no small part in his decision. Learning of his intentions, various British tribes sent envoys across the channel in token of submission. Obtaining what information he could from traders, Caesar assembled at the Portus Itius, Wissant or Boulogne, a fleet sufficient to transport two legions. Transports with cavalry were to sail from a neighboring port. The infantry transports set sail the night of August 26th, and anchored off the cliffs of Dover about ten o'clock the next morning. After waiting several hours in vain for the cavalry, the fleet proceeded up the coast to the low shore of Deal. In the face of stubborn resistance from the British cavalry and chariots the legionaries landed and put the enemy to flight. Envoys now came to sue for peace. Three days after the landing the cavalry transports approached the British coast, but were driven back by a storm. The same night storm and high tide did great damage to Caesar's fleet. Subsequently, while the repair of the shattered vessels was in progress, the Britons renewed hostilities in an attack on one legion, sent out to secure supplies. Timely arrival of reinforcements prevented a disaster. The Britons ventured some days later to assault the camp by the seashore, but being severely beaten, again sent envoys to offer their submission.

As the equinox was approaching, Caesar embarked his troops and returned to the continent. The expedition had served scarcely more than to discover a landing-place, to learn something of British tactics, and to stimulate a desire for further exploration.

The Morini and Menapii. — Two transports, unable to make the same harbors as the rest, were driven down the coast. The soldiers upon disembarking were attacked by the Morini, but after a brave resistance of several hours were rescued by cavalry reinforcements. A punitive expedition led by Labienus soon brought the Morini to terms. Before a similar expedition the Menapii retired to the protection of their dense forests.

The legions were quartered for the winter among the Belgae. In honor of the year's exploits the Roman senate voted a thanksgiving of twenty days. Upon his departure for Italy Caesar left orders for the construction of new vessels and the repair of the old, all with a view to another expedition to Britain in the following year.



WRITING MATERIALS.

BOOK IV.

THE USIPETES AND TENCTERI, 1-15.

Page 96. 1-2. CHAPTER 1. **Ea hieme:** i.e. the winter of 56-55. **quī:** attracted to the gender of the predicate noun, *annus*; see A. 306 (199); B. 250, 3; G. 614, R. 3, b; H. 396; H-B. 326, 1. **Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus:** Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship Jan. 1, 55. See *Introd.* p. xvi.

4. **nōn longē:** probably in the vicinity of modern Cleve. It was *not far*, relatively speaking. **marī:** (*that part of*) *the sea*. **quō:** adverb.

7. **Suēbōrum:** cf. 31, 12 ff. The Suebi included a number of tribes, the most prominent being the Semnones, according to Tacitus. The same author attributes to the Semnones the *centum pāgi* into which Caesar represents all the Suebi as divided.

9. **singula mīlia:** *a thousand each*.

11. **rūsus:** *again*, of the repetition of the fact. **in vicem:** *in their turn*, of the change of persons.

13. **ratio, ūsus:** *theory, practical experience*, parts of one idea, the art of war; hence the singular verb, *intermittitur*. **privātī . . . agrī nihil,** etc.: in Bk. VI Caesar asserts this of the Germans generally.

15-16. **multum, partem, multum:** accusatives of degree. **sunt:** equivalent to *versantur*, *engage*.

17. **quae rēs:** subject of *alit* and *efficit*, 20-21.

18-20. **quod . . . faciunt:** the clause explains *libertate vitae*. **officiō, disciplinā:** *in, or to, no duty*, etc. Caesar employs the ablative or an infinitive to express the thing *in which* or *to which* with *adsuēfaciō*.

20-21. **et . . . et**: both . . . and. **immānī corporum māgnitūdine**: it was the "huge stature" of the Germans that caused the panic in Caesar's army when it was about to march against Ariovistus. See 33 ff. **hominēs**: predicate accusative; sc. *eōs*, renders them men, etc.

22. **ut**, etc.: a substantive clause of result in apposition with *cōnsuetūdinem*. Translate, *they have accustomed themselves to wear . . . and to bathe*. For the voice of *lavārentur* see A. 156, a (111, a); B. 256, 1; G. 218; H. 517; H-B. 288, 3. **vestītūs**: gen. of the whole with *quicquam*, no clothing but skins. Observe *neque* correlative with *et*.

Page 97. 1. **habērent, lavārentur**: for the tense see A. 485, a (287, a); B. 268, 1; G. 511, R. 3; H. 546; H-B. 481.

2. **est**: why not subjv. by attraction?

3-4. CHAPTER 2. **Mercātōribus est aditus**: traders are allowed access to them. **eō**: abl. of cause, explained by the clause of purpose, *ut . . . habeant*. **cēperint**: subjv. by attraction. **quibus vëndant**: (some one) to whom they can sell, potential subjv. The unexpressed antecedent of *quibus* is the object of *habeant*. **quam quō**: than because; for the mood of *dēsiderent* see A. 540, N. 3 (321, R.); G. 541, N. 2; H. 588, 2; H-B. 535, 2, b.

5. **iūmentis**: in the restricted sense of saddle-horses.

7. **importātis nōn ūtuntur**: do not import for use.

9. **summī labōris**: genitive of quality in the predicate, render capable of the greatest endurance. The *ut* clause is a substantive clause of result, object of *efficiunt*.

10. **pedibus**: on foot.

11. **remanēre**: for the construction with *adsuēfaciō* see note on *officiō*, 96, 18. **vestīgīō**: locative abl. without a preposition.

15. **Vinum**, etc.: cf. what is said of the Nervii, 59, 16.

18. CHAPTER 3. **Pūblicē**: not publicly.

19. **vacāre agrōs**: subject of *esse*, laudem being a predicate accusative. In Bk. VI, Chapter 23, increased safety from at-

tacks by other tribes is given as an additional reason for the custom described here.

21. **finā ex parte**: probably the east is meant. **ā Suēbiis**: from the country of the Suebi, to be taken with *circiter* . . . *centum*.

22. **agri** . . . **dīcuntur**: note the personal construction.

23. **fuit**: *was* (formerly), *used to be*.

24. **ut est captus Germānōrum**: according to the German standard. **quamquam sunt**: for the mood see A. 527, d (313, f); B. 309, 2; G. 605; H. 586, I; H-B. 556.

27. **ipsī**: i.e. the Ubii. **mōribus**: for the case see note on *officiō*, 96, 18.

Page 98. 2. **vectīgālēs**: predicate accusative; also *humiliōrēs* and *infirmiōrēs*.

4. CHAPTER 4. **causā**: *condition, or situation*.

5. **suprā**: see 96, 2 ff.

6. **ad extrēmum**: *at last, finally*.

8. **quās regiōnēs**: (*to*) the districts which. **ad**: *on*.

11. **trāns**: *across* (from the standpoint of Gaul), i.e. east of the river.

12. **trānsire**: *from crossing*; for the construction with *prohibeō* see note on *ingredi*, 50, 5.

13. **omnia**: *every (other) expedient*. **vī contendere**: *to force their way across*.

16. **trīduī**: gen. of quality or measure. **viam**: for the acc. with *prōgressi* see A. 390 (238); B. 176, 4; G. 333, 2; H. 409; H-B. 396, 1.

17. **equitātū**: *by the cavalry*. The main body followed and crossed with the cavalry in the captured boats. **cōfectō**: *limits itinere*.

18. **-que**: *and consequently*.

21. **Hīs, eōrum**: *the latter, their*, both referring to the Menapii. **priusquam** . . . **certior fieret**: *before that part* . . . *could be informed*. For the mood cf. *prius quam posset*, 93, 12, and note.

24. **partem**: acc. of duration of time. **cōpiis**: *stores, resources*.

27. CHAPTER 5. **veritus**: *fearing*. For the present force of the perfect participle see references on *cōnfisae*, 94, 3.

Page 99. 1-2. **nihil . . . existimāvit**: *thought he dared not rely upon them*, i.e. he must go in person to meet the threatened danger from a German invasion. **cōnsuetūdinis**: predicate genitive, lit. *this belongs to Gallic custom*; freely, *the Gauls have the custom*, explained by the *utī* clause, *of compelling travelers to stop*, etc.

8-9. **quōrum eōs**, etc.: *which they are forced to repent of forthwith*; for the cases with *paenitet* see A. 354, c (221, b); B. 209, 1; G. 377; H. 457; H-B. 352, 1.

10. **plērīque**: referring to *viātōrēs* and *mercātōrēs*. **ad**: *to suit*. **ficta respondeant**: *invent replies*.

12. CHAPTER 6. **graviōrī**: *too formidable*, i.e. in case the Gauls welcomed the Germans and allied themselves with them against the Romans.

13. **mātūrius**: possibly in April. **ad exercitum**: the army had wintered among the Aulerci and Lexovii, 95, 9. Caesar had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

16. **utī . . . discēderent**: i.e. to penetrate farther into Gaul.

17. **postulāssent**: *should demand*, representing a future perf. indic. of direct discourse. **fore parāta**: for a future perf. indic. of direct discourse; it may be paraphrased in English, *the Germans would find everything made ready by the Gauls*. See A. 164, c, n. (147, c, 2); B. 270, 4; H. 619, 4.

22. **permulsis et cōfirmātis**: Caesar deals with the Gallic chiefs as if they feared the Germans.

23. **cōstituit**: here in the sense of *announced his intention*.

25. CHAPTER 7. **ea loca**: Caesar's route can only be conjectured. The campaign map is after Napoleon.

Page 100. 1. **quibus**: sc. *locis*. **iter**: acc. of extent of space.

3. **neque priōrēs . . . Inferre**: freely, would not take the initiative by making war on the Roman people.

4. **recūsāre, quīn contendat**: refuse to fight; for the *quīn* clause see A. 558 (319, d); B. 298; G. 555; H. 595, 2; H-B. 502, 3, b.

6. **resistere, dēprecārī**: offer resistance, resort to entreaties, both verbs used absolutely.

7. **Haec tamen dicere**: nevertheless they had this much to say. A subject, *sē*, is understood with *dicere* and the following infinitives.

8. **eīs**: i.e. the Romans.

9. **attribuant, patiantur**: let them, etc. What are the equivalents in direct discourse? **eōs**: sc. *agrōs*. The subject of *tenēre* is readily supplied from the context.

10. **quibus**: dat. after *parēs*.

11-13. **reliquum, nēminem**: both words stand in emphatic positions. What mood, or moods, of direct discourse, are represented by *possint*, 11, and *possint*, 13?

14. CHAPTER 8. **quae visum est**: what seemed appropriate (to reply).

16-17. **vērūm**: (equivalent to *iūstum*) fair, a true principle of action. Understand *eōs* as antecedent of *quī* and subject of *occupāre*. **aliēnōs**: sc. *finēs*.

19. **licēre**: sc. *eīs*, they might.

24. CHAPTER 9. **post diem tertium**: the third day after, i.e. in two days. In such phrases Latin reckons in the day from which the period begins.

25. **sē**: acc. after *propius*, A. 432, a (261, a); B. 141, 3; G. 359, n. 1; H. 420, 5; H-B. 380, b.

Page 101. 5. CHAPTER 10. monte Vosegō: (that part of) the Vosges. The Meuse rises in the plateau of Langres, Caesar giving *Vosegus* a greater extent than is now understood by Vosges.

6. **parte**: arm, branch.

8. **inde**: i.e. from the confluence of the Waal and the

Meuse. In Caesar's time the junction was probably near Fort St. André.

10. **Nantuātium**: there seems to be no very satisfactory way of reconciling the location of these people as given here and in 75, 2, where they are placed south of Lake Geneva.

11. **citātus**: adjective for adverb.

13. **multis ingentibusque**: *many large*, A. 323, d (208, 3); B. 241, 3.

14. **ex quibus sunt, qui**: *to whom belong those who*.

16. **capitibus**: *mouths*. The word usually means *source*, in reference to a river.

18. CHAPTER 11. **ut erat cōstitutum**: see 100, 24.

19. **congressi**: *having met (him)*.

21. **praemitteret**: used absolutely, *send ahead*, or *send orders ahead*.

23. **mittendī**: depending on *potestatem*. Observe that the gerund has a direct object, *lēgātōs*. Give the gerundive construction. For the occasion of the embassy see 100, 19 ff.

24. **iūre iūrandō fidem**: *an oath-bound pledge*. **fēcisset**: *would give*, represents what mood and tense of direct discourse? The verb agrees in number with the nearer subject, *senātus*.

Page 102. 2. **daret**: *let him grant*. Give the equivalent in direct discourse. The time asked for seems scant for a trip to and from the country of the Ubii, and constitutes an argument against placing the final battle so far north.

3. **eōdem illō pertinēre**: *had the same purpose in view*, explained by *ut . . . reverterentur*.

4. **equitēs**: antecedent of *qui*. **abessent**: subjv. by attraction. For the fact see 101, 1-3.

6. **aquātiōnis**: i.e. at some stream, possibly the Niers.

9. **mittit**: an object is to be supplied, *messengers*. **nūntiārent**: *give orders*. **nē**: with *lacesserent* only; *ut* is to be supplied with *sustinērent*.

10. **et**: *but*. **sustinērent**: *hold out, stand on the defensive*, used absolutely. **exercitū**: used here of the infantry only.

11. **accessisset**: for a fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse.
 13-14. CHAPTER 12. **cum**: *although*. **amplius**: adverb, with no influence on the case of *equitēs*.
 17. **indūtīs**: dat. of purpose.
 18. **hīs**: i.e. the Roman cavalry.
 23. **vēnissent**: subjv. by attraction, representing a perf. indic.; see A. 551, a (327); B. 291, 2; G. 576; H. 605, I; H-B. 550, b.
 25. **Pisō**: an Aquitanian who had probably received a Roman name along with Roman citizenship. See note on *civitate*, 42, 14.
 26. **genere**: for the abl. with *nātus* see A. 403, a (244, a); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469, 2; H-B. 413.
 27. **amicus**: see note on *amicus*, 3, 13.

Page 103. 2. **quoad**: *as long as*.

4. **id**: object of *animadvertisset*. **excesserat**: why not subjv. by attraction?

5. **incitātō equō**: *putting spurs to his horse*.

7-8. CHAPTER 13. **neque iam**: *no longer*. **ab**: *from*.

Page 104. 2-3. **expectāre**: subject of *esse*, 3. **augērentur**: *should be increased*. The subjv. would be retained in direct discourse, A. 553 (328, 1); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5. **equitātusque reverterētur**: *-que* introduces an explanation, *by the return of the cavalry*. **summae dēmentiae esse**: *would be (an act) of the utmost folly*.

4. **cōgnitā**: *knowing (as he did)*.

6. **sentiēbat**: *felt instinctively, guessed*.

8-9. **cōnsiliō**: *his plan*, explained by the appositive clause, *nē . . . praetermitteret, not to let pass*. **pūgnae**: genitive.

10. **quod**: *that, etc.*, in apposition with *rēs*.

11. **eādem . . . ūsī**: *with the same pretense and perfidy*.

12. **adhibitīs**: *including*.

13. **suf**: A. 504, c (298, a); B. 339, 5; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3; H-B. 614.

14-16. **quod . . . commississent**: the reason given by the Germans, therefore the subjv. **contrā atque**: *in violation of what had been agreed upon*, etc. What is the meaning of *aliter ac*, *idem atque*, *pār atque*? **ut, sī quid possent, . . . impetrārent**: *in order to gain by trickery anything they could in the matter of a truce*. **Quōs . . . oblātōs gāvīsus**: *glad that they had been put in his power*.

20. CHAPTER 14. **Aciō**: instead of the usual marching column, *agmen*. See Introd. 31. **mīlium**: sc. *passuum*.

21-22. **prius . . . quam . . . possent**: explain the mood.

23. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and*. **celeritāte, discessū**: *ap-positives explaining rēbus*.

24-25. **suōrum**: i.e. the chiefs and others, 12, above. **habendī, capiendī**: gen. of gerundive and gerund depending on *spatiō*. **perturbantur**: *were thrown into confusion*, followed by the indirect question, *cōpiāsne . . . praestāret, whether it would be better to lead*, etc.

Page 105. 7. **quōs**: referring to *multitūdō*, but made masculine plural by construction according to sense.

9. CHAPTER 15. **clāmōre**: i.e. of the women and children.

12. **Rhēnī**: the Waal is meant, Caesar regarding it as part of the Rhine. But because of the considerable distance from the Ubii (see note, 102, 2), and the necessity of long marches and countermarches in Caesar's subsequent movements, it has been urged that *Mosellae* be substituted for *Mosae*. The manuscripts, however, all have the latter reading.

15. **ad ūnum omnēs**: *all to a man*.

16. **ex**: *after*, implying *although they had had reason to fear*. **cum**: *since*.

18. **eīs**: see 104, 17.

20. **veritī**: *fearing*.

21. **libertātem**: seems to mean *permission (to do so)*. For the feeling in Rome relative to Caesar's conduct in this whole affair see the Introduction to Bk. IV.

CAMPAIGN IN GERMANY, 16-19.

Page 106. 1. CHAPTER 16. *iūstissima*: strongest, most cogent. *quod*: that.

2-3. *suis quoque rebus timere*: to fear for their own land also. *cum intellegerent*: when they should understand, by making them understand; imperfect subjv. for a fut. indic. in direct discourse.

5. *Accessit etiam, quod*: there was the additional fact, that.

6-7. *supra*: see 101, 1-3. *commemoravi*: the first person, of Caesar the author. *proeliō*: dative. Why?

10. *quōs*: the Sugambri.

11. *dēderent*: that they surrender, for the subjv. without *ut* see A. 565, a (331, f, r.); B. 295, 1, 8; G. 546, r. 2; H. 565, 4; H-B. 502, 3, a.

13. *aequum*: in the predicate, if he thought it unfair for the Germans to cross over into Gaul.

14. *sui . . . imperi aut potestatis*: predicate genitives of possession; lit. *why should he claim that anything beyond the Rhine belonged to his dominion and authority*.

18-20. *quod . . . premerentur*: whose reason, and why subjv.? *facere*: from doing, depending on *prohiberetur*. *occupātiōnibus rei publicae*: by affairs of state, by official duties. *exercitum, Rhenum*: for the two accusatives see A. 395 (239, 2, b); B. 179, 1; G. 331, r. 1; H. 413; H-B. 386. *modo transportaret*: let him but transport.

21. *reliqui temporis*: for the future.

23. *sius*: his. *Arlovistō*, etc.: abl. absolute, expressing cause.

24. *ad*: among.

29. CHAPTER 17. *transire*: subject of *esse*, 107, 1, 2.

Page 107. 1. *neque . . . tūtum*: i.e. to depend upon boats might endanger his communications.

2. *suae dignitatis*: predicate genitive, in accord with his own dignity.

3. **faciendī**: *in constructing*. The site of the bridge cannot be fixed definitely. It may have been at Bonn, as the campaign map indicates, or farther up the river, nearer Coblenz.

7. **Tigna**: object of *iungēbat*. **bīna**: *in pairs* gives the force of the distributive.

8. **paulum**: with *praeacūta*, i.e. the piles were given blunt points to facilitate driving. **ab imō**: *at the lower end*. **dīmēnsa ad**: *their length proportioned to the depth of the river*; for the participle see A. 190, b (135, b); B. 112, b; G. 167, n. 2; H. 222, 2; H-B. 291, d.

9. **intervallō pedum duōrum**: refers to the space between the two *tigna* of each pair. **inter sē iungēbat**: *he fastened together*.

10. **māchinātiōnibus**: *engines*, with some device for holding a pair of *tigna* at the proper angle while being rammed down by the driver. **dēfixerat**: the pluperfect indic. of repeated instances. **immissa**: render as a coördinate verb, *had let down*.

11. **publicae modō**: *in the manner of an (ordinary) pile*.

12. **secundum nāturam flūminis**: *down stream*.

13. **duo**: sc. *tigna*. **ad eundem modum**: *in the same manner*, as described above.

14. **quadrāgēnum**: *forty feet in each case*, measured perhaps at the surface of the water. **ab inferiōre parte**: *farther down (stream)*.

16-18. **trabibus immissis**: abl. absolute. **quantum**: a relative (acc. of degree) referring to the noun idea in *bipedālibus*. **fibulis**: abl. of means or abl. absolute. Translate freely, *the opposite pairs of piles were (connected and at the same time) held apart by letting in from above a cross-timber two feet thick, which was the distance between the piles (of each pair), with two braces at each of its ends*. The nature of the *fibulae* is much disputed.

19. **quibus**: the opposite pairs of piles in each case. **revinctis**: *braced*.

20. **ea rerum nātūra**: lit. *such the nature of things*; in trans-

lation the phrase may be included in the result clause following, *that from the nature of the case, etc.*

21. **quō māior**, etc.: *the more violently the water dashed against them.* **inligāta**: sc. *figna*.

22. **Haec**: i.e. the cross-timbers, or perhaps used loosely of the whole structure so far described. **dōrōctā materiā inlectā**: *with timbers laid lengthwise (of the bridge).*

24. **et**: correlative with *et*, 26. **ad inferiōrem partem flūminis**: i.e. on the lower or down-stream side of the bridge.

25-26. **quae . . . exciperent**: a relative clause of purpose, *which . . . were to break.* **prō ariete**: *as buttresses.* **aliae**: sc. *agēbantur*. Though Caesar does not say so, these piles above the bridge were probably driven perpendicularly.

28. **essent immissae**: *should be sent down*, for a fut. perf. indic. in a direct statement. See note on *si vellet*, 43, 8.

29. **eārum rērum**: i.e. the logs and boats. **neu**: *and that not*, B. 282, 1, e; G. 543, 4; H. 568, 6; H-B. 464, 1.

Page 108. 1. CHAPTER 18. Diēbus decem, quibus: *within ten days from the time when.* Cf. *paucis diēbus, quibus*, 91,

12. **coepta erat**: *had begun*; for the passive of this verb see A. 205, a (143, a); B. 133, 1; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1; H-B. 199, 2.

2. **ad utramque partem**: *at each end.*

5. **quibus . . . petentibus**: *to their petition for peace and friendship.*

8. **hortantibus eis**: abl. absolute, *under the urging of those*, i.e. the cavalry detachment, 106, 5.

10. **in**: *in*, lit. *into*, with the acc. because of the motion implied in *abdiderant*. Cf. 11, 3.

15. CHAPTER 19. **premerentur**: *should be harassed*, for a fut. indic. in the direct promise.

18. **utī . . . dēmigrārent**, etc.: dependent on the idea of command in *nūntiōs, messengers (with orders) that the people should abandon*, etc.

21. **medium**: in the predicate; freely, *the place chosen was about the center*, etc.

23. **dēcertāre**: *to fight a decisive battle*.

24. **rēbus**: *purposes*, explained by the purpose clauses, *ut . . . iniceret*, etc., namely, *to inspire the Germans with fear*, etc.
rērum: omit in translation.

28. **ad**: *with respect to, from the standpoint of*. **prōfectum**: observe that *ō* is long.

FIRST CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 20-36.

Page 109. 1. CHAPTER 20. **Exiguā parte reliquā**: abl. absolute with adversative force, *although but a small part was left*.

4. **bellis**: abl. of time when, A. 423, d (256); B. 230; G. 394, R.; H. 486, 1; H-B. 439, 3.

5. **auxilia**: the summoning of British contingents is mentioned specifically only in Bk. III, p. 81, 29. **sī**: *even if*.

7-8. **sī modo adisset**: *if he should merely visit*, or *merely to visit*; the conditional clauses are in thought the subjects of *fore*.
aditūs: *landing-places*.

10. **illō**: adverb.

12. **Galliās**: plural with reference to the divisions of the country. **vocātis**: *although he summoned*.

13. **quanta esset**, etc.: indirect questions depending on *reperire*, 17.

15-16. **quibus institūtis ūterentur**: *what sort of institutions they lived under*. **māiōrem**: *unusually large*.

18. CHAPTER 21. **priusquam periculum faceret**: *before he should make trial, before he should venture on the enterprise*; for the subjv. see A. 551, b (327); B. 292, 1, a; G. 577; H. 605, II; H-B. 507, 4, a.

20. **Huic mandat, ut**: *he commissions him to*, etc.

22. **inde**: i.e. from the country of the Morini.

24. **quam, classem**: for *eam classem, quam*. See 80, 24 ff.

Page 110. 3. *quī polliceantur*: to promise. **dare**, **obtemperāre**: objects of *polliceantur*, A. 580, c (330, f, n.); B. 328, 1; G. 531, n. 4; H. 619, 1; H-B. 593, a.

5. **pollicitus**: used absolutely, *after making promises*.

7. **Atrebātibus superātis**: i.e. in the battle with the Nervii; see 65, 3 ff. The appointment of Commius as king has not been mentioned before.

9. in **his regiōnibus**: i.e. in that part of Gaul where the Atrebates were situated. **māgnī habēbātur**: was counted great, or valued highly; for the genitive see A. 417 (252, a); B. 203, 3; G. 380; H. 448, 1; H-B. 356, 1.

10. **adeat**: to visit; for the subjunctive without *ut* see references on *dēderent*, 106, 11. **quās possit cīvitatēs**: what states he can; the subjv. is due to attraction.

11. **fidem sequantur**: see vocabulary, *fidēs*.

13-14. **eī**: indefinite, a man, one. **facultātis**: gen. of the whole after *quantum*; translate, so far as opportunity could be afforded one who, etc. **quī . . . nōn audēret**: a clause of characteristic.

15. **quae . . . perspexisset**: an indirect question.

17. CHAPTER 22. **Dum . . . morātur**: Caesar probably reached the port of embarkation in the latter part of July.

19. **superiōris temporis**: in time past, referring to the year before. See Bk. III, Chapters 28-29. **cōnsiliō**: policy, conduct.

20. **hominēs barbarī et . . . imperītī**: being a barbarous people and unacquainted with our policy. **cōnsuētūdinis**: i.e. the policy of sparing and protecting those who voluntarily submitted to Roman authority. For the gen. with *imperītī* see A. 349, a (218, a); B. 204, 1; G. 374; H. 451, 1; H-B. 354.

21-22. **sē . . . factūrōs (esse)**: contrast the simple present infinitive dependent on *polliceor*, 3, above. **ea, quae imperāset**: his bidding. The pluperfect subjv. represents a future perf. indic. of direct discourse.

25-26. **hās . . . occupātiōnēs**: attention to such unimportant matters as this, lit. these employments in unimportant matters.

Britanniae antepōnendās: *should be given preference over (the expedition to) Britain.*

27. **eīs imperat**: *levies upon them, demands of them.*

Page 111. 1. **quot**: relative, *a number which.*

2. **duās**: the 7th and 10th. **quod**: acc. with dependent gen. of the whole, *nāvium, all the war galleys he had in addition.*

4. **Hūc accēdēbant**: *there were besides.*

5. **eō locō**: though Caesar does not give definite information on the point, the harbor from which he sailed on this first expedition was in all probability the Portus Itius from which the second expedition started, as related in Bk. V. Portus Itius is to be identified with Wissant or Boulogne, more probably the former. The harbor eight miles distant will be Ambleteuse for Boulogne, or Sangatte for Wissant. **ā millibus passuum octo**: *eight miles distant.* **tenēbantur**: *were held, connoting prevented* and so followed by *quōminus . . . possent, from being able*, A. 558, b (319, c); B. 295, 3; G. 549; H. 568, 8; H-B. 502, 3, b.

10-11. **dūcendum**: *to lead, lit. to be led*; for the gerundive with verbs like *cūrō, dō*, etc. see A. 500, 4 (294, d); B. 337, 8, b, 2; G. 430; H. 622; H-B. 612, III. **eō . . . quod**: *such . . . as.*

14. CHAPTER 23. **tertiā vigiliā**: the third watch began at midnight. From data in these chapters and in Bk. V, and with the aid of astronomical calculations, the night of August 26-27 has been fixed upon as the date.

16. **esset administrātum**: used absolutely and impersonally, *the order (to embark) having been acted on somewhat slowly by them.* In consequence the cavalry transports lost the advantage of favoring winds and did not reach the coast of Britain till three days later.

17. **hōrā quārtā**: shortly before 10 A.M. See note on *hōrā quārtā*, 86, 8.

18. **ibi**: Caesar's landing-place has been the subject of endless discussion, based chiefly on the account of his passage in

the second expedition. The choice seems to lie most likely between the level shore near Deal and that near Romney Marsh. If the former, as the campaign map assumes, then the cliffs mentioned here are the cliffs of Dover.

19. **haec**: *such*.

23. **dum . . . convenirent**: *for the rest of the ships to arrive*; for the subjv. with *dum* see A. 553 (328, 1); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2; H-B. 507, 5. **hōram nōnam**: about 3.30 P.M.

27. **ut, ut**: *as, as*. **maritimae rēs**: *naval maneuvers*.

28-29. **postularent**: subjv. by attraction. **ut quae . . . habērent**: lit. *as (things) which involved, better since they involved, involving as they did*; *quae* refers to *rēs*. For the use of *ut* and for the mood see A. 535, e, n. 1 (320, e, n. 1); B. 283, 3, a; G. 633; H. 592, 1; H-B. 523, b. **omnēs rēs . . . administrārentur**: *that all orders be executed by them*; the subjv. depends upon *monuit* without *ut*, which would have been awkward in view of the three preceding. Cf. *imperat, adeat*, 110, 10.

Page 112. 1. **aestum**: *tidal current*. Consideration of the tidal currents in the Straits of Dover is one of the most important items in the attempt to determine Caesar's landing-place.

3-4. **apertō . . . litore**: *where the shore was open and level*; for the abl. see A. 429 (258, f); B. 228, b; G. 385, n. 1; H. 485, 2; H-B. 436.

6. CHAPTER 24. **quō . . . genere**: *a class of troops which*. The reference may be not merely to the charioteers, but to the mixture of cavalry and charioteers. See Chapter 33.

8. **ēgredi**: *from landing*.

9. **nisi**: *except*. **in altō**: *in deep water, and consequently quite a distance from the shore*.

10-11. **militibus**: dat. of agent with *dēsiliendum*, etc., *the soldiers had to leap*. **pressis**: *weighed down (as they were)*.

13. **cum illi**: *while they, the Britons*.

Page 113. 1. *insuēfactōs*: trained to such maneuvers.

2. *generis*: for case after *imperitū* see note on *cōsuētūdinis*, 110, 20.

3. *quō*: agrees in gender with the nearer antecedent. *utī*: exhibit.

6-7. CHAPTER 25. *mōtus ad ūsum expeditior*: i.e. were more easily maneuvered, because propelled by oars.

8. *latus apertum*: the unprotected flank, i.e. the right.

9. *inde*: for *ex eō locō*. *tormentis*: see Introd. 38.

11. *quae res*: this maneuver.

13. *inūsitatō genere tormentōrum*: by the artillery, a kind of arms unfamiliar to them.

18-20. *qui aquilam ferēbat*: equivalent to *aquilifer*. *obtestātus deōs, ut . . . ēvenīret*: with a prayer to the gods that his act might result, etc. For the substantive clause see A. 563 (331); B. 296, 1; G. 546; H. 565; H-B. 530, 2.

22. *certē*: at least, or for my own part.

24. *praestiterō*: shall have done. *cum*: the conjunction, when.

27-28. *cohortātī inter sē, nē . . . admitterētur*: urging one another not to permit. *tantum dēdecus*: see Introd. 28.

Page 114. 1. *ex proximis nāvibus*: (the men) on the nearest ships.

4. CHAPTER 26. *utrisque*: both sides. For the plural of *uterque* cf. *utraque*, 107, 16, and note on *his utrisque*, 60, 2.

5. *firmiter*: for the form of the adverb see A. 214, c (148, c); B. 77, 4; G. 92, 2; H. 309; H-B. 126, 2. With *insistere*, gain a firm footing.

6. *alius aliā ex nāvī*: one from one ship, another from another, or indiscriminately from the different ships.

7. *sē adgregābat*: sc. a dative, *his* or *eis*. Compare the battle with the Nervii, 64, 9.

9. *ubi*: whenever, as often as, followed by the pluperfect indic. of repeated action. *singulārēs*: singly, apart from their comrades. *adoriēbantur*: also of repeated action, would attack.

10-11. **plūrēs**: in large numbers. **paucōs**: small detachments. **ab latere apertō**: on our unprotected flank. **universōs**: our line as a whole.

15. **quōs**: whomever, whenever any.

16. **simul**: occasionally, as here, for *simul atque*, as soon as.

18. **neque potuerunt**: but they were unable.

20. **Hōc ūnum . . . dēfuit**: lit. this one thing failed Caesar with respect to his previous good fortune, better with this one exception Caesar's good fortune attended him as hitherto. For the Roman conception of fortune see note on *fēlicitātem*, 35, 24.

24. CHAPTER 27. **quaeque**: for *et ea quae*.

26. **suprā**: see 110, 6. **dēmōnstrāveram**: for the tense cf. *dixerāmus*, 48, 4, and note.

Page 115. 1. **illī**: the Britons. **cum**: although.

2. **orātōris modō**: in the capacity of envoy.

3. **tum**: but now.

4. **ēius rei**: this act, i.e. their treatment of Commius.

5-6. **ut Ignōscerētur**: impersonal passive, *that pardon be granted, that they be pardoned*.

7-9. **quod . . . intulissent**: why subjv.? **cum**: although. **lēgātis missis**: for the fact see 110, 2. **Ignōscere**: *sē* as subject is understood from the context.

11. **arcessitam**: make coördinate with *daturōs*, *would summon and give*.

15-16. CHAPTER 28. **post diem quārtum**, etc.: *three days after he arrived*, lit. *the fourth day after*. Cf. *post diem tertium*, in two days, 100, 24, and note.

17-18. **suprā**: see 111, 4 and 15. **superiōre portū**: identical with the *ulterior portus* of 111, 15.

23. **occāsum**: for the case see note on *sē*, 100, 15.

24-26. **tamen**: i.e. in spite of the storm, applies to *ancorīs iactis* only. Translate freely, *and though they did cast anchor in spite of the storm, yet as they began to fill*. **adversā**: see Vocabulary. **in altum prōvectae**: *having put to sea*.

Page 116. 1. **CHAPTER 29. Eādem nocte:** the night of August 30–31. **quī diēs:** *the day which.*

2. **aestūs māximōs:** spring tides at Dover are said to rise nineteen feet.

3. **id:** i.e. the fact of such high tides. The tides of the Mediterranean are but slight.

4. **exercitum trāsportandum cūrāverat:** *had had his army transported.* For the gerundive with *cūrō* see references on *dūcendum*, 111, 10.

5. **subdūxerat:** see Introd. 38.

7–8. **administrandī:** *of managing them*, on the part of the sailors. **auxiliandī:** *of rendering assistance*, on the part of the troops ashore.

10–11. **āmissis:** *by the loss of.* **id quod . . . accidere:** *as was inevitable*, lit. *a thing, the happening of which was inevitable.* *quod* is accusative, subject of *accidere*, while the infinitive clause as a whole is subject of *necesse erat*.

13. **possent:** sc. *cōpiae* or *militēs* as subject.

14–15. **erant:** Why not subjv., like *possent*, 13? **omnibus cōstābat:** *it was clear to all, it was generally assumed.* **hiemārī oportēre:** *that they should winter.* **in hiemem:** *for, or against, the winter.*

17. **CHAPTER 30. principēs:** subject of *dūxērunt*, 23.

19–20. **Rōmānīs deesse:** *that the Romans lacked.*

21. **hōc etiam angustiora:** *so much the smaller.*

23. **optimum . . . dūxērunt:** *concluded the best thing to do was to renew hostilities, etc.* For the supine (*factū*) see A. 510 (303); B. 340, 2; G. 436, N. 1; H. 635; H-B. 619, 1.

24. **rem:** *the struggle, the war.*

25. **hīs superātis:** *if these, etc.*

27. **rūsus:** *in turn*, in contrast to their recent peaceful attitude.

Page 117. 1. **castris:** i.e. the Roman camp, which they had visited freely since peace had been made. **ex agris dēdūcere:** equivalent to *muster their forces.* See 115, 12–14.

4. CHAPTER 31. **ſventū nāvium**: *what had happened to the ships, the disaster to the ships.* **ex eō quod**: *from the fact that.*

5. **dare**: with *intermiserant*, *had ceased to give.* **fore id, quod accidit**: *that things would turn out as they actually did.*

8. **nāvēs**: antecedent incorporated in the relative clause. Translate as if *eārum nāvium quae.* **aere**: *bronze, for the rostra and for spikes.*

11. **administrārētur**: *the work was carried on.*

12. **reliquis ut . . . posset, effecit**: *he made the rest fairly seaworthy, lit. brought about that sailing could be done well enough with the rest.*

13. CHAPTER 32. **geruntur**: explain the mood and tense. **ex cōsuētūdine**: to be taken closely with *unā, one legion as usual.* **frumentātum**: *supine, expressing purpose.*

15. **belli**: *of actual hostilities, not contradictory to fore id . . . suspicābātur, 5, above.* **cum**: *inasmuch as.* **hominum**: i.e. the Britons.

17. **prō portis**: one cohort kept guard at each of the four gates of the camp.

18. **quam cōsuētūdō ferret**: *than usual.*

20. **id quod erat**: *that which was (true), as proved to be the case.*

22. **duās**: i.e. one half of a cohort for each gate.

23. **armārī**: *to arm themselves; for reflexive use of the passive* see A. 156, a (111, a); B. 256, 1; G. 218; H. 517; H-B. 288, 3. Cf. also *lavārentur, 97, 2.*

25. **paulō longius**: *some little distance.*

Page 118. 3-4. **dispersōs, occupātōs**: with *nostrōs*, to be understood as object of *adortī*.

7. CHAPTER 33. **hōc**: *as follows.* **ex essedīs**: a prepositional phrase with adjectival force, limiting *pūgnae*. There is no good evidence that these were scythe-bearing chariots. They probably carried two men, the *aurīga* and the *essedārius*.

8-9. **ipsō**: *mere.* **terrōre equitum**: *terror inspired by the horses; the genitive is subjective.*

13-14. **ut . . . habeant**: a clause of result. **illī**: the dismounted *essedārī*. **premantur**: subjv. by attraction. **Ita**: *thus, in this way*.

15-16. **tantum . . . efficiunt**: *they become so skillful*.

17. **incitātōs**: *at full speed*. **brevī**: *quickly*.

18. **per**: *along*. **iugō**: *the yoke*, at the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks.

20. CHAPTER 34. **rēbus**: abl. of means. **novitāte**: abl. of cause. **nostrīs**: dat. of indirect object, or abl. absolute.

23-24. **Quō factō . . . arbitrātus**: *having accomplished this, (but) thinking*. **ad . . . aliēnum**: *unfavorable for*.

25. **suō sē locō continuit**: *held his ground*.

27. **quī**: for *eī quī*, referring to those Britons who had taken no part in the battle. They now withdrew to join their people in arms.

Page 119. 5-6. **quanta . . . facultās darētur**: indirect question. **suī**: see references on *suī*, 104, 13.

11-12. CHAPTER 35. **fore**: *would happen*. **ut . . . effugerent**: *namely, that they would escape*, explaining *idem*. **equitēs**: to be used in pursuit.

15-16. **diūtius nōn**: *not long*. **ac**: *but*.

17. **tantō spatiō**: abl. expressing the space over which, *as far, or as long*. **quantum . . . potuerunt**: *as their speed and strength permitted*.

21-22. CHAPTER 36. **Hīs**: dat. of reference. **ante**: see 115, 9.

23. **propinquā diē aequinoctiī**: abl. absolute, *as the equinox was near at hand*. **Infirmīs nāvibus**, etc.: lit. *did not think that a voyage in disabled ships ought to be exposed to stormy weather*. The repairs had fitted the fleet for fair weather only.

Page 120. 1. **incolumēs**: predicate adjective. 2-3. **eōs-dem portūs**; though plural, refers possibly to the Portus Itius alone. **paulō infrā**: i.e. farther south, on account of wind or tidal current.

THE MORINI AND MENAPII, 37-38.

5. CHAPTER 37. **Quibus** : i.e. the two transports mentioned above.

6. **castra** : doubtless a camp constructed by Rufus. See 111, 10.

7. **pācātōs** : see 110, Chapter 22.

8. **nōn ita māgnō numerō** : *with no very great number*.

9. **sēsē interficī** : for the infinitive clause instead of an infinitive alone with *nōllent*, see A. 563, b (331, b, n.); B. 331, IV, a; G. 532, R. 2; H. 565, 2; H-B. 586, b. **pōnere** : *lay down*.

10. **orbe** : see Introd. 33.

11. **ad** : *in answer to, or attracted by*. **hominum** : after *mīlia*.

21. CHAPTER 38. **siccitātēs** : plural of an abstract noun, with reference to more than one marsh.

22-23. **quō sē recipere, nōn habērent** : *had no place to which they could retreat*; *recipere* is a potential subjunctive. Cf. 86, 15. **quō perfugiō . . . erant usī** : referring to *palūdum*, *a place of refuge they had made use of the year before*. See Bk. III, Chapter 28. **potestātem** : see Vocabulary.

Page 121. 1. **Titūrius, Cotta** : see 111, 8-10.

3-4. **quod . . . abdiderant** : the reason for *sē . . . recēpērunt*.

8. **ex litteris Caesaris** : *in accordance with (the news in) Caesar's dispatches, or simply upon receipt of Caesar's dispatches*.

9. **supplicātiō** : see note on 74, 9.

BOOK V.

INTRODUCTION.

Second Campaign in Britain.—During the winter of 55–54 the assizes in Cisalpine Gaul occupied Caesar's time as usual. In the spring he visited Illyricum, his least important province, and exacted reparation from a neighboring tribe for depredations on the province. Upon returning to northern Gaul he found that a large fleet of vessels, which he had ordered to be constructed after a certain design, was all but ready to launch. The Portus Itius was named as the place of embarkation. Before starting for Britain it was necessary to make sure of the allegiance of the Gallic Treveri by supporting the ambitions of a friendly chieftain, Cingetorix, in preference to his rival Indutiomarus. At the port of departure chiefs from various Gallic tribes had assembled, it being Caesar's intention to take most of them with him as hostages. Further delay was occasioned by the attempt of Dumnorix, the Haeduan, to escape during the process of embarkation. Pursued and overtaken by Caesar's cavalry, Dumnorix offered resistance and was killed in consequence, in pursuance of Caesar's orders.

Leaving Labienus on the continent in charge of three legions and two thousand cavalry, Caesar set sail in the latter part of July with the same number of cavalry and five legions. The landing in Britain was effected this time without opposition, the place being the same as the year before. A camp site chosen, Caesar marched against the Britons, some twelve miles distant, routed them, and captured their rude woodland stronghold. A message soon came announcing that the fleet had been badly damaged by a storm. Ten days were spent in beaching

the ships for repairs and in the construction of an extensive naval camp. The British forces facing the Roman army had meanwhile greatly increased and were now united under the command of one chieftain, Cassivellaunus. The Roman forces were at first baffled by the character of the British attack with chariots. By keeping cavalry and infantry close together they were finally able to repulse the Britons, who then retired north of the Thames. Dismissing the greater part of his forces, Cassivellaunus thereafter employed his chariots alone, and for the purpose of harassing the Roman advance by sudden sallies.

Certain tribes now submitted to Caesar, notably the Trinovantes, at whose request Caesar restored the young prince Mandubracius to the throne his father had occupied before him. The capture of Cassivellaunus's fortified town soon followed. Meanwhile an attack on the Roman camp at the seaside, made by the Kentish tribes, at Cassivellaunus's bidding, had failed. The British chief now came to terms. It was clear enough to Caesar that nothing substantial was to be gained by prolonging the campaign. He therefore led his army back to the coast and returned to the continent. The two campaigns in Britain were really barren of any practical results. As Tacitus puts it, Caesar had merely "pointed the attention of posterity to Britain, without handing down the country as a possession."

Winter Quarters. Defeat of Sabinus and Cotta. — The legions were now distributed in winter quarters at various points in northern Gaul, in an area covered by a circle with a radius of one hundred miles, Caesar remaining until the distribution should be effected. Two lieutenants, Sabinus and Cotta, were placed in charge of one legion and five cohorts in the country of the Eburones. The Gauls, instigated by Indutiomarus of the Treveri, soon rose in revolt. Repulsed in a sudden attack on the camp, they asked for, and were granted, an interview. The Gallic leader Ambiorix, though attempting to exculpate himself, craftily represented the attack on the camp as part of a general plan, according to which all the winter camps were to

be assaulted in one day. Declaring himself under obligations to Caesar for past favors, he urged Sabinus and Cotta to withdraw their cohorts and join one of the nearest camps, promising them safe passage through his country. A hot dispute arose among the officers as to the acceptance of the Gallic chieftain's advice, Sabinus favoring and Cotta opposing. It was finally decided to abandon their position. At daybreak the column started in a long line, unprepared for danger. In a valley about two miles from camp they found themselves caught in a carefully planned ambushade. Before night nearly all the men had fallen either on the field or in the camp, where some of them made their final stand. Sabinus himself was treacherously slain during a parley with Ambiorix. Cotta fell while cheering his men on to the fight. A few stragglers made their way to Labienus and reported the disaster.

Siege of Cicero's Camp. — Elated with victory, Ambiorix proceeded to the camp of Quintus Cicero, spreading the news of his victory and summoning the neighboring tribes to arms. The first attack was repulsed with difficulty. During the following night the Romans began strengthening the camp fortifications with towers. Day and night the work continued, the Gauls attacking by day. They at last asked for a parley, and endeavored to entice Cicero into the same fatal blunder made by Sabinus and Cotta. Cicero refused to accept terms from an armed enemy. The siege became more desperate, the Gauls adopting Roman devices for attack, towers, sappers' huts, etc. In spite of wounds and fatigue the legionaries held out, hoping for aid from some quarter. At length, after many vain attempts, Cicero succeeded in getting a message to Caesar, who had not yet left for Italy and was at Samarobriva. Caesar was soon on his way with one legion, and was joined on the march by another. Upon learning of his approach the Gauls raised the siege and hastened to intercept him. Warned by Cicero, Caesar succeeded in luring the enemy to attack him in camp, whereupon his army made a sortie and repulsed them. Caesar soon joined Cicero, and bestowed merited praise on commander and

men for their gallant defense. Caesar himself decided not to proceed to Italy, but to spend the winter in headquarters at Samarobriva.

Revolt of the Senones and Treveri.—The ensuing months of this winter were filled with rumors of plots forming among the Gauls, inspired by the annihilation of Sabinus and Cotta's cohorts. With the exception of the Haedui and Remi, almost every Gallic tribe was suspected of disaffection. The Senones in particular expelled the king whom Caesar had placed over them, their senate refusing to obey Caesar's summons to appear before him. Indutiomarus at the head of his followers among the Treveri was about to attack Labienus, when deterred by Caesar's arrival in Cicero's camp. Later, after gathering a considerable force of malcontents and adventurers, he appeared before Labienus's camp. Labienus, as Caesar had recently done, by creating an impression of fear, gained a favorable opportunity for a sortie. The cavalry was ordered to seek out and kill Indutiomarus at all hazards. His death brought about a quieter condition in Gallic affairs.



COINS OF CAESAR.

BOOK V.

SECOND CAMPAIGN IN BRITAIN, 1-23.

Page 122. 1. CHAPTER 1. **L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō:** consuls, 54 B.C. The official year began January 1st, which corresponded to December 12th, 55 B.C., of the Julian calendar. Caesar seems to have remained with his army in Gaul in the autumn of 55 until some time after the new consuls took office.

3-5. **utī . . . aedificandās . . . cūrent:** *to have as many ships as possible built in the winter and to have the old ones repaired.* For the gerundive with *cūrō* cf. 116, 4.

5. **modum:** *size.*

6. **subductiōnis:** see Introd. 38. **humiliōrēs,** etc.: the new vessels were to have comparatively low sides, broad beam, and flat bottoms.

7. **quibus:** for *eae quibus.* **nostrō marī:** the Mediterranean.

8. **id:** felt perhaps as the object of a verb to be supplied, *facit;* translate, *and the more so.* **commūtātiōnēs:** the choppy seas of the channel are due rather to the narrowness and shallowness, together with the conflict of winds and currents.

9. **ad,** etc.: asyndeton.

10. **ac:** *and especially.*

11. **lātiōrēs:** predicate accusative; sc. *eās facit.* **reliquis maribus:** i.e. the various parts of the Mediterranean, to which special names were given. **Hās . . . fierī:** an infinitive clause is occasionally found with *imperō.* What is the usual construction? **actuāriās:** see Introd. 41.

13. **Ea, quae sunt ūsuī:** i.e. metals, iron and copper; a

kind of broom used in making ropes for rigging was also found in Spain.

16. **Pirūstīs**: a tribe of which little is known. In 167 they had taken sides with the Romans against the Illyrian king, Gentius.

18. **militēs**; i.e. auxiliary troops.

20. **pūblicō cōnsiliō**: *with the sanction of the state.*

Page 123. 8. CHAPTER 2. **cum vēnisset**: about June 1st. **circumitīs**: *having gone the round of, on a tour of inspection.*

9. **in**: *in, notwithstanding.*

10. **cūius**: instead of *quod*, attracted to the case of the antecedent, *generis*.

11-12. **neque multum**, etc.: *and that it was not far from possible to launch them in a few days.* For the *quān* clause cf. 87, 27, and note.

14. **portum Itium**: see note on *eō locō*, 111, 5.

16. **mīlium**: gen. of quality or measure, limiting *trāiectum*.

17. **huic rei**: *for this purpose*, i.e. to protect the fleet from attack as it assembled at the Portus Itius. **mīlitum**: gen. of the whole after *quod*, *what seemed an adequate force.*

20. **concilia**: beginning with this year, 54, Caesar seems to have attempted to hold regular assemblies of the Gauls, one in the spring and one in the autumn of each year. Among other things the quotas of auxiliaries were fixed for the various tribes, also the amount of provisions they were to furnish for the legions in winter quarters.

22. CHAPTER 3. **equitātū valet**: see 66, 10.

24. **suprā**: see 82, 14.

25. **Indūtiomārus**: father-in-law of Cingetorix. See 159, 10-11.

Page 124. 1. **alter**: *one*, i.e. Cingetorix.

2. **cōgnitum est**: impersonal; *translate, as soon as he learned.*

3. **officiō**: see Vocabulary.

6. **cōgere**: dependent, with *parāre*, on *instituit*.

7. **in armīs esse**: equivalent to *arma ferre*.
13. **rēbus**: *interests*. **petere**: used absolutely, *to make petitions, to solicit his favor*.
14. **civitatī**: in contrast to *privātis rēbus*. Fear of Indutiomarus prevented them from consulting the interests of the state as a whole. **possent**: subjv. in a reported reason. **veritus**: limits *Indutiomārus*, to be supplied.
16. **idcirco**: *with this purpose in view*, explained by the clause of purpose, *quō . . . continēret*.
17. **nē**: *for fear that, or in order to prevent*.
18. **omnis nōbilitātis discessū**: equivalent to a conditional clause, *if all the nobility departed*.
19. **civitātem in suā potestāte esse**: *he had the state under control*.
22. CHAPTER 4. **quae rēs**: *what consideration*, i.e. the defection of the chiefs, 11, above.
23. **institūtō**: *already formed, original*.
26. **in eis**: *among them*.
28. **ēvocāverat**: sc. *Caesar* as subject.

Page 125. 1. **principibus**: i.e. the chiefs who had hitherto favored Indutiomarus.

3. **quod**: *a thing which*, referring to the fact related in *hōs . . . conciliāvit*. **cum**: correlative with *tum*, *not only . . . but also*.

4. **māgnī interesse**: *it was of great importance*. The genitive is one of indefinite value expressing the "degree of concern or interest." The subject of *interesse* is the infinitive clause, *ēius auctōritātem . . . valēre*. **ēius**: *of one*.

6. **factum**: substantive, *this (act)*, explained by *suam grātiām . . . minui*, *the impairment of his influence among his people*.

7. **quī**: equivalent to *cum is, inasmuch as he, or although he*.

8. **hōc dolore**: equivalent to *hūius rei dolore*, *through resentment at this*.

11. CHAPTER 5. **pervenit**: probably late in June. **nāvēs**, etc.: these vessels were doubtless brought down the Marne and

Seine. According to Strabo, Caesar's naval arsenal was at the mouth of the Seine, to which *eodem*, 13, naturally refers.

18. **obsidum locō**: *as hostages*.

19. **cū ipse abesset**: *when he himself should be away*.

21. CHAPTER 6. **cēteris**: *sc. principibus*.

22. **ante**: see 3, 15, and 15, 12 ff.

23-24. **cupidum**: predicate accusative of an adjective expressing a quality, along with two predicate genitives of quality. **māgnī animī**: *of high spirit, ambitious*.

25. **Accēdēbat hūc, quod**: *there was the additional reason, that*.

26. **sibi . . . rēgnum dēferri**: *he had an offer of kingship in his state from Caesar*. Compare the case of Commius and the Atrebates, 110, 7. But Dumnorix had doubtless invented the story about himself in order to alienate the Haedui from Caesar.

Page 126. 2. neque: *but not*.

3. **hospitibus**: *i.e. among the Haedui*.

6. **nāvigandī**: objective genitive depending on *insuētus*, *unused to sailing*.

7-8. **timēret, dīceret**: for the subjv. see A. 540, 2, N. 2 (321, 2, N. 2); B. 286, 1, a; G. 541, N. 3; H. 588, II, 1; H-B. 535, 2, a, N. 3. **religiōnibus**: *religious scruples or motives*, perhaps referring to omens warning him not to go, or to vows, the performance of which would keep him at home.

11-12. **territāre**: historical infinitive. **ferī, ut . . . spoliārētur**: *did it happen that Gaul was being despoiled*.

13-14. **ut . . . trāductōs necāret**: *to take over and put to death*, a substantive clause explaining *id*. **fīdem interpōnere**: *pledged his word*; the infinitive again is historical.

15. **iūs iūrāndum**: *as an oath*, in predicate agreement with the clause, *ut . . . administrārent*, which is the object of *poscere*. **quod**: for *id quod*.

18-19. CHAPTER 7. **tantum dignitātis**: *a place of so much importance*. As the Haedui had been friendly so long, it would

be a great blow to Caesar's prestige not to be able to hold them in allegiance.

21. **longius**: *too far*. **prōspiciendum** (*esse*): depending on *statuēbat*.

22. **quid**: acc. of degree limiting *nocēre, do any harm*. **sibi**: Caesar. **rei publicae**: the Roman commonwealth.

23. **chōrus ventus**: for the noun in apposition cf. such combinations as *terra Gallia, mare Oceanus*.

24. **partem**: acc. of duration of time. **omnis temporis**: equivalent to *tōtius annī*.

Page 127. 1. **impeditis**: equivalent to *occupātis, pre-occupied*, i.e. with the task of embarkation.

5. **retrahī**: sc. *eum*, and see note on *Hās . . . fieri*, 122, 11.

6. **sī vim faciat**: *if he should offer violent resistance*.

7. **quī**: equivalent to *cum is*. **praesentis**: sc. *Caesaris*.

10. **III**: the Roman cavalrymen.

12. **omnēs**: emphatic, *without exception*.

16. CHAPTER 8. **prō tempore et prō rē**: *according to time and circumstances*.

17-18. **quīnque legiōnibus**: only the 7th is mentioned by name in the narrative. **parī numerō quem**: *the same number as*; *pār atque* is more common, as in 23, 26. **ad solis occāsum**: the date, from various considerations, seems to have been about July 20th.

20. **longius**: *quite a distance*, i.e. to the northeast. When the fleet set sail the current was running southwest; a few hours later it shifted to the northeast.

22. **aestūs commūtātiōnem**: about daylight the tidal current turned southwest again.

23. **eam partem insulae**: i.e. the shore near Deal.

26. **vectoriis . . . nāvigiis**: *with the heavily laden transports*. **nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre**: *by unremitting work at the oars*. See Introd. 38.

28. **Accessum est**, etc.: *the entire fleet reached Britain*; the verb is impersonal; *nāvibus* is abl. of means.

Page 128. 2. *cum*: *although*.

3-5. *quae amplius octingentae*, etc.: *which were seen at one time, more than eight hundred in number.* *privātis*: sc. *nāvibus*. The reference may be to vessels owned by traders and by such members of Caesar's staff as could afford it.

6.. *loca*: why not an abl. instead of an acc.?

9. CHAPTER 9. *cohortibus decem*: the employment of this phrase instead of *unā legiōne* may mean that the cohorts were drawn from several legions, perhaps two from each of the five legions.

11. *eō minus veritus nāvibus*: *feeling the less anxiety for his ships*.

12. *mollī atque apertō*: *gently sloping and open*. Cf. the description, *apertō ac plānō*, 112, 4.

Page 129. 1. *flūmen*: probably the Great Stour, above Wye. *ex locō superiōre*: with *coepērunt*. The northern bank was higher than the southern.

5. *domesticī*: i.e. with some neighboring tribe.

6. *crēbris arboribus succisais*: a barricade of felled trees. Cf. 135, 25-28.

7. *ex silvis*: *from the (vantage-ground of the) woods.* *rārī*: *in small groups*.

8. *prohibēbant*: *tried to prevent*, the conative imperfect.

9-10. *testūdine*: see Introd. 34. *aggere*: the siege mole in this instance was doubtless of very simple construction. *adiectō*: *having pushed forward*.

12. *prōsequī*: sc. *militēs* as subject.

16. CHAPTER 10. *in expeditiōnem*: *as a flying column*. Cf. the adjective *expeditus*, *lightly equipped*. *misit*: Caesar himself, apparently, remained at the camp of the night before, in which case he would naturally keep with him a detachment of troops.

17. *aliquantum itineris*: *some distance*. Explain the cases.

18. *extrēmī*: may mean *the rear of the enemy's forces* or *only the rear of our columns*.

19. **superiōre nocte**: *the night before.*

21. **sustinērent**: *held firm.*

23. **ex eō concursū**: *from the ensuing collision.*

26. CHAPTER 11. **in itinere resistere**: lit. *to resist upon the march*, i.e. *to retire on the defensive*. The troops most likely returned to the field camp; see line 13, above.

28. **āmissis . . . nāvibus**: *although, etc.*

Page 130. 2. **fabrōs**: see Introd. 9.

3. **scribit, ut . . . instituat**: *writes Labienus to fit out. legiōnibus*: abl. of means.

5. **erat . . . labōris**: *involved much labor and trouble*. Explain the genitives.

6. **ūnā mūnitiōne**: we may imagine that two lines of ramparts were constructed, running from corners of the camp down to the shore and inclosing a beach sufficient to accommodate the shattered vessels.

8. **ad labōrem intermissis**: *being exempt from toil; ad, lit. with respect to.*

11. **quās ante**: *as before.* **eōdem**: i.e. *to the field camp.*

14. **administrandī**: with *belli* only.

17. **mīlia passuum octogintā**: measured from Deal to the point where Caesar crossed the Thames. **Huic . . . bella intercesserant**: *he had been continually at war.*

21-22. CHAPTER 12. **quōs nātōs (esse)**: subject of *prōditum (esse)*; translate freely, *who are said to be indigenous to the island, according to oral tradition*. The Britons were in reality all mainly of Celtic origin.

24. **isdem nōminibus**: two tribes at least, the Belgae and Atrebates, bore names also found on the continent.

Page 131. 3. **aedificia**: round, wooden, straw-thatched huts. **Gallicis**: sc. *aedificiis*.

4. **tāleis ferreis**: it has been suggested recently that these iron bars are to be identified "with certain iron objects found, sometimes with Celtic remains, in the south and west of Eng-

land. These iron objects somewhat resemble unfinished sword blades. They are flat and slightly tapering blades with blunt, vertical edges and rude handles made by turning up the edges to meet one another at one end." See *Classical Review*, May, 1905, report of a paper by Mr. Reginald A. Smith.

5. **ad certum pondus examinātis**: of a fixed weight. **prō nummō**: as money.

6. **plumbum album**: tin from the mines of Cornwall had been known to Phoenician traders from early times. **mediterrāneis, maritimis**: a mistake; the terms should be reversed in their application.

7. **exigua**: the great development of the iron mines was yet to come. **aere**: copper mining in Britain was not extensively carried on until the eighteenth century.

9. **fāgum, abietem**: the beech is certainly indigenous to Britain. The fir is perhaps to be identified with the silver fir, not indigenous and not introduced till modern times. (Stock.)

10. **fās nōn putant**: the reason for this aversion is unknown. **haec**: explain the gender. **animī causā**: for amusement.

11-12. **Loca**: the climate is the English idiom. **frīgoribus**: the cold. For the plural see note on *frigora*, 14, 2.

14. CHAPTER 13. **alter angulus**: approximately the North Foreland.

15. **adpelluntur**: direct their course, put in.

16. **Inferior**: sc. *angulus*; Land's End. The southern side of the island is given too much of a north-south direction in this description.

18. **Alterum**: sc. *latus*. **vergit ad Hispāniam**: ancient writers conceived of Spain as being much farther north than it is.

20-21. **parī spatiō . . . atque**: the distance across is the same as. **spatiō** is an ablative of quality, limiting *Hibernia*. **In hōc mediō cursū**: halfway across, inaccurate as applied to *Mona*, Anglesey. Caesar, however, may have confounded it with the Isle of Man.

22-23. **complūrēs minōrēs**: this may be a reminiscence of vague reports of the Hebrides. **obiectae**: sc. *esse*, to lie opposite, i.e. the west side.

24. **nōn nullī**: Greek writers, probably.

26. **nisi**: *except that, or but*. **ex aquā**: i.e. by means of the clepsydra, water clock.

28. **ut fert opīniō**: *according to the opinion*. Cf. **cōnsuetūdō ferret**, 117, 18. **illōrum**: the **nōn nullī** of 24.

Page 132. 1-2. **Tertium**: sc. *latus*. **ēius**: sc. *lateris*. **angulus alter**: this must be identical with *alter angulus*, 131, 14.

6. CHAPTER 14. **hīs**: the Britons.

8. **cōnsuetūdīne**: *manner of life*.

9. **plērique**: *as a rule*. **frūmenta nōn serunt**: in contrast to the Britons of Kent. See 117, 7, 13.

10. **sunt vestītī**: *clothe themselves*.

12-13. **horribiliōrēs sunt aspectū**: *present a more fearful appearance*. **capillō, parte**: abls. of quality; translate, *wear their hair long and shave the entire body*.

16-17. **quī**: for *eī quī*. **eōrum liberī habentur**: *are considered as the children of those*. **quō**: equivalent to *ad quōs*.

18. CHAPTER 15. **Equitēs**, etc.: the narrative of Chapter 11 is here resumed. For the method of fighting from chariots see 118, 7 ff. For the combination of cavalry and chariots see 112, 5-7 and 118, 5-6.

20. **partibus**: equivalent to *locis*.

23. **intermissō spatiō**: *after some time*.

26. **conlocātī**: predicate adjective.

Page 133. 1. **atque hīs primīs**: *and the first cohorts at that*. The first cohort of a legion contained the best soldiers.

2. **cum**: *although*, i.e. notwithstanding the very narrow interval separating the two cohorts.

3. **novō**: this word seems to show that these troops had not participated in the first expedition.

4. **perrūpērunt**: sc. *hostēs* as subject.

7. CHAPTER 16. **Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae**: *throughout a battle of this kind.*

8. **dīmicārētur**: impersonal. **nostrōs**: the legionaries.

10. **neque ab signis discēdere audērent**: i.e. did not dare to break up into small detachments, as would have been necessary to pursue the small detachments of the enemy, **rāri**, 17. The Roman infantry was equipped and trained for fighting in large bodies and in close array.

12. **illī**: the enemy.

13. **cōderent**: *would give way*, repeated action; so also the pluperfect after *cum*, *when* (*ever*), and the two imperfects following.

14. **disparī proeliō**: *in an unequal battle*; the Roman cavalry was at a disadvantage when thus opposed to the dismounted charioteers. The latter were also doubtless supported by their cavalry, for which see Bk. IV, Chapter 33.

15-16. **ratio**: *the manner, the terms.* **cēdentibus et insequentibus**: sc. *nostris*. Translate, *the terms of a cavalry engagement brought the same danger to our cavalry in retreat as when in pursuit.* When the Roman cavalry followed up the Britons it met with the difficulties described in the preceding sentence; in retreat it was pursued and overtaken by the British cavalry and chariots.

17-18. **Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam . . . proeliārentur**: *there was the additional fact that, etc., or then, too, they never fought.* **stationēs**: detachments, of reserves.

19. **aliōs alīf deinceps exciperent**: *would succeed one another in turn.*

26-27. CHAPTER 17. **sic utī . . . nōn absisterent**: lit. *so that they* (the enemy) *did not refrain from the standards and legions*; freely, and even advanced up to the standards and legions.

Page 134. 1. **quoad**: *until.* For the indicatives following see A. 554 (328); B. 293, III; G. 571; H. 603, II; H-B. 550. **subsidiō**: explain the case.

4. **Ex hāc fugā**: *after this rout.*

6-7. **summīs copiīs**: *in full force*.

8. CHAPTER 18. **cōnsiliō eōrum**: the British plan is explained in Chapter 19.

9-10. **ūnō locō**: the place of crossing cannot be determined with certainty from the data afforded here. **hōc**: sc. *locō*, and even here with difficulty. Cf. *atque his primis*, 133, 1.

16. **eā**: *such*.

17. **mīlitēs**: i.e. the infantry. **cum**: *although*.

19. **-que**: *but*.

21. CHAPTER 19. **suprā**: see 5-7, above.

22. **contentiōnis**: i.e. effective resistance in full force. **ampliōribus**: *the greater part of*.

24-25. **locīs, regiōnibus**: locative ablatives without a preposition. Observe the tenses of repeated action in this passage.

28. **liberius**: *with too little caution*.

Page 135. 1. **viīs, sēmītīs**: abls. of the way by which.

3. **hōc metū**: *from fear of this*. **vagārī**: a subject accusative is to be supplied from *his*.

4-7. **Relinquēbātur**: the substantive *ut* clause is subject. Translate, *the only thing left Caesar was not to permit (the cavalry) to depart too far from the column of legions, and to inflict only so much injury on the enemy, etc.* **discēdī**: impersonal. **nocērētur**: impersonal, lit. *that only so much injury should be done to the enemy*. **in labōre atque itinere**: *in the course of laborious marching*, a case of hendiadys.

10. CHAPTER 20. **fidem secūtus**: see Vocabulary, *fidēs*.

12. **ipse**: *while he himself*.

13. **deditūrōs**: sc. *sē* as subject.

15. **Cassivellaunī**: *at the hands of Cassivellaunus*.

16. **qui praesit**: *to rule over them*. The verb is used absolutely. What case might it govern? **imperium obtineat**: *to hold independent power*, added to emphasize their release from allegiance to Cassivellaunus. **His imperat**: *demands of them*.

19. **ad numerum**: *to the required number*.

20-21. CHAPTER 21. **dēfēnsis**: i.e. against Cassivellaunus.

omni iniuriā: the soldiers were forbidden to plunder. **prohibitis**: *having been secured*.

23. **eō locō**: the place where the embassies met Caesar. **oppidum**: possibly Roman Verulamium, modern St. Albans.

25. **autem**: in the sense of *now*, in a parenthetical statement.

Page 136. 9. CHAPTER 22. **quibus regiōnibus**: for *cui*, referring to Cantium.

11. **castra nāvālia**: see 130, 5-7.

17. **Commium**: see 110, 6 ff., and 114, 25 ff.

19. **hiemāre in continentī**: the army would of course winter in Gaul. Caesar himself expected to go to Italy as usual. **repentinōs mōtūs**: i.e. uprisings that might occur. Cf. 125, 19-20.

21-22. **quid vectigālis**: *how much tribute*. **penderet**: *was to pay*. Explain the mood. As no force was left in Britain to exact this tribute, it was never paid.

26. CHAPTER 23. **nāvēs refectās**: see Chapter 11.

Page 137. 1. **tot nāvigātiōnibus**: *notwithstanding the many voyages*.

3. **dēsiderārētur**: *was missing, was lost*.

4-5. **priōris**: *the first* of the two mentioned in 136, 28. **postea**: i.e. after the storm had damaged the fleet; see 130, 3-4.

6. **faciendās cūrāverat**: *had caused to be built*; see note on *reficiendās cūrent*, 122, 5. **locum**: *destination*.

10-11. **angustius**: *more closely*, than on the first trip. **primā lūce**: it was about September 21st.

ASSIGNMENT OF WINTER QUARTERS, 24-25.

13. CHAPTER 24. **conciliō**: see note on *concilia*, 123, 20.

14-15. **frūmentum** . . . **angustius prōvenerat**: *there was a shortage in the grain crop*. **siccitātēs**: plural of an abstract noun, referring to different places, as in 120, 21.

17-18. **ūnam dūcendam dedit**: *gave one to Caius Fabius to conduct*.

19. **Q. Cicerōni**: brother of the orator, Marcus Cicero. Quintus had joined Caesar at the beginning of this year's campaign in the capacity of *lēgātus*.

23. **Unam legiōnem, quam proximē cōscripserat**: these words may mean that a new legion had been levied in the winter of 55-54, or they may refer to one of the two legions levied in 57. See 48, 18. The location of the various quarters is given definitely, after Napoleon, though the data are really insufficient to make certain of the sites. **trāns**: from the standpoint of Rome, i.e. north of the Po.

24. **cohortēs quinque**: these five cohorts, apparently, are the remnants of a legion; the other five may have been used to repair losses in other legions, or they may have fallen in battle. **in Eburōnēs**: at a place called Atuatuca, as we learn from Bk. VI.

Page 138. 7. mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur: the exact meaning of these words is difficult to determine. The explanation of a circle with a radius of one hundred miles is plausible.

8-9. **quoad . . . cōgnōvisset**: *until he should know*; for the mood see A. 553 (328); B. 293, III, 2; G. 572; H. 603, II; H-B. 507, 5.

10. CHAPTER 25. **summō locō nātus**: *a man of noble birth*.

13. **in omnibus bellis**: i.e. in all of Caesar's Gallic campaigns hitherto. **singulārī ūius operā fuerat ūsus**: *had found his services of unusual value*. **fuerat**: instead of *erat*, to express action prior to that of *restituērat*.

14-15. **hunc**: Tasgetius. **inimicī**: *personal enemies*. **multis auctōribus**: *with the sanction of many citizens*, i.e. adherents of the anti-Roman party in the state, who naturally opposed a king placed over them by Caesar.

17. **ad plūrēs pertinēbat**: *lit. it extended to many, better many were involved in the affair*.

20-21. **comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere**: *to arrest and send to him*.

23. **perventum (esse)**: *impersonal, they had arrived*.

DEFEAT OF SABINUS AND COTTA, 26-37.

24. CHAPTER 26. **Diēbus circiter quindecim**, etc.: *about fifteen days after their arrival*. How lit.? Cf. 108, 1. The legions probably reached winter quarters toward the end of October.

25. **initium ortum est**: somewhat pleonastic, for *initium factum est*.

Page 139. 1-2. **cum**: *although*. **finēs**: *boundaries, frontier*. **Sabinō . . . praestō fuissent**: *had come to meet Sabinus and Cotta*.

3. **Indūtiomāri**: see Chapter 3 ff.

8. **dēspērātā rē**: *despairing of success*.

9-10. **conclāmāvērunt**: implying a request, hence the clause *utī aliqui . . . prōdīret*. **habēre sēsē, quae . . . vellent**: *they had certain things to say of mutual interest*.

18-19. CHAPTER 27. **plūrimū dēbēre**: *was deeply indebted*.

20. **eī**: what pronoun should we expect instead of the demonstrative?

22. **obsidum numerō missōs**: *though sent as hostages*.

23-24. **id, quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum**: translate simply, *the attack on the camp*, object of *fēcisse*.

25. **imperia**: *his authority*; explain the use of the plural.

27. **Civitātī porrō**: *now in the case of the state*; explain the dative.

Page 140. 5. **hībernīs oppūgnandīs**: gerundive construction, dative of purpose.

7. **Gallōs**: subject of *potuisse*, but at the same time assigns a reason, *since they were Gauls*.

10. **pietāte**: *loyalty, patriotism*.

13. **conductam**: *hired, mercenary*.

14. **Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū, velintne**: *it rests with the Romans themselves to consider whether they wish*, lit. *the consideration is their own*, etc.

18. **Illud** : *this*, explained by the infinitive clause, *sē . . . datūrum (esse)*.

19-20. **Quod** : a relative. Translate the clause, *in doing so*.

Page 141. 1. CHAPTER 28. **facere** : equivalent to *inferre*.
vix erat crēdendum : *it was hardly credible*.

2. **eōs** : those participating in the council of war.

6. **discēdendum (esse)** : impersonal, *they must not leave*.

8. **rem** : *the fact*, explained by the *quod* clause. **testimō-niō** : dat. of purpose or end, *this fact served as a proof, that*, etc.

12. **esse** : for the mood see A. 586 (338); B. 315, 2; G. 651, R. 1; H. 642, 2; H-B. 591, a.

13. **auctōre hoste** : abl. absolute, *by the advice of an enemy*.

14-15. CHAPTER 29. **cum** : *when*. **convēnissent** : *should have assembled*.

19. **fuisse captūrōs (esse)** : *would have adopted*, representing *cēpissent* of direct discourse.

20. **nostrī** : observe the form the pronoun takes as an objective genitive.

21. **auctōrem** : *as an adviser, for advice*. **rem** : *the actual facts*.

23. **Ariovisti mortem** : Ariovistus, it will be remembered, escaped after the battle in 58. See 46, 14-15. The time of his death is not known.

26. **hōc** : *of this*, object of *persuādēret*.

28. **in utramque partem** : *in either event*. **nihil dūrius** : *no unusual difficulty*.

Page 142. 4. **habēre** : *offer*. For mood see reference on *esse*, 141, 12.

7. CHAPTER 30. **in utramque partem** : *pro and con*.

8. **primis ordinibus** : i.e. *the centurions of the first rank*.
ācritē resistērētur : *strong opposition was offered*.

9. **et id** : *and that too*. Cf. *atque id*, 122, 8, and note.

10-11. **is, quī . . . terrear** : *the man to be terrified*.

13. **sī per tē liceat** : *if you would let them, were it not for you*.

15. **nōn intereant** : *instead of perishing.*

17. CHAPTER 31. **Cōnsurgitur** : *impersonal, the council breaks up.* **comprehendunt** : *grasp by the hand.* **utrumque** : *i.e. Sabinus and Cotta.*

20. **sī modo** : *if only, provided.* **ūnum** : *one thing, the same course.*

22-23. **dat manūs** : *gives in* ; metaphor from the battlefield, the signal of submission made by a soldier asking for quarter.

25. **cum sua**, etc. : *each soldier looking through his belongings, to see what he could take with him, etc.*

27-28. **Omnia excōgitantur**, etc. : *reasons of every sort are thought of, why they may not remain without danger, etc.*

Page 143. 2-4. **ut quibus esset persuāsum** : for *ut ei quibus*, etc., as men convinced, A. 535, e, N. 1 (320, e, N. 1); B. 283, 3, a; G. 626, N. 1; H. 592, 1; H-B. 523, b.

6. CHAPTER 32. **sēnsērunt** : used absolutely, followed by *dē* and an ablative, *found out about.*

7. **ā** : *away, off.*

12. **nostris** : dat. after *iniquissimō*, *very unfavorable to our troops.*

14. CHAPTER 33. **quī** : equivalent to *cum is, since he.*

15. **trepidāre**, etc. : historical infinitives. **dispōnere** : *tried to form in order of battle.* **haec tamen** : *sc. faciēbat*, and cf. *et id*, 142, 9.

16. **ut** : for *ita ut*. **quod** : *a thing which.*

17. **in ipsō negōtiō** : cf. English *on the spur of the moment.*

18. **quī** : as in 14.

23. **sē** : referring to the subject of *possent*, Sabinus and Cotta.

25. **prōnūntiārī** : *the command to be given.*

26. **orbem** : see Introd. 33.

28. **incommodē cecidit** : *had an unfortunate result.*

Page 144. 2. **id** : *i.e. the formation of the orbis.*

3. **quod fieri necesse erat** : *as was inevitable.*

4. **quaeque** : for *et ea quae.*

8. CHAPTER 34. **tōtā aciē** : *all along the line.* **prōnūntiārī** : as in 143, 25.

9. **illōrum** : predicate gen. of possession.

11. **existimārent** : *let them consider*, representing an imperative of direct discourse.

12. **duce** : Sabinus. **fortūnā** : personified, hence the preposition.

14. **prōcurrerat** : i.e. from the *orbis*. Observe the pluperfect and imperfect of repeated action.

17. **et** : *but.* **quam** : *whatever.*

19. **nihil eis nocērī posse** : *that no harm could be done them*; *eis* refers to the Eburones. **sē recipientēs** : i.e. the Romans.

21. CHAPTER 35. **cum** : *whenever.*

23. **eam partem** : referring apparently to the charging cohort, which would lose the protection of the *orbis*.

25. **erant progressī** : explain the number of the verb.

26. **quī cesserant** : only those of the enemy immediately in front of the cohort would fall back. **proximī** : those of the enemy on the left and right of the charging cohort.

27. **locum** : *their place*, in the *orbis*.

28. **locus** : *opportunity.*

Page 145. 1. **Tamen** : the concessive idea lies in *cōnflctātī* and *acceptīs*, *though afflicted*, etc.

5. **ipsis** : for the case with *indignum* see A. 418, b (245, a, 1); B. 226, 2; G. 397, 2; H. 481; H-B. 442. **esset** : explain the mood.

6-7. **T. Balventiō** : dat. of reference instead of a possessive genitive; best translated as if subject of *trācitur*. **primum pīlum dūxerat** : see Introd. 15. Possibly Balvenitus was now serving as *ēvocātus*, Introd. 7.

9. **ēiusdem ordinis** : observe the gen. of quality used as an attributive without the intervention of an appositive.

10. **dum . . . subvenit** : *while attempting to rescue.*

18. CHAPTER 36. **impetrārī** : sc. as subject *id*, antecedent of *quod*. Cf. what Ambiorix said before, 139, 25-26.

19-20. **ipsi vērō**, etc.: *to Sabinus at any rate no harm shall be done.* **inque eam rem**, etc.: *and he pledges his word thereto.*

21. **Ille**: Sabinus. **cum . . . communicat**: *informs*, or *confers with*, implying also *and requests*, and so followed by an *ut* clause. **sī videātur**: *if it seems best.*

23. **impetrārī**: *impersonal, that the request can be gained.*

24. **ad armātum hostem**: for Cotta's attitude cf. 141, 12-13.

26. CHAPTER 37. **quōs**: for *eōs quōs*.

Page 146. 3. **condiciōnibus**: *terms of surrender.*

7. **victōriam conclāmant**: *raise the cry of "victory."*

17. **III**: those Roman soldiers who made their way into the camp.

SIEGE OF CICERO'S CAMP, 38-53.

27. CHAPTER 38. **neque noctem . . . intermittit**: *without stopping night or day.* The march began that very night.

Page 147. 1. **Rē**: *what had happened.*

3. **sui liberandī . . . ulciscendī**: dependent on *occāsiōnem*.

4. **iniūriis**: see 69, 15 ff.

7. **nihil esse negōtī . . . legiōnēm . . . interfici**: *there would be (lit. was) no difficulty in suddenly surprising and destroying the legion, etc.* The subject of *esse* is the infinitive clause following.

12. CHAPTER 39. **sub imperiō**: see Introd. 65. **eōrum**: the Nervii.

14-15. **Huic quoque**: *in his case also*, as in the case of Sabinus and Cotta, 139, 4. The dative is governed by *accidit*. **quod**: *which, as.*

16. **lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā**: *to get timber for the fortifications.*

18. **māgnā manū**: with *oppugnāre incipiunt*.

21. **Aegrē . . . sustentātur**: *with difficulty did the troops hold their own that day.* *diēs* is here made the subject. How

lit.? Cf. the impersonal construction in *aegrē eō diē sustentātum est*, 51, 26.

23. **adepti**: *if they should win*.

25-26. CHAPTER 40. **ad Caesarem**: Caesar was at Samarobriua. **pertulissent**: *should deliver*, with *nūntiū* to be understood as subject, *litterās* as object. Explain the subjunctive.

27. **missi**: *those sent, the couriers*.

28. **turrēs**: these towers were erected on the rampart. The work was not finished this first night.

Page 148. 2. **resistitur**: *resistance is made*.

4. **ad . . . intermittitur**: *is exempt from*. Cf. 130, 8.

7. **praeustae**: i.e. charred to a hard point. **mūrālium pilōrum**: see Introd. 19.

8. **contabulantur**, etc.: the towers were divided by floors into several stories. Each floor was furnished with breastworks, *lōricae*, of hurdles, above which rose at intervals the pinnacles, *pinnae*, also of hurdles, intended to protect the soldiers as they hurled their missiles through the intervening spaces.

9. **cum**: *although*.

11-12. **ut . . . cōgerētur**: a clause of result.

14. CHAPTER 41. **aditum**: *opportunity, claim*.

19-20. **fidei faciundae causā**: *to inspire confidence, to give color to their story*. Ambiorix would not have been likely to leave his own country unless he had destroyed the Roman force quartered there. Furthermore, as he had hitherto appeared friendly, his presence now tended to confirm the story of a general revolt. **Eōs**: Cicero and his men.

22. **hōc esse animō**: *are so disposed*.

23-24. **hanc cōnsuetudinē**: *this practice*, of quartering Roman troops in Gallic territory. **per sē**: *so far as they are concerned*. **incolumibus**: predicate dative in agreement with *illis*.

28. **accipere**, etc.: cf. Cotta's words, 145, 24.

Page 149. 1-2. **sē adiūtōre ſtantur**: *let them make him their intercessor.*

4-5. CHAPTER 42. **hāc spēs**: the hope of drawing Cicero into an ambushade. **pedum decem**: i.e. in height; **pedum quīndecim**, in width.

7-8. **nūllā cōpiā**: abl. absolute, *having no supply.*

9. **caespitēs**: for the rampart.

13. **turrēs**: inovable towers are meant. **ad altitudinem**: *suitable to the height* of the Roman rampart, i.e. high enough to hurl missiles from them into the Roman camp.

17-18. CHAPTER 43. **glandēs**: possibly these clay balls were mixed with bits of coal found in the vicinity. **fervefacta iacula**: probably darts with some inflammable material attached.

18. **casās**: the huts of the winter quarters, Introd. 30.

Page 150. 1-2. **sicutī partā . . . victōriā**: abl. absolute, equivalent to *velutī parta esset . . . victōria.*

6. **ea**: equivalent to *tālis*. **ut**: separated from its verbs, *dēcēderet*, etc., by an intervening concessive clause, *cum . . . intellegerent.*

12. **dēmigrandī causā**: *to abandon his post.*

14. **tum ācerrimē**: *now more spiritedly than ever.*

17-18. **ut . . . interficerētur**: appositive clause explaining *eventum*. **ut** (18): *as, for.*

20. **turrī**: one of the Gallic towers.

25. **dēturbātī (sunt)**: sc. *hostēs* as subject.

28. CHAPTER 44. **prīmīs ōrdinibus**: see Introd. 15.

Page 151. 2. **uter alterī anteferrētur**: *which should be given preference over the other*, indirect question depending on *contrōversiās*. **locō**: *rank.*

5. **locum**: *chance, opportunity.*

8. **inrumpit**: *makes an attack.* **Nē . . . quidem**: *not . . . either.*

12-13. **ex multitudine**: with *prōcurrentem*. **quō** . . .

exanimātō, hunc . . . prōtegunt: *quem . . . exanimātum prōtegunt* might have been written. The construction adopted serves better to contrast the prostrate comrade, *hunc*, and the lone enemy, *illum*.

15. **Pullōnī:** dat. of reference instead of possessive gen.

16. **Āvertit**, etc.: the sword was worn at the right side.

17. **cōnantī:** *when he attempts*. See note on *Pullōnī*, 15.
impeditum: sc. *eum*.

19. **labōrantī:** *in his plight*.

23. **in locum dēiectus inferiōrem:** *having stumbled into a hole*.

28. **versāvit:** *dealt with*; how lit.? **inimicus:** *though a rival*.

29. **anteferendus:** *deserving of preference*.

Page 152. 3. CHAPTER 45. rēs . . . pervēnerat: *the defenders had been reduced to a few*.

4. **litterae:** *dispatches*, plural, but singular in 10.

5. **quōrum:** referring to *nūntiū* only, as *litterae nūntiūque* are equivalent to *nūntiū cum litteris*.

6. **ūnus:** *a single, one only*. **intus:** *for in hibernis*.

7. **ā primā obsidiōne:** *at the beginning of the siege*.

8. **suamque ei fidem praestiterat:** *had given him evidence of his trustworthiness*.

11. **ille:** the slave. **in iaculō inligātās:** possibly the dispatch was concealed in the spear shaft, hollowed out to receive it. **Gallus:** *as he was a Gaul*.

15. CHAPTER 46. **M. Crassum:** see 137, 21. Crassus's legion was to relieve that of Trebonius quartered near Samarobriva, which Caesar took with him.

19. **ut . . . addūcat:** *to lead*, explaining *Alterum (nūntium)*. **sibi:** i.e. Caesar.

20. **rei publicae commodō:** *in accordance with the interests of the state*, or simply, *advantageously*. As Labienus occupied an important and dangerous post near the Treveri, and could best judge the situation himself, he was allowed to act at his own discretion.

22. **veniat**: *to come*. **Reliquam partem**: the legions with Roscius and Plancus. See 137, 19, and 138, 18.

23. **equitēs**: possibly a detachment of cavalry was kept in hand during the winter. See Introd. 6.

Page 153. 1. CHAPTER 47. **Crassum . . . praeficit**: learning of Crassus's approach from the arrival of his advance guard, Caesar seems to have started at once, leaving orders for Crassus to assume command at Samarobriua.

2. **impedimenta**: each legion had its own baggage train in winter quarters. Extra munitions of war may have been included in the baggage at Samarobriua. **litterās publicās**: *official records*.

5. **nōn ita multum morātus**: *without losing much time*.

8. **sī . . . fēcisset**: the clause implies that any departure from winter quarters under the circumstances would seem like flight.

9-10. **nōn posset**: *would be unable*. **praesertim**, etc.: *especially since he knew them to be elated by their recent victory*. **quōs**: equivalent to *cum eōs*.

11. **quāto**, etc.: indirect question depending on **litterās**, a *dispatch*, showing with how great danger, etc.

12. **rem gestam**: *what has happened*, i.e. the annihilation of the cohorts under Sabinus and Cotta.

15. CHAPTER 48. **opīniōne**: abl. of separation after **dēiectus**, *disappointed in his hope*.

22. **Graecis litteris**: probably in Greek letters only, not in the Greek language.

23-24. **sī adire nōn possit**: i.e. if he could not gain access to the Roman winter camp, a difficult thing to do, as he had to feign friendship for the besieging Gauls.

25. **amentum**: a leather loop attached to the spear shaft. The fingers of the spear hand were thrust through it, to give the missile a rotary motion and thus secure greater accuracy and distance in the throw.

28. **periculum**: *danger*, from Roman missiles in particular.

Page 154. 1. perlēctam: sc. *epistulum*.

3. **fūmī incendiōrum:** Caesar was laying waste the country as he came to the rescue.

6-7. CHAPTER 49. **Hæc:** referring to *cōpiis*, but attracted to agreement with the predicate noun, *mīlia*. **armāta:** what other case might have been employed? **datā facultāte:** as the opportunity now offered, i.e. through the raising of the siege.

8. **Gallum:** a Gaul, probably not the same messenger as before, as his return has not been mentioned.

11. **hostēs, multūdinem:** subject and object respectively of *convertisse*.

16. **trāns . . . rīvum:** to be taken with *cōspicātur*.

18. **tum:** furthermore.

20. **remittendum dē celeritāte:** he might relax his speed.

22. **mīlium:** gen. limiting *hæc* and amplifying *exigua*, being a camp for barely seven thousand men.

23. **nūllis cum impedimentis:** the heavy baggage had been left at Samarobriua, the soldiers carrying on their backs sufficient rations for the march. **angustis viarum:** by making the camp streets narrow.

24. **eō cōnsiliō,** etc.: with the purpose of exciting the utmost contempt of the enemy.

Page 155. 2. CHAPTER 50. Galli: sc. *sēsē continent*, and the singular verb with *Caesar*.

3-4. **sī:** in case, in the hope. **suum:** his own, equivalent to *aequum*, favorable. Cf. *aliēnus*, another's, for *iniquus*, unfavorable.

11. **obstrui:** it was a sham barricade, as told below, 21.

12-13. **concurāri, agi:** impersonal passives; translate in the active voice.

15-16. CHAPTER 51. **iniquō locō:** Caesar's camp was pitched as usual on the crest and slope of a hill. **nostris . . . dēductis:** this was to increase the appearance of consternation.

17. **circummissis:** i.e. around the various sides of the Roman camp.

19. **licēre** : sc. *eī*, *he might do so*.
 21. **in speciem** : *to make a show*.
 23. **manū** : i.e. without the aid of tools, so confident were they.
 24. **omnibus portis** : *through all the gates*, abl. of the way by which.
 26. **nēmō** : in emphatic position, *not a man*.

Page 156. 2. CHAPTER 52. **neque etiam** : equivalent to *nē . . . quidem*. **dētrimentō** : dat. after *relinquī*, *no further opportunity was left for inflicting even a slight loss upon them*. The cavalry force was too small for effective pursuit.

6. **nōn decimū quemque militem** : *not one soldier in ten*.
 12. **certius** : *more definitely*. Caesar had heard of the disaster from Labienus's dispatch.

15. **hōc aequiōre animō** : *with the greater composure*.

19. CHAPTER 53. **per Rēmōs** : *through the country of the Remi*.

20. **cum** : *although*.
 21. **eō** : *for in hiberna Cicerōnis*.
 24. **grātulātiō fieret** : the phrase *grātulātiō fieri* constitutes a passive for the deponent *grātulārī*.
 25. **Indūtiomārus** : see Chapters 3 and 4 of this Book.
 28. **in hiberna** : in the country of the Morini, 137, 18.
 29. **tribus legiōnibus** : the legions of Crassus, Trebonius, and Cicero. **trinīs** : explain the use of the distributive numeral.

Page 157. 2. **ipse** : emphatic repetition of the pronoun; in the first instance it served to mark a contrast. **ad exercitum manēre** : i.e. contrary to his usual practice of going to Cisalpine Gaul at the close of each year's campaigns.

3. **dē Sabīnī morte** : *of Sabinus's death*, defines *incommodō*. **perlātō** : *having been noised abroad*.

6. **reliqūi** : nom. pl., *what plan the other Gauls would adopt*. **unde** : *for ā quibus*.

9-10. **quā** . . . **acciperet** : (and) without his receiving.

11. **In his** : sc. **nūntius**, among these messages.

13. **Aremoricae** : for a list of these tribes see Bk. II, Chapter 34.

REVOLT OF THE SENONES AND TREVERI, 54-58.

19. CHAPTER 54. **cum** . . . **dēnūntiāret** : declaring. The *cum* clause serves to amplify *territandō*.

21. **quae est civitas** : equivalent to *quōrum civitas est*, the relative being attracted to agreement with the predicate noun.

23. **Moritasgus** : a singular verb is to be supplied from *obtinuerant*.

24. **adventū** : abl. of time. **in Galliam** : in with the acc. after the idea of motion in *adventū*.

25. **interficere cōnātī** : cf. the case of Tasgetius, Chapter 25. **pūblicō cōnsiliō** : with official sanction, perhaps by decree of the senate.

26. **finēs** : boundaries, frontier, as in 139, 1.

Page 158. 4-5. **esse aliquōs**, etc. : that some had been found to take the lead in making war, infinitive clause subject of *valuit* and *attulit*.

9. **Galli cōi bellī** : in the Gallic war.

10. **adēō** : limits *mirandum*. **mirandumne sit** : indirect question, and I do not know whether this is so very strange.

11. **cum** . . . **tum** : not only . . . but also. **complūribus aliis dē causis** : e.g. the payment of tribute, the quartering of legions among them, the devastation of their country.

12. **quī** : for *et qui*.

13. **tantum sē** . . . **dēperdidisse** : depending on *dolēbant*, grieved that. **ut** : as to, result.

16-17. CHAPTER 55. **quā** . . . **mitterent** : without sending. **pecūniās** : subsidies.

20-21. **persuādēri** : no German tribe could be induced. Account for the construction with the passive of this verb. **cum**

... **dicerent**: *since (as) they said.* **expertōs** (*esse*): the verb is used absolutely, *they had made trial twice.* **Tencterōrum**: Caesar omits the Usipetes, who are generally named in conjunction with the Tencteri.

23. **lapsus**: *disappointed.*

Page 159. 1. CHAPTER 56. **ultrō**: *spontaneously.* **veniri**: impersonal passive, *men were coming.*

2. **facinoris**: see Chapters 25 and 54.

5. **Hōc**: *this*, i.e. the assembling of a council in arms.

6. **quō**: adverb, *to such a council.*

7. **armāti**: predicate adjective.

8. **omnibus**: *all sorts of, all possible.*

11. **suprā**: see Chapters 3 and 4.

14. **arcessitum**: *appealed to for aid.*

15. **hūc**: for *ad hās civitatēs.*

16. **agrōs populātūrū**: the Remi were to be punished as traitors to the Gallic cause.

21. CHAPTER 57. **cōgitābat**: adversative asyndeton, *but was planning.* **nē** . . . **dīmitteret**: *not to let slip any chance of a successful engagement.*

25. **conveniendī**: equivalent to *ad conveniendum.*

26. **sub castris**: *close to the camp.*

Page 160. 3. **augēbat**: *tried to increase.*

5. CHAPTER 58. **nocte ūnā**: *in a single night*, in order to reduce the chances of discovery by the Gauls.

6. **arcessendōs cūrāverat**: *had caused to be summoned.*

9. **ex**: *in accordance with.*

11. **māgnā cum contumeliā verbōrum**: *with loud taunts.*

13. **ubi visum est**: *when it seemed best, at their pleasure.*

16. **praecipit atque interdicīt**: *gives strict orders, lit. instructs and forbids.* The first verb looks forward to *petant*, the second to *neu quis . . . vulneret.*

17. **quod fore . . . vidēbat**: *which he saw would happen, as it did.* *quod* refers to *perterritis hostibus . . . coniectis.*

18. **ūnum** : *alone*. **quem** : indefinite pronoun, *any one*.
20. **morā reliquōrum** : *through delay (caused by pursuit) of the rest*.
22. **hominis** : for *ēius*.
23. **in ipsō flūminis vadō** : *right at the water's edge*.
28. **paulō** : with *quiētīorem*. **habuit** : *found*.



STANDARD BEARER WITH THE EAGLE (AQUILA).

SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS.

The numerals following definitions in this table refer to pages and lines of the Latin text, where the student may study the words at first hand in their relation to other words.

VERBS.

1. **bellare**, wage war, 2, 22. **contendere**, contend, fight, 1, 13. **pugnare**, fight, engage in battle, 21, 9. **proeliari**, engage in battle, fight, 65, 14. **dimicare**, fight, essay battle, 64, 5. **propugnare**, fight in defense, 52, 15, 129, 7. **decertare**, fight a decisive battle, 39, 12, 55, 8.

2. **oppugnare**, attack, assault, try to storm, a town or camp, 4, 26; a person, 39, 9, 147, 19. **impugnare**, press on to the attack, 93, 16. **adgredi**, attack openly, 11, 2. **adoriri**, attack, fall upon unexpectedly, 12, 3. **expugnare**, take by storm, 9, 16.

3. **pellere**, repulse, rout, defeat, 6, 8, 62, 26. **depellere**, drive off, dislodge, 92, 22. **propellere**, rout, drive back or off, 13, 18, 113, 10. **repellere**, drive back, repulse, 7, 8. **propulsare**: repel, keep at bay, 44, 7. **reicere**, drive back, repulse, 20, 24. **deturbare**, drive off in confusion, 150, 25. **proturbare**, drive in confusion, 62, 26. **fundere**, rout, scatter, 79, 3. **submovere**, drive away, dislodge, 21, 21.

4. **vincere**, defeat, conquer, vanquish, 21, 21. **superare**, overcome, defeat, vanquish, 15, 5. **pellere**, rout, defeat, 6, 8. **opprimere**, overwhelm, crush, 40, 12, 76, 6. **pacare**, subdue, 5, 8.

5. **interficere**, kill, the generic word, 11, 7. **necare**, put to death, murder, 47, 9, 86, 20. **concidere**, cut down in battle, cut to pieces, kill, 11, 2. **occidere**, cut down in battle, kill, 6, 8.

6. **mori**, die, 4, 10. **interire**, perish, 142, 16. **perire**, perish, 46, 19. **cadere**, fall, be slain, 13, 16.

7. **populari**, lay waste, devastate, 9, 11. **depopulari**, lay waste, devastate, 9, 18. **vastare**, lay waste, ravage, 9, 15. **vexare**, overrun, harry, ravage, 50, 4, 105, 20. **diripere**, pilage, sack, ransack, 60, 17. **praedari**, obtain plunder, 60, 23.

8. **invare**, help, assist, 22, 17, 49, 19. **adiuvare**, help, aid, further, 60, 19, 122, 13. **auxiliari**, give aid, lend assistance, 116, 8. **subvenire**, come to the aid of, support, 145, 10, 151, 19. **succurrere**, run to the aid of, 151, 18.

9. **defendere**, defend, protect, 9, 12, 55, 7. **tueri**, guard, keep safe, protect, 100, 17, 127, 15. **protegere**, shield from attack, protect, 151, 13.

10. **fugere**, flee, 46, 10, 56, 17. **effugere**, escape, escape from, avoid, 119, 12, 160, 20. **profugere**: flee, escape, 26, 13, 59, 1. **elabi**, slip away, escape, 146, 21. **evadere**, get away, escape, 89, 1.

11. **dedere**, surrender, deliver up, submit, usually persons, 59, 13, 106, 11. **tradere**, deliver up, hand over, surrender, persons and things, 23, 3, 12, 45, 14. **prodere**, abandon, betray, 113, 22.

12. **pergere**, direct one's course, proceed, 88, 15. **procedere**, go forward, advance, proceed, 31, 20, 63, 8, 67, 22. **progredi**, go forward, advance, proceed, 44, 13, 55, 3, 111, 15.

13. **contendere**, hasten, push forward, hasten to do, 8, 22, 26, 19, 7. **maturare**, make haste, hasten to do, 5, 20, 31, 15, 51, 15. **properare**, hasten, be in a hurry to do, 56, 7, 74, 4, 144, 5.

14. **proficisci**, set out, start, depart, proceed, 3, 2, 5, 20, 47, 21, 49, 8, 74, 8. **egredi**, go out, march out, go beyond, disembark, 23, 7, 39, 26, 56, 5, 110, 14. **exire**, go forth, quit, leave, go on, set out, 2, 11, 29, 1, 72, 19, 152, 17. **decedere**, withdraw, yield possession, 26, 20, 40, 19, 150, 13. **discedere**, go away, depart, disperse, leave, 13, 9, 14, 8, 76, 2, 122, 1, 134, 5. **excedere**, go forth, retire, withdraw, 67, 18, 105, 6, 108, 9.

15. **cogere**, bring together, collect, assemble, rally, troops, ships, 4, 6, 13, 13, 81, 27. **conducere**, bring together, bring together for hire, men, 4, 7, 48, 13. **conferre**, bring together, collect, gather, grain, baggage, etc., 14, 9, 20, 21, 23, 57, 20. **contrahere**, assemble, concentrate an army, 29, 16. **colligere**, gather, collect brush, 88, 14. **comportare**, bring together, bring in, convey grain, etc., 14, 9, 92, 25.

16. **ponere, positus**, *placed, situated*, of places, 75, 15, 83, 4; *place, post a guard*, 51, 20. **disponere**, *place at intervals, distribute*, 6, 21, 98, 12; *arrange in battle*, 143, 15. **statuere**, *place, set bridge piles*, 107, 16. **constituere**, *station, array, form, draw up troops*, 38, 1, 45, 3, 62, 24; *establish redoubts*, 53, 11; *station, anchor ships*, 112, 4, 10; *establish, settle people*, 11, 24. **conlocare**, *place, station, post troops*, 20, 19, 53, 12, 64, 16; *establish in quarters*, 75, 8, 13; *establish, settle people* 23, 25.

17. **deducere**, *lead away, draw off, withdraw troops*, 40, 13, 72, 21, 117, 1. **subducere**, *draw up, withdraw to higher ground*, 19, 19, 20, 15. **detrahere**, *withdraw, detach troops*, 76, 7. **removere**, *withdraw, draw away ships, troops*, 113, 7, 133, 14.

18. **abdere** (*put away*), *hide, conceal persons*, 11, 4, 33, 19, 62, 22. **celare**, *hide, conceal persons, objects*, 72, 16, 23. **occultare**, *hide, conceal persons*, 134, 25; *actions*, 23, 5. **tegere**, *cover up, conceal persons, objects*, 134, 14. **latere**, *lie hid, of persons*, 62, 22; *escape notice, of actions*, 85, 22. **delitescere**, *conceal one's self*, 118, 3.

19. **aedificare**, *build, construct ships, etc.*, 80, 24. **facere**, *make, construct, build, fortifications, bridges, ships, etc.*, 7, 5, 8, 21, 11, 16. **constituere**, *set up, raise a tower*, 57, 12, 71, 4. **instituere**, *set up, construct, build, equip, make ready a tower, ships, etc.*, 71, 6, 108, 7, 130, 4, 148, 8.

20. **augere**, *increase, make larger, augment*, 15, 23, 92, 1. **amplificare**, *increase, strengthen*, 59, 4. **crescere**, *increase, grow, become stronger*, 17, 20.

21. **accidere**, *happen, chance, occur, take place, befall*, 12, 15, 16, 8, 24, 18, 74, 10, 76, 5. **incidere**, *occur, break out*, 59, 5. **contingere**, *happen to, fall to the lot of*, 38, 8. **fieri**, *happen, come about, be the result*, 2, 20, 50, 6.

22. **adipisci**, *gain, achieve a victory*, 147, 23. **consequi**, *get, win, achieve, accomplish, prestige, rewards, etc.*, 38, 12, 48, 15, 104, 5. **impetrare**, *obtain, obtain one's request, obtain permission*, 8, 4, 10, 25, 10, 13, 90, 20. **nancisci**, *happen to find, find a boat*, 46, 15; *weather*, 111, 13, 112, 2; *troops*, 119, 12.

23. **coepisse** (*to have begun*), usually with complementary infinitive, 13, 19, and often. **incipere**, with complementary infinitive, *begin*, 49, 3, 155, 24. **instituere**, *begin, form a plan*, 124,

23; with infinitive, *begin, set about*, 81, 12, 91, 22. *oriri* (*arise*), *begin*, of a country, 2, 2; *begin, originate*, of a disturbance, 33, 10, 138, 25. *cooriri* (*arise*), *begin, break out*, of war, 79, 18; *begin, arise*, of a storm or a wind, 115, 20, 149, 16.

24. *iubere*, *command, order to do*, 4, 21, and often. *imperare*, *command, order, give orders to do*, 23, 11, 122, 12. *mandare*, *commission, direct*, 25, 6, 42, 20. *praecipere*, *direct, instruct, command*, 19, 20, 153, 28. *praescribere*, *direct, dictate*, 30, 18, 63, 14.

25. *rogare*, *ask, ask for, request, beg*, 6, 6, 9, 13, 18, 2, 39, 3. *orare*, *beg, beseech, entreat*, 18, 2, 101, 20, 106, 18. *obsecrare*, *beseech, implore, conjure*, 17, 16. *obtestari*, *implore, supplicate*, 113, 19. *implorare*, *beg for, entreat, implore*, 26, 9, 28, 5. *petere*, *seek, seek for, seek out, repair to*, 27, 11, 56, 6, 63, 8, 86, 2, 95, 5; *petition, beg, beg for, request*, 17, 12, 22, 23, 27, 21, 71, 18. *deprecari*, *deprecate, beg off, resort to entreaty*, 71, 18, 100, 6, 128, 2. *postulare*, *demand, require, claim*, 26, 14, 29, 8, 30, 1, 47, 18, 50, 16. *poscere*, *demand*, 22, 26, 27, 4, 126, 15. *flagitare*, *demand urgently, importune*, 14, 2.

26. *dicere*, *speak, say*, 15, 16, 36, 20; *say, relate, mention*, 35, 20, 82, 17, 85, 25, 93, 11; *say, utter statements, opinions*, 15, 16, 40, 23, 76, 28; *say, agree*, 37, 25, 104, 14; *agree upon, set a date*, 5, 16; *plead a case*, 4, 2; *say followed by indirect discourse*, 1, 16, 6, 4 and often. *loqui*, *talk, speak, act as spokesman*, 18, 10, 22, 23, 25, 15. *conloqui*, *converse, confer*, 17, 9, 38, 3. *inquam*, *inquit, say (said) I, says (said) he*, with direct quotations, 113, 21.

27. *scire*, *know* in the widest sense of the word, 17, 17, 18, 10. *intellegere*, *perceive, be aware of, understand, know*, 8, 17, 11, 19, 18, 7. *noscere*, *come to know*; *perfect tense, know, be acquainted with*, 81, 21. *cognoscere*, *come to know*; *perfect tense, know, be acquainted with*, 17, 4, 85, 4, 99, 21.

28. *putare*, *think, believe*, 6, 9, 12, 18, 34, 10. *arbitrari*, *be of an opinion, believe, think*, 2, 24, 4, 11, 15, 69, 19. *existimare*, *judge, consider, think*, 5, 14, 6, 11, 17, 25. *credere*, *suppose, believe*, 72, 22, 141, 1. *iudicare*, *judge, consider*, 24, 22, 34, 13, 41, 2. *cogitare*, *consider, reflect upon, reflect*, 28, 16, 143, 18; *think of doing, plan to do*, 92, 13, 159, 21. *sentire*, *feel, be of a mind*, 92, 3, 142, 20. *ducere*, *deem, consider*, 3, 7. *habere*, *hold, esteem, consider*, 13, 20, 19, 9.

20. **statuere**, *decide, decide upon, determine*, 9, 23, 17, 14, 16, 37, 15, 53, 1. **constituere**, *decide, determine, determine upon, set*, 3, 2, 4, 3, 14, 44, 7, 56, 4. **placere**, *please*; impersonal, *ei placet, he decides*, 29, 7, 77, 3. **censere**, *decree by vote*, 30, 10. **decernere**, *decree by vote*, 74, 9; *resolve, determine*, 106, 29, 125, 19.

30. **invenire**, *come upon, find*, 46, 13, 123, 11; *find, learn*, 59, 24, 123, 11. **reperire**, *find, discover*, 24, 1, 45, 24, 86, 1; *find, learn*, 15, 17, 16, 12, 35, 5, 44, 22. **comperire**, *learn, ascertain, discover*, 19, 14, 35, 22, 40, 17. **cognoscere**, *learn, learn of, find, find out*, 16, 18, 19, 2, 5, 24, 29, 25, 60, 11. **resciscere**, *find out, learn of*, 23, 9.

31. **videre**, *see, perceive*, 13, 13, 19, 21, 25, 14, 41, 17, 55, 3. **conspicere**, *catch sight of, espy, see*, 42, 22, 64, 9, 66, 3, 93, 10. **conspicari**, *catch sight of, observe, see*, 21, 17, 68, 15, 69, 1. **perspicere**, *see through or into, see clearly, see, learn, understand*, 34, 14, 56, 10, 60, 12, 27. **spectare**, *look, face, trend, look to, regard, respect*, 2, 3, 6, 41, 7, 141, 22. **animadvertere**, *notice, observe*, 27, 22, 34, 6, 45, 18. **intueri**, *look or gaze upon*, 27, 24. **sentire**, *perceive, be aware*, 15, 13, 104, 6, 140, 15.

NOUNS.

32. **bellum**, *war*, 1, 11. **pugna**, *fighting, combat, battle*, 21, 6, 35, 8, 43, 12, 69, 18. **proelium**, *engagement, battle*, 1, 13, 13, 15, 19, 20, 16, 12, 21, 19, 22. **oppugnatio**, *attack, assault, siege*, 52, 1, 83, 9, 149, 16. **congressus**, *meeting, encounter*, 84, 9. **certamen**, *struggle, contest*, 85, 18, 151, 27. **contentio**, *struggle, dispute, rivalry*, 40, 8, 134, 22, 151, 27.

33. **copiae**, *forces, troops*, 9, 10, 10, 5, 52, 20. **manus**, *band, force, forces*, 31, 16, 49, 6, 51, 6. **exercitus**, *army*, 3, 22, etc. **agmen**, *a marching army, column, line*, 13, 14, 21, 15, 62, 7, 65, 18. **acies**, *line of battle, line*, 19, 19, 20, 21, 21, 21.

34. **captivi**, *captives, prisoners*, 19, 14, 59, 25. **deditioni**, *surrendered persons, captives, prisoners*, 23, 5, 39, 17, 60, 9.

35. **hostis**, *public enemy*, 9, 19, 13, 21, 18, 12, 22, 3. **inimicus**, *an unfriendly person, personal foe, enemy, rival*, 8, 19, 138, 15, 151, 18.

36. **arma**, *arms* offensive or defensive, *force of arms*, 4, 9, 19, 18, 63, 8, 72, 7, 12, 14, 96, 11. **telum**, *missile, weapon*, 7, 8, 22, 6.

37. **murus**, *a wall*, 6, 20, 52, 3, 71, 12. **moenia**, *walls of a town, fortifications*, 52, 2, 83, 11.

38. **ager**, *field, land, country, territory*, 2, 16, 4, 25, 9, 15, 19, 23, 21. **campus**, *open country, field, plain*, 93, 19. **fines**, *boundaries, frontier, country, territory*, 1, 14, 2, 2, 24, 5, 7, 139, 1.

39. **aedificium**, *a building*, 4, 17, 52, 18. **casa**, *hut, cabin*, 149, 18. **tectum**, *roof, shelter, house*, 31, 6. **domus**, *home, a*, 18, 21, 15, 25, 24, 19. **domicilium**, *dwelling-place, abode, home*, 24, 21, 27, 10, 70, 20. **sedes**, *seat, dwelling-place, residence, abode*, 26, 23, 27, 10, 39, 5.

40. **opes**, *means, resources*, 17, 21, 59, 5. **possessiones**, *possessions, holdings*, 9, 20, 40, 1. **fortunae**, *fortunes, property*, 9, 24, 150, 11. **bona**, *goods, property*, 159, 13. **res familiaris**, *personal property, estate*, 15, 23.

41. **gens**, *race, people, nation*, 69, 15, 96, 7. **natio**, *tribe, race, people*, 46, 17, 73, 21. **populus**, *a people*, 3, 13, 25. **multitudo**, *the multitude, the common people*, 15, 1, 115, 5. **plebs**, *the common people, the populace*, 3, 16, 14, 23. **vulgus**, *the multitude, the populace*, 17, 23, 99, 5; of soldiers, 41, 19. **civitas**, *state*, 2, 10, 3, 5. **res publica**, *state, commonwealth*, 18, 4, 28, 21.

42. **consanguinei**, *blood relatives, kinsmen*, 9, 17, 28, 17, 49, 22. **necessarii**, *closely connected, kinsmen*, 9, 17. **propinqui**, *relations, kinsmen*, 16, 3, 39, 4.

43. **homo**, *a human being, person, man*, 2, 21, 23, 4, 5, 10, 12, 25, 16, 1. **vir**, *a man*, 67, 15, 73, 5. **capita** (*heads*), *souls, persons*, 24, 6, 73, 13.

44. **os**, *the face*, 145, 12. **vultus**, *expression of countenance, mien, face*, 33, 6, 18.

45. **labor**, *labor, toil, exertion*, 40, 22, 78, 6, 97, 9, 16. **opus**, *work, labor*, 63, 3, 15; *work, structure, siege works, defensive works*, 6, 21, 7, 8, 57, 12, 107, 25. **opera**, *labor, trouble*, 130, 5; *services, assistance, agency*, 138, 13, 20. See vocabulary, *opera*, and *navo*.

46. **factum**, *deed, act, event*, 85, 21, 125, 6, 126, 3. **facinus**, *deed, misdeed, wrong, crime*, 35, 22, 81, 7, 159, 2. **maleficium**, *wrong-doing, mischief, damage*, 6, 4, 11, 8, 13.

47. **clamor**, cry, shout, shouting, 56, 21, 66, 7, 91, 4. **ululatus**, howl, shout, yell, 146, 8. **fremitus**, roar, uproar, hubbub, 66, 7, 104, 27. **strepitus**, din, clatter, 56, 4, 118, 9.

48. **mors**, death, 4, 12, 13, 40, 18, 135, 12. **nex**, death by violence, 14, 15. **interitus**, destruction, death, 153, 6. **internecio**, destruction, annihilation, 12, 10, 69, 15. **perniciēs**, destruction, ruin, 17, 22, 31, 3.

49. **imperium**, command, order, 63, 18, 64, 17. **imperatum**, order, bidding, 49, 17, 74, 2. **mandatum**, injunction, charge, order, 29, 20, 38, 28, 51, 10. **dictum**, word, orders, 34, 4, 35, 19. **praeceptum**, instructions, orders, 144, 21. **praescriptum**, dictation, command, 30, 17. **postulatum**, demand, requirement, 34, 13, 39, 1, 102, 8. **iniussu**, without orders, 16, 21, 141, 6.

50. **potentia**, power, influence personal or political, 16, 1, 7. **potestas**, official power, authority, sway, 14, 15, 28, 9, 49, 15, 73, 18. **imperium**, power, rule, sovereignty, supremacy, government, 2, 13, 3, 20, 15, 4, 16, 10, 26, 10, 48, 12, 49, 23, 65, 19. **dicio**, authority, sway, 26, 10, 28, 18, 73, 18. **potentatus**, leadership, supremacy, 25, 17. **regnum**, royal or supreme power, sovereignty, 2, 9, 3, 13, 48, 14. **vis**, sing., force, violence, 5, 14, 7, 4, 9, 19, 84, 11; pl., strength, 46, 12, 71, 7, 77, 10.

51. **lex**, statute law, resolution, 1, 4, 3, 8, 49, 23. **ius**, right, rights, privilege, law, 4, 9, 23, 26, 30, 14, 49, 23. **fas**, divine law or will = right, lawful, permissible, 44, 26, 131, 10.

52. **sententia**, opinion, view, decision, determination, 40, 23, 55, 10, 76, 22, 28, 110, 5. **opinio**, opinion, impression, fame, reputation, expectation, 49, 11, 52, 25, 73, 21, 76, 24, 87, 15. **iudicium**, judgment, opinion, 36, 11, 139, 24. **existimatio**, public opinion, 17, 23, 151, 9. **arbitrium**, judgment, discretion, 30, 17.

53. **fama**, report, news, 147, 14, 156, 20. **rumor**, common talk, rumor, 48, 2, 99, 9. **auditio**, hearsay, rumor, 99, 7. **nuntius**, messenger, 22, 16, 108, 17; message, report, news, 48, 17, 157, 10.

54. **auxilium**, help, aid, assistance, support, 9, 13, 16, 15; pl., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries, 20, 19, 44, 9. **subsidium**, aid, support, relief, reserve force, 46, 8, 52, 10, 67, 20; pl., reserve forces, reserves, reinforcements, 64, 16, 114, 15.

55. **consuetudo**, habit, practice, custom, policy, 26, 26, 41, 1,

344 SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS.

44, 23, 60, 11. *mos*, manner, custom, practice, 7, 2, 57, 27; pl., customs, character, 4, 1, 59, 15, 97, 27.

56. *facultas*, means, opportunity, chance, 6, 10, 28, 7, 110, 13, 148, 5. *potestas*, power, chance, opportunity, 35, 7, 43, 9, 52, 7, 87, 12. *occasio*, opportunity, fitting occasion, 38, 3, 141, 17, 147, 5. *opportunitas*, advantage, favorable opportunity or occasion, 83, 15, 87, 19.

ADJECTIVES.

57. *imperitus*, inexperienced, ignorant, unfamiliar, 35, 10, 40, 6, 110, 20. *insciens*, not knowing, without knowledge, 16, 22, 127, 2. *inscius*, not knowing, ignorant, unaware, 98, 18. *imprudens*, unsuspecting, unprepared, 94, 22, 132, 23.

58. *notus*, known, familiar, 112, 15. *nobilis*, known, noted, of high birth or rank, noble, 2, 8, 16, 1. *egregius*, unusual, distinguished, 17, 3, 23, 24. *eximius*, extraordinary, remarkable, 52, 25. *insignis*, marked, signal, memorable, 11, 9. *prae-cipuus*, special, peculiar, chief, 158, 7.

59. *aptus*, fitted, adapted, suitable, 84, 11, 133, 110. *idoneus*, suited, adapted, favorable, 43, 24, 87, 10, 109, 19, 111, 13. *ac-commodatus*, adapted, advantageous, 84, 12. *commodus*, suitable, advantageous, expedient, 37, 15, 123, 15, 130, 5. *opportunus*, suitable, convenient, opportune, 24, 22, 53, 4, 86, 6, 118, 21.

60. *tutus*, safe, secure, free from danger, 51, 17, 69, 19, 106, 25, 140, 19, 141, 28. *incolumis*, unharmed, safe, without loss, 47, 11, 79, 11, 156, 3. *integer*, uninjured, unwearied, unimpaired, fresh, 77, 9, 14, 133, 19.

61. *magnus*, large, great, 2, 22, and often. *grandis*, large, high, 37, 24. *amplus*, of large extent, large, numerous, splendid, distinguished, 38, 7, 80, 1, 97, 23, 102, 25, 134, 22. *ingens*, vast, huge, enormous, 33, 3, 101, 13, 124, 8. *immanis*, monstrous, huge, 96, 20. *vastus*, vast, boundless, 81, 22, 83, 18.

62. *antiquus*, former, ancient, old, 16, 7, 41, 6. *vetus*, old, of long standing, former, 12, 1, 19, 38, 13, 92, 8, 122, 4. *pristinus*, former, previous, old-time, tried, 12, 2, 63, 23, 105, 1. *senex*, old, aged; as subst., old man, 24, 5.

63. *novus*, new, fresh, novel, strange, 31, 16, 44, 26, 71, 13,

117, 20; *superl., last, latest*, 106, 23. See *vocabulary*, *agmen. recens*, *new, recent, fresh, unexhausted*, 12, 19, 27, 16, 104, 18, 133, 19.

64. *repentinus*, *sudden, unexpected, hasty*, 11, 17, 76, 24, 80, 12, 136, 19. *subitus*, *sudden, off-hand*, 79, 17, 80, 12.

65. *parvus*, *small*, 15, 21. *angustus*, *narrow, small, contracted*, 2, 24, 5, 2, 116, 21. *exiguus*, *scanty, meager, small*, 109, 1, 131, 7, 154, 22.

66. *multus*, *much*, *pl. many*, 3, 12, 22, 3, and often. *com- plures*, *several, a number of, many*, 7, 5, 9, 3, 15, 20. *plerique*, *the most of, the majority of, in general*, 50, 1, 99, 10, 132, 9. *crebri*, *repeated, frequent, numerous*, 48, 2, 60, 24, 71, 2. *fre- quentes*, *in large numbers*, 102, 7, 104, 11.

67. *omnia*, *all, every, as a whole, every kind of*, 1, 1, and often. *totus*, *all, entire, the whole, the whole of*, 2, 13, 5, 22, 22, 2, 12. *cunctus*, *all, entire*, 70, 5. *universus*, *all in a body, all to- gether, all, the whole*, 73, 12, 113, 28, 114, 11.

68. *alius*, *other, another, pl., other, others, alii, . . . alii, some . . . others*, 1, 2, 6, 5, 15, 17, 16, 4, 92, 21. *alter*, *the other of two, another, a second. alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other, pl., alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other*, 2, 17, 21, 25, 26, 20, 30, 16, 75, 17, 18. *ceteri*, *all the rest, all the others, all other*, 27, 23, 49, 18, 125, 21. *reliquus*, *remaining, the remainder of*, 1, 12, 4, 17, 11, 15, 15, 5.

ADVERBS.

69. *nunc*, *now, at the present time*, 25, 22, 26, 20, 50, 21. *iam*, *now, by this time, already, at last, at length, finally*, 4, 15, 9, 9, 10, 5, 15, 2, 37, 3, 42, 16, 76, 27.

70. *tum*, *then, at that time, thereupon, then too, in addition*, 52, 5, 9, 113, 27, 118, 3, 127, 22, 154, 18. *deinde*, *then, next, there- upon, secondly, in the second place, furthermore*, 21, 1, 30, 3, 36, 12, 48, 8. *porro*, *further, furthermore*, 139, 27.

71. *ante*, *before, previously, formerly, above in quotations*, 3, 14, 14, 3, 16, 13, 57, 13, 89, 12. *antea*, *before, previously, hitherto*, 14, 22, 36, 25, 37, 4. *antiquitus*, *in former times, long ago*, 50, 1, 60, 20. *prius*, *before, earlier*, 39, 23.

72. **post**, *after, afterward, later*, 42, 3, 78, 6, 96, 11. **postea**, *afterward*, 19, 10, 14.

73. **primum**, *first*, in enumeration, *in the first place, first of all*, at first, 21, 1, 48, 6, 55, 6, 71, 4. **primo**, *at first*, 25, 20, 52, 24.

74. **demum**, *at length, at last*; with **tum**, *then at last, then and not till then*, 14, 21, 44, 15. **denique**, *at length, finally, at least*, 19, 24, 34, 27, 72, 22. **tandem**, *after a long time, in the end, at last*, 21, 12, 90, 10; with questions, *pray, anyhow*, 34, 17. **postremo**, *finally*, in argument, 141, 12, 26. **ad extremum**, *in the end, at last, finally*, 98, 6.

75. **interea**, *meanwhile, in the meantime*, 6, 16, 20, 20. **interim**, *meanwhile, in the meantime*, 14, 1, 20, 16.

76. **interdum**, *from time to time, sometimes, now and then*, 12, 27, 33, 18. **non numquam** (*not never*), *sometimes, occasionally*, 7, 7, 13, 18.

77. **continenter**, *incessantly, without stopping*, 1, 11, 22, 12, 77, 19. **semper**, *in all time, always, constantly*, 15, 25, 81, 9, 158, 7.

78. **din**, *a long time, long*, 12, 23, 14, 10, 15, 10. **longius**, *longer*, 96, 14. **amplius**, *more, longer*, 77, 19, 120, 14. **iam**, with negatives, *longer*, 63, 18, 67, 16, 73, 10, 103, 7.

79. **iterum**, *again, a second time*, 28, 1, 29, 19, 39, 11. **rursus** (*turned back*), *again, anew, once more, in turn*, 21, 18, 62, 17, 65, 10, 96, 11, 151, 24. **deinceps**, *in turn, in succession, one after another*, 94, 21, 133, 19, 148, 3.

80. **repente**, *suddenly, without warning*, 45, 20, 133, 25. **subito**, *suddenly, off-hand*, 33, 7, 35, 8, 62, 24, 72, 25. **improviso** and **de improvviso** (*abl. of improvisus, unforeseen*), *suddenly, without warning, unexpectedly*, 12, 3, 49, 11, 136, 11.

81. **protinus** (*right on*), *forthwith, at once*, 54, 12, 134, 5. **confestim**, *without delay, promptly, immediately*, 117, 23, 134, 16. **statim**, (*on the spot*), *at once, immediately*, 47, 9, 56, 8, 88, 25.

82. **fere**, *almost, about, generally, usually*, 1, 13, 10, 6, 83, 4, 88, 9, 89, 8. **circiter**, *about, not far from*, 13, 22, 21, 15, 44, 15. **paene**, *almost, nearly*, 9, 14, 17, 22, 62, 27, 67, 3. **prope**, *near, of space, nearly, almost*, 37, 1, 69, 15, 72, 13, 102, 11.

83. **plus** (*acc.*) with **possum**, *more*, 14, 24. **magis**, *in a greater degree, more, rather*, 12, 7, 20, 9, 84, 11, 84, 5. **potius**, *rather*, 41, 2, 55, 8.

INDEX OF SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS.

abdere, 18.	auxiliari, 8.	conducere, 15.
accidere, 21.	auxilium, 54.	conferre, 15.
accommodatus, 59.		confestim, 81.
acies, 33.		congressus, 32.
adgredi, 2.	bellare, 1.	conlocare, 16.
adipisci, 22.	bona, 40.	conloqui, 26.
adiuvare, 8.		consanguinei, 42.
adoriri, 2.		consequi, 22.
aedificare, 19.	cadere, 6.	conspicari, 31.
aedificium, 39.	campus, 38.	conspicere, 31.
ager, 38.	captivi, 34.	constituere, 16, 19, 29.
agmen, 33.	caput, 43.	consuetudo, 55.
alius, 68.	casa, 39.	contendere, 1, 13.
alter, 68.	celare, 18.	contentio, 32.
amplificare, 20.	censere, 29.	continenter, 77.
amplius, 78.	certamen, 32.	contingere, 21.
amplus, 61.	ceteri, 68.	contrahere, 15.
angustus, 65.	circiter, 82.	cooriri, 23.
animadvertere, 31.	civitas, 41.	copiae, 33.
ante, 71.	clamor, 47.	creber, 66.
antea, 71.	coepisse, 23.	credere, 28.
antiquitas, 71.	cogere, 15.	crescere, 20.
antiquus, 62.	cogitare, 28.	cunctus, 67.
aptus, 59.	cognoscere, 27, 30.	
arbitrari, 28.	colligere, 15.	
arbitrium, 52.	commodus, 59.	decedere, 14.
arma, 36.	comperire, 30.	decernere, 29.
auditio, 53.	complures, 66.	decertare, 1.
augere, 20.	comportare, 15.	dedere, 11.
	concidere, 5.	dediticii, 34.

deducere, 17.
 defendere, 9.
 deinceps, 79.
 deinde, 70.
 delitescere, 18.
 demum, 74.
 denique, 74.
 depellere, 3.
 depopulari, 7.
 deprecari, 25.
 detrahere, 17.
 deturbare, 3.
 dicere, 26.
 dicio, 50.
 dictum, 49.
 dimicare, 1.
 diripere, 7.
 discedere, 14.
 disponere, 16.
 diu, 78.
 domicilium, 39.
 domus, 39.
 ducere, 28.

effugere, 10.
 egredi, 14.
 egregius, 58.
 elabi, 10.
 evadere, 10.
 excedere, 14.
 exercitus, 33.
 exiguus, 65.
 eximius, 58.
 exire, 14.
 existimare, 28.
 existimatio, 52.
 expugnare, 2.
 extremum, 74.

facere, 19.
 facinus, 46.
 factum, 46.
 facultas, 56.
 fama, 53.
 fas, 51.
 fere, 82.
 fieri, 21.
 fines, 38.
 flagitare, 25.
 fortunae, 40.
 fremitus, 47.
 frequens, 66.
 fugere, 10.
 fundere, 3.

gens, 41.
 grandis, 61.

habere, 28.
 homo, 43.
 hostis, 35.

iam, 69, 78.
 idoneus, 59.
 immanis, 61.
 imperare, 24.
 imperatum, 49.
 imperitus, 57.
 imperium, 49, 50.
 impetrare, 22.
 implorare, 25.
 improvise, 80.
 imprudens, 57.
 impugnare, 2.
 incidere, 21.
 incipere, 23.
 incolumis, 60.

ingens, 61.
 inimicus, 35.
 iniussu, 49.
 inquam, 26.
 insciens, 57.
 insignis, 58.
 instituere, 19, 23.
 integer, 60.
 intellegere, 27.
 interdum, 76.
 interea, 75.
 interficere, 5.
 interim, 75.
 interire, 6.
 interitus, 48.
 internecio, 48.
 intueri, 31.
 invenire, 30.
 iterum, 79.
 iubere, 24.
 iudicare, 28.
 iudicium, 52.
 ius, 51.
 iuvare, 8.

labor, 78.
 latere, 18.
 lex, 51.
 longius, 78.
 loqui, 26.

magis, 83.
 magnus, 61.
 maleficium, 46.
 mandare, 24.
 mandatum, 49.
 manus, 33.
 maturare, 13.

moenia, 37.
mori, 6.
mors, 48.
mos, 55.
multitudo, 41.
multus, 66.
murus, 37.

nancisci, 22.
natio, 41.
necaré, 5.
necessarii, 42.
nex, 48.
nobilis, 58.
noscere, 27.
notus, 58.
novus, 63.
numquam, 76.
nunc, 69.
nuntius, 53.

obsecrare, 25.
obtestari, 25.
occasio, 56.
occidere, 5.
occultare, 18.
omnis, 67.
opera, 45.
opes, 40.
opinio, 52.
opportunitas, 56.
opportunus, 59.
opprimere, 4.
oppugnare, 2.
oppugnatio, 32.
opus, 45.
orare, 25.

oriri, 23.
os, 44.
pacare, 4.
paene, 82.
parvus, 65.
pellere, 3, 4.
pergere, 12.
perire, 6.
perniciēs, 48.
perspicere, 31.
petere, 25.
placere, 29.
plebs, 41.
plerique, 66.
plus, 83.
ponere, 16.
populari, 7.
populus, 41.
porro, 70.
poscere, 25.
possessio, 40.
post, 72.
postea, 72.
postremo, 74.
postulare, 25.
postulatum, 49.
potentatus, 50.
potentia, 50.
potestas, 50, 56.
potius, 83.
praeceptum, 49.
praecipere, 24.
praecipuus, 58.
praedari, 7.
praescribere, 24.
praescriptum, 49.
primo, 73.

primum, 73.
pristinus, 62.
prius, 71.
procedere, 12.
prodere, 11.
proeliari, 1.
proelium, 32.
proficisci, 14.
profugere, 10.
progredi, 12.
prope, 82.
propellere, 3.
properare, 13.
propinqui, 42.
propugnare, 1.
propulsare, 3.
protinus, 81.
proturbare, 3.
pugna, 32.
pugnare, 1.
putare, 28.

recens, 63.
regnum, 50.
reicere, 3.
reliquus, 68.
remove, 17.
repellere, 3.
repente, 80.
repentinus, 64.
reperire, 30.
res familiaris, 40.
res publica, 41.
resciscere, 30.
rogare, 25.
rumor, 53.
rursus, 79.

350 INDEX OF SYNONYMS AND CONTRASTED WORDS.

scire, 27.
 sedes, 39.
 semper, 77.
 senex, 62.
 sententia, 52.
 sentire, 28, 31.
 spectare, 31.
 statim, 81.
 statuere, 16, 29.
 strepitus, 47.
 subducere, 17.
 subito, 80.
 subitus, 64.
 submovere, 3.
 subsidium, 54.
 subvenire, 8.

succurrere, 8.
 superare, 4.

tandem, 74.
 tectum, 39.
 tegere, 18.
 telum, 36.
 totus, 67.
 tradere, 11.
 tueri, 9.
 tum, 70.
 tutus, 60.

ululatus, 47.
 universus, 67.

vastare, 7.
 vastus, 61.
 vetus, 62.
 vexare, 7.
 videre, 31.
 vincere, 4.
 vir, 43.
 vis, 50.
 vulgus, 41.
 vultus, 44.

GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

[The words in heavy type are primitives, indented words derivatives, the relative degree of indentation showing their relation to each other and to the primitive in each case: e.g. the primitive **arceo** gives the derivative **exerceo**, from which are derived **exercitus** and **exercito**, and from the latter **exercitatus** and **exercitatio**. Words inclosed in parentheses () are not found in the text of this edition.]

<p>(acer, <i>sharp</i>.) acriter, <i>sharply</i>. acervus, <i>pile, heap</i>. coacervo, <i>heap up</i>. acies, <i>sharp edge; line of battle</i>. acutus, <i>sharp, pointed</i>. praeacutus, <i>sharpened at the end</i>. aequus, <i>even; fair</i>. aequaliter, <i>evenly</i>. aequo, <i>equalize</i>. adaequo, <i>make equal, equal</i>. aequitas, <i>fairness</i>. aequinotium, <i>equinox</i>. iniquus, <i>unfair, unfavorable</i>. iniquitas, <i>inequality, unfavorableness</i>. ago, <i>drive</i>. adigo, <i>drive down; move forward; hurl</i>. cogo, <i>bring together; compel</i>. cogito, <i>ponder</i>. exigo, <i>drive out; finish</i>. exiguus, <i>small, scanty</i>. exiguitas, <i>smallness, scantiness</i>.</p>	<p>exagito, <i>harass</i>. perago, <i>finish, end</i>. redigo, <i>reduce, render</i>. actuarius, <i>swift</i>. agmen, <i>column, line</i>. ager, <i>field</i>. alius, <i>another</i>. alias, <i>at another time</i>. aliter, <i>otherwise</i>. alienus, <i>another's</i>. alo, <i>nourish, support</i>. altus, <i>high, deep</i>. altitudo, <i>height, depth</i>. adulescens, <i>young</i>. amor, <i>love</i>. amicus, <i>friend</i>. amicitia, <i>friendship</i>. inimicus, <i>unfriendly; a foe</i>. animus, <i>soul, spirit</i>. animadverto, <i>notice</i>. exanimo, <i>make out of breath, exhaust</i>. arx, <i>citadel</i>. (arceo, inclose.) coerceo, <i>restrain</i>. exerceo, <i>train, drill</i>.</p>
---	--

exercitus, army.
 (exercito, *agitate*.)
exercitatus, well-trained,
 experienced.
exercitatio, training.
arma, implements, arms.
armo, arm, equip.
armamenta, equipment,
 tackle.
armatura, armor.
inermis, unarmed.
audeo, dare.
 (audax, bold, daring.)
audacter, boldly, coura-
 geously.
audacia, boldness, daring.
augeo, increase, strengthen.
auctor, supporter, instigator.
auctoritas, authority.
auxilium, help, support.
bellum, war.
bellicosus, warlike.
bello, make war.
rebellio, renewal of war, re-
 volt.
cado, fall.
accido, fall; happen.
concido, fall; be slain.
incido, fall in with; occur.
occido, fall; perish.
occasio, opportunity.
occasus, setting.
casus (falling), chance, oc-
 currence; misfortune.
cadaver, corpse.
capio, take.
accipio, take, receive.
excipio, receive, meet.
incipio, begin.
intercipio, intercept.
occupo, seize; occupy.

occupatio, occupation, em-
 ployment.
praecipio, take beforehand;
 instruct, order.
recipio, take back; receive.
suscipio, undertake.
captivus, captive.
deinceps, in succession.
princeps, first; leader, chief.
principatus, leadership.
caput, head.
capillus, hair.
anceps, double, twofold.
praeceps, headlong, steep.
praecipito, hurl headlong.
causa, cause; case.
accuso, accuse, reproach.
excuso, excuse.
incuso, blame, upbraid.
recuso, refuse.
(cerno, separate; perceive.)
certus, certain, definite.
incertus, uncertain.
certamen, struggle, contest.
decerto, fight a decisive bat-
 tle.
decerno, decree; decide.
secreto, separately, in secret.
colo, till.
cultura, cultivation.
cultus, mode of life, civiliza-
 tion.
incolo, dwell; inhabit.
cupio, desire, wish.
cupidus, desirous.
cupide, eagerly.
cupiditas, desire, eager-
 ness.
(curro, run.)
accurro, run to, hasten up.
concurro, run together, hurry.

- concursum**, *running together; onset.*
concurso, *rush to and fro.*
decurro, *run down.*
occurro, *run to meet, meet.*
procurro, *run forward.*
currus, *chariot.*
cursus, *running, speed; course.*
excursio, *sally.*
incursio, *raid.*
incursus, *onward rush; attack.*
dico, dicare, *dedicate, set apart.*
dicio, *dominion, sway.*
condicio, *agreement, terms; condition.*
praedico, *proclaim; boast.*
dico, dicere, *say.*
dictum, *word; command.*
indico, *proclaim, appoint, call.*
indicium, *information.*
interdico, *forbid.*
dies, *day.*
diurnus, *by day.*
biduum, *a period of two days.*
cotidie, *daily.*
cotidianus, *daily; usual.*
interdiu, *in the daytime.*
pridie, *on the day before.*
postridie, *on the next day.*
do, *give.*
abdo, *put away; hide.*
circumdo, *put around, surround.*
dedo, *deliver up, surrender.*
deditio, *a surrender.*
dediticius, *surrendered; a captive, prisoner.*
edo, *put forth; visit upon.*
editus, *raised, elevated.*
perdo, *ruin.*
perditus, *ruined, desperate.*
deperdo, *lose.*
prodo, *hand down; betray.*
reddo, *give back.*
trado, *give over, surrender; transmit.*
dono, *present, grant.*
condono, *give up; pardon.*
eo, *go.*
iter, *journey.*
adeo, *go to, approach, visit.*
aditus, *approach; access.*
circumeo, *go around.*
circuitus, *circuit; detour.*
exeo, *go out.*
exitus, *outcome, result.*
ineo, *enter upon; begin; form.*
initium, *beginning.*
intereo, *perish.*
interitus, *destruction.*
introeo, *go in, enter.*
introitus, *entrance.*
obeo, *go to meet; attend to.*
obitus, *destruction.*
pereo, *perish.*
(praetereo), *pass by.*
praeteritus, *past.*
praetor (= *prae-itor*), *praetor.*
praetorius, *praetorian.*
prodeo, *go forth, advance.*
redeo, *go back, return.*
reditio, *returning, return.*
reditus, *return.*
(seditio) (*a going apart*), *sedition.*
seditiosus, *seditionous.*
subeo, *come up, advance; enter; undergo.*
subitus, *sudden.*
subito, *suddenly.*

- transeo, cross, pass through.*
transitus, crossing, passage.
facio, make, do.
adfacio, treat; affect.
conficio, complete, accomplish; furnish; weaken.
deficio, fail, desert; be insufficient.
defectio, defection, revolt.
efficio, complete; render; bring about.
interficio, kill.
perficio, accomplish; bring about.
prae-ficio, put in command.
proficio, effect; derive advantage.
proficiscor, set out, depart.
profectio, departure.
reficio, rebuild; refresh.
faber, workman.
facilis, easy.
facile, easily.
facultas, opportunity; supply, force.
difficilis, difficult.
difficultas, difficulty.
perfacilis, very easy.
facinus, deed, misdeed.
factum, deed, event.
factio, faction, party.
officium, service, duty.
firmus, strong.
infirmus, weak.
infirmitas, weakness.
firmitudo, strength, stability.
confirmo, make firm; establish; reassure; assert.
fortis, strong, brave.
fortitudo, bravery.
fluo, flow.
- flumen, river.*
fluctus, flood, wave, sea.
(confluo, flow together.)
confluens, confluence.
influo, flow into.
fugio, flee.
effugio, flee, escape.
perfugio, flee for refuge.
perfuga, deserter.
perfugium, place of refuge.
profugio, flee, escape.
fuga, flight.
fugitivus, fleeing.
(gigno, beget.)
gener, son-in-law.
genus, race, birth; kind.
generatim, by tribes.
gens, race, people.
ingens (not natural), vast, huge.
nascor (= gnascor), be born.
(gradior, step.)
adgredior, approach; attack.
congredior, meet, encounter.
congressus, meeting, encounter.
egredior, go out, set out; disembark.
egressus, landing.
ingredior, advance into, enter.
progredior, proceed, advance.
transgredior, cross.
gratus, pleasing, welcome.
gratia, favor, good-will, influence.
gratulus, congratulate.
gratulatio, rejoicing; congratulation.
habeo, have.
adhibeo, hold toward; summon, admit.
debeo, owe; ought.

praebeo, furnish.
 prohibeo, prohibit.
 hiems, winter.
 hiemo, spend the winter.
 hiberna, winter quarters, winter camp.
 homo, man, person.
 humanus, cultivated, civilized.
 humanitas, cultivation, refinement.
 nemo, nobody.
 iungo, join.
 coniungo, join, unite.
 cunctus, all, entire.
 iugum, yoke; ridge.
 iumentum, beast of burden.
 iunctura, a joining, joint.
 iuxta, near by.
 ius, right.
 ius iurandum, oath.
 iustus, just.
 iustitia, justice.
 iniuria, injury, wrong.
 iudicium, judgment; trial.
 iudico, judge, consider; decide.
 iuro, swear, take oath.
 coniuro, conspire, league together.
 coniuratio, league, conspiracy.
 (legō, legere, gather, collect.)
 colligo, gather, collect.
 deligo, choose, select.
 (diligō, single out.)
 (diligens, careful.)
 diligenter, carefully.
 indiligenter, carelessly.
 diligentia, care, watchfulness.
 intellego, understand, know.
 neglego, disregard, neglect.

perlego, read through.
 legio, legion.
 legionarius, legionary.
 (lēgō, lēgāre, depute.)
 legatus, envoy; lieutenant.
 legatio, mission; embassy.
 relego, send away; exile.
 liber, free.
 liberi, children.
 libere, freely, frankly.
 (liberalis, befitting a freeman.)
 liberalitas, liberality, generosity.
 liberaliter, courteously, graciously.
 libero, set free, relieve.
 libertas, freedom.
 magnus, large, great.
 magnopere, greatly.
 magnitudo, greatness.
 maiores, ancestors.
 magis, more, rather.
 (magister, master.)
 magistratus, magistracy, magistrate.
 malus, mast.
 manus, the hand, a band, force.
 manipulus (handful), manipule.
 mando, intrust; direct, give orders.
 mandatum, command, order.
 commendo, intrust.
 mansuetudo, gentleness.
 mens, mind.
 amentia, folly.
 dementia, madness.
 memoria, memory.
 commemoro, mention, relate.
 memini, remember.
 reminiscor, recall, remember.

moneo, warn, urge.
demonstro, point out, show.
modus, measure; kind; manner.
 modo, only.
 moderor, control.
 admodum, fully, very.
 commodus, suitable.
 commodum, advantage.
 (in)commodus, disadvantageous.
 incommode, disadvantageously.
 incommodum, disadvantage, disaster.
 accommodo, fit, adapt; put on.
moenia, walls of a town.
munio, fortify.
 circummunio, wall around, invest.
 communio, fortify; construct.
 munitio, fortification.
 munimentum, fortification.
moveo, move.
 commoveo, move deeply, arouse.
 permoveo, move, influence; dismay.
 removeo, remove, withdraw.
 remotus, remote.
 submoveo, drive back, dislodge.
 (muto, change.)
 commuto, change.
 commutatio, change.
 mobilis, unstable.
 motus, movement; disturbance.
(no, swim.)
 trano, swim across.
 navis, ship.
 navalis, naval.
 navicula, skiff.

navigo, sail, navigate.
navigatio, sailing, voyage.
navigium, vessel, ship.
nauta, sailor.
nauticus, nautical.
nascor, be born.
enascor, grow out.
prognatus, descended.
natio, tribe, race, people.
natura, nature.
natus, birth, age.
neco, kill, put to death.
nex, death by violence.
internecio, destruction.
perniciēs, ruin.
nosco, come to know.
notus, known.
 ignotus, unknown.
cognosco, come to know, learn.
 incognitus, unknown.
ignosco, pardon.
ignoro, not know, overlook.
nobilis, noted; nobly born, noble.
 nobilitas, high birth, nobility.
 ignobilis, unknown, obscure.
nomen, name.
 nomino, name, mention.
 nominatim, by name.
novus, new.
 novitas, novelty.
 renovo, renew.
nuper, recently.
nunc, now.
nuntius, messenger, message.
 nuntio, announce.
 denuntio, declare, threaten.
 enuntio, disclose.
 pronuntio, proclaim.
 renuntio, bring back word, report.

opes, resources.

copia, abundance, supply.

copiosus, well supplied.

inopia, want, scarcity.

opera, toil, trouble; services.

opus, work.

os, mouth.

oro, beg.

orator, speaker; envoy.

oratio, speech.

pars, part.

partim, partly.

partior, divide.

bipertito, in two divisions.

tripertito, in three divisions.

pauci, few.

perpauci, very few.

paucitas, small numbers.

paulus, small.

paulum, a little.

paulo, (by) a little.

paululum, a very little.

paulisper, for a short time.

paulatim, gradually.

pes, foot.

pedalis, a foot in measure.

bipedalis, two feet in measure.

pedes, foot-soldier.

pedester, on foot, by land.

peditatus, infantry.

(**expedio**, extricate, release.)

expeditus, unincumbered.

expeditio, expedition.

impedio, hamper, impede.

impeditus, incumbered; difficult.

impedimentum, a hindrance; baggage.

populus, people.

publicus, of the people.

publice, for the people or state.

publico, confiscate.

potius, rather.

possum, be able.

potens, powerful.

potentia, power, influence.

potentatus, power, dominion.

potestas, power, authority.

potior, become master of, gain.

prope, near.

propior, nearer.

propinquus, near; related.

propinquitās, nearness; relationship.

adpropinquo, approach.

propter, near; on account of.

propterea, for the reason, because.

rego, guide, rule, control.

directus, laid straight.

erectus, upright.

pergo, proceed.

porrigo, stretch out, extend.

(**surgo**, rise.)

consurgo, rise together.

regio, direction; region, district.

rex, king.

regnum, royal power; realm.

regno, rule, reign.

(**sedeo**, sit.)

consido, settle; halt, take position.

obsideo, besiege, blockade.

obsidio, siege; oppression.

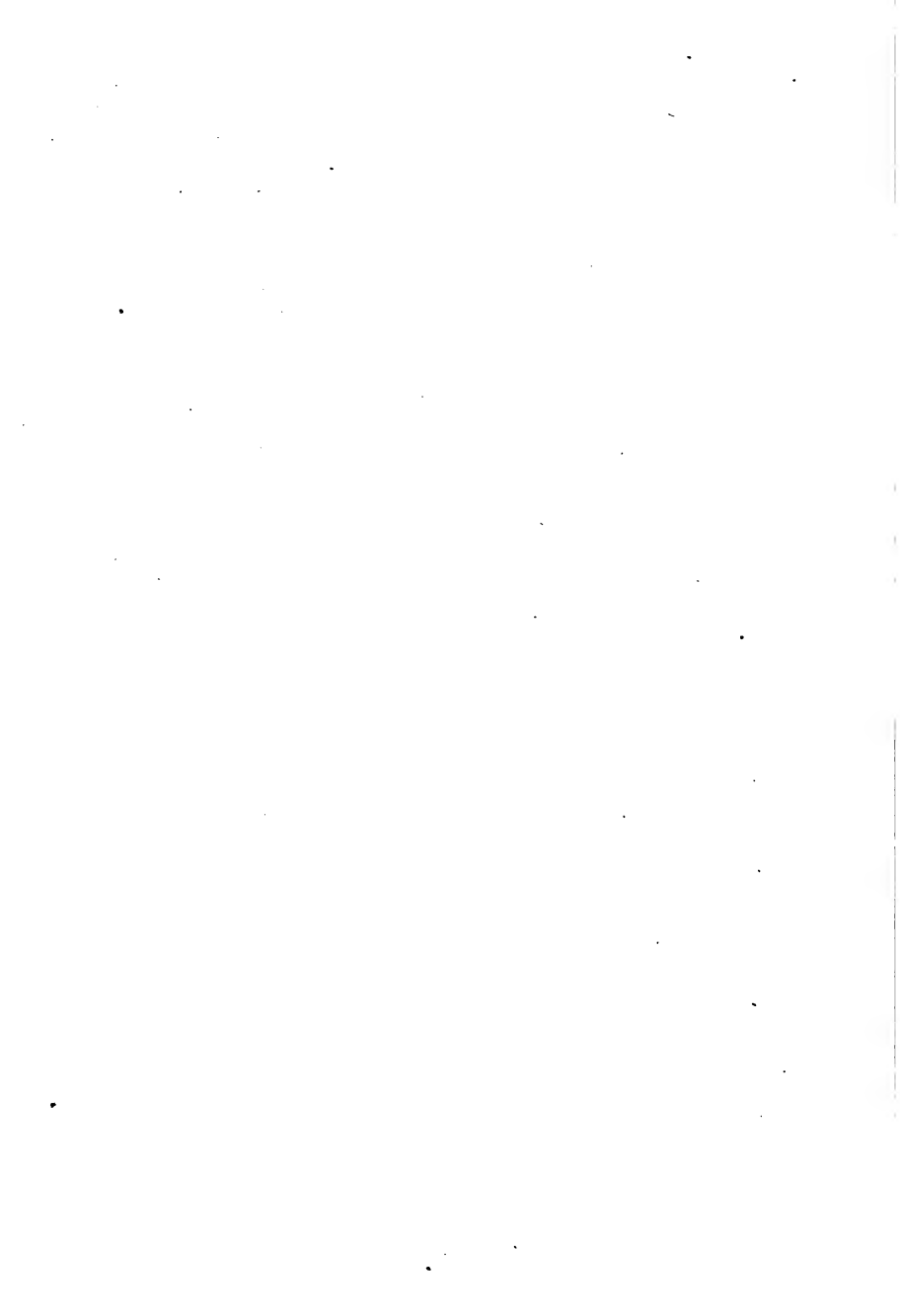
possideo, possess, hold.

possido, take possession of.

possessio, possession; pl., possessions.

- (*subsidio*, settle down; lie in wait.)
subsidium, aid; reinforcement.
supersedeo, refrain.
sedes, seat; abode.
insidiae, ambush; stratagem.
obses, hostage.
praesidium, protection; guard, garrison.
sensio, perceive, think.
consentio, agree.
consensus, agreement.
dissentio, disagree.
dissensio, dissension.
sententia, opinion.
sequor, follow.
consequor, follow up, overtake.
consector, pursue, hunt down.
exsequor, follow up; enforce.
insequor, pursue.
persequor, pursue, harass.
prosequor, pursue; address.
subsequor, follow after, keep up with.
secundus, second; favorable, successful.
secundum, next to, along; in accordance with.
socius, associate, ally.
signum, signal; standard.
designo, point out, mean.
insignis, memorable.
insigne, signal; ornament.
signifer, standard-bearer.
significo, indicate, make known.
significatio, sign, indication.
simul, at the same time.
simultas, dissension, feud.
- similis*, like.
absimilis, unlike.
consimilis, very like.
simulo, pretend.
dissimulo, hide, pretend ignorance of.
simulatio, pretense, show.
 (-*spicio*, spy, see.)
species, appearance, sight.
specto, look; face; consider.
expecto, wait for, wait.
speculator, spy.
speculator, scout, spy.
conspicio, catch sight of.
conspiculus, sight.
conspicor, catch sight of.
despicio, look down upon.
despectus, view, prospect.
perspicio, see through, perceive.
prospicio, provide for.
prospectus, view, outlook.
respicio, look back.
 (-*suspicio*, suspect.)
suspicio, suspicion.
suspitor, suspect, surmise.
sto, stand.
consto, stand firm, be established.
 (-*constans*, firm, steadfast.)
constanter, resolutely; uniformly.
constantia, steadfastness.
insto, be at hand; press on.
praesto, excel; exhibit.
statio, post; outpost, guard.
statim, at once.
statura, height, stature.
 (-*stabilis*, firm, steadfast.)
instabilis, unstable, changeable.

<i>stabilitas, steadiness, stability.</i>	<i>praesum, be in command.</i>
<i>statuo, set up; decide.</i>	<i>praesens, present.</i>
<i>constituo, establish; determine.</i>	<i>praesentia, the present; presence.</i>
<i>destituo, abandon.</i>	<i>repraesento, do at once.</i>
<i>instituo, set up; begin.</i>	<i>subsum, be at hand.</i>
<i>institutum, practice, custom.</i>	<i>supersum, be left, survive.</i>
<i>restituo, restore.</i>	<i>video, see.</i>
<i>sum, be.</i>	<i>invideo, envy.</i>
<i>absum, be absent, be distant.</i>	<i>provideo, make provision for.</i>
<i>adsum, be at hand, be present.</i>	<i>improviso, unexpectedly.</i>
<i>desum, be lacking, fail.</i>	<i>(prudens, foreseeing.)</i>
<i>intersum, be between; take part in.</i>	<i>prudentia, foresight.</i>
	<i>imprudens, unsuspecting.</i>
	<i>imprudentia, indiscretion.</i>



VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS.

abbr. , abbreviation.	intr. , intransitive.
abl. , ablative.	Intro. , general Introduction.
acc. , accusative.	lit. , literally.
adj. , adjective.	m. , masculine.
adv. , adverb.	n. , neuter.
cf. , <i>confer</i> , compare.	nom. , nominative.
comp. , comparative.	num. , numeral.
conj. , conjunction.	p.p. , perfect participle.
correl. , correlative.	pass. , passive.
dat. , dative.	pers. , personal.
def. , defective.	pl. , plural.
dem. , demonstrative.	possess. , possessive.
dep. , deponent.	pr. p. , present participle.
dim. , diminutive.	prep. , preposition.
distr. , distributive.	pron. , pronoun.
e.g. , <i>exempli gratia</i> , for example.	pronom. , pronominal.
f. , feminine.	rel. , relative.
freq. , frequentative.	sc. , <i>scilicet</i> , supply.
gen. , genitive.	semi-dep. , semi-deponent.
i.e. , <i>id est</i> , that is.	sing. , singular.
impers. , impersonal.	subjv. , subjunctive.
indecl. , indeclinable.	subst. , substantive.
indef. , indefinite.	superl. , superlative.
indic. , indicative.	tr. , transitive.
intens. , intensive.	voc. , vocative.
interrog. , interrogative.	

VOCABULARY.

In the case of compounds the component parts are simply spaced — e.g., *ab-dūcō* — when the composition is obvious. In other cases the etymology is given in square brackets [], the meaning of such parts being added as are not found elsewhere in the Vocabulary.

The English pronunciation of each proper name is given in parenthesis, with the following vowel values. Other phonetic devices are self-explanatory. Unstressed vowels vary somewhat, and are usually left unmarked, as the student will have no difficulty in adjusting their pronunciation to the accompanying sounds.

ā as in late. ă as in mat. ȃ as in are. a as in amount, dialogue, botany.

ē as in he. ē as in let. ē as in her. e as in element, beneficent, added.

ī as in line. ĭ as in bit. i as in delicate, quantity.

ō as in note. ō as in not. ō as in or. o as in obey, eloquent.

ū as in fume. ŭ as in but. u (oo) as in rule. u as in instrument, circus.

ae (ē or ē), as in Caesar and Aetna.

au as in author.

eu (ū) as in feud.

Primary accents are indicated ', secondary (whenever necessary) ''.

The location of towns and tribes is indicated by reference to the Map of Gaul; e.g., Allobroges, G 4.

A., abbr. for the praenomen Aulus (au'-lus).

a. d., abbr. for ante diem. See note on I. 6.

ā before consonants only, ab before vowels and consonants, abs before tē only: Prep. with abl., from, away from, from the vicinity of. — Time, from, after. — Agency, by, at the hands of. — Position, on, in, at.

Absolutely, away, off, at a dis-

tance of, e.g., ab mīlibus passuum duōbus castra pōnere, to pitch camp two miles away.

abditus, -a, -um [p.p. of abdō], adj., concealed, removed.

ab-dō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum [dō, put], tr., hide, conceal.

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr., lead away, carry off.

abiciō, -icere, -lēci, -lectum [ab + iaciō], tr., throw away, throw down; hurl.

ablēs, -etis, f., *fir-tree.*

abscidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum [**abs + caedō**], *tr., cut away.*

absēns [*pr. p. of absum*], *adj., absent.*

ab-simills, -e, adj., *unlike.*

ab-sistō, -ere, -stītī, — [**sistō**, *set, stand*], *intr., withdraw from, leave.*

abstineō, -ēre, -tīnuī, -ten-tum [**abs + teneō**], *tr. and intr., keep back; abstain from, refrain from.*

abs-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, tr., *drag away, take away, carry off.*

ab-sum, -esse, āfui, āfu-tūrus, intr., *be absent, away, distant; be lacking, be wanting; be free from, be out of.*

ac, see atque.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus [**ad + cēdō**], *intr., approach, come to, near, draw near; be added, be in addition; arise in, be inspired in.*

acceptus, -a, -um [*p.p. of accipiō*], *adj., acceptable, pleasing, popular.*

accidō, -ere, -cidī, — [**ad + cadō**], *intr., fall, strike; happen, occur; happen to, befall.*

accipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-tum [**ad + capiō**], *tr., take, accept, receive; inherit; meet with, suffer; learn, hear.*

acclivis, -e [**ad + clivus, a slope**], *adj., rising, ascending, sloping.*

acclivitās, -ātis [**acclivis**], *f., ascent, slope.*

accommodātus, -a, -um [*p.p. of accommodō*], *adj., fitted, adapted, suitable.*

accommodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**ad + commodō, furnish**], *tr., fit, adapt; put on.*

accurrō, -ere, -curri or -currī, -cursum [**ad + currō, run**], *intr., run to, hasten up to.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**ad + causa**], *tr., accuse, reproach.*

acervus, -ī, m., *pile, heap.*

aciēs, -ēī, f. (*sharpness, sharp edge*), *glare, flash; line of battle, line.*

ācriter [**ācer, sharp**], *adv., sharply, fiercely, eagerly, desperately.*

āctūārius, -a, -um [**agō**], *adj., easily moved, swift. See nāvis.*

acūtus, -a, -um [*p.p. of acuō, sharpen*], *adj., sharpened, sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. with acc., to, toward, in the direction of, to the vicinity of. — Place where, among, at, on, near, in the vicinity of. — Time, till, until, up to, about, by. — Purpose and other ideas, to, for; in respect to; against, to meet; in response to; in accordance with, according to, in proportion to. Adv., with numbers or expressions of measure, = circiter, about.

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *make equal to, build to a level with; equal, keep up with.*

ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**amō, love**], *tr., fall in love with, desire eagerly, covet.*

ad-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum [**dō, put**], tr., *attach, add, join*; say also, tell also.

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr., *lead to, bring to, bring, conduct*; draw to, draw tight; move, induce, influence, prevail upon.

1. **ad-eō, adv.**, to this, to this point; to such an extent or degree, in such a way, so, so very.

2. **ad-eō, -īre, -īi or -īvi, -itum**, tr. and intr., *go to, come to, come, approach, draw near, reach*; visit, meet; face, attack.

ad-equitō, -āre, -āvi, — [**equitō, ride**], intr., *ride up to, gallop up*.

ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, tr., *bring to, carry, deliver*; allege; produce, cause, afford.

ad-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum [**ad + faciō**], tr., *treat, use*; affect, fill with; inflict, visit with, subject to.

ad-fixō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum [**fixō, fix**], tr., *fasten to, attach to*.

ad-finitās, -ātis [**adfinis, related**], f., *relationship* (by marriage).

ad-flic-tō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**freq. of ad-figō**], tr., *dash to pieces, shatter, destroy*.

ad-fligō, -ere, -flixi, -flic-tum [**figō, strike**], tr., *dash, throw down, push over; damage, shatter*.

ad-gredior, -gredi, -gressus [**ad + gradior, step**], dep., tr.

and intr., *approach*; attack, assault, fall upon.

ad-gregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [**gregō, collect in a herd**], tr., *attach, join*.

ad-haerēscō, -ere, -haesi, -haesūrus [**haerēscō, stick**], intr., *stick to, adhere to*.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [**ad + habeō**], tr., *hold toward*; have in company with; summon, admit, employ.

ad-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., tr., *urge on, cheer on, encourage*.

ad-hūc, adv., until now, hitherto, as yet.

Adiatunnus, -i, m. (ā'-di-a-tūn'-us), commander-in-chief of the Sotiates, III. 22.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [**ad + iaciō**], tr., *throw to*; add to; throw up, construct.

adigō, -ere, -ēgi, -actum [**ad + agō**], tr., *drive down* (piles); move forward (a tower); hurl, cast, drive home (weapons).

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum [**ad + emō**], tr., *take away, remove*.

adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum [**ad + apiscor, reach**], dep., tr., *overtake*; win, achieve.

aditus, -ūs [2 **adeō**], m., *approach*; access, way or place of approach, entrance; right of approach, admittance; right, ground.

ad-lungō, -ere, -lūnxī, -lūnc-tum, tr., *join, attach*; annex; ally with, associate with, win over.

ad-iūtor, -ōris [adiuvō], m., helper, supporter, intercessor.

ad-luvō, -āre, -lūvī, -lūtum, tr., help, aid, further.

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ministrō, attend], tr., manage, control, conduct, execute, perform, carry out; issue, deliver.

ad-mīror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., tr. and intr., regard with wonder, be surprised or astonished at; wonder that, be surprised that.

ad-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr., let go; permit, allow; commit, bring upon, incur; equō admissō, with horse at full speed; in sē facinus admittēre, commit, or be guilty of, a misdeed.

ad-modum [modum, acc. of modus], adv. (to the measure), fully, quite, very, highly.

ad-moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, tr., admonish, warn, advise.

ad-orior, -īri, -ortus sum, dep., tr., assail, attack, fall upon.

ad-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr., drive to, conduct to; bring up, land, put in (of ships).

ad-petō, -ere, -petivī or -petiī, -petitum, tr. and intr., strive for, seek; approach.

ad-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., carry to, bring.

ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [propinquō, draw near], intr., approach, draw near.

ad-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -sci-

tum [sciscō, accept], tr., receive, admit, join or associate with.

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum [adsuēscō, accustom + faciō], tr., accustom, train, inure.

ad-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, intr., be near, be at hand, be present.

adulēscēns, -entis [pr. p. of adolēscō, grow up], adj., young. Subst., m. and f., a young man or woman.

adulēscēntia, -ae [adulēscēns], f., youth, youthfulness.

adulēscēntulus, -ī [dim. of adulēscēns], m., a very young man, a mere boy.

adventus, -ūs [adveniō, arrive], m., coming, approach, arrival.

1. **ad-versus**, -a, -um [p.p. of advertō, turn toward], adj., fronting, facing, in front; opposite, face to face; adverse, unfavorable, unsuccessful; **adversō** colle, up the hill; **adversā** nocte, in the face of night; in **adversum** ōs, full in the face.

2. **ad-versus** [advertō], prep. with acc., against.

ad-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum [vertō, turn], tr., turn to. See animus.

ad-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [volō, fly], intr., hasten towards, rush upon.

aedificium, -ī [aedificō], n., a building.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [aedēs, building, cf. faciō], tr., build, construct.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick*.

aegrē [aeger], adv., *painfully; with difficulty, hardly*.

Aemilius, -ī, m. (ē-mil'-i-us), *Lucius Aemilius*, a Gallic cavalry officer in Caesar's army. I. 23.

aequāliter [aequālis, equal], adv., *equally; uniformly, evenly*.

aequinoctium, -ī [aequus + nox], n., *the equinox*.

aequitās, -ātis [aequus], f., *evenness; equity, fairness, generosity*.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [aequus], tr., *make even or equal, equalize*.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *even, level; equal; just, fair, reasonable; favorable, advantageous*. See **animus**.

aerārius, -a, -um [aes], adj., *of copper*. Subst., **aerāria**, -ae, f., *copper-mine*.

aes, **aeris**, n., *copper, bronze*.

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer*.

aestimō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *estimate, value, rate*. See **lis**.

aestuārium, -ī [aestus], n., *inlet, salt marsh*.

aestus, -ūs, m., *tide; decessus aestūs*, *ebb-tide*.

aetās, -ātis [for older *aevitās*, cf. *aevum*, *lifetime, age*], f., *age, period of life*.

Āfricus, -a, -um [Āfrica], adj., *from Africa, African*. Subst., **Āfricus**, -ī, m., sc. **ventus**, *the southwest wind*.

ager, -grī, m., *field, land; country, territory*.

agger, -eris [ad + gerō], m., *mole, mound, rampart, siege-mound; material for a rampart or mound*.

agmen, -minis [agō], n., *an army on the march, column, line; claudere agmen*, *to bring up the rear; novissimum agmen*, *rear line, rear; primum agmen*, *the van*.

agō, **agere**, **ēgi**, **āctum**, tr., *drive; advance, bring up, push forward; do, carry on, (passive) go on, occur; hold, preside over; express; treat, discuss, confer, address*. See **conventus**, **grātia**.

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., *eager, ready*.

alacritās, -ātis [alacer], f., *eagerness, readiness, alacrity*.

ālārius, -a, -um [āla, wing], adj., *belonging to a wing*. Subst., **ālārii**, -ōrum, m., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries*.

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*.

aliās [acc. pl. f. of *alius*], adv., *at another time; aliās . . . aliās*, *at one time . . . at another, sometimes . . . sometimes, now . . . now*.

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius], *belonging to another, another's, of others; strange; unfavorable, inopportune, unsuitable*.

aliquam-diū [aliquam, in some degree], adv., *a while, for some time*.

aliquantō [abl. n. of *aliquantus*], adv., *somewhat*.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., *some, a little*. Subst., **aliquantum**, -ī,

anteā [ante + eā], adv., *before, formerly, previously.*

ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr., *go before, go ahead, go ahead of, precede; surpass, excel.*

antecursor, -ōris [antecurrō, run before], m., only in pl., *advance guard, vanguard.*

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., *prefer, give preference over.*

antemna, -ae, f., *sail-yard.*

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr., *place before; prefer, give preference over.*

antiquitus [antiquus], adv., *in former times, long ago.*

antiquus, -a, -um [ante], adj., *former, ancient, old.*

Ap., abbr. for the praenomen **Appius** (āp'-pi-us).

apertus, -a, -um [p.p. of **aperiō, open**], adj., *uncovered; open, clear, unobstructed; unprotected, exposed.*

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *address, accost, call to, call by name; name, call*

Apr. or April., abbr. for **Aprīlis**, adj. (sc. **mēnsis**, month), *of April.*

aptus, -a, -um, adj., *fitted, adapted, suitable.*

apud, prep. with acc., *before, in the presence of; among, with; at, near; in the power of, in the possession of.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquātīō, -ōnis [aquor, bring water], f., (the act of) *obtaining water.*

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle; the standard of the legion.*

Aquillēla, -ae, f. (āk-wi-lē'-ya), a city in Cisalpine Gaul at the head of the Adriatic Sea. I. 10.

aquillifer, -ferī [aquila + ferō], m., *eagle-bearer.*

Aquitānia, -ae, f. (āk-wi-tā'-ni-a), one of the three divisions of Gaul. I. 1; III. 11, 20 ff. D E 4, 5.

Aquitānus, -a, -um [Aquī-tānia], adj., *Aquitanian.* Subst., **Aquitānus, -i, m.**, *an Aquitanian; usually pl., the Aquitani, the Aquitanians.* I. 1; III. 21. D E 4, 5.

Arar, -ris, m. (ā'-rar), a river in Celtic Gaul, *the Saône.* I. 12, 13, 16. G 3.

arbiter, -trī, m., *arbitrator, judge, umpire.*

arbitrium, -ī [arbiter], n., *judgment, discretion, pleasure.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum [arbiter], dep., intr., *think, believe, suppose, consider.*

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.*

arcessō, -ere, -cessivī, -cessitum, tr., *send for, summon; appeal to.*

ārdeō, -ēre, -ārsī, -ārsūrus, intr., *be on fire, burn; be excited, be in a fury, burn (with indignation).*

Arduenna, -ae, f. (ār-dū-ēn'-a), an extensive forest in northeastern Gaul, *the Ardennes.* V. 3. G H 2.

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep.*

Aremoricus, -a, -um [Celtic, *upon the sea*], adj., *Aremoric*. *Aremoricae civitatēs*, the *Aremoric states*, near the sea and between the rivers Loire and Seine. V. 53. C D E 2.

argilla, -ae, f., *white clay*, *potter's earth*.

āridus, -a, -um [āreō, *be dry*], adj., *dry*, *arid*. Subst., **āridum**, -i, n., *dry land*, *beach*.

ariēs, -etis, m., *ram*; *battering-ram*.

Arloviſtus, -i, m. (ār'-ri-ovis'-tus), a German king whom Caesar defeated and drove from Gaul in 58. I. 31-53; IV. 16; V. 55.

arma, -ōrum, n., *implements*, *equipments*; *arms*, *weapons*; *force of arms*. *concurrere ad arma*, *rush to arms*, *form for battle*; *discēdere ab armis*, *lay down arms*, *give up hostilities*.

armāmenta, -ōrum [armō], n., *implements*; *equipments*, *tackle*.

armātūra, -ae [armō], f., *armor*, *equipment*; *levis armātūrae peditēs*, *light-armed infantry*.

armātus, -a, -um [p.p. of armō], adj., *armed*, *in arms*. Subst., **armātī**, -ōrum, m., *armed men*, *soldiers*.

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [arma], tr., *arm*, *equip*, *fit out*.

Arpinēius, -i, m. (ār-pi-nē'-yus), *Gaius Arpineius*, a Roman knight in Caesar's army. V. 27, 28.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum [ad + rapiō, *seize*], tr., *seize hurriedly*, *seize upon*, *snatch up*, *take*.

arroganter [arrogāns, *assuming*], adv., *presumptuously*, *arrogantly*.

arrogantia, -ae [arrogāns, *assuming*], f., *presumption*, *arrogance*, *insolence*.

artē [artus, *close*], adv., *closely*, *firmly*, *tightly*.

Arvernī, -ōrum, m. (ār-vēr'-nī), cf. French Auvergne: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 31, 45. F 4.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*, *stronghold*.

ascendō, -ere, -dī, -scēsum [ad + scandō, *climb*], tr. and intr., *mount*, *climb*, *ascend*, *scale*.

ascēsus, -ūs [ascendō], m., *a climbing*, *ascent*; *way up*, *approach*, *ascent*.

aspectus, -ūs [aspiciō, *look at*], m., *sight*, *appearance*, *aspect*.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough*; *violent*, *desperate*.

at, conj., *but*, *on the other hand*, *while*, *but meanwhile*, *however*; *yet*, *at least*, *yet at least*, *at any rate*.

atque [ad + -que] before vowels and consonants, *ac* before consonants only, conj., *and*, *and also*, *and besides*, *as well as*, *together with*; *and actually*, *and even*, *and in fact*. After words of comparison, equivalence, and likeness, *as*, *than*, see *aliter*, *alius*, *contrā*, *idem*, *pār*, *simul*.

Atrebās, -ātis, m., *one of the*

Atrebates; usually pl., *Atre-bātēs*, -um, m. (āt-re-bā'-tēz), the *Atrebates*, a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 16, 23; IV. 21; V. 46. F 1.

Atrius, -ī, m. (ā'-tri-us), *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army. V. 9, 10.

attexō, -ere, -texui, -textum [ad + texō, weave], tr., weave to, attach to.

attingō, -ere, -tigi, -tāctum [ad + tangō], tr., touch, reach; border upon, adjoin, extend to.

attribuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum [ad + tribuō], tr., assign, allot; entrust, commit.

Atuatuci, -ōrum, m. (āt-ū-āt'-ū-sī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. II. 4, 16, 29-33; V. 27, 38-51, 56. G 1.

auctor, -ōris [augeō], m., supporter, backer, adviser, instigator; *auctor belli esse*, to sanction a war, to favor a war.

auctoritās, -ātis [auctor], f., authority, influence, power, prestige, reputation; example, precedent.

auctus, -a, -um [p.p. of augeō], adj., increased, rich.

audācia, -ae [audāx, daring], f., daring, boldness, intrepidity.

audācter [audāx, daring], adv., boldly, courageously.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., tr. and intr., dare, venture; be daring, be brave.

audiō, -īre, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr., hear, hear of, learn of; listen to, grant a hearing to; *dictō audiēns esse*, be obedient, obey.

auditō, -ōnis [audiō], f., rumor, report.

augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, strengthen.

Aulerci, -ōrum, m. (aul-ēr'-sī), a people of Celtic Gaul consisting of three tribes, the Aulerci Brannovices, Aulerci Cenomani, and Aulerci Eburovices. II. 34; III. 17, 29. D E 2.

aureus, -a, -um [aurum, gold], adj., of gold, golden.

auriga, -ae, m., charioteer.

Aurunculēus, -ī, m. (aur-ŕung''-kū-lē'-yus), *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, defeated and slain by the Eburones. II. 11; IV. 22, 38; V. 24-37, 52.

Ausci, -ōrum, m. (au'-sī), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 5.

aut, conj., or, or at least; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.

autem, conj., but, on the other hand, on the contrary, however; furthermore, moreover, while.

auxiliāris, -e [auxilium], adj., auxiliary. Subst., *auxillārēs*, -ium, m., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.

auxillor, -āri, -ātus sum [auxilium], dep., intr., give help, aid, assist.

auxilium, -ī [cf. augeō], n., help, aid, assistance, support; resource, remedy, resort. Pl.

auxilia, -ōrum, n., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries*.

avāritia, -ae [avārus, *greedy*], f., *greed, avarice*.

ā-versus, -a, -um [p.p. of āvertō], adj., *turned away, in flight, in retreat*.

ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, tr., *turn away, turn aside; disarrange; turn from, estrange*.

avis, -is, f., *bird*.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

Axona, -ae, m. (āks'-o-na), a river in Belgic Gaul, the *Aisne*. II. 5, 9, 10. F G 2.

B

Baculus, -ī, m. (bāk'-ū-lus), see *Sextius*.

Baleārēs, -ium, m. (bāl-e-ā-rēs), the people of the Balearic Islands, employed as slingers in Caesar's army. II. 7.

balteus, -ī, m., *belt, sword-belt*.

Balventius, -ī, m. (bāl-vēn'-sh(i)-us), *Titus Balventius*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 35.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarian; rude, barbarous, uncivilized*. Subst., **barbari**, -ōrum, m., *barbarians*.

Batāvi, -ōrum, m. (batā'-vī), a German nation at the mouth of the Rhine. IV. 10. G 1.

Belgae, -ārum, m. (bēl'-jē), the *Belgae, Belgians*, occupying the northern of the three divisions of Gaul. I. 1; II. 1-33; III. 7, 11; IV. 38.

Belgium, -ī, n., *Belgium*, the country of the *Belgae*. V. 12, 25.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellicus, *of war*], adj., *warlike, martial*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [bellum], intr., *wage war, fight*.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. (bel-lōv'-a-sī), cf. French *Beauvais*: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 5, 10, 13-15; V. 24, 46. E F 2.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*; *dēfendere bellum*, *take, or act on, the defensive*; *inferre bellum*, *make war on*.

bene [bonus], adv., *well, successfully, to good advantage*. Comp., **mellus**, *better*. Superl., **optimē**, *best, thoroughly*.

beneficium, -ī [bene, cf. faciō], n., *favor, benefit, kindness, kind treatment, service*.

benevolentia, -ae [benevolēns, *well-wishing*], f., *good-will, friendship, favor*.

bi, insep., prefix, *twice, in two*.

Bibracte, -is, n. (bi-brāk'-tē), cf. French *Beuvray*: the chief town of the *Haedui*, on Mont *Beuvray*, near *Autun*. I. 23. F 3.

Bilbrax, -actis, f. (bi'-brāks), a town of the *Remi*. II. 6. F 2.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, m. (bib'-ro-sī), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. D 1.

biduum, -ī [bi- + diēs], n., a *period of two days, two days*.

biennium, -ī [bi- + annus], n., a *period of two years, two years*.

Bigerriōnēs, -um, m. (bi-

jēr''-ri-ō'-nēz), cf. French Bi-gorre: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. DE 5.

bīnī, -ae, -a [cf. bis], distrib. num. adj., *two each, two at a time, two together*.

blpedālīs, -e [bi- + pedālīs, of a foot], adj., *two feet in measure, two feet thick*.

blpertītō [bi- + partiō, divide], adv., *in two divisions*.

bis, adv., *twice*.

Bītūrīgēs, -um, m. (bīt-ū-rī'-jēz), cf. French Bourges: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 18. EF 3.

Boduōgnātus, -i, m. (bōd''-ū-og-nā'-tus), a leader of the Nervii. II. 23.

Bōli, -ōrum, m. (bō'-i-i), a Celtic people. I. 5, 25, 28, 29. F 3.

bonitās, -atis [bonus], f., *goodness, excellence, superiority*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good, excellent; favorable*. Subst., bonum, -i, n., *good, advantage*. Pl., bona, -ōrum, n., *goods, property*. Comp., mellor, -ius, *better*. Superl., optimus, -a, -um, *best*.

bracchium, -i, n., *the arm*.

Bratuspantium, -i, n. (brāt-us-pān'-sh(i)-um), a town of the Bellovacii. II. 13. F 2.

brevi [abl. n. of brevis], adv., *in a short time, quickly*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

brevitās, -ātis [brevis], f., *shortness; small stature*.

Britanni, -ōrum, m., *the Britons*. IV. 21, 23-36; V. 8-23.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*. II. 4, 14; III. 8, 9; IV. 20-36; V. 2, 6, 8-23.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *British*. V. 4.

brūma, -ae [for brevima = brevissima], f., *the winter solstice; sub brūmam, in mid-winter*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Decimus Junius Brutus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. III. 11, 14.

C

C., abbr. for the praenomen Gaius (gā'-yus).

Cabūrus, -ī, m. (ka-bū'-rus), see Valerius.

cadāver, -eris [cadō], n., *dead body, corpse*.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, intr., *fall; fall dead, be slain; happen, result, turn out*.

caedēs, -is [caedō], f., *slaughter, massacre, carnage*.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, tr., *cut, cut down, fell*.

Caemāni, -ōrum, m. (se-mā'-nī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. G 1.

Caerōsi, -ōrum, m. (se-rō'-si), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. H 1.

caeruleus, -a, -um [cf. caelum, sky], adj., *blue, dark blue*.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Gaius Julius Caesar*. See Introd.

caespes, -pitis [caedō], m., *cut sod, turf, piece of turf*.

calamitās, -ātis, f., *misfortune, reverse, calamity, disaster*.

Caleti, -ōrum, m. (kāl'-e-tī), or **Caletēs**, -um, m. (kāl'-e-tēz), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. E 2.

callidus, -a, -um [calleō, *be experienced*], adj., *experienced, shrewd, adroit*.

cālō, -ōnis, m., *a soldier's servant, camp servant*.

campus, -i, m., *plain, open country, field*.

Cantabri, -ōrum, m. (kān'-ta-brī), a tribe on the north coast of Spain. III. 26. BC 5.

Cantium, -i, n. (kān'-sh(i)-um), a district in Britain, *Kent*. V. 13, 14, 22. E 1.

capillus, -i [cf. *caput*], m., *the hair of the head, hair*.

capīō, *capere*, cēpī, **captum**, tr., *take, receive; seize, capture; choose, select; gain, reach, arrive at; catch, deceive; conceive, adopt, form; derive, feel*.

captivus, -a, -um [captus, *capīō*], adj., *captive*. Subst., **captivī**, -ōrum, m., *captives, prisoners*.

captus, -ūs [capīō], m., *comprehension, capacity, standard*.

caput, -itis, n., *the head; mouth (of a river)*. Pl., *persons, individuals*.

Carcasō, -ōnis, f. (kār'-ka-sō), French Carcassonne: a city in the Roman Transalpine province. III. 20. F 5.

carīna, -ae, f., *keel*.

Carnutēs, -um, m. (kārn'-ū-tēz), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 35; V. 25, 29, 56. E 2, 3.

carō, *carnis*, f., *flesh, meat*.

carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptum, tr., *pick, pluck; censure, blame*.

carrus, -i, m., *a cart*.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious, valued*.

Carvilius, -i, m. (kār-vīl'-i-us), a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

casa, -ae, f., *hut, cabin*.

Cassī, -ōrum, m. (kās'-ī), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. D 1.

Cassianus, -a, -um, adj., *of or with Cassius*. I. 13.

Cassius, -i, m. (kāsh'-(i)us), *Cassius Longinus*, a Roman general defeated in 107 by the Tigurini. I. 7, 12.

Cassivellaunus, -i, m. (kās'-i-ve-lau'-nus), a British chief of the country north of the Thames. V. 11, 18-22.

castellum, -i [dim. of *castrum*], n., *redoubt, stronghold*.

Casticus, i, m. (kās'-ti-kus), a prominent Sequanian. I. 3.

castrum, -i, n., *fort*. Pl., **castra**, -ōrum, n., *a camp; movēre castra, break camp; pōnere castra, pitch camp*.

cāsus, -ūs [cadō], m., (*a fall-ing*), *chance, occurrence, event, accident; emergency, crisis; fortune, fate, misfortune, disaster, calamity; extrēmus cāsus, a final crisis, a last resort*.

Catamantaloedis, -is, m. (kāt-a-mān-ta-lē'-dis), a Sequanian, father of Casticus. I. 3.

catēna, -ae, f., *chain, fetter*.

Caturigēs, -um, m. (kāt-ū-rī'-

jēz), a Gallic tribe in the Alps. I. 10. H 4.

Catuvolcus, -ī, m. (kāṭ-ū-vōl'-kus), a king of the Eburones. V. 24, 26.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason, motive, occasion, ground; condition, position, state; case; causā* (with dependent gen.), *for the sake of, on account of, for the purpose of; dicere causam, plead one's case, stand trial.*

cautē [cautus, careful], adv., *cautiously, carefully.*

Cavarinus, -ī, m. (kāv-a-rī'-nus), a Gaul appointed king of the Senones by Caesar. V. 54.

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, tr. and intr., *be on one's guard, guard against.*

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, intr., *withdraw, retire, retreat, give way.*

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, fleet, quick, rapid.*

celeritās, -ātis [celer], f., *swiftness, speed, rapidity.*

celeriter [celer], adv., *quickly, swiftly, rapidly, promptly.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *conceal, hide.*

Celtae, -ārum, m. (sēl'-tē), *the Celts*, occupying the central of the three divisions of Gaul. I. 1.

Cēnimāgnī, -ōrum, m. (sēn-i-māg'-nī), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. E 1.

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, tr., *rate, estimate; propose, vote, resolve, decree.*

cēnsus, -ūs [cēnseō], m., *a census; cēnsus habēre, take a census.*

centum, indecl. num., *hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis [centuria, a century, division of a hundred men], m., *centurion, commander of a century.*

certāmen, -inis [certō, contend], n., *struggle, strife, contest, rivalry.*

certē [certus], adv., *surely, certainly, at least, at any rate; definitely.*

certus, -a, -um [p.p. of cernō, decide], adj., *fixed, certain, clearly established; aliquem certiōrem facere, to inform, instruct, direct some one.*

cēterus, -a, -um, adj., *the rest of, the remaining.* Always pl. in Caesar. Subst., **cēterī**, -ōrum, m., *the rest, the others.*

Centronēs, -um, m. (sū'-tro-nēz), (1) a Gallic tribe in the Alps. I. 10. H 4. (2) a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

Chōrus, -ī, m., *the northwest wind.*

cibārius, -a, -um [cibus], adj., *given as rations.* Subst., **cibāria**, -ōrum, n., *food, provisions; molita cibāria, meal.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food, fare.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 27, 38-53.

Clmberius, -ī, m. (sīm-bē'-ri-us), a leader of the Suebi. I. 37.

Cimbri, -ōrum, m. (sīm'-brī),

a people of northern Germany. I. 33, 40; II. 4, 29.

Cingetorix, -īgis, m. (sīn-jēt/-o-rīks), (1) a chief of the Treveri. V. 3, 56, 57. (2) a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

cingō, -ere, **cinxi**, **cinctum**, tr., surround, encircle, encompass.

circinus, -ī, m., a pair of compasses.

circiter [circus, circle], adv., about, not far from. Prep. with acc., about, near.

circuitus, -ūs [circumeō], m., circuit, circumference; detour.

circum [acc. of circus, circle], prep. with acc., around, about, in the neighborhood of, near.

circumcidō, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum [circum + caedō], tr., cut around, cut.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, tr., put or place around, surround, encompass.

circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead or conduct around; draw around, trace.

circum-eō, -ire, -ii or -ivī, -itum, tr., go around, march or ride around; visit.

circumleicō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum [circum + iaciō], tr., throw around, place or post around.

circum-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., send around.

circum-mūnīō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, tr., wall around; surround with; fortify, protect.

circum-sistō, -ere, -steti, — [sistō, set, stand], tr., surround.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [-spiciō, look, spy], tr., look around at, survey.

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, tr., come around, surround, beset, outflank, ensnare. clis, prep. with acc., on this side of.

citātus, -a, -um [p.p. of citō, rouse], adj., rapid, swift.

citerior, -ius [citer, on this side], comp. adj., on this side, nearer, hither.

citō [abl. n. of citus, swift], comp. citius, superl. citissimē, adv., speedily, quickly.

citrā [citer, on this side], prep. with acc., this side of, on the nearer side of.

citrō [dat. of citer, on this side], adv., to this side; **ultrō** **citrōque**, to and fro, backwards and forwards.

civitās, -ātis [cīvis, citizen], f., citizenship; state, nation.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of clāmō, cry out], tr., call out loudly, shout.

clāmor, -ōris [clāmō, cry out], m., cry, shout, shouting, din.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, bright; loud, distinct.

classis, -is, f., fleet.

Claudius, -ī, m. (klau'-di-us), **Appius Claudius Pulcher**, consul with Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus in 54. V. 1.

claudō, -ere, **clausī**, **clausum**, tr., shut, close. See **agmen**.

clāvus, -i, m., *nail, spike*.

clēmēntia, -ae [clēmēns, mild], f., *moderation, forbearance, clemency*.

cliēns, -entis [for cluēns, from cluēō, *hear*], m., *client, dependent, vassal*.

Cn., abbr. for the praenomen **Gnaeus** (nē'-us).

coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [com- + acervō, *heap up*], tr., *heap up, pile up*.

coāctus, -ūs [cōgō], m., found only in abl. sing., *compulsion*.

Cocosātēs, -um, m. (kōk-o-sā'-tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D 4.

coēmō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptum [com- + emō], tr., *purchase, buy up*.

coepi, **coepisse**, **coeptum**, def., tr. and intr., *begin, commence*.

coerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum [com- + arceō, *enclose*], tr., *confine, surround; restrain, control*.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [com- + agitō, *consider*], tr., *consider thoroughly, ponder; imagine, anticipate; contemplate, plan*.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum [com- + (g)nōscō, *know*], tr., *become acquainted with, recognize; ascertain, learn, learn of, hear of, find, know; examine, investigate; reconnoitre*.

cōgō, -ere, **coēgi**, **coāctum** [com- + agō], tr., *bring together, collect, assemble; force, compel*.

cohors, -rtis, f., *cohort; cohors praetoria, a general's body-guard*.

cohortātīō, -ōnis [cohortor], f., *exhortation, encouragement*.

cohortor, -āri, -ātus sum [com- + hortor], tr., *encourage, cheer, cheer on, urge*.

cōiciō, -icere, **coniēcī**, **conlectum** [com- + iaciō], tr., *cast, hurl, throw; place, station; put or place hastily; drive*.

colligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum [com- + legō, *gather*], tr., *gather, collect; colligere sē, recover one's self, rally*.

collis, -is, m., *hill*. See **adversus**.

colō, -ere, **colui**, **cultum**, tr., *till, cultivate*.

color, -ōris, m., *color, hue, tint*.

com-, **con-**, **co-**, old form of **cum**, *with*, used in composition, *with, together; completely, entirely, utterly*.

combūrō, -ere, -ussi, -ustum [com- + ūrō, *burn*], tr., *burn up*.

commeātus, -ūs [commeō], m., *voyage, trip, expedition; supplies, provisions*.

com-memorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [memorō, *mention*], tr., *mention, state, relate*.

commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [com- + mandō], tr., *intrust, place under protection of*.

com-meō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [meō, *go, pass*], intr., *come and go; ad . . . commeāre, resort to, visit*.

commilitō, -ōnis [com-, cf. miles], m., fellow-soldier, comrade.

comminus [com- + manus], adv., hand to hand, at close quarters. See *gerō*.

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -misum, tr., join, engage in, bring on, begin; commit, perpetrate; bring about, cause, make possible; intrust, trust.

Commius, -i, m. (kōm'-i-us), a chief of the Atrebatas, appointed king by Caesar. IV. 21, 27, 35; V. 22.

commodē [commodus], adv., well, effectively; readily, conveniently, advantageously.

commodus, -a, -um [com- + modus], adj., suitable, convenient, easy, advantageous, useful, expedient. Subst., **commodum, -i, n.**, advantage, interest, good.

commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum [commoneō, remind, + faciō], tr., remind, admonish.

com-moror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., intr., tarry, linger, delay. **com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum**, tr., move or arouse thoroughly, deeply; disturb, alarm, startle.

communīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [communis], tr., share; impart, communicate; confer.

com-mūniō, -ire, -īvī, -itum, tr., fortify, intrench; construct (strongly). **communire castra**, establish an intrenched camp.

communis, -e [com- + mūnus, service, duty], adj., common,

general, combined, joint; of common interest, mutual.

commūtātīō, -ōnis [com-mūtō], f., change.

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [mūtō, alter], tr., change, alter.

1. **com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, tr., prepare, make ready, prepare for; provide, furnish, secure; get together, muster; acquire, gain, win.

2. **comparō, -are, -āvī, -ātum** [compār, like], tr., compare.

com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., drive; compel.

comperiō, -ire, -perī, -pertum [com- + pariō], tr., learn, find, ascertain, discover.

complector, -i, -plexus sum [com- + plector, embrace], tr., embrace.

com-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum [pleō, fill], tr., fill, fill up; occupy, cover.

com-plūrēs, -a, adj., pl., several, a number of, many.

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., bring together, bring in, bring, collect, gather.

com-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum, tr., grasp, catch hold of, seize; arrest, capture, take.

com-probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., approve, sanction, justify.

cōnāta, -ōrum [p.p. of cōnor], n., attempts, undertakings, plans.

cōnātus, -ūs [cōnor], m., attempt, effort, enterprise.

con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, tr. and intr., yield, give

way; admit inferiority, yield precedence; grant, vouchsafe; permit, allow, grant permission.

concidō, -ere, -cidi, — [com- + cadō], intr., fall, be slain.

concidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsum [com- + caedō], tr., cut to pieces, kill; break up, intersect.

concillō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [concilium], tr., win over, make friendly, attach, secure one's allegiance; win, gain, procure.

concilium, -ī [com-, cf. calō, call], n., assembly, meeting, council.

con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [citō, rouse], tr., rouse, arouse, excite, incite.

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., cry out, shout, exclaim.

conclūsus, -a, -um [p.p. of **conclūdō**, shut up], adj., closed, confined; inland, land-locked.

con-currō, -ere, -curri or **-cucurri, -cursum** [currō, run], intr., run or rush together, assemble quickly, hasten. See **arma**.

concurso, -āre, — [freq. of **concurrō**], intr., rush to and fro.

concursum, -ūs [concurrō], m., running together, running to and fro; collision, clash; on-set, attack, charge.

condiciō, -ōnis [cf. **condicō**, agree], f., terms, stipulation, proposition; terms of service, condition, state, position, rank.

con-dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., give up; pass over, pardon.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. (kon-droo'-sī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul; II. 4; IV. 6. G 1.

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr., bring together, gather, assemble, muster; hire, employ.

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lā-tum, tr., bring together, collect, gather; bring, convey; compare; put off, postpone; throw, lay upon; attribute, ascribe; **sē cōferre**, betake one's self, make for. See **signum**.

cōnfertus, -a, -um [p.p. of **conferciō**, press close], adj., crowded, closely packed, compact, in close array.

cōnfestim, adv., immediately, at once, without delay.

cōnfiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum [com- + faciō], tr., make, prepare, complete, finish, bring to a close, accomplish, carry out; pass over, traverse; furnish, raise, muster; weaken, wear out, overcome, exhaust.

cōn-fidō, -ere, -fīsus sum [fidō, trust], semi-dep., intr., trust, rely upon, have or put confidence in; feel confident, expect, believe, suppose, hope.

cōn-fiō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum [figō, fix], tr., join, fasten together.

cōnfinium, -ī [cōnfinis, bordering], n., limit, border, frontier.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis [cōnfirmō], f., confirmation; assurance, evidence.

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [firmō, make firm], tr., make

firm, confirm, strengthen, increase, establish; reassure, encourage, cheer; set, appoint; assert, declare, protest.

cōnfiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum [com- + fateor, confess], dep., intr., acknowledge, confess, admit.

cōn-flagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [flagrō, blaze], intr., burn up, be on fire.

cōnflīctor, -āri, -ātus sum [freq. of cōnfligō], dep., intr., struggle; be afflicted, be overwhelmed, meet with.

cōnfligō, -ere, -flīxi, -flīctum [-fligō, dash], intr., contend, struggle, fight.

cōnfluēs, -entis [pr. p. of cōnfluō, flow together], m., confluence, junction.

congregdior, -ī, -gressus sum [com- + gradior, step], dep., intr., meet, encounter; join battle, engage in battle, contend, fight.

congressus, -ūs [congregdior], m., meeting, encounter, combat.

con-lungō, -ere, -lūnxi, -lūnctum, tr., unite, join, connect; ally with.

coniūnctus, -a, -um [p.p. of coniungō], adj., connected, related.

conlūrātiō, -ōnis [coniūrō], f., alliance, league, conspiracy.

con-lūrō, -āre, -āvi, ātum, intr., combine, league together, conspire, plot.

con-laudo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [laudō, praise], tr., praise highly, extol, eulogize.

con-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ligō, bind], tr., bind or fasten together.

con-locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [locō, place], tr., arrange, station, post, locate, place; settle, establish. With or without nūptum, give in marriage.

conloquium, -ī [conloquor], n., conversation, conference, interview.

con-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, dep., intr., converse, confer, hold a conference or interview.

cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., intr., try, attempt, endeavor, undertake.

conquirō, -ere, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum [com- + quaerō], tr., seek for, search out, hunt up.

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um [sanguineus, of blood], adj., related by blood. Subst., cōn-sanguinei, -ōrum, m., blood-relatives, kinsmen.

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum [com + scandō, climb], tr., climb, mount; go on board of, embark on.

cōnscientia, -ae [cōnsciō, be conscious], f., consciousness, knowledge.

cōn-sciscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum [sciscō, approve], tr., resolve upon, decree; sibi mortem cōnsciscere, commit suicide.

cōnscius, -a, -um [com- + sciō], adj., conscious, aware.

cōn-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., write; enroll, enlist, levy.

cōn-sector, -āri, -ātus sum [freq. of **cōnsequor**], dep., tr., follow up, pursue, hunt down, overtake.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs [**cōnsentiō**], m., agreement, consent; **cōnsēnsū omnium** or **ex commūnī cōnsēnsū**, by general consent, unanimously.

cōn-sentiō, -ire, -sēnsī, sēnsū, intr., agree, unite, combine, conspire.

cōn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., tr. and intr., follow, ensue, succeed; follow up, pursue, press after; overtake, come up with; attain, obtain, acquire, win, gain.

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., keep safe, preserve, protect; spare; observe.

Cōnsidius, -ī, m. (**kon-sīd'-i-us**), *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army. I. 21, 22.

cōn-sidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum [**sīdō, sit down**], intr., settle; halt, encamp; station one's self, take position.

cōnsillium, -ī [cf. **cōnsulō**], n., council, meeting; counsel, advice; purpose, intention, policy; consent; measure, plan, design; good judgment, wisdom, prudence, discretion, tact.

cōn-similis, -e, adj., very like, quite like.

cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum [**sistō, stand**], intr., take one's stand or place, take position, stand, form; find footing; halt, stop; make or take a stand,

maintain one's ground; depend upon.

cōn-sōlor, -āri, -ātus sum [**sōlor, to comfort**], dep., tr., console, encourage, reassure, cheer.

cōnspectus, -ūs [**cōnspiciō**], m., sight, view.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [**-spiciō, look at, spy**], tr., catch sight of, see, notice, observe.

cōnspicor, -āri, -ātus sum [cf. **cōnspiciō**], tr., catch sight of, see, perceive, observe.

cōn-spirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**spirō, breathe**], intr., unite, combine, form a league, conspire.

cōnstanter [**cōnstāns, firm**], adv., firmly, resolutely, obstinately; uniformly, consistently.

cōnstantia, -ae [**cōnstāns**] f., firmness, steadfastness, resolution.

cōn-sternō, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum [**sternō, spread out**], tr., strew over, cover.

cōn-stipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**stipō, crowd**], tr., pack or crowd closely together.

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**com- + statuō**], tr., put, place, station, locate, establish, post, arrange, draw up, form, array; put up, throw up, erect; set, appoint, fix; determine, determine upon, decide, decide upon, resolve.

cōn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, intr., stand firm; agree, be consistent; **cōnstat**, impers.,

it is certain, known, evident, clear; it appears, it is generally supposed.

cōn-suēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum [suēscō, become used], intr., become accustomed, form the habit of. Perfect tense, be accustomed, be in the habit of.

cōnsuētūdō, -dīnis [cōn-suētus, used], f., habit, practice, custom, manner, policy; manner of living; close intercourse, association, intimacy; **ex cōn-suētūdine**, according to custom; **sē in consuetudinē addūcere** ut, accustom one's self to; **cōnsuētūdō fert**, it is usual, is the custom.

cōnsul, -ulis, m., consul, one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman people, chosen annually.

cōnsulātus, -ūs [cōnsul], m., consulship.

cōnsulō, -ere, -sului, -sultum, intr., deliberate, consult; provide for, consult the interests of.

1. **cōnsultō, -āre, -avi, -ātum** [freq. of cōnsulō], intr., deliberate, take counsel.

2. **cōnsultō** [abl. of cōnsultum], adv., deliberately, purposely.

cōnsultum, -ī [p.p. of cōnsulō], n., decree, resolution.

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, tr., use up, consume, waste, destroy; spend, pass.

cōn-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī,

-surrēctum [surgō, rise], intr., rise together, rise, stand up.

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [com- + tabula, board], tr., cover with boards, furnish with floors, build story by story.

con-temnō, -ere, -tempsi, -temptum [temnō, slight], tr., esteem lightly, disdain, despise.

contemptiō, -ōnis [con-temnō], f., contempt, disdain, defiance.

contemptus, -ūs [contemnō], m., contempt, scorn, source of contempt.

con-tendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. and intr., strain, struggle, strive, exert one's self; hasten, hurry; push forward, march rapidly; vie, dispute; contend, fight, engage in battle; strive for, be eager for, seek, attempt.

contentiō, -ōnis [contendō], f., struggle, strife, contest, dispute, rivalry.

con-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum [testor, invoke], tr., call to witness, invoke, appeal to.

con-texō, -ere, -texui, -textum [texō, weave], tr., weave together, fasten, join.

continēns, -entis, [pr. p. of continueō], adj., continuous, unbroken; continual, uninterrupted. Subst., f., mainland, continent.

continenter [continēns], adv., continually, incessantly, without stopping.

continueō, -ēre, -tinui, -ten-

tum [com- + teneō], tr., *keep, hold, shut in, confine, bound; contain, fill, take up; detain, restrain, check; sē continēre, remain.*

contingō, -ere, -tigi, -tāctum [com- + tangō], tr. and intr., *touch, reach; happen to, befall, fall to.*

continuātiō, -ōnis [continuō, join], f., *continuance, unbroken succession.*

continuus, -a, -um [com-, cf. teneō], adj., *continuous, in succession.*

cōntiō, -ōnis [for conventiō, a coming together], f., *meeting, assembly.*

contrā, adv., *in opposition, opposite, against; on the other hand; contrā atque, otherwise than, different from what; contra cōsistere, offer opposition.* Prep. with acc., *opposite, facing, towards; contrary to; against, in opposition to, in hostility to; in reply to, in answer to.*

con-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trac-tum, tr., *draw together, collect, muster, assemble; contract, make small.*

contrārius, -a, -um [contrā], adj., *lying over against, opposite, facing.*

contrōversia, -ae [contrō-versus, disputed], f., *quarrel, dispute, controversy, debate.*

contumēlia, ae, f., *affront, insult, indignity, taunt, injury; rough usage, violence.*

con-vallis, -is, f., *valley, defile.*

con-veniō, -īre, -vēni, -ven-tum, tr. and intr., *come together, assemble, gather, arrive; meet; convenit, impers., it is agreed upon.*

conventus, -ūs [conveniō], m., *meeting, assembly; court.*

con-vertō, -ere, -verti, -ver-sum, tr., *turn, turn round; change, alter; guide, direct; sē convertere, turn, face around.*

con-vincō, -ere, -vici, -vic-tum, tr., *overcome; convict, prove, convict of.*

con-voco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *call together, call, summon.*

coōrior, -iri, -ortus sum [com- + orior], dep., intr., *arise, break or burst forth, break out.*

cōpia, -ae [com- + ops], f., *abundance, ample supply, plenty, supply; large number, multitude, force.* Pl., *forces, troops; wealth, riches, resources, supplies.*

cōplōsus, -a, -um [cōpia], adj., *well supplied or stored, rich.*

cōpula, -ae, f., *a fastening; grappling-hooks.*

cōram [com- + ōs], adv., *present, in person, with one's own eyes.*

Coriosolltēs, -um, m. (kō¹¹-ri-o-sōl¹-i-tēz), *a tribe in Celtic Gaul.* II. 34; III. 7, 11. C 2.

cornu, -ūs, n., *a horn; wing (of an army).*

corōna, -ae, f., *garland,*

wreath; sub corōnā vēndere, to sell as slaves. See note on III. 16.

corpus, -oris, n., the body, the person; dead body, corpse.

cortex, -icis, m., bark.

cōtēs, -is, f., crag, reef.

cotidlānus, -a, -um [cotidiē], adj., daily; usual, ordinary, accustomed.

cotidiē [quot + diēs], adv., daily, day after day.

Cotta, -ae, m. (kōt'-a), see Aurunculēius.

crassitūdō, -dinis [crassus, thick], f., thickness.

Crassus, -ī, m. (krās'-us), (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus, the triumvir. I. 21; IV. 1. (2) Marcus Licinius Crassus, son of (1) and an officer in Caesar's army. V. 24, 46, 47. (3) Publius Licinius Crassus, younger son of (1) and one of Caesar's lieutenants. I. 52; II. 34; III. 7-9, 11, 20-27.

crātis, -is, f., wickerwork; fascine, hurdle.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent, numerous, repeated.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr. and intr., believe, think, suppose, expect.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., burn.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., make, create; choose, elect.

crēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, intr., grow, increase; rise, prosper, increase in influence.

Crētēs, -um, m., the Cretans,

employed as archers in Caesar's army. II. 7.

cruciātus, -ūs [cruciō, to torture], m., torture, torment, suffering; per cruciātum interfici or cum cruciātū necārī, to be tortured to death; in cruciātum venīre, meet with cruel treatment.

crūdēlītās, -ātis [crūdēlis, cruel], f., cruelty, barbarity.

crūdēlītēr [crūdēlis, cruel], adv., cruelly; crūdēlītēr imperāre, make cruel demands.

culmen, -inis, n., top, summit.

culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, error.

cultūra, -ae [colō], f., cultivation, tillage; agrī cultūra, agriculture.

cultus, -ūs [colō], m., mode of life; culture, civilization, refinement.

1. **cum**, prep. with abl., with, together with, in company with, along with, at the same time with; under the command of; ūnā cum, along with, at the same time with.

2. **cum**, conj., temporal, when, at the time when, while, after, whenever, as often as. Causal, since, because, as. Concessive or adversative, although, while; cum primum, as soon as; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.

cūnctātio, -ōnis [cūnctor], f., delay, hesitation.

cūnctor, -āri, -ātus sum,

dep., intr., *delay, hesitate, hang back.*

cūctus, -a, -um [contracted for *coniūctus, joined together*], adj., *all, entire.*

cuniculus, -i, m., *tunnel, mine.*

cupidē [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, gladly.*

cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., *longing, desire, eagerness, passion.*

cupidus, -a, -um [cupiō], adj., *desirous of, fond of, eager for.*

cupiō, -cupere, -ivī, -itum, tr. and intr., *desire, wish, be eager; favor, wish well to.*

cūr, adv., *why? for what reason?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, attention, concern.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cūra], tr., *care for, attend to.* With gerundive, *have done, cause to be done.*

currus, -ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, -ūs [currō, run], m., *running; speed, pace; course, route, passage; in hōc mediō cursū, halfway across.*

custōdia, -ae [custōs], f., *a guard. Pl., sentinels, outposts.*

custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard, keeper, watcher.*

D

D., abbr. for the praenomen *Decimus* (dēs'-i-mus).

D = quīngentī, 500.

damnāti, -ōrum [p.p. pl. of *damnō*], m., *criminals, outlaws.*

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

[*damnum, harm*], tr., *condemn, convict.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, away from, down from, out of; from among, of; as a result of, for; concerning, about, in regard to.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [dē + *habeō*], tr., *owe; ought, must.* **plūrimum dēbere, be under the deepest obligations.**

dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, intr., *withdraw, depart.*

decem, indecl. num., *ten.*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum [cernō, *separate; decide*], tr., *decree, vote; decide, determine.*

dē-certo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [certō, *contend*], intr., *fight a decisive battle, fight it out; join battle.*

dē-cessus, -ūs [dēcēdō], m., *departure.* See *aestus*.

dēcidō, -ere, -cidi, - [dē + *cadō*], intr., *fall, fall down, fall from.*

decimus, -a, -um [decem], num. adj., *tenth.*

dē-ci-piō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [dē + *capiō*], tr., *deceive.*

dē-clārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [clārō, *brighten*], tr., *declare, proclaim.*

dē-clivis, -e [dē + *clivus, slope*], adj., *sloping downward, sloping.*

decumānus, -a, -um [decimus], adj., *of the tenth; decumāna porta, the rear gate (of a Roman camp), where the tenth cohort was stationed.*

decuriō, -ōnis [decuria, a division of ten men], m., decurion, a commander of ten men in the cavalry.

dē-currō, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum [currō, run], intr., run or hasten down, run, hasten, hurry along.

dē-decus, -oris [decus, honor], n., disgrace, dishonor.

dēditicius, -a, -um [dēditus, dēdō], adj., surrendered, captive. Subst., dēditiciī, -ōrum, m., captives, prisoners.

dēditō, -ōnis [dēdō], f., capitulation, surrender; in dēditōnem venīre, to surrender.

dē-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr., deliver up, give up, surrender; devote.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., lead out, away, from, withdraw; lead, conduct; draw down, launch; bring home (a bride), marry; reduce, bring.

dēfatigātō, -ōnis [dēfatigō], f., fatigue, exhaustion.

dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [fatigō, tire], tr., fatigue, exhaust.

dēfectō, -ōnis [dēficiō], f., defection, revolt, rebellion.

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensum [-fendō, strike], tr., ward off, repel; defend, protect, offer defence. See bellum.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [dēfendō], f., defence.

dēfēnsor, -ōris [dēfendō], m., defender.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., carry down or along; carry,

deliver; grant, give, bestow, intrust; report, lay before, announce. Passive, (of ships) drift, float, be carried.

dēfessus -a, -um [p.p. of dēfescor, grow weary], adj., weary, exhausted, faint.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [dē + faciō], tr. and intr., withdraw, revolt, desert, fail, be insufficient or unsuitable.

dē-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum [figō, fix], tr., fasten, fix, fix in place; drive or thrust into.

dēfōrmis, -e [dē + fōrma, shape], adj., misshapen, ill-shaped, ugly.

dēliciō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum [dē + iaciō], tr., throw or cast down, throw off; throw, hurl; strike down, overthrow, kill; disappoint; (of ships) drive or carry out of course.

dēlectus, -ūs [dēliciō], m., declivity, downward slope, slope.

dēinceps [dein(de), cf. capiō], adv., in turn, in succession, continuously.

dēinde [dē + inde], adv., then, next, thereupon, afterwards; secondly, in the second place.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of dēliciō, entice], tr., delight, please, charm. Passive, take pleasure in.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, tr., wipe out, destroy.

dē-liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., weigh well, consider carefully, deliberate.

dē-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ligō, bind], tr., tie up, bind fast; fasten, moor. See *an-cora*.

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum [dē + legō, gather], tr., choose, pick out, select.

dē-litēscō, -ere, -lituī, — [dē + latēscō, hide], intr., conceal one's self, lie hid, hide.

dē-mentia, -ae [dēmēns, out of one's mind], f., madness, folly.

dē-metō, -ere, -messuī, -messum, tr., reap, harvest.

dē-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [migrō, depart], intr., depart, go away, remove.

dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., lessen, diminish, impair; take away.

dē-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr., send or let down, lower; bow; sē dēmittere, descend, enter.

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsi, dēmp-tum [dē + emō], tr., take away or down, remove.

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [mōnstrō, point out], tr., point out, show, explain, describe; mention, state.

dē-moror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., tr., retard, delay.

dēmum, adv., at length, at last; tum dēmum, then at last, then and not till then.

dē-negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., refuse, deny.

dēnī, -ae, -a [decem], distrib. num. adj., ten each.

dēnique, adv., at last, at length, finally; in short; at least, certainly.

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., dense, thick.

dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., announce, declare.

dē-pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, tr., drive out, drive off, dispel, dislodge.

dē-perdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum [perdō, lose], tr., lose.

dē-pereō, -īre, -perli, -peritūrus, intr., perish, be lost.

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., lay aside, put aside, place, leave, deposit; give up, lose.

dē-populor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., tr., lay waste, devastate, plunder, pillage.

dē-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., carry off, take away.

dē-precātor, -ōris [dēprecor], m., intercessor, mediator.

dē-precor, -āri, -ātus sum [precor, beg], dep., tr. and intr., beg off, beg, entreat, resort to entreaties.

dē-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, tr., seize, catch, surprise.

dērēctē [dērēctus], adv., straight, perpendicularly.

dērēctus, -a, -um [p.p. of dērigō, lay straight], adj., straight, lengthwise.

dēscendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēsum [dē + scandō, climb], descend; have recourse, resort.

dē-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum

[serō, bind], tr., abandon, desert, forsake, betray.

dēsertus, -a, -um [p.p. of dēserō], adj., deserted, lonely, out of the way.

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., wish, desire; miss, lose.

dē-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [signō, mark out], tr., mark out, point out, designate, mean.

dēsiliō, -ire, -silui [dē + saliō, leap], intr., leap down, dismount; jump overboard.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stīti, -stitum [sistō, set, stand], intr., desist, desist from, cease, stop; give up, abandon.

dēspectus, -ūs [dēspicio], m., view, prospect.

dēspēratiō, -ōnis [dēspērō], f., hopelessness, despair.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., despair, lose hope; despair of, lose hope of, give up for lost.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [-spiciō, look], tr., look down upon, hold in contempt, despise.

dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., rob, despoil, deprive.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., fasten, bind, hold.

dēstituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum [dē + statuō], tr., abandon, desert, betray.

dē-stringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum [stringō, draw, strip], tr., strip off; unsheathe, draw.

dē-sum, deesse, dēful, dēfu-

tūrus, intr., be lacking, be wanting, fail.

dē-super [super, above], adv., from above.

dēterior, -ius, comp. adj., worse, poorer, smaller.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territum, tr., frighten off, deter, dissuade, prevent.

dētineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum [dē + teneō], tr., hold back, detain.

dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr., draw off, take away, withdraw, remove.

dētrimentum, -i [dē + terō, rub], n., loss, damage, injury.

dē-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [turbō, disturb], tr., drive off, dislodge.

deus, -i, nom. pl., dii, dat. and abl., dis, m., god.

dē-vehō, -ere, -vexi, -vectum [vehō, convey], tr., carry away, take away, convey, transport.

dē-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, intr., come along, arrive, reach.

dēvōtus, -a, -um [p.p. of dēvoveō], adj., devoted. Subst., dēvōti, -ōrum, m., devoted followers.

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvi, -vōtum [voveō, vow], tr., vow, devote, attach.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right hand, right. Subst., dextra, -ae, f., the right hand.

Diablintēs, -um, m. (dī-ablīn'-tēz), cf. French Jublains: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 9. D 2.

(**dicō**), -ōnis [cf. **dicō**, *devote*],
nom. sing. not used, f., *dominion*,
authority, *sway*.

dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum,
tr. and intr., *say*, *speak*, *assert*,
state, *relate*, *utter*, *express*, *men-*
tion; *appoint*, *set*, *fix*; *agree*.
See *causa*.

dictiō, -ōnis [cf. **dicō**], f., a
pleading, *defence*.

dictum, -ī [p. p. of **dicō**], n.,
word, *utterance*, *assertion*;
order, *command*.

dī-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-
tum, tr., *lead apart*, *separate*,
divide; *scatter*, *spread out*.

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day*;
time, *period*; *ad diem*, *on*
time, *punctually*; *ad certam*
diem, *on a fixed day*, *at a*
fixed time; *diem ex diē*, *day*
after day; *in diēs*, *from day to*
day, *daily*; *in longiorem diem*,
till later.

differō, -ferre, **distuli**, **dilā-**
tum [**dis** + **ferō**], tr. and intr.,
carry in different directions, *scat-*
ter; *differ*.

difficilis, -e [**dis** + **facilis**],
adj., *difficult*, *perilous*.

difficultās, -ātis [**difficilis**],
f., *difficulty*, *trouble*, *obstacle*.

diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum
[**dis** + **fidō**, *trust*], semi-dep.,
intr., *distrust*; *despair of*.

diffuō, -ere, -flūxī, — [**dis**-
+ **fluō**], intr., *flow in different*
directions.

digitus, -ī, m., *finger*.

dignitās, -ātis [**dignus**,
worthy], f., *worth*, *merit*; *dig-*

nity, *authority*, *rank*, *eminence*,
importance.

dī-lūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
tr., *judge between*; *settle*, *de-*
cide.

diligenter [**diligēns**, *careful*],
adv., *with care*, *carefully*, *scru-*
pulously, *diligently*.

diligentia, -ae [**diligēns**, *care-*
ful], f., *care*, *watchfulness*, *dili-*
gence.

dī-mētiōr, -īrī, -mēnsus sum,
dep., tr., *measure off*, *lay out*,
measure.

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
[**micō**, *flash*, *vibrate*], intr., *fight*,
struggle, *contend*.

dimidius, -a, -um [**dis** +
medius], adj., *half*; *one half*
of. Subst., **dimidium**, -ī, n., a
half.

dī-mittō, -ere, -misi, -mis-
sum, tr., *send different ways*,
send out, *despatch*; *send away*,
dismiss; *let go*, *let slip*, *lose*;
leave, *abandon*.

dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum
[**dis** + **emō**], tr., *separate*;
break up, *put an end to*.

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -rep-
tum [**dis** + **rapīō**, *seize*], tr.,
tear to pieces; *lay waste*, *plun-*
der.

dis (-dir-), **dī**, inseparable
prefix used in composition, *asun-*
der, *apart*, *in different direc-*
tions; or with negative force.

dīs, **dītis**, adj., *rich*, *wealthy*.
Superl., **dītissimus**.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -ces-
sum, intr., *depart*, *withdraw*,

leave, disperse; forsake, desert.
See arma.

discessus, -ūs [discēdō], m.,
departure, withdrawal.

disciplina, -ae [cf. discipulus,
pupil], f., *training, drill, dis-*
cipline, skill.

disclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clū-
sum [dis + claudō], tr., *hold*
apart, keep apart, separate.

discō, -ere, didici, —, tr.,
learn, be taught.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum
[dis + iaciō], tr., *break up,*
scatter, disperse, rout, throw into
confusion.

dis-pār, -paris, adj., *unequal,*
ill-matched.

dispergō, -spargere, -spersi,
-spersum [dis + spargō, *scatter*],
tr., *scatter, disperse.*

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -posi-
tum, tr., *place here and there,*
place at intervals; station, post,
arrange, draw up.

disputātiō, -ōnis [disputō,
discuss], f., *discussion, debate,*
dispute.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [dissentiō],
f., *dissension, lack of harmony,*
discord.

dis-sentiō, -ire, -sēnsi, -sēn-
sum, intr., *think differently, dis-*
agree, differ in opinion.

dis-simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
tr., *hide, conceal, pretend not to*
know, ignore.

dissepō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
tr., *scatter, disperse, rout.*

distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -ten-
tum [dis + teneō], tr., *hold*

apart, keep apart, keep away;
divide, separate, keep from unit-
ing.

disto, -stāre, —, — [dis +
stō], intr., *stand apart, be apart,*
be distant.

dis-tribuō, -ere, -tribui, -tri-
būtum, tr., *divide, distribute,*
assign, quarter.

dītissimus, see dīs.

diū, adv., comp. diūtius, su-
perl. diūtissimē, *a long time, a*
long while, long.

diurnus, -a, -um [cf. diēs],
adj., *of the day, by day.*

diūtinus, -a, -um [diū], adj.,
long continued, lasting, long.

diūturnitās, -ātis [diūtar-
nus], f., *long duration, length.*

diūturnus, -a, -um [diū],
adj., *lasting, long, prolonged.*

diversus, -a, -um [p.p. of
divertō, *turn different ways*],
adj., *in different places, apart,*
separate, separated.

Diviciācus, -i, m. (div'-'i-si-
ā'-kus), (1) a prominent Hae-
duan, friend of Caesar and the
Romans. I. 3, 16, 18, 19-20, 31,
32, 41; II. 5, 10, 14, 15. (2) a
king of the Sueiones. II. 4.

Divicō, -ōnis, m. (div'-'i-kō),
a chief and general of the Hel-
vetii. I. 13-14.

dividō, -ere, -visi, -visum,
tr., *divide, separate.*

divinus, -a, -um [divus, *of*
a god], adj., *divine, from the*
gods.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, tr.,
give, assign, allot, bestow, ap-

point; afford, present, allow; make, give (a reply); state, lay down (terms or demands); inter sē dare, exchange.

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, tr., *teach, instruct, direct, inform, show, point out.*

doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, intr., *feel pain; grieve, lament, be sorry, be indignant, resent.*

dolor, -ōris [doleō], m., *pain; grief, distress, regret, vexation, indignation, resentment.*

dolus, -i, m., *craft, cunning, trickery, stratagem.*

domesticus, -a, -um [domus], adj., *of, at, or from home, one's own; internal, civil.*

domicellum, -i [domus], n., *home, dwelling-place, abode.*

dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum [dominus, master], dep., intr., *be lord, be supreme, reign.*

Domitius, -i, m. (do-mīsh'-(i)us), *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul along with Ap-pius Claudius Pulcher in 54. V. 1.

domus, -ūs (locative domī, abl. sing. domō, acc. pl. domōs), f., *house, home. Locative, at home. Acc. sing. after verbs of motion, home, homewards.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dō-num, gift], tr., *present, grant.*

Dūbis, -is, m. (dū'-bis), a river in Celtic Gaul, *the Doubs*. I. 38. GH 3.

dubitātō, -ōnis [dubitō], f., *uncertainty, doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dubius], intr., *doubt, have doubt, hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain; nōn est dubium, there is no doubt.*

ducentī, -ae, -a [duo + cen-tum], num. adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, tr., *lead, conduct, command; prolong, protract; put off, delay; consider, regard, think. With or without in mātīmō-nium, marry.*

dum, conj., *while, until.*

Dumnorix, -igis, m. (dūm'-no-rīks), a prominent Haeduan, unfriendly to the Romans. I. 3, 9, 18-20; V. 6.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two.*

duodecim [duo + decem], in-decl. num., *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um [duo-decim], num. adj., *twelfth.*

duo-dēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *twelve each.*

duo-dē-vigintī, indecl. num., *eighteen.*

duplex, gen. -icis [duo, cf. plicō, fold], adj., *twofold, double.*

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [duplex], tr., *double.*

dūrus, -ā, -um, adj., *hard; adverse, difficult.*

Dūrus, -i, m. (dū'-rus), see *Laberius*.

dux, ducts [cf. dūcō], *leader, guide; commander, general, officer, chief.*

E

ē before consonants only, **ex** before vowels and consonants, prep. with abl., *out of, from, out from, from among, of; from, as a result of, in consequence of; in accordance with, according to, by; since, after.*

eā [abl. f. of **is**], adv., *there, on that side, by that way.*

Eburōnēs, -um, m. (ēb-ū-rō'-nēz), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4; IV. 6; V. 24-53, 58. G H 1.

Eburovicēs, -um, m. (ēb''-ū-ro-vī'-sēz), see **Aulerci**. III. 17. E 2.

ēditus, -a, -um [p.p. of **ēdō**], adj., *raised, elevated, high.*

ē-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., *put forth; visit upon, inflict.*

ē-doceō, -ere, -docui, -doctum, tr., *teach (thoroughly), show in detail, inform.*

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *lead forth, lead out; draw, unsheathe.*

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ex + **fēmina**, *woman*], tr., *make effeminate, weaken, enervate.*

efferrō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex + **ferō**], tr., *carry forth, carry away, take from; report, make known; lift up, elate.*

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [ex + **faciō**], tr., *complete, accomplish, do; render, make; produce, form; bring about, bring to pass, cause.*

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex + **fugiō**], tr. and intr.,

flee away, escape; flee from, escape from.

effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum [ex + **fundō**], tr., *pour forth; sē effundere, rush out, scatter, disperse.*

ego, mei, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, -gredi, ēgressus sum [ex + **gradior, step**], dep., intr., *go out, come forth, sally out, set out, march out, depart, leave; disembark, land.*

ēgregiē [ēgregius], adv., *excellently, remarkably, unusually well.*

ēgregius, -a, -um [ex + **grex, flock**], adj., *extraordinary, distinguished, surpassing, unusual, remarkable.*

ēgressus, -ūs [ēgredior], m., *landing, place for landing.*

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ex + **iaciō**], tr., *cast out, drive out or away, expel, banish; run aground, strand (of ships); sē ēicere, rush out, dash out.*

ē-lābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, dep., intr., *slip out, slip away, escape.*

ēlēctus, -ā, -um [p.p. of **ēligō, pick out**], adj., *picked, select, chosen, choice.*

ēliciō, -licere, -licui, -licitum [-**liciō, lure**], tr., *lure forth, draw out, entice.*

Elusātēs, -um, m. (ēl-ū-sā'-tēz), cf. French **Fauze**: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 5.

ē-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [migrō, *depart*], intr., *emigrate.*

ē-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum,

tr., *send out, send forth; hurl, cast; loose, drop, abandon.*

emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptum, tr., (take); *buy, purchase.*

ē-nāscor, -ī, -nātus sum, dep., intr., *grow out; sprout up.*

enim, conj., *for, for in fact, indeed.*

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *announce, report, disclose, divulge.*

1. **eō** [id], adv., *to that place, thither; in that place, there; thereon; for this reason, for the reason, for the purpose.* With comp., *the, e.g., eō facilius, the more easily.* Correl., **eō** (with comp.) . . . **quō** (with comp.), *the . . . the.*

2. **eō, ire, īi, itūrus, intr.,** *go, start, march, travel, move, proceed, advance.*

eōdem [idem], adv., *to the same place; to the same result, to the same thing.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippium], adj., *riding with a saddle.*

ephippium, -ī, n., *saddle-pad, saddle.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter, epistle.*

eques, -itis [equus], m., *horseman, cavalryman; a knight, one of the equestrian order.*

equester, -tris, -tre [eques], adj., *of or with the cavalry.*

equitātus, -ūs [equitō, ride], m., *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

ērēctus, -a, -um [p.p. of ērigō, raise up], adj., *upright, straight.*

ergā, prep. with acc., *toward, to.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -rīpui, -ruptum [ex + rapiō, seize], tr., *take away, wrest from; rescue, save; sē ēripere, escape, save one's self.*

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., *wander, stray; err, be mistaken.*

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum [rumpō, break], intr., *burst forth, sally forth, rush out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis [erumpō], f., *sally, sortie.*

essedārius, -ī [essedum], m., *a fighter in a war-chariot, chariot-warrior.*

essedum, -ī, n., *war-chariot.*

Esuvii, -ōrum, m. (e-sū/-vi-I), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34; III. 7; V. 24. DE 2.

et, conj., *and; et . . . et, both . . . and.*

etiam [et + iam], conj. and adv., *even, still, yet; also, too, in addition, furthermore, likewise; quin etiam, nay even, nay indeed, nay in fact; cum . . . tum etiam, not only . . . but also; nōn modo or nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only or not merely . . . but also.*

etsi [et + si], conj., *though, although, even if.*

ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum [vādō, go], intr., *escape.*

ē-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum [vellō, tear], tr., *pull or tear out, extract.*

ē-venīō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., *come out; turn out, result, end.*

ēventus, -ūs [ēveniō], m., *occurrence, event; result, outcome, issue; fortune, fate.*

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *call out, summon; challenge.*

ē-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [volō, fly], intr., *fly out, dash out, burst or rush forth.*

ex, see **ē**.

ex-agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [agitō, drive violently], tr., *harass, persecute, give no peace to.*

ex-aminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [exāmen, tongue of a balance], tr., *weigh, test.*

ex-animō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [exanimus, lifeless], tr., *make out of breath, tire, fatigue, exhaust.*

ex-ārdēscō, -ere, -ārsī, -ārsūrus [ārdēscō, blaze up], intr., *blaze out; be incensed, be enraged.*

ex-audiō, -ire, -īvi, -itum, tr., *catch the sound of, hear distinctly.*

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., *go forth, depart, withdraw, retire.*

ex-cipō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [ex + capiō], tr., *take out; receive, meet, withstand; ward off, parry; relieve.*

ex-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [citō, rouse], tr., *rouse, provoke, incite; animate, inspire; raise, erect.*

ex-clūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum

[ex + claudō], tr., *shut out; cut off, prevent, bar.*

ex-cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *think out, discover, invent.*

excursiō, -ōnis [excurrō, run out], f., *sally, sortie.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ex + causa], tr., *excuse, justify; sē excūsāre, apologize.*

exemplum, -i, n., *sample, example, kind; precedent, policy.*

ex-eō, -ire, -īi, -itum, intr., *go out, go forth, march out, withdraw, depart; go on, proceed.*

exerceō, -ēre, -cui, -cītum [ex + arceō, enclose], tr., *employ, train, drill.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis [exercitō, train], f., *exercise, training, discipline, experience.*

exercitātus, -a, -um [p.p. of exercitō, train], adj., *trained, experienced, skilled.*

exercitus, -ūs [exerceō], m., *army.*

ex-hauriō, -ire, -hausī, -haustum [hauriō, drain], tr., *draw out, remove.*

exigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum [ex + agō], tr., *drive out; finish, end.*

exiguitās, -ātis [exiguus], f., *scantiness, small size or number; shortness, insufficiency.*

exiguus, -a, -um [exigō], adj., *small, meagre, scanty.*

eximius, -a, -um [eximō, take out], adj., *remarkable, extraordinary.*

existimātiō, -ōnis [existimō], f., *judgment, opinion.*

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**ex + aestimō**], tr., *consider, conclude, judge, suppose, think, believe.*

exitus, -ūs [**exeō**], m., *a going out; end, outcome, result, issue.*

expeditiō, -ōnis [**expediō, release**], f., *expedition, campaign, raid.*

expeditus, -a, -um [p.p. of **expediō, release**], adj., *unencumbered; unobstructed; without baggage, in light marching order; disengaged, free to act.*

expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr., drive out, drive from, expel, remove.

experior, -iri, -pertus sum, dep., tr. and intr., try, test; undergo, endure; make a trial or attempt; wait for, await.

expiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**piō, appease**], tr., *atone for, expiate; make good, repair.*

explōrātor, -ōris [**explōrō**], m., *spy, scout.*

explōrātus, -a, -um [p.p. of **explōrō**], adj., *assured, certain.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**plōrō, cry out against**], tr., *examine, explore, reconnoitre; try to find out.*

expōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr., put out, set forth; disembark, land; draw up, display.

exportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., carry out, carry off, remove.

exprimō, -ere, -pressi, pressum [**ex + premō**], tr., *press or force out; draw from, elicit.*

ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., take by assault, storm, capture, reduce.

exquirō, -ere, -quisivi, -quisitum [**ex + quaerō**], tr., *search out, inquire about, ask for.*

ex-sequor, -i, -secutus sum, dep., tr., follow up; enforce, assert.

ex-sistō, -ere, -stiti, — [**sistō, set, stand**], intr., *stand forth; appear, arise, spring up.*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., look for, wait for, await; wait, wait to see.

ex-stinguō, -ere, -stinxi, -stinctum [**stinguō, put out**], tr., *extinguish; destroy, lose.*

ex-stō, -stāre, —, —, intr., stand out; protrude, rise above.

ex-struō, -ere, -struxi, -structum [**struō, pile up**], tr., *pile up, heap up; construct, raise.*

extimēscō, -ere, -timui, — [**ex + inch. of timeō**], tr., *fear greatly, dread.*

extrā [**exter, outward**], prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond.*

ex-trahō, -ere, -traxi, -tractum, tr., draw out; waste, fritter away.

extrēmus, -a, -um [superl. of **exterus, outside, outward**], adj., *outermost, extreme, farthest, remotest, last; last part of, end of, rear of; ad extrēmum, at last; extrēmum agmen, rear of a column, the rear; in extrēmis rebus, in extreme danger, in desperate plight.*

extrūdō, -ere, -trūsi, -trū-

sum [trūdō, *push*], tr., *thrust out, shut out.*

exul, -ulla, m., *exile, refugee, outlaw.*

exuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, tr., *take off; strip, deprive, despoil.*

ex-ūrō, ere, -ussi, -ustum [ūrō, *burn*], tr., *burn, burn up.*

F

faber, -bri, m., *workman, artisan, mechanic.*

Fabius, -i, m. (fā'-bi-us), (1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Arverni and Ruteni in 121. I. 45. (2) *Gaius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 46, 47, 53.

facile [facilis], adv., *easily, without difficulty, readily.*

facilis, -e [faciō], adj., *easy, practicable.*

facinus, -oris [faciō], n., *deed; misdeed, wrong, wrongdoing, crime; in sē facinus admittere, be guilty of a misdeed.*

faciō, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, tr., and intr., *make, build, construct, form; do, carry out, execute, accomplish; wage, carry on, engage in; bring to pass, bring about, cause; give, furnish, grant, allow; act, do, do so, behave.* Passive, **fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** (in addition to passives of verbs above), *happen, occur, take place; come to pass, come about, result, be the result.*

factiō, -ōnis [faciō], f., *faction, party.*

factum, -i [p.p. of faciō], n., *deed, act, event.*

facultās, -ātis [facilis], f., *opportunity, chance, possibility; abundance, supply, force.* Pl., *resources, means.*

fāgus, -i, f., *beech-tree.*

fallō, -erē, **fefelli**, **falsum**, tr., *deceive, trick.*

falx, **falcis**, f., *sickle, hook; falx mūrālis, wall-hook.*

fāma, -ae [fārī, *speak*], f., *report, news, rumor.*

famēs, -is, f., *hunger, famine, starvation.*

famīlia, -ae [famulus, *slave*], f., *household, slaves of a household, dependents; mātres famīliae, matrons.*

famīliāris, -e [famīlia], adj., *of a household, private; res famīliāris, property, estate.* Subst., **famīliāris**, -is, m., *intimate friend or acquaintance.*

fās [cf. fārī, *speak*], n. (only nom. and acc. sing.), *divine law or will; right, (what is) lawful; fās esse, be permitted, be the will of the gods.*

fastigātē [fastigātus], adv., *sloping, slanting.*

fastigātus, -a, -um [p.p. of fastigō, *make pointed*], adj., *sloping, descending.*

fātum, -i [p.p. of fārī, *speak*], n., *destiny, fate, doom.*

faveō, -ere, **fāvī**, **fautum**, intr., *favor, be friendly to.*

fēlicitās, -ātis [fēlix, *fortunate*], f., *good luck, good fortune.*

feliciter [fēlix, fortunate],
adv., happily, successfully.

femur, feminis, n., thigh.

ferāx, gen. -ācis [ferō], adj.,
fertile, productive.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly,
about; generally, usually. With
negatives, scarcely, hardly.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, tr.,
bear, carry; endure, meet, with-
stand, suffer; propose, offer.
Passive used reflexively, (of a
river) flow; (of persons) rush,
flee.

ferrāmenta, -ōrum [ferrum],
n., iron implements, tools.

ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum],
adj., of iron, iron.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron; iron
spear-head; sword.

fertilitās, -ātis [fertilis, fer-
tile], f., fertility.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, bar-
barous, savage, uncivilized.

fervefactus, -a, -um [p.p. of
fervefaciō, boil], adj., boiling
hot, red hot.

fervēns, gen. -entis [pr. p. of
ferveō, boil], adj., boiling hot,
glowing.

festūca, -ae, f., pile-driver.

fibula, -ae [figō, fix], f.,
fastening, brace, bolt.

fidēlis, -e [fidēs], adj., faith-
ful, loyal, trustworthy.

fidēs, -ei, f., trust, faith, con-
fidence; trustworthiness, fidel-
ity, loyalty; pledge, word, assur-
ance; protection, care; in fidē
alicūius esse, be under some
one's protection; fidem facere,

inspire confidence, convince;
give assurance, give a pledge;
fidem interpōnere, pledge one's
word; sē in fidem alicūius per-
mittere, or fidem alicūius sequi,
or in fidem alicūius venire,
attach one's self to some one,
put one's self under some one's
protection; aliquem in fidem
recipere, take some one under
one's protection.

figūra, -ae [fingō], f., form,
shape, figure.

filia, -ae, f., daughter.

fillus, -ī, m., son.

fingō, -ere, finxi, fectum, tr.,
form, fashion; make up, invent;
vultum fingere, control one's
expression.

finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum [finis],
tr., limit, bound.

finis, -is, m., end, limit, ex-
tent; Pl., boundaries, frontier;
(usually) country, territory,
land.

finitimus, -a, -um [finis],
adj., adjoining, neighboring,
near. Subst., finitimī, -ōrum,
m., neighbors.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, see
faciō.

firmiter [firmus], adv., stead-
ily; with firm footing.

firmitūdō, -dinis [firmus],
f., strength, stability.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong,
powerful.

Flaccus, -ī, m. (flāk'-us), see
Valerius.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
demand, press for.

flamma, -ae, f., *flame, fire*.
flectō, -ere, **flexī**, -**flexum**,
 tr., *bend, turn; guide*.

fleō, -ēre, **flēvi**, **flētum**, intr.,
weep, wail.

flētus, -ūs [flēō], m., *weep-
 ing, wailing, lamentation*.

flō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,
blow.

flōrēns, gen. -entis [pr. p. of
 flōreō, *bloom*], adj., *flourishing,
 prosperous*.

flūctus, -ūs [fluō], m., *wave,
 billow*.

flūmen, -inis [fluō], n., *river*.
fluō, -ere, **flūxī**, **flūxum**,
 intr., *flow, run*.

fōrma, -ae, f., *form, shape*.

fors, **fortis**, f., *chance*.

forte [abl. of fors], adv., *by
 chance, perchance, perhaps*.

fortis, -e, adj., *strong, stead-
 fast; brave, valiant*.

fortiter [fortis], adv., *bravely,
 valiantly, gallantly*.

fortitūdō, -inis [fortis], f.,
bravery, valor, courage.

fortūna, -ae [fors], f., *for-
 tune (good or bad), luck; con-
 dition, lot, fate*. Pl., *fortunes;
 property, possessions*.

fossa, -ae [fodiō, *dig*], f.,
ditch, trench.

frangō, -ere, **frēgi**, **frāctum**,
 tr., *break, shatter, crush; subdue,
 overcome, dishearten*.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.

frāternus, -a, -um [frāter],
 adj., *of or for a brother, brotherly,
 fraternal; frāternum nōmen,
 the title of brothers*.

fremitus, -ūs [fremō, *roar*],
 m., *murmur, roar, uproar, din,
 hubbub*.

frequēns, gen. -entis, adj.,
in large numbers.

frētus, -a, -um, adj., *leaning
 on, relying on*.

frigidus, -a, -um [frigeō, *be
 cold*], adj., *cold*.

frigus, -oris [frigeō, *be cold*],
 n., *cold, cold weather, cold
 season*.

frōns, **frontis**, f., *forehead;
 front; ā fronte, in front*.

fructuōsus, -a, -um [fructus,
produce], adj., *fruitful, produc-
 tive*.

(frūx), **frūgis**, *produce*. Pl.,
crops.

frūmentārius, -a, -um [frū-
 mentum], adj., *of grain; pro-
 ductive; rēs frūmentāria, grain-
 supply, supplies, provisions*.

frūmentor, -āri, -ātus sum
 [frūmentum], dep., intr., *to for-
 age*.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*. Pl.,
crops, standing grain.

fruor, -ī, **fructus sum**, dep.,
 intr., *enjoy*.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, to no
 purpose, without effect*.

fuga, -ae [fugiō], f., *flight,
 rout; in fugam cōicere or dare,
 put to flight, drive in flight;
 sē fugae mandāre, or fugam
 petere, take to flight*.

fugiō, **fugere**, **fūgi**, **fugi-
 tūrus**, intr., *flee*.

fugitivus, -a, -um [fugiō],
 adj., *fleeing, fugitive*. Subst.,

fugitivī, -ōrum, m., *fugitive slaves.*

fūnus, -ī, m., *smoke.*

funda, -ae, f., *sling.*

funditor, -ōris [funda], m., *slinger.*

fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsum, tr., *pour; rout, vanquish.*

fūns, -is, m., *rope, cable, hawser.*

furor, -ōris, [furō, rage], m., *frenzy, rage, madness, passion.*

fūsis, -e [fundō], adj., *molten, fluid.*

G

Gabinus, -ī, m. (ga-bīn'-i-us), *Aulus Gabinus, consul along with Lucius Calpurnius Piso in 58. I. 6.*

gaesum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

Galba, -ae, m. (gāl'-ba), (1) *king of the Suessiones. II. 4, 13.* (2) *Servius Sulpicius Galba, one of Caesar's lieutenants. III. 1-6.*

galea, -ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul. Gallia citerior, Cisalpine Gaul, the Roman province south of the Alps. I. 24, 54; II. 1, 2; V. 1, 2. Gallia ulterior, farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul. I. 7, 10; II. 2.*

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallia], *adj., Gallic, of Gaul.*

gallīna, -ae [gallus, cock], f., *hen.*

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic. Subst., Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul; Galli, -ōrum, the Gauls.*

Gallus, -ī, m. (gāl'-us), *see Trebius.*

Garumna, -ae, m. (ga-rūm'-na), *a river separating Celtic Gaul from Aquitania, the Garonne. I. 1. DE 4, 5.*

Garumnī, -orum, m. (ga-rūm'-nī), *a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 15.*

Gatēs, -ium, m. (gā'-tēz), *a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. E 4, 5.*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *semi-dep., intr., rejoice, be glad.*

Geidumnī, -ōrum, m. (je-dūm'-nī), *a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.*

Genava, -ae, f., *a city on Lake Lemman, Geneva. I. 6, 7. H 3.*

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim [genus], adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *race, tribe, people.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, stock; birth, family; kind, sort, nature, method, style.*

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany. IV. 4; V. 13.*

Germānicus, -a, -um, 'adj., *German. IV. 16.*

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German. Subst., Germāni, -ōrum, m., the Germans.*

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, tr., *bear, carry; carry on, wage, engage in; conduct, perform. Passive (frequently), take place, go on, be done, happen, occur; rēs gestae, exploits; male rēs gestae, unsuccessful exploits; comminus rem gerere,*

engage in a hand-to-hand combat.

gladius, -i, m., sword.

glāns, glandis, f., acorn, nut; a missile (shaped like an acorn).

glōria, -ae, f., glory, fame, renown, reputation.

glōrior, -āri, -ātus sum [glōria], dep., intr., boast.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek.

Graceli, -ōrum, m. (grā-yō'-se-li), a Gallic tribe in the Alps. I. 10. H 4.

grandis, -e, adj., large, high.

grātia, -ae [grātus], f., favor, esteem, good-will; influence, popularity; grātiās agere, express thanks or gratitude; grātiām referre, requite, make requital, recompense.

grātulātiō, -ōnis [grātulor], f., joy, rejoicing; congratulation.

grātulor, -āri, -ātus sum [grātus], dep., intr., congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, welcome, agreeable; grateful.

gravis, -e, adj., heavy; burdensome; hard, hard to bear; desperate; troublesome, formidable; severe, dangerous; advanced, experienced.

gravitās, -ātis [gravis], f., weight; importance, dignity, power.

graviter [gravis], adv., heavily, violently, hard; severely, sternly; deeply, bitterly; graviter ferre, take to heart, be incensed, be indignant.

gravor, -āri, -ātus sum [gravis], dep., intr., be burdened; hesitate, be unwilling.

Grudii, -ōrum, m. (groo'-di-I), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

gubernātor, -ōris [gubernō, steer], m., pilot, helmsman.

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [gustus, a tasting], tr., taste, eat.

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., have, hold, possess, keep; convene; involve; consider, regard; deliver, make; aliter sē habēre ac, be different from what, be otherwise than.

Haedus, -a, -um, adj., of the Haedui, Haeduan. Subst., **Haedus**, -i, m., a Haeduan; **Haedui**, -ōrum, m. (hēd'-ū-I), the Haedui, the Haeduan, a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 10 and often. FG 3.

Harūdes, -um, m. (ha-roo'-dēz), a tribe in Germany. I. 31, 37, 51. I 3.

haud, adv., not at all, by no means.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., of the Helvetii, Helvetian. Subst., **Helvēti**, -ōrum, m. (hēl'-vē'-shi-I), the Helvetii, the Helvetians, a Gallic people occupying country now a part of Switzerland. I. 1, 2-30, 31, 40; IV. 10. H I 3.

Hibernia, -ae, f. (hi-bēr'-ni-a), Ireland. V. 13.

hibernus, -a, -um [hiems], adj., of winter. Subst., **hiberna**,

-ōrum, n., *winter-quarters, winter camp.*

hic, *haec*, **hōc**, gen. **hūius**, dem. pron. and adj., *this; he, she, it; pl., these, those, they*; pl. n. (often), *these things, such things, these facts, these words; the following, as follows*; **hic . . . ille**, *the latter . . . the former.*

hic [**hic**], adv., *here, in this place.*

hiemō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātūrus** [**hiems**], intr., *pass or spend the winter.*

hiems, **-emis**, f., *winter, winter season; stormy weather.*

Hispania, **-ae**, f., *Spain*. I. 1; V. 1, 13, 27. **Hispania** *citerior*, *hither or nearer Spain*, the northern of the two provinces into which the peninsula was divided. III. 23.

Hispanus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Spanish*. V. 26.

homō, **-inis**, m. and f., *man, person*. Pl., *men, people*.

honestus, **-a**, **-um** [**honōs**], adj., *honored, honorable, distinguished, noble*.

honōrificus, **-a**, **-um** [**honōs**, cf. **faciō**], adj., *conferring honor, honorable, complimentary*.

honōs, **-ōris**, m., *honor, distinction, honorable position, regard, respect*.

hōra, **-ae**, f., *an hour*.

horreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, tr. and intr., *shudder, tremble; fear, dread*.

hōrribilis, **-e** [**horreō**], adj., *terrible, dreadful*.

hortor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, dep., tr., *urge, impel, instigate, encourage, cheer on*.

hospes, **-itis**, m. and f., *guest-friend; host, guest*.

hospitium, **-ī** [**hospes**], n., *hospitality; friendly alliance, guest-friendship; hospitio ūtī*, *be on friendly terms with*.

hostis, **-is**, m. and f. (*stranger*), *enemy*. Sing. sometimes in collective sense, *the enemy*.

hūc [**hic**], adv., *to this place, hither; at this place, here*.

hūmānitās, **-ātis** [**hūmānus**], f., *cultivation, refinement*.

hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** [**homō**], adj., *cultivated, refined, civilized*.

humilis, **-e** [**humus**, *ground*], adj., *low, small; humble, obscure, insignificant*.

humilitās, **-ātis** [**humilis**], f., *lowness, small height; weakness, insignificance*.

I

iaceō, **-ēre**, **-iacuī**, —, intr., *lie, be prostrate; lie dead; iacentēs*, pr. p. as subst., *the fallen, the slain*.

iaciō, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactum**, tr., *throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct*.

iactō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [freq. of **iaciō**], tr., *throw about, toss about; consider, discuss*.

iaculum, **-ī** [**iaciō**], n., *dart, javelin*.

iam, adv., *at this (mentioned) time, now, then; by this time, already; at last, at length*,

finally; now, moreover, furthermore; with negatives, longer, any longer.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

ibidem [ibi], adv., *in the same place, in that very place.*

iccius, -i, m. (ik'-shi-us), a chief of the Remi. II. 3, 6, 7.

ictus, -ūs [icō, *strike*], m., *blow; cast.*

idcirco [id + abl. of *circus*], adv., *on that account, for this purpose.*

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, gen. **ēiusdem**, dem. pron. and adj., *the same; also, likewise, again; idem atque, the same as.*

identidem [idem + et + idem], adv., *repeatedly, again and again.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, adapted, favorable.*

Idūs, **Iduum**, f., pl., *the ides*, the 15th of March, May, July, October, the 13th of the other months.

ignis, -is, m., *fire; watch-fire, signal-fire.*

ignōbilis, -e [in- + (g)nō-bilis], adj., *unknown, obscure.*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [cf. **ignōscō**], tr., *not know, overlook.*

ignōscō, -ere, -gnōvi, -gnōtum [in- + (g)nōscō], intr., *pardon, forgive.*

ignōtus, -a, -um [in- + (g)nōtus], adj., *unknown, strange.*

ille, **illa**, **illud**, gen. **illius**, dem. pron. and adj., *that; this, the following; he, she, it; pl., they, those; hic . . . ille, this*

(here) . . . that (there), the latter . . . the former.

illic [ille], adv., *in that place, there.*

illō [ille], adv., *to that place, thither; to that end or object.*

Illyricum, -i, n. (il-lir'-i-kum), *Illyria*, east of the Adriatic Sea, one of the provinces assigned to Caesar. II. 35; III. 7; V. 1.

imber, -bris, m., *rain, storm.*

immānis, -e, adj., *huge, extraordinary.*

immittō, -ere, -misi, -missum [in + mittō], tr., *send in; send against, launch against; let down, sink.*

immortālis, -e [in- + mortālis, *mortal*], adj., *immortal.*

impedimentum, -i [impediō], n., *a hindrance, impediment. Pl., heavy baggage, baggage-train.*

impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itum [in + pēs], tr., *entangle, hamper, hinder, check, impede, prevent.*

impeditus, -a, -um [p.p. of **impediō**], adj., *encumbered, impeded; difficult, impassable, inaccessible; in the way of; engaged, preoccupied.*

impellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum [in + pellō], tr., *urge on, impel, incite, move, arouse.*

impendeō, -ēre, -pendi, — [in + pendeō, *hang*], intr., *hang over, overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um [p.p. of **impendō**, *weigh out*], adj., *ample, great, high.*

imperātor, -ōris [imperō], m., *commander-in-chief, general.*

imperātum, -ī [p.p. of imperō], n., *command, order, bidding.*

imperitus, -a, -um [in + peritus], adj., *inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant, unfamiliar.*

imperium, -ī [imperō], n., *command, order; authority, rule, power, dominion, sovereignty, supremacy, supreme power; government, empire, realm; nova imperia, change of government, revolution; summa imperi, supreme command.*

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., *order, command, direct; demand of, make requisition for; rule, govern, issue commands, make demands.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + patrō, bring about], tr. and intr., *gain one's end, obtain one's request; accomplish, effect, obtain, gain; bring to pass, obtain permission, prevail upon.*

impetus, -ūs [in, cf. petō], m., *attack, assault, charge, onset; rush, violence, fury, vigor.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + plōrō, cry out], tr., *beg for, beseech, entreat.*

impōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum [in + pōnō], tr., *place upon, mount; impose, assess, exact.*

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + portō], tr., *bring in, import.*

improbis, -a, -um [in +

probus, good], adj., *shameless, wicked, demagogic.*

imprōvisō [abl. n. of imprōvisus], adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.*

imprōvisus, -a, -um [in + prōvisus, foreseen] adj., *unforeseen; dē imprōvisō (n. sing.), suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.*

imprūdēns, gen. -entis [in + prūdēns, foreseeing], adj., *unsuspecting, off one's guard, unprepared.*

imprudentia, -ae [imprūdēns], f., *want of foresight, indiscretion, imprudence.*

impūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + pūgnō], intr., *fight against, attack, invade; fight, charge.*

impulsus, -ūs [impellō], m., *impulse; instigation.*

impūnē [impūnis, unpunished], adv., *without punishment, with impunity.*

impūnitās, -ātis [impūnis, unpunished], f., *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

imū, -a, -um, see inferior.

in-, inseparable particle used in composition with negative force, *not, un-, in-*.

in, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc., *into; towards, against; to, in, on, upon; until, till, for; in regard to; in honor of; for the purpose of, for.* With abl., *in, within, on, upon, over, among; in the country of; in the case of.*

inānis, -e, adj., *empty.*

incendium, -ī [incendō], n., fire, conflagration.

incendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēsum [in + candeō, be bright], tr., set fire to, burn.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain; indefinite; in confusion.

incidō, -ere, -cidī, — [in + cadō], intr., fall on, fall upon; happen, occur; break out.

incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum [in + caedō], tr., cut into, notch.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [in + capiō], tr. and intr., begin, commence.

in-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [citō, rouse], tr., hasten, urge on, spur on; impel, incite; arouse, exasperate; sē incitāre, (of the tide) rush in, come in; rush or dash against.

in-cōgnitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.

in-colō, -ere, -coluī, —, tr. and intr., inhabit, dwell in; live, dwell.

incolumis, -e, adj., uninjured, unharmed, safe, without loss.

incommodē [incommodus, inconvenient], adv., inconveniently, unfortunately.

incommodum, -ī [incommodus, inconvenient], n., disadvantage; discomfort; injury, loss, disaster.

in-crēdibilis, -e [crēdibilis, credible], adj., incredible, extraordinary.

in-crepitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of increpō, rebuke], tr., rebuke, upbraid, taunt, jeer.

incursiō, -ōnis [incurro, run into], f., inroad, raid.

incursus, -ūs [incurrō, run into], m., rush, attack.

incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [in + causa], tr., blame, censure, upbraid.

inde, adv., from that place, from there, thence; next, then.

indiciū, -ī [indicō, inform], n., information, disclosure, evidence.

in-dicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, tr., proclaim; appoint, call.

in-dignitās, -ātis, f., insult, indignity, outrage.

in-dignus, -a, -um [dignus, worthy], adj., unworthy, unbecoming.

in-diligenter [indiligēns, careless], adv., carelessly.

in-ducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead into or on; draw over, cover; induce, influence.

indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum, intr., be kind to, favor, be partial to, be fond of.

induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtum, tr., put on.

indūtia, -ārum, f., truce, armistice.

Indūtiomārus, -ī, m. (Indū'-shi-o-mā'-rus), a chief of the Treveri. V. 3, 4, 26, 53-58.

in-eō, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -itum, tr., go into, enter; form, lay, concoct, adopt; initā aestāte, after the beginning of summer.

inermis, -e [in- + arma], adj., unarmed, defenceless.

iners, gen. **-ertis** [in + *ars*, skill], adj., *unskilful; weak, indolent*.

inferior, **-ius** [comp. of *inferus*, beneath, lower], adj., *lower; weaker; inferior*. Superl., **infimus** or **imus**, *lowest, lowest part of; at the bottom* or *foot*. Subst., **imum**, **-i**, n., *bottom*.

in-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, tr., *bring in or into, import; bring upon, inflict upon; inspire in, infuse into; bring forward, allege*. See *bellum*, *signum*.

inficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** [in + *faciō*], tr., *stain, color*.

infimus, **-a**, **-um**, —, see *inferior*.

in-finitus, **-a**, **-um** [*finitus*, limited], adj., *unlimited, countless*.

infirmitās, **-ātis** [*infirmus*], f., *weakness, want of courage, inconstancy*.

in-firmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *weak; (of ships) unseaworthy*.

in-flectō, **-ere**, **-flexī**, **-flexum**, tr., *bend, bend over*.

in-fluō, **-ere**, **-flūxī**, **-flūxum**, intr., *flow in or into, empty*.

infrā [*inferus*, lower], adj., *below, farther down*.

ingēns, gen. **-gentis**, adj., *vast, huge, enormous*.

ingredior, **-gredi**, **-gressus sum** [in + *gradior*, step], dep., intr., *advance into, enter*.

iniciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [in + *iaciō*] tr., *throw into or*

on; lay on or upon; inspire in, infuse into.

inimicus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + *amīcus*], adj., *unfriendly, hostile*. Subst., **inimicus**, **-i**, m., (*personal*) *enemy, foe, rival*.

iniquitās, **-ātis** [*iniquus*], f., *unevenness, diversity; unfavorable character, difficulty*.

iniquus, **-a**, **-um** [in- + *aequus*], adj., *uneven, rough; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous*.

initium, **-i** [*inēō*], n., *beginning, first part; edge; frontier*.

iniūria, **-ae** [in- + *iūs*], f., *injustice, wrong, wrong-doing, outrage, injury, affront, insult*.

(*inlusus*, **-ūs**) [in- + *iussus*, order], m., *used only in abl., without command, without orders*.

in-ligō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** [*ligō*, bind], *bind on, tie on, fasten, bind together*.

in-nitor, **-i**, **-nixus sum**, dep., intr., *lean on, support one's self on*.

innocentia, **-ae** [*innocēns*, harmless], f., *uprightness, integrity*.

inopla, **-ae** [*inops*, needy], f., *want, lack, dearth, scarcity*.

in-opināns, gen. **-antis** [in- + pr. p. of *opinor*, suppose], adj., *unsuspecting, unaware, by surprise*.

inquam, **inquis**, **inquit**, def., intr., *say*.

in-rideō, **-ēre**, **-risī**, **-risum** [*rideō*, laugh], tr. and intr., *laugh at, jeer, ridicule*.

in-ridiculē [rīdiculē, laugh-
ably], adv., *unwittily*.

**in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -rup-
tum** [rumpō, break], tr. and
intr., *burst into, rush into, force
one's way into; rush upon, make
an attack*.

in-sciēns, gen. -entis [in- +
pr. p. of sciō], adj., *not knowing,
without the knowledge of*.

in-scientia, -ae [in-sciēns], f.,
*ignorance, inexperience, unfam-
iliarity with*.

in-scius, -a, -um [scius, *knowing*],
adj., *ignorant, unaware, uncon-
scious*.

in-sequor, -i, -secūtus sum,
tr., *follow up, follow after, pur-
sue*.

in-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum
[serō, *entwine*], tr., *insert, fix
into*.

insidiae, -arum [cf. insideō,
sit upon], f., *ambush; ambus-
cade; stratagem, craft, treachery*.

insignis, -e [in + signum],
adj., *noted, memorable, signal*.
Subst., **insigne, -is, n.**, *mark,
sign, signal*. Pl., *ornaments,
trappings, badges*.

insillō, -ire, -siluī, — [in +
saliō, *leap*], intr., *leap or spring
upon*.

in-sinuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
[sinuō, *wind*], tr., *push in, work
in; sē insinuāre, work one's way
in*.

insistō, -ere, -stiti, — [sistō,
set, stand], tr. and intr., *set foot,
get a foothold, tread on, stand
on; follow, adopt*.

insolenter [insolēns, *unusu-
al; haughty*], adv., *haughtily,
insolently*.

in-stabilis, -e [stabilis, *sta-
ble*], adj., *unstable, changeable,
uncertain*.

instar, n., indecl., *image,
likeness; instar mūrī, like a
wall*.

instigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
tr., *goad on, drive on, instigate*.

instituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum [in
+ statuō], tr., *set up, construct,
build; draw up, arrange, array;
prepare, furnish, provide, se-
cure; determine upon, form,
adopt; determine, resolve; un-
dertake, begin; train, teach*.

institūtum, -i [p.p. of insti-
tuō], n., *practice, custom*.

in-stō, -āre, -stiti, -stāturus,
intr., *approach, be at hand; ad-
vance, press on or forward*.

instrūmentum, -i [instruō],
n., *implement; equipment, furni-
ture*.

**in-struō, -ere, -strūxi, -strūc-
tum** [struō, *heap up*], tr., *build,
erect; draw up, arrange, array;
furnish, equip, fit out*.

insuēfactus, -a, -um [in-
suēscō, *accustom, + faciō*], adj.,
trained, accustomed.

in-suētus, -a, -um [suētus,
accustomed], adj., *unaccus-
tomed, unused*.

insula, -ae, f., *island*.

in-super [super, *above*], adv.,
on top, above.

integer, -gra, -grum [in-, cf.
tangō], adj., *untouched; unin-*

jured; unwearied, fresh, vigorous.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum [inter + legō, choose], tr., *perceive, understand, see, know; discover, find, find out.*

intentus, -a, -um [p.p. of intendō, stretch], adj., *intent, intent upon.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among, in the midst of; inter sē, to, with or from one another.*

inter-cedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., *come between, be or lie between, exist between; lie in the way; intervene, elapse, pass.*

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [inter + capiō], tr., *intercept, cut off.*

intercludō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum [inter + claudō], tr., *cut off, block up.*

inter-dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, tr., *forbid, prohibit; enjoin, command.*

interdiū [inter, cf. diēs], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

inter-dum, adv., *from time to time, sometimes, occasionally.*

intereā [inter + eā], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intereō, -ire, -lī, -itūrus, intr., *perish, be lost.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [inter + faciō], tr., *kill, slay.*

intericiō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum [inter + iaciō], tr., *place or set among, intermix; interiectus, p.p., lying or occurring at*

intervals; lying between, intervening, having intervened.

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interior, -lus [inter], comp. adj., *inner, interior.* Subst., **interiōrēs, -um, m.**, *people of the interior, people farther inland.*

interitus, -ūs [intereō], m., *destruction, death.*

inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. and intr., *leave between, leave an interval; delay, postpone, suspend, neglect; cease, stop; let pass, fail to improve; intermissus, p.p., elapsed, having elapsed, intervening, having intervened.*

interneciō, -ōnis [cf. necō], f., *destruction, extermination.*

inter-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *interrupt, obstruct, molest.*

inter-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *put between; interpose, put forward; try to cause; interpositus, p.p., intervening, having intervened.*

interpres, -etis, m., *interpreter.*

inter-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum [scindō, tear], tr., *tear asunder; break down, destroy.*

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, intr., *be or lie between; be an interval; be present at, take part in, participate in; interest, impers., it is of importance, is of interest, concerns.*

inter-vāllum, -ī, n., *(space between palisades), intervening*

space, interval, distance away, distance.

interventus, -ūs [interveniō, come between], m., intervention.

in-textō, -ere, -texui, -textum [texō, weave], tr., weave in or together.

intrā [cf. inter], prep. with acc., within, inside of; into.

in-tritus, -a, -um [in- + p.p. of terō, wear away], adj., not exhausted.

1. **intrō** [cf. inter], adv., used in composition, to the inside, within, in.

2. **intrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [cf. inter and 1 intrō], tr., enter, penetrate.

intrō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead into, conduct into.

intro-eō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, —, intr., go in; enter.

introitus, -ūs [introeō], m., entrance; place of entrance, passage.

intrō-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr., send in; let in, admit.

intrōrsus [intrō + versus], adv., towards the inside, into, on the inside.

intrō-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum [rumpō, break], intr., break in or through, force an entrance.

in-tueor, -ēri, -tuitus sum, dep., tr., look or gaze upon.

intus, adv., inside, within.

in-ūsītātus, -a, -um [in- + p.p. of ūsitor, use often], adj., unusual, unfamiliar.

in-ūtilis, -e, adj., useless, incapable of service.

in-veniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, tr., find, discover; find out, learn.

in-veterāscō, -ere, -āvi, — [veterāscō, grow old], intr., grow old; become fixed or established, gain a foothold.

in-victus, -a, -um, adj., unconquered; invincible.

in-videō, -ēre, -vīdi, -visum, intr., (look askance at), envy, be jealous of.

in-violātus, -a, -um [in- + p.p. of violō, injure], adj., (unhurt); inviolable, inviolate.

in-vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., invite, summon; allure, lure on, entice.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling, against one's will or wish.

ipse, -a, -um, gen. **ipsius**, intensive pron., with another word, himself, herself, itself. Pl., themselves; in person; very, just, precisely, mere. Alone, he himself, she herself, etc.; he, she, it, they.

irācundus, -a, -um [irāscor, be angry], adj., irascible, passionate.

is, **ea**, **id**, gen. **ēius**, dem. pron. and adj., he, she, it. Pl., they; this, these, that, those, the; such.

ita, adv., thus, in this way or manner, so; so accordingly; as follows; nōn ita, not very, not so very; ita . . . ut, just as, in such a way . . . that, so

... *that*; *ut* ... *ita*, *just as* ... *so also*.

Italla, -ae, f., *Italy*. I. 10, etc.
ita-que, conj., and so; accordingly, therefore, consequently.

item, adv., likewise, also, too, as well.

iter, **itineris**, n., *journey, march; road, route, way, course; passage, right of way; ex itinere, (immediately) after a march, on the way, without halting, at once; **iter facere**, to march, to pass, to be on one's way; **magna itinera**, forced marches.*

iterum, adv., again, a second time; **semel atque iterum**, more than once, repeatedly.

Itius, -i, m., **portus Itius** (Ish'-i-us), a harbor on the north coast of Gaul, probably Wissant, where Caesar embarked on his British campaigns. V. 2, 5.

iuba, -ae, f., *mane*.

iubeō, -ēre, -iussī, -iussum, tr., order, command, direct, bid.

iudicium, -i [iūdex, judge], n., trial; judgment, decision, opinion; **iudicium facere**, express an opinion.

iudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [iūdex, judge], tr., judge, pass judgment, decide; **adjudge**, declare; think, consider, be of an opinion.

iugum, -i [cf. iungō], n., yoke, collar; yoke (of spears); **summit**; ridge, chain (of mountains or hills).

iumentum, -i [cf. iungō and

iugum], n., *beast of burden, draught-animal, pack-animal*.

iunctūra, -ae [iungō], f., a joining, joint.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctum, tr., join or lash together, bind.

Iūnius, -ī, m. (jūn'-yus), (1) see **Brūtus**. (2) **Quintus Iūnius**, a Spaniard in Caesar's army. V. 27, 28.

Iūra, -ae, m. (jū'-ra), a range of mountains, the *Jura*. I. 2, 6, 8. H 8.

iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [iūs], intr., swear, take oath.

iūs, **iūris**, n., legal right, right, privilege; law, power, authority.

iūs-iurandum, **iūris-iurandi**, n., an oath.

iūstitia, -ae [iūstus], f., justice, uprightness.

iūstus, -a, -um [iūs], adj., just, lawful, rightful, valid; regular, usual.

iuventūs, -ūtis [iuvenis, young], f., youth. Collective, young persons, young men.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, tr., aid, assist, support.

iūxtā, prep. with acc., and adv., near, near by.

K

Kal., abbr. for **Kalendae**.

Kalendae, -ārum, f., *Calends*, the first day of the month.

L

L., abbr. for the praenomen **Lūcius** (loo'-sh(i)us).

Laberius, -ī, m. (la-bē'-ri-us), *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune in Caesar's army. V. 15.

Lablēnus, -ī, m. (lā-bi-ē'-nus), *Titus Labienus*, Caesar's foremost lieutenant in the Gallic War. I. 10, etc.; II. 1, 11, 26; III. 11; IV. 38; V. 8, 17, 23, 24, 27, 37, 46, 47, 53-58.

lābor, -ī, **lāpsus** *sum*, dep., intr., *slip; go wrong, commit a folly; fall away, fail in allegiance; be deceived, be disappointed.*

labor, -ōris, m., *labor, toil, exertion; endurance; hardship.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [*labor*], intr., *labor, strive for, exert one's self; be hard pressed, be in danger.*

lābrum, -ī, n., *a lip; edge, margin, brim.*

lāc, **lactis**, n., *milk.*

laccēsō, -ere, -cessīvi, -cessitum, tr., *provoke, exasperate, harass, attack, assail.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*

laetitīa, -ae [*laetus*], f., *joy, rejoicing, exultation.*

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, exultant.*

languidus, -a, -um [*languēō*], *be weak*, adj., *weak, exhausted.*

languor, -ōris [*languēō*], *'be weak'*, m., *feebleness, weariness.*

lapis, -idis, m., *a stone.*

largior, -iri, -itus *sum* [*largus, abundant*], dep., tr., and intr., *give lavishly; bestow, furnish.*

largiter [*largus, abundant*], adv., *abundantly, much; largiter posse, to have great influence.*

largitiō, -ōnis [*largior*], f., *lavish giving, generosity.*

lassitūdō, -dinis [*lassus, faint*], f., *weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē [*lātus*], adv., *widely, extensively; longē latēque, far and wide, on all sides.*

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., *lurk, lie hid, escape notice.*

lātītūdō, -dinis [*lātus*], f., *breadth, width, extent; in lātītūdinem, in width, in extent; horizontally, sidewise.*

Latobrigi, -ōrum, m. (lāt-obri'-ji), a tribe in Germany. I. 5, 28, 29. I 2.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber, brigand.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide, extensive.*

latus, **lateris**, n., *side, flank.*

laus, **laudis**, f., *praise, glory.*

lavō, -āre, **lāvi**, **lautum** or **lōtum**, tr., *wash, bathe.*

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [*laxus, loose*], tr., *extend, open, open out.*

lēgātīō, -ōnis [*lēgō, depute*], f., *the office of ambassador; mission; deputation, commission, embassy.*

lēgātus, -ī [p.p. of *lēgō, depute*], m., *representative, commissioner, envoy; lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis [*legō, select, collect*], f., *legion.*

legiōnārius, -a, -um [*legiō*], adj., *legionary, of the line.*

Lemannus, -ī, m., lacus
Lemannus, *Lake Leman, Lake Geneva*. I. 2, 8; III. 1. H 3.

lēnis, -e, adj., *soft, mild, gentle, moderate*.

lēnitās, -ātis [lēnis], f., *smoothness, gentleness*.

lēniter [lēnis], adv., *mildly, gently; gradually*.

Lepontii, -ōrum, m. (le-pōn'-shi-i), an Alpine tribe. IV. 10. I 3.

lepus, -oris, m., *a hare*.

Leuci, -ōrum, m. (lū'-sl), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 40. G H 2.

Levāci, -ōrum, m. (le-vā'-sl), cf. French Léau: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

levis, -e, adj., *light; heedless, imprudent*.

levitās, -ātis [levis], f., *lightness; thoughtlessness, fickleness, inconstancy*.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [levis], tr., *lighten, lift up; relieve, free*.

lēx, lēgis, f., *law; resolution*.

Lexovii, -ōrum, m. (lēk-sō'-vi-i), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 9, 11, 17, 29. D E 2.

libenter [libēns, *willing*], adv., *willingly, gladly*.

liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free, unrestricted*. Subst.; **liberi**, -ōrum, m., (*free persons*), *children*.

liberālītās, -ātis [liberālis, *befitting a freeman*], f., *affability; liberality, generosity*.

liberālīter [liberālis, *befit-*

ting a freeman], adv., *courteously, kindly, graciously*.

liberē [liber], adv., *freely, openly, frankly, boldly*.

liberi, -ōrum, see **liber**.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [liber], tr., *set free, free, relieve*.

libertās, -ātis [liber], f., *freedom, liberty, independence*.

liceor, -ēri, licitus sum, dep., intr., *to bid*.

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, intr., impers., *it is allowed or permitted; one is permitted, one may*.

Liger, -eris, m. (lī'-jer), a river in Celtic Gaul, the Loire. III. 9. D E F 3.

lignātiō, -ōnis [lignor, *gather wood*], f., (*the act of*) *getting wood*.

lignātor, -ōris [lignor, *gather wood*], m., *wood-cutter*.

Lingonēs, -um, m. (līng'-gonēz), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 26, 40; IV. 10. G 2.

lingua, -ae, f., *the tongue; speech, language*.

lingula, -ae [dim. of *lingua*], f., *a tongue of land*.

linter, -tris, f., *boat, skiff*.

linum, -ī, n., *flax; linen*.

lis, litis, f., *strife; litigation*; **litem aestimāre**, *pass judgment, assess damages*.

Liscus, -i, m. (līs'-kus), a Haeduan, chief magistrate at the time of Caesar's arrival in Gaul. I. 16, 17, 18.

littera, -ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet. Pl., writing; letter,*

epistle, despatch; litterae pūblicae, official documents or records.

litus, -oris, n., sea-shore, beach, strand.

locus, -ī (pl., loca, -ōrum, n.), m., place, spot, locality, region; space, ground; situation, condition; rank, place, position; chance, opportunity.

longē [longus], adv., far, far off, away, distant; by far. See lātē.

longinquus, -a, -um [longus], adj., far distant, remote; long continued, prolonged.

longitūdō, -dinis [longus], f., length; in longitūdinem, in length.

longurius, -ī [longus], m., a long pole.

longus, -a, -um, adj., long, extended. See diēs.

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, dep., tr. and intr., talk, speak, say.

lōrica, -ae [lōrum, strap], f., cuirass, corselet; breastwork, parapet.

Lūcānius, -ī, m. (loo-kā'-ni-us), Quintus Lucanius, a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 85.

Lugotorix, -igis, m. (loo-gōt'-o-rīks), a British chief. V. 22.

lūna, -ae, f., the moon.

lūx, lūcis, f., light; daylight, day; primā lūce, at daybreak, at dawn; ortā lūce, in the morning, by morning.

lūxuria, -ae [lūxus, excess], f., luxury, extravagant living.

M

M. = mille, 1000.

M., abbr. for the praenomen Mārcus (mār'-kus).

māchinātīō, -ōnis [māchinor, invent], f., mechanical contrivance, machine, engine of war.

Magetobriga, -ae, f. (māj-e-tōb'-ri-ga), a Gallic town, site unknown, near which the Haedui and allies were defeated by Ariovistus. I. 31. H 3 (?).

magis [cf. māgnus], comp. adv., more, rather. Superl., mājimē [māximus], in the highest degree, most, very; most of all, more than anything else, principally, especially.

magistrātus, -ūs [magister, master], m., magistracy, office; magistrate.

māgnitūdō, -dinis [māgnus], f., greatness, great size, size, magnitude; severity, violence.

māgnopere [māgnō + opere], adv., very much, strongly, earnestly.

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., comp., mājor, -ius, superl., mājimus, large, great; māgnī (n. gen.), of great importance or weight. Pl. comp. as subst., mājōrēs, -um, m., ancestors, forefathers; mājōrēs nātū, older people, elders, old men.

malacia, -ae, f., a calm (at sea).

male [malus, bad], adv., comp., pēius, superl., pessimē, badly, unsuccessfully. Pēius, worse.

malefīcium, -ī [malefīcus,

wicked], n., *wrong-doing, mischief, damage.*

mālō, mälle, mālui [magis + volō], tr., *choose rather, prefer.*

mālus, -ī, m., pole; mast.

mandātum, -ī [p.p. of mandō], n., *injunction, command, order.*

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [manus + dō], tr., *hand over; intrust, commit, confide; assign a task or duty, direct, instruct.* See fuga.

Mandubracius, -ī, m. (mān'-dū-brā'-sh(i)-us), a prince of the Trinovantes, in Britain. V. 20, 22.

māne, adv., in the morning.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, intr., stay, remain; persist, remain steadfast.

manipulus, -ī, m., a manipule, one-third of a cohort.

Mānlius, -ī, m. (mān'-li-us), Lucius Manlius, a Roman proconsul defeated by the Aquitani in 78. III. 20.

mānsuētūdō, -dinis [mānsuētus, tamed], f., gentleness, leniency.

manus, -ūs, f., the hand; hand, force, forces; manū (in contrast to nātūrā), by hand, artificially; manūs dare, give up, yield; in manibus nostris, close upon us.

Marcomannī, -ōrum, m. (mār-ko-mān'-nī), a tribe in Germany. I. 51. J 2.

mare, -is, n., the sea; mare Oceanum, the ocean.

maritimus, -a, -um [mare], adj., of the sea, along the coast, maritime; maritimae rēs, sea-faring, naval tactics or operations.

Marius, -ī, m. (mā'-ri-us), Gaius Marius, a Roman general, conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutones. I. 40.

matara, -ae, f. (Celtic word), javelin, pike.

māter, -tris, f., mother; mātres familiae, matrons.

māteria, -ae, f., material; timber, lumber.

mātrimōnium, -ī [māter], n., marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry.

Matrona, -ae, m. (māt'-ro-na), a river in Gaul, the Marne. I. 1. FG 2.

mātūrē [mātūrus], adv., early, soon, quickly.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [mātūrus], tr. and intr., make haste, hasten.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe, mature; early.

māximē, see magis.

māximus, -a, -um, see māgnus.

Māximus, -ī, m. (māk'-si-mus), see Fabius.

medeor, -eri, —, dep., intr., to remedy, relieve.

medlocris, -e [medius], adj., moderate, ordinary.

mediocriter [mediocris], adv., moderately; nōn medicriter, in no slight degree.

Mediomatrici, -um, m. (mē'-di-o-māt'-ri-sī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. IV. 10. GH 2.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius + terra], adj., inland, of the interior.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, central; middle of, midst of; halfway up, across, or between.

Meldi, -ōrum, m. (mēl'-dī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. V. 5. F 2.

membrum, -ī, n., limb (of the body).

memini, -isse, def., tr., remember.

memoria, -ae [memor, mindful], f., memory, remembrance; **memoriā**, within the memory, in the time.

Menapii, -ōrum, m. (menā'-pi-i), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4; III. 9, 28, 29; IV. 4, 22, 38. GH 1.

mēns, **mentis**, f., mind; reason, judgment; disposition, character.

mēnsis, -is, m., a month.

mēnsūra, -ae [mētior], f., measurement.

mercātor, -ōris [mercōr, to trade], m., trader, merchant.

mercēs, -ēdis [cf. mercōr, to trade], f., price, hire, compensation.

mereor, -ēri, -itus sum, dep., tr. and intr., deserve, merit; win, acquire; serve, render service; **dē** . . . **merēri**, render service to, be deserving of.

meridiānus, -a, -um [meri-

diēs], adj., of midday; **meridiānum tempus**, noon.

meridiēs, -ēi, m., noon; the south.

meritum, -ī [p.p. of mereō, deserve; serve], n., merit, service, favor, kindness.

Messāla, -ae, m. (me-sā'-la), **Marcus Valerius Messala**, consul along with Marcus Pupius Piso in 61. I. 2, 35.

mētor, -iri, **mēnsus sum**, dep., tr., measure out, deal out, distribute.

Metius, -ī, m. (mē'-sh(i)-us), **Marcus Metius**, a friend of Caesar's sent as envoy to Ariovistus. I. 47, 53.

metō, -ere, **messui**, **messum**, tr., reap, cut (grain).

metus, -ūs, m., fear, dread.

meus, -a, -um, possess. adj., my, my own, mine.

miles, -itis, m., soldier.

militāris, -e [mīles], adj., of war, military; **rēs militāris**, science or art of war, military service.

mille, num., indecl. in sing., pl., **milla**, -ium, a thousand.

minimē, see **parum**.

minus, -a, -um, see **parvus**.

minor, -us, see **parvus**.

minuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, tr. and intr., lessen, diminish, impair, weaken; settle, adjust; ebb (of the tide).

minus, see **parum**.

miror, -āri, -ātus sum [mīrus], dep., tr. and intr., wonder, wonder at.

mirus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, strange, extraordinary.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, pitiable, deplorable.*

misericordia, -ae [miseri-cors, compassionate], f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

miseror, -āri, -ātus sum [miser], dep., tr., *lament, commiserate.*

(**missus**, -ūs) [mittō], m., only in abl. sing., *a sending*; **missū Caesaris**, sent by Caesar, as Caesar's representative.

mittō, -ere, misī, missum, tr., *send, despatch; hurl, cast, launch.*

mōbilis, -e [moveō], adj., *unstable, thoughtless, impulsive.*

mōbilitās, -ātis [mōbilis], f., *rapidity, mobility; instability, impulsiveness.*

mōbilliter [mōbilis], adv., *quickly; easily.*

moderor, -āri, -ātus sum [modus], dep., tr., *manage, control, guide.*

modo [abl. of modus], adv., *only, merely, even, so much as.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, size, amount; sort, kind; way, method, manner; capacity; ad eundem modum, in the same manner; ad hunc modum, in the following manner; quem ad modum, as; how; ēius modī, of such a sort or kind, such; hūius modī, of this sort, as follows; in mīrum modum, surprisingly, astonishingly; nūllō modō, in no way, not at all.*

moenia, -ium, n., *walls (of a town).*

mōlēs, -is, f., *a mass; dike, mole.*

molestē [molestus, troublesome], adv., *with trouble or vexation; molestē ferre, be vexed or annoyed, resent.*

mōlimentum, -ī [mōlior, exert one's self], n., *trouble, effort.*

mollis, -e, adj., *gentle, timid, weak; smooth, gently sloping.*

molō, -ere, molui, molitum, tr., *grind.*

Mona, -ae, f. (mō'-na), an island in the Irish Sea, Anglesey. V. 13.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., *warn, urge, advise, direct.*

mōns, montis, m., *a mountain, range of mountains.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

Morini, -ōrūm, m. (mōr'-i-nī), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4; III. 9, 28, 29; IV. 21, 22, 37, 38; V. 24. F 1.

morior, morī, mortuus sum [cf. mors], dep., intr., *die.*

Moritasgus, -ī, m. (mōr-i-tās'-gus), a king of the Senones. V. 54.

moror, -āri, -ātus sum [mora], dep., tr. and intr., *delay, linger, wait, remain; hinder, impede.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mōs, mōris, m., *manner, fashion, custom, practice.*

Mosa, -ae, m. (mō'-sa), a river in Celtic and Belgic Gaul,

the Meuse or Maas. IV. 9 ff.; V. 24. G 1, 2.

mōtus, -ūs [moveō], m., motion, movement; disturbance, uprising, insurrection.

moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, tr., move; break (camp).

muller, -eris, f., woman.

multitūdō, -dinis [multus], f., large number, multitude; overpowering numbers; the multitude, the common people.

multō [abl. n. of multus], adv., much, far, by far.

multum [acc. n. of multus], adv., much, greatly; often.

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp., **plūs**, superl., **plūrimus**, much; pl., many. Subst., **multum**, -ī, n., a great part, much; pl., many things. Subst., **plūs**, -ūris, n., more, a. greater amount; **plūrēs**, subst. or adj., more; several; many, too many. Subst., **plūrimum**, -ī, n., a great deal, most; **plūrimī**, -ōrum, m., a great many, very many, the most.

Munātilus, -ī, m. (mū-nā'-sh(i)us), Lucius Munatius Plan-
cus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 25.

mūnimentum, -ī [mūniō], n., defence, fortification.

mūnio, -īre, -ivī, -itum [moenia], tr., (furnish with walls); fortify, protect; construct.

mūnitus, -a, -um [p.p. of mūniō], adj., fortified, protected, defended.

mūnitlō, -ōnis [mūniō], f., the work of fortifying; defence, fortifications, intrenchments.

mūrālis, -e [mūrus], adj., of a wall, wall-, mural. See **falx**, **pilum**.

mūrus, -ī, m., a wall, city wall.

N

nactus, -a, -um, see **nancīscor**.
nam, conj., for; enclitic with interrogatives, pray, indeed.

Nammēlius, -ī, m. (na-mē'-yus), a Helvetian, sent as envoy to Caesar. I. 7.

Nannetēs, -um, m. (nām'-ne-tēz), cf. French Nantes: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 9. D 3.

nam-que, conj., for indeed, naturally enough for, inasmuch as, seeing that.

nancīscor, -ī, **nactus sum**, dep., tr., obtain, secure, find, meet with.

Nantuātēs, -ium, m. (nān-tū-ā'-tēz), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 1-6; IV. 10. H 3, 4.

Narbō, -ōnis, m. (nār'-bō), a city in the Transalpine province, now Narbonne. III. 20. F 5.

nāscor, -ī, **nātus sum**, dep., intr., be born, spring from; be produced, be raised; be found; rise, arise.

Nasua, -ae, m. (nāsh'-ū-a), a leader of the Suebi. I. 37.

nātlō, -ōnis [nāscor], f., tribe, race, people.

nātūra, -ae [nāscor], f., nature, character; **nātūrā**, naturally, by nature.

(**nātus**, -ūs) [**nāscor**], m., used only in abl. sing., *birth*, *age*. See **māiōrēs**.

nauta, -ae [for **nāvita**, from **nāvis**], m., *sailor, seaman*.

nauticus, -a, -um [**nauta**], adj., *naval, nautical*; **rēs nauticae**, *naval affairs, seamanship*.

nāvālis, -e [**nāvis**], adj., *naval*.

nāvicula, -ae [dim. of **nāvis**], f., *skiff, boat*.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [**nāvigō**], f., *sailing, navigation; voyage*.

nāvigium, -i [**nāvigō**], n., *vessel, ship*; **nāvigium vectōrium**, *transport-ship, transport*; **nāvigium speculātōrium**, *spy-boat*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**nāvis** + **agō**], intr., *sail, navigate*.

nāvis, -is, f., *ship*; **nāvis āctuāria**, *a swift galley*; **nāvis longa**, *war-galley, man-of-war*; **nāvis onerāria**, *transport-ship, transport*.

nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**nāvus**, *busy*], tr., *do zealously; operam nāvāre*, *do one's best*.

nē, conj., *not*. In clauses of purpose, *that not, in order that not, in order not to, not to*; *lest, for fear that*. In substantive object clauses, *not to, that not*; after verbs of fear, *that*; verbs of hindering, *from*. In substantive clauses used as subject or in apposition, *that not*. **Nē quis**, see **quis**. Adv., in the combination **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*.

-**ne**, enclitic particle, sign of a question. In indirect double questions, -**ne . . . an**, or -**ne . . . ne**, *whether . . . or*.

nec, see **neque**.

necessāriō [abl. n. of **necessārius**], adv., *necessarily, inevitably, unavoidably*.

necessārius, -a, -um [**necesse**], adj., *necessary, indispensable, essential; urgent, critical*. Subst., **necessārii**, -ōrum, m., *close friends, kinsmen*.

necesse, adj., only nom. and acc. sing. n., *necessary, inevitable*.

necessitās, -ātis [**necesse**], f., *necessity, need, exigency*.

necessitūdō, -dinis [**necesse**], f., *close connection, intimate friendship*.

nec-ne, conj., in indirect double questions, *utrum . . . necne, whether . . . or not*.

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [**nex**], tr., *kill, put to death*.

neglegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum [**nec** + **legō**, *gather, choose*], tr., *disregard, overlook, neglect, let go unpunished or unavenged*.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., *say not; refuse, deny; stand out against*.

negōtium, -i [**nec** + **ōtium**, *leisure*], n., *business, affair; task, duty; undertaking, purpose; trouble, difficulty*.

Nemetēs, -um, m. (**nēm** - **tēz**), a German tribe near the Rhine. I. 51. I 2.

nēmō, no gen., dat. **nēmīni** [**nē** + **homō**], m. and f., *nobody*.

nē-quāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all*.

neque or **nec**, adv. and conj., *and not, nor; and yet not, but not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*.

nēquiquam [**nē** + **quīquam**, abl. of **quisquam**], adv., *in vain; without purpose, recklessly*.

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., *of or with the Nervii*. III. 5.

Nervius, -ī, m., *one of the Nervii*. Pl., *the Nervii* (**nēr'-vi-ī**), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 15-29, 32; V. 24, 38-52, 56, 58. FG 1.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew*. Pl., *strength, power*.

neu or **nē-ve**, conj., usually following **ut** or **nē**, *and not, and that not*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. -trius [**nē** + **uter**], pronom. adj., *neither*. Pl., *neither side, neither party*.

nex, **neclis**, f., *death (by violence)*.

nihil [**nihilum**], n., indecl., *nothing*. Adverbially, *not at all, not in the least; nōn nihil, somewhat, to some extent*.

nihilum, -ī [**nē** = **nē**, *not*, + **hilum**, *a bit*], n., *nothing*. Abl. **nihilō**, with comparatives, *by nothing, none the; nihilō magis, none the more; nihilō minus, none the less, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, nevertheless, however*.

nisi [**nē** = **nē**, *not*, + **si**], conj.,

if not, unless. With adversative force, *except, but*.

nitor, -ī, **nixus** or **nisus sum**, dep., intr., *lean; rely or depend upon; strive, endeavor*.

nōbillis, -e [**nōscō**], adj., *famous, noted; of high birth or rank, nobly born, noble*. Subst., **nōbillēs**, -ium, m., *men of high rank, nobles*.

nōbillitās, -ātis [**nōbillis**], f., *fame; high or noble birth, nobility*. Collective, *the nobility, nobles*.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., *injure, harm, do harm; nihil nocēre, do no harm*.

noctū [cf. **nox**], adv., *in the night, at or by night*.

nocturnus, -a, -um [**nox**], adj., *by or at night, nocturnal*.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōlui** [**nē** + **volō**], tr. and intr., *wish not, be unwilling*.

nōmen, -inis, n., *name, title; guise, pretext; fame, prestige; power, nation*.

nōminātīm [**nōminō**], adv., *by name, one by one*.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**nōmen**], tr., *name, call; mention*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōnāgintā, indecl. num., *ninety*.

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnus, -a, -um [**novem**], num. adj., *ninth*.

Nōrēia, -ae, f. (**no-rē'-ya**), capital of the Norici, now *Neumarkt*. I. 5.

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., of the *Norici*, *Norican*; *ager Nōricus*, the land of the *Norici*. I. 5. Subst., *Nōrica*, -ae, f., a *Norican woman*. I. 53.

nōscō, -ere, *nōvī*, *nōtum*, tr., become acquainted with, learn. Perfect, *know*, be acquainted with.

noster, -tra, -trum [*nōs*], possess. adj., our, ours, our own. Subst., *nostrī*, -ōrum, m., our men, troops, or soldiers.

nōtus, -a, -um [p.p. of *nōscō*], adj., known, familiar.

novem, indecl. num., nine.

Noviodūnum, -ī, n. (*nō''-vi-o-dū'-num*), (1) A town of the *Bituriges*. F 3. (2) A town of the *Haedui*, now *Nevers*. F 3. (3) A town of the *Suessiones*, now *Soissons*. II. 12. F 2.

novitās, -ātis [*novus*], f., novelty, strangeness.

novus, -a, -um, adj., new, recent, fresh; unusual, novel, strange; *nova imperia* or *novae rēs*, change in government, revolution. Superl., last, latest, most recent; rear. Subst., *novissimī*, -ōrum, m., those in the rear line, the rear line.

nox, *noctis*, f., night. See *adversus*. *media nox*, mid-night; *multā nocte*, late at night; *ad multam noctem*, till late at night; *primā nocte*, at night-fall, early at night.

nūbō, -ere, *nūpsi*, *nūptum*, intr., (veil one's self), be married; *conlocāre nūptum*, give in marriage.

nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [*nūdus*], tr., lay bare, strip, leave exposed or unprotected.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, bare; exposed, unprotected.

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. *nullius* [*ne = nē + ūllus*], pronom. adj., no, none, not any; no one, nobody; *nōn nūllus*, some; pl., some, several, certain.

num, interrog. particle, anticipating a negative answer.

numerus, -ī, m., number; rank, esteem.

Numidae, -ārum, m., the *Numidians*, a people of northern Africa, employed in Caesar's army as archers and other light-armed troops. II. 7, 10, 24.

nummus, -ī, m., a coin; money.

numquam [*ne = nē + um-quam*], adv., never; *nōn numquam*, sometimes, occasionally.

nunc, adv., now, at present.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [*nūntius*], tr., announce, report; give orders, direct.

nūntius, -ī, m., messenger, courier; message, report, news.

nūper, adv., recently, lately.

nūtus, -ūs [*nuō*, *nod*], m., nod, beckoning, gesture; *ad nūtum*, at a nod.

O

ob, prep. with acc., (over against), on account of, because of, for; *ob eam causam* or *ob eam rem*, for that reason, for

this reason; quam ob rem, therefore; why.

obaeratus, -a, -um [ob + aes], adj., in debt. Subst., obaerāti, -ōrum, m., debtors.

ob-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., construct, extend.

ob-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr., (go to meet), attend to.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ob + iaciō], tr., throw before or in the way, place in front, interpose; expose, present; obiectus, p.p., lying opposite or in the way, presenting itself.

obitus, -ūs [obeō], m., downfall, destruction.

obliquē [obliquus, slanting], adv., obliquely, slantingly.

obliscor, -i, -litus sum, dep., tr. and intr., forget.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ob + sacrō, make sacred], tr., beseech, entreat, implore.

ob-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., watch, observe, heed, regard, obey.

obses, -sidis [cf. obsideō], m. and f., hostage.

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum [ob + sedeō, sit], tr., besiege, invest; take possession of, blockade.

obsidiō, -ōnis [obsideō], f., siege, investment, blockade; oppression, persecution.

ob-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [signō, mark, seal], tr., to seal, attest under seal.

obstinātē [obstinātus, resolved], adv., firmly, resolutely.

ob-stringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum [stringō, draw tight], tr., bind, place under obligations.

ob-struō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum [struō, pile up], tr., bar, barricade.

ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., submit to, obey.

ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum [testor, invoke], dep., tr., beg, implore, urge.

ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum [ob + teneō], tr., have, hold, possess, occupy; keep, maintain; acquire, obtain, secure.

ob-venīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come up to, meet.

occāsiō, -ōnis [occidō], f., opportunity, favorable opportunity.

occāsus, -ūs [occidō], m., a falling, setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset; the west.

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -casum [ob + cadō], intr., fall down, fall; set; perish; occidēns sōl, the west.

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum [ob + caedō], tr., cut down, kill, slay.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of occulō, cover], tr., hide, conceal.

occultus, -a, -um [p.p. of occulō], adj., hidden, concealed, secret. Subst., n., ex occultō, from hiding; in occultō, in hiding, in secret.

occupātiō, -ōnis [occupō], f., occupation, employment, duty, devotion to; occupātiōnēs rei

públicae, *public* or *official duties*.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ob, cf. capiō], tr., *take possession of, seize, become master of; occupy, cover; employ, busy*.

occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum [ob + currō, run], intr., *run to meet; dare to meet or oppose; fall in with, happen upon, meet, encounter, find; run to the rescue; provide against, obviate, frustrate*.

Oceanus, -i, m., *the ocean*. Neuter with *mare, the sea*.

Ocelum, -i, n. (ōs'-e-lum), a town of the Graioceli. I. 10. H 4.

octāvus, -a, -um [octō], num. adj., *eighth*.

octingenti, -ae, -a [octō + centum], num. adj., *eight hundred*.

octō, indecl. num., *eight*.

Octodūrus, -i, m. (ōk-to-dū'-rus), a town of the Veragri. III. 1-8. H 3.

octōgintā [octō], indecl. num., *eighty*.

oculus, -i, m., *eye*.

ōdi, ōdisse, ōsūrus, def., tr., *hate*.

offendō, -ere, -fendi, -fensum [ob + fendō, strike], tr., *(dash against); offend*.

offensio, -ōnis [offendō], f., *offence*.

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum [ob + ferō], tr., *carry along, take; present, offer*.

officium, -i [for officium, cf.

opus + faciō], n., *service; duty, sense of duty, allegiance; in officiō esse or manēre, remain obedient or loyal, maintain one's allegiance; in officiō tenēre, keep loyal*.

omittō, -ere, -misi, -missum [ob + mittō], tr., *let go; neglect, disregard*.

omniō [omnis], adv., *wholly, altogether; in all, only*. With negatives, *at all*.

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every, each; the entire, the whole, the whole of, as a whole, in general; every kind or sort of*. Subst., **omnēs**, -i, m., *all, everybody; omnia*, -i, n., *all things, everything*.

onerārius, -a, -um [onus], adj., *of burden*. See **nāvis**.

onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [onus], tr., *to load*.

onus, -eris, n., *load, burden, weight*.

opera, -ae [opus], f., *toil, exertion, trouble; services, assistance; eius operā, by his agency, thanks to him; dare operam ut, take pains to, exert one's self to*. See **nāvō**.

opiniō, -ōnis [opinor, suppose], f., *opinion, belief, supposition, impression, idea, expectation; reputation, fame; celerius omnium opiniōne, more quickly than any one expects*.

oportet, -ēre, **oportuit**, impers., intr., *it is necessary; translated personally, one ought, one must*.

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], adj., of a town. Subst., oppidānī, -ōrum, m., townspeople.

oppidum, -i, n., town, city.

opportūnē [opportūnus], adv., opportunely, luckily.

opportunitās, -ātis [opportūnus], f., opportuneness, advantage, superiority; favorable opportunity or occasion.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., adapted, convenient, favorable, opportune.

opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum [ob + premō], tr., weigh down, overcome, overwhelm, crush; surprise.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis [oppugnō], f., attack, assault, siege; method of attack.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob + pugnō], tr., attack, assail, assault, try to take by storm.

(ops), **opis**, f., no nom. or dat. sing., aid, help. Pl., means, resources; might, power.

optimē, see bene.

optimus, -a, -um, see bonus.

opus, -eris, n., work, labor, toil; work, structure; works, siege-works, defensive works; opere (in contrast to nātūrā), by art, artificially; quantō opere, how greatly, how much. Indecl., need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need.

ora, -ae, f., coast, sea-coast.

orātiō, -ōnis [orō], f., talk, words, speech, address.

orātor, -ōris [orō], m.,

speaker; envoy, official representative.

orbis, -is, m., ring, circle; in orbem cōsistere, form a circle.

ōrdō, -dinis, m., row, line, rank; class, grade; order, arrangement.

Orgetorix, -igis, m. (ōr-jēt'-o-rīks), a chief of the Helvetii. I. 2-5, 9, 26.

orior, -irī, ortus sum, dep., intr., arise, rise; start, begin; spring from, be descended, originate; oriēns sōl, sunrise; the east. See lūx.

ōrnāmentum, -i [ōrnō, fit out], n., equipment; honor, distinction.

ōrnātus, -a, -um [p.p. of ōrnō, fit out], adj., furnished, equipped.

orō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ōs], tr., urge, beg, entreat, implore.

ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face.

Osismī, -ōrum, m. (o-sīs'-mī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34; III. 9. C 2.

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum [obs = ob + tendō, stretch], tr., point out, show; make known, make clear, tell, declare; display, unmask, bring into action.

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of ostendō], tr., show, exhibit, display, call attention to.

ōvum, -i, n., an egg.

P

P., abbr. for the praenomen **Pūblius** (pūb'-li-us).

pābulātiō, -ōnis [pābulor], f., *foraging, foraging raids.*

pābulātor, -ōris [pābulor], m., *a forager.*

pābulor, āri, -ātus sum [pābulum], dep., intr., *to forage.*

pābulum, -i, n., *forage, fodder, pasturage.*

pācātus, -a, -um [p.p. of pācō], adj., *in a state of peace, tranquil, submissive.*

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pāx], tr., *make peaceful, subdue.*

Padus, -i, m. (pā'-dus), *the river Po.* V. 24. H I J 4.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, -ēre, paenituit, impers., tr., *it repents, it makes sorry; eum paenitet, he repents or regrets.*

pāgus, -i, m., *district, canton, division.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

pandō, -ere, pandi, passum, tr., *spread out, stretch out, extend; dishevel.*

pār, gen. **paris**, adj., *equal, the same; a match for, well-matched; pār atque, or pār quī, the same as.*

parātus, -a, -um [p.p. of parō], adj., *prepared, ready, in readiness; equipped.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī, **parsūrus**, intr., *spare, treat with forbearance, show mercy to.*

parēns, -entis [pr. p. of pariō], m. and f., *parent.*

pāreō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., *obey, submit to.*

pariō, parerē, peperī, **partum**, tr., *(bring forth); win, acquire.*

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *prepare, prepare for; furnish, provide, raise, secure, acquire.*

pars, **partis**, f., *part, portion, share, division; region, district; direction, quarter, side; faction, party; ab eā parte, in that quarter or direction, on that side; ab extrēmā parte, at the end; ab inferiōre parte, lower down, on the lower side; ab superiōre parte, in the upper part; magnā ex parte, to a great extent, largely; ex omni parte or ex omnibus partibus, from or on all sides; ūnā ex parte, on one side.*

partim [**pars**], adv., *partly, in part.*

partior, -īri, -itus sum [**pars**], dep., tr., *share, divide, distribute.*

parum, adv., *too little, not enough, not very.* Comp., **minus**, less. Superl., **minimē**, least, *very little, by no means.*

parvulus, -a, -um [dim. of parvus], adj., *very small, slight; unimportant; very young.* See proelium.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small, trifling, slight, low.* Comp., **minor**, -us, smaller, less. Superl., **minimus**, -a, -um, least, *slightest.*

passim [**passus**, **pandō**], adv., *here and there, in all directions.*

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace*. As a measure, a *pace*, 5 Roman feet = 4 English feet + 10½ inches; *mille passūs*, a *mile* (Roman) = 1616 yards, 2 feet, 2 inches.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [pateō + faciō], tr., *throw open, open, open up*. Pass., **patefiō**, -fieri, -factus sum.

patēns, gen. -entis [pr. p. of pateō], adj., *open, exposed, unprotected*.

pateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., *be open, stand open; be accessible, be passable; stretch out, extend*.

pater, -tris, m., *father*. Pl., *ancestors, forefathers*.

patior, pati, **passus** sum, dep., tr., *bear, endure; allow, permit*.

patrius, -a, -um [pater], adj., *of a father; ancestral*.

paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few, a few*. Subst., **paucī**, -ōrum, m., *few, a few*; **pauca**, -ōrum, n., *a few things or words; briefly*.

paucitās, -ātis [paucus], f., *small number or numbers*.

paulatim [paulum], adv., *gradually; a few at a time*.

paulisper [paulum + per], adv., *for a little while, a short time*.

paulō [abl. n. of paulus, *little*], adv., *a little, somewhat; shortly, a little while; a short distance*.

paululum [acc. n. of paululus, *a very little*], adv., *a very little, slightly*.

paulum [acc. n. of paulus,

little], adv., *a little, somewhat; a short distance, a short time*.

pāx, **pācis**, f., *peace, friendly relations*.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., *give offence, do injury*.

pecūnia, -ae [pecus, *cattle*], f., *property, wealth, money, sum of money*.

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle; herds, flocks; flesh, meat*.

pedālis, -e [pēs], adj., *a foot in measure, a foot high or thick*.

pedes, -itis [pēs], m., *foot-soldier, infantryman*. Pl., *the infantry*.

pedester, -tris, -tre [pēs], adj., *on foot, infantry; by or on land*; **pedestrēs cōpiae**, *infantry*.

peditātus, -ūs [pedes], m., *infantry*.

Pedius, -ī, m. (pē'-di-us), *Quintus Pedius*, grand-nephew of Caesar and one of his lieutenants. II. 2, 11.

pēius, see *male*.

pellis, -is, f., *a skin, hide*; **sub pellibus**, *in tents*.

pellō, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, tr., (beat); *drive out, expel; drive in confusion, put to flight, rout*.

pendō, -ere, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, tr., *weigh out; pay*.

per, prep. with acc., *through, across, over, along; during, in; by the agency of, by, by means of; on account of, because of; per sē, of one's own accord; so far as one is concerned; of or by itself*.

per-agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr., *finish, end.*

perciplō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-tum [per + capiō], tr., *seize; win, gain; hear, listen to, hear of, learn of.*

percontātiō, -ōnis [percon-tor, to question strictly], f., *per-sistent inquiry, repeated ques-tions.*

per-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum [currō, run], tr. and intr., *run through, run along, run over.*

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum [per + quatiō, shake], tr., *thrust through, pierce.*

perditus, a, -um [p.p. of perdō, ruin], adj., *ruined, des-perate; perditī hominēs, despe-radoes, adventurers.*

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr., *lead or conduct through, bring across, bring; construct; prolong.*

perendinus, -a, -um [peren-diē, on the day after to-morrow]; adj., *after to-morrow; peren-dinō diē, day after to-mor-row.*

per-eō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, intr., *perish, fall.*

per-equitō, -āre, -āvi, — [equitō, ride], intr., *ride or drive through, ride or drive about.*

per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *very small.*

per-facilis, -e, adj., *very easy.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lā-tum, tr., *bear or bring through; bring or spread news of, report,*

noise abroad; bear, endure, suf-fer, submit to, withstand.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [per + faciō], tr., *finish, com-plete; carry out, execute; build, construct; bring about, effect.*

perfidia, -ae [perfidus, faith-less], f., *faithlessness, treachery.*

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāc-tum [per + frangō], tr., *break through, break.*

perfuga, -ae [perfugiō], m., *a deserter.*

per-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr., *flee for refuge; go over, desert.*

perfulgium, -ī [perfugiō], n., *place of refuge.*

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, per-rēctum [per + regō], intr., *go on, proceed, press on.*

periclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum [periculum], dep., tr. and intr., *make trial of, try to find out.*

periculōsus, -a, -um [perī-culum], adj., *dangerous, haz-ardous.*

periculum, -ī, n., *trial, test, proof; danger, peril, risk.*

peritus, -a, -um, adj., *experi-enced, trained, skilled in, famil-iar with.*

per-legō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēc-tum [legō, gather; read], tr., *read through.*

per-manēō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, intr., *remain; abide by.*

per-mittō, -ere, -misi, -mis-sum, tr., *deliver over, intrust; permit, give permission.*

per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr., move deeply, arouse thoroughly, influence; excite, disturb, discourage, dismay; impel, induce.

per-mulceō, -ēre, -mulsi, -mulsum [mulceō, stroke], tr., soothe, flatter, conciliate.

perniciēs, -ēi [per, cf. nex], f., destruction, ruin.

per-pauci, -ae, -a, adj., very few.

perpendiculum, -ī [perpendō, weigh carefully], n., plumb line; ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly.

perpetuō [abl. n. of perpetuus], adv., permanently, constantly.

perpetuus, -a, -um [per, cf. petō], adj., continuous, unbroken; continual, uninterrupted, whole, permanent, perpetual. Subst., n., in perpetuum, forever, permanently.

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum [rumpō, break], tr. and intr., break through, force a way through or across.

per-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., recount, relate in detail.

per-sequor, -i, -secūtus sum, dep., tr., follow up, pursue, harass, persecute.

persevērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [persevērū, very strict], intr., persist, persist in.

per-solvo, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr., (un)loose; pay.

perspicīō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [per + spiciō, look,

spy], tr., look or see through, into; inspect, examine carefully, reconnoitre; observe, see or perceive clearly, discover; prove or test fully.

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm [suadeō, urge], tr. and intr., persuade, induce; convince.

per-terreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territum, tr., frighten thoroughly, dismay, appall; timōre perterriti, panic stricken.

pertinācia, -ae [pertināx, persevering], f., obstinacy.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinui, — [per + teneō], intr., stretch, extend, reach; belong, relate, pertain, tend; mean, have a meaning or purpose; concern, involve, implicate.

perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbō], f., confusion, disorder.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [turbō, confuse], tr., throw into confusion or disorder; disturb, frighten, dismay, perplex.

per-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, intr., come to, arrive, reach, come up with.

pēs, pedis, m., the foot; pedibus, afoot; by land; pedem referre, fall back, retire, withdraw. As a measure, a foot = .9708 of an English foot.

petō, -ere, petii or petivī, petitum, tr., seek; ask, request, beg, entreat; make for, repair to. See fuga.

Petrosidius, -ī, m. (pēt-rosid' -i-us), Lucius Petrosidius,

a standard-bearer in Caesar's army. V. 37.

phalanx, -angis, f., *phalanx*.

Pictonēs, -um, m. (plk'-to-nēz), cf. French Poitou, Poitiers: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. III. 11. D 3.

pietās, -ātis [pius, dutiful], f., *sense of duty, loyalty*.

pilum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin*; **pilum mūrāle**, *wall-javelin*.

pilus, -ī, m., *a manipule of the triarii*; **primi pili centuriō** or **primipilus**, -ī, m., *the chief centurion of a legion*; **primum pilum dūcere**, *to hold the position of chief centurion*.

pinna, -ae, f., (*feather*); *battlement*.

Pirūstae, -ārūm, m. (pī-rūs'-tē), an Illyrian tribe. V. 1.

piscis, -is, m., *a fish*.

Pisō, -ōnis, m. (pi'-sō), (1) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, killed by the Helvetii in 107. I. 12. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, grandson of (1) and father-in-law of Caesar, consul in 58. I. 6, 12. (3) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul along with Marcus Valerius Messala in 61. I. 2, 35. (4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian, serving in Caesar's cavalry. IV. 12.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., *be pleasing, find favor with*; **eis placuit**, *they decided*.

Plancus, -ī, m. (plāng'-kus), see **Munātius**.

plānē [plānus], adv., *evenly*; *plainly, clearly*; *wholly*.

plānitīēs, -ēī [plānus], f., *a plain*.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *even, level, flat*.

plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people, the populace*.

plēnē [plēnus], adv., *fully, wholly*.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*.

plērique, **plēraequē**, **plēraque** [plērus, *very many, most of*], adj., *most of, the majority of, the greater part of*. Subst. m., *the greater part, a great many*.

plērumque [acc. n. of plērusque, *most of*], adv., *generally, regularly, usually, as a rule*.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, m. (plū-mōk'-si-i), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. V. 39. G 1.

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead*; **plumbum album**, *tin*.

plūrimus, -a, -um, see **multus**.

plūs, see **multus**.

poena, -ae, f., *indemnity, compensation*; *penalty, punishment*.

pollex, -icis, m., *the thumb*.

polliceor, -ērī, -pollicitus sum [por = prō + liceor], dep., tr., *promise, offer*.

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [polliceor], f., *promise, pledge*.

Pompēlius, -ī, m. (pōm-pē'-yus), (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, the triumvir. IV. 1. (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, a Gaul, an interpreter in the service of Sabinus at Atuatuca. V. 36.

pondus, -eris [cf. pendō], n., *weight*; *ad certum pondus*, *of a fixed weight*.

pōnō, -ere, posui, positum, tr., *place, put, deposit; pitch, set up; appoint; make depend.* Passive, *depend, be dependent; positus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., situated, located, lying; dependent.*

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.
populatiō, -ōnis [populor], f., *ravaging, devastation.*

populor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., tr., *lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

populus, -ī, m., a people, nation.

porrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctum [por = prō + regō], tr., *stretch out, extend.*

porrō, adv., furthermore.

porta, -ae, f., gate.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., carry, bring, convey.

portōrium, -ī, n., tax, toll, duty.

portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, tr., demand, require.

possessiō, -ōnis [possidō], f., *possession, occupation.* Pl., *possessions, property.*

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum [por = prō + sedeō, sit], tr., *possess, hold, be master of.*

possidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum [por = prō + sidō, sit down], tr., *take possession of, seize.*

possum, posse, potuī [potis, able, + sum], intr., *be able, can; have power or influence, be powerful or influential; cum primum potest, as soon as possible.*

With acc. of neuter pronouns and adjectives, **multum, plūs, plūrimum, tantum posse, have great, more, most, so great power or influence, be very, more, most, so very powerful or influential; nihil posse, have no strength.**

post, prep. with acc., behind, back of; after. Adv., *afterwards, after, later.*

postea [post + eā], adv., *afterwards; postea . . . quam, = conj., postquam, after.*

posterus, -a, -um [post], adj., comp. *posterior, -ius, superl. postrēmus, -a, -um, following, next.*

post-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr., set aside, postpone.

post-quam, conj., after; when, as soon as.

postrēmō [abl. n. of postrēmus], adv., *at last, finally; in fine.*

postridiē [posterus + diēs], adv., *the next day; postridiē eius diēi, the next day.*

postulātum, -ī [p.p. of postulō], n., *demand, requirement.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., demand, claim, require.

potēns, gen. -entis [pr. p. of possum], adj., *strong, powerful, influential.* Subst., comp., **potentiōrēs, -um, m., the more powerful; superl., potentissimus, -ī, m., the most powerful man.**

potentātus, -ūs [potēns], m., *power, supremacy.*

potentia, -ae [potēns], f., (personal) power or influence.

potestās, -ātis [potis, able], f., (official) power, authority, sway; chance, opportunity; in potestāte esse, be under (one's) authority or control; potestātī permittere, put under (one's) protection; in potestātem venire; place one's self under (one's) protection; in potestātem redigere, bring under one's authority.

potior, -īri, -itus sum [potis, able], dep., intr., become master of, get possession of, acquire, win, gain, capture.

potius [potis, able], comp. adv., rather.

prae, prep. with abl., in front of; in comparison with.

prae-acūtus, -a, -um [acūtus, p.p. of acuō, sharpen], adj., sharpened at the end, pointed.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prae + habeō], tr., (hold forth); furnish, afford.

prae-caveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, intr., be on one's guard, guard against.

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, tr., go before; surpass.

praeceps, gen. -cipitis [prae, cf. caput], adj., headlong; steep, precipitous.

praeceptum, -i [p.p. of prae-cipiō], n., order, command.

praeceptiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [prae + capiō], tr., anticipate; direct, instruct, order, give directions.

praecepitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [praeceps], tr., hurl headlong.

prae-cipue [prae-cipuus], adv., specially, particularly.

prae-cipuus, -a, -um [prae, cf. capiō], adj., special, particular.

prae-clūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum [prae + claudō], tr., cut off, shut off, close.

prae-cō, -ōnis, m., a crier, herald.

Praeconinus, -ī, m. (prēk-onī-nus), see Valerius.

praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [dicō, dedicate], tr. and intr., announce, proclaim, spread news of; declare, boast, vaunt.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum [praeda], intr., to plunder.

praefectus, -ūs [p.p. of praeficiō], m., officer, commander, prefect.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr., put before; hold or make superior; sē praeferre, outdo, surpass.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prae + faciō], tr., put in charge or command of, place at the head of.

prae-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum [figō, fix], tr., fasten before; fix or set in front.

prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr., send ahead or in advance.

praemium, -ī [prae, cf. emō], n., reward.

prae-optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [optō, choose], tr., choose rather, prefer.

prae-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., make ready beforehand.

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr., place in charge or command of.

prae-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [rumpō, break], tr., break off.

prae-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., dictate, determine.

praescriptum, -ī [p.p. of praescribō], n., dictation, command.

praesēns, gen. -entis [pr.p. of praesum], adj., present, in person; immediate, for the time being.

praesentia, -ae [praesēns], f., presence; the present; in praesentiā, for the present; praesentia animī, presence of mind, intrepidity.

prae-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, tr. and intr., feel beforehand, anticipate.

praesertim [prae, cf. serō, bind], adv., especially, particularly.

praesidium, -ī [praeses, protector], n., protection, defence, help, aid; guard, garrison, escort; post, station.

praestō, adv., at hand, ready; praestō esse, appear before, go to meet.

prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, tr. and intr., be superior, excel; exhibit, display, give evidence of;

do, perform; praestat, impers., it is better, preferable.

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, intr., be in charge or command of, command; rule over.

praeter, prep. with acc., past, by; besides, in addition to; except, apart from; contrary to.

praetereā [praeter + eā], adv., furthermore, besides, in addition.

praeterita, -ōrum [p.p. of praetereō, pass by], n., the past.

praeter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr., allow to go by, let pass, lose.

praeter-quam, adv., besides, other than, except.

praetor, -ōris [for praetor, from praeeō, go in front], m., general; praetor, a Roman magistrate; lēgātus prō praetore, lieutenant with authority of general.

praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor], adj., of a general, praetorian. See cohors.

prae-ustus, -a, -um [p.p. of praeeūrō, burn at the end], adj., burned at the point.

prehendō or prēndō, -ere, prehendi or prēndī, prehensum or prēnsum, tr., grasp.

premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, tr., press, weigh down; press hard, harass. Passive, be hard pressed, be in distress or danger.

pretium, -ī, n., price, cost.

(prex, precis), only dat., acc., and abl. in sing., always pl. in

Caesar, *f.*, *prayers, entreaties; curses, imprecations.*

pridlē [cf. *prō*, *prior*, + *diēs*], *adv.*, with or without *ēius diēi*, *on the day before.*

primipīlus, -i, *m.* See *pilus*.

primō [abl. *n.* of *primus*], *adv.*, *at first.*

primum [acc. *n.* of *primus*], *adv.*, *first, in the first place, first of all; cum primum* or *ubi primum*, *as soon as; cum primum potest, quam primum*, *as soon as possible.*

primus, -a, -um. See *prior*.

princeps, -ipis [cf. *primus* + *capio*], *adj.*, *first, chief.* Subst., *m.*, *leading person, leader, chief; author, instigator, ringleader.*

principātus, -ūs [*princeps*], *m.*, *first place, leadership, supremacy.*

prior, -ius [cf. *prō*], *comp. adj.*, *former, previous, first.* Subst., **prīōrēs**, -um, *m.*, *those in front.* Superl., **primus**, -a, -um, *first, front; first part of; head of, beginning of.* Subst., **primi**, -ōrum, *m.*, *foremost or leading men; the first, those in front, the front ranks; in primis especially, particularly.*

pristinus, -a, -um [cf. *prius*], *adj.*, *former, previous, old-time; pristinus diēs, the day before.*

prius [*n.* of *prior*], *adv.*, *before, earlier.*

prius-quam, *conj.*, *the two parts being often separated, before, until.*

privātim [*privātus*], *adv.*, *individually, as a private person; privately, in private.*

privātus, -a, -um [*p.p.* of *privō*, *set free*], *adj.*, *personal, individual, private.*

prō, *prep.* with *abl.*, *before, in front of; for, in behalf of; in place of, instead of; in the guise or character of; to serve as, as; in return or retaliation for; in accordance with, by virtue of; in proportion to, in comparison with; prō sē, according to one's ability; for one's own part; prō visō, as seen.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [*probus*, *good*], *tr.*, *approve, sanction; have confidence in; make good, prove; demonstrate, show.*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, —, *intr.*, *go forward, advance, proceed.*

Prociillus, -i, *m.* (*pro-sil'-us*). See *Valerius*.

prō-cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, *proconsul, ex-consul, governor of a province.*

procul, *adv.*, *in the distance, at or from a distance; procul ab, far from.*

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum [*prō* + *cumbō*, *recline*], *intr.*, *fall down, fall prostrate, fall; incline.*

prō-currō, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum [*currō*, *run*], *intr.*, *run or rush forward, charge.*

prōdeō, -ire, -ii, -itum [*prō* (*d*) + *eō*], *intr.*, *go or come forth, forward; advance.*

prō-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum,

tr., *hand down, transmit; surrender, betray.*

prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *lead forth or forward; prolong.*

proellor, -ārī, -ātus sum [proelium], intr., *engage in battle, fight.*

proellum, -ī, n., *battle, combat; proelium facere, fight a battle; proelia parvula, skirmishes.*

profectiō, -ōnis [proficiscor], f., *departure, withdrawal.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prō + faciō], tr., *accomplish, achieve; derive advantage.*

proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum [proficiō], dep., intr., *set out, depart, march on or forward, proceed, advance.*

profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum [pro + fateor, confess], dep., tr., *declare publicly, avow; offer.*

prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō + fligō, dash, strike], tr., *overcome, rout.*

prōfluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, intr., *flow forth, rise.*

prōfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr., *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um [(g)nātus, born], adj., *descended, sprung.*

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [prō + gradior, step], dep., intr., *go forth, go forward, proceed, advance.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō + habeō], tr., *hold back, hold off, keep off, away, from, or*

out of; ward off, beat back; cut off, prevent, prohibit; protect, defend.

prōiciō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum [prō + iaciō], tr., *throw forward, throw, hurl; throw down or away, abandon.*

pro-inde, adv., *hence, therefore, accordingly.*

prōmittō, -ere, -misī, -missum, tr., *let go, let grow. prōmissus*, p.p. as adj., (of hair), *long, hanging.*

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr., *move forward.*

prōmptus, -a, -um [p.p. of prōmō, put forth], adj., *ready, quick.*

prōmunturium, -ī [prōmineō, project], n., *headland, promontory.*

prōnē [prōnus, inclined], adv., *slanting.*

prōnūtiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *proclaim, announce, tell; issue orders.*

prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost.* Prep. with acc., *near.* Comp., **propius**, *nearer.* Superl., **proximē**, *most or very recently, last.*

prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, tr., *drive forth, away, or back, beat back, rout.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [properus, quick], intr., *hasten, hurry, make haste to.*

propinquitās, -ātis [propinquus], f., *nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.*

propinquus, -a, -um [prope],

adj., *near, near at hand, neighboring; related*. Subst., **propinquī, -ōrum**, m., *relations, kinsmen*.

propior, -ius [prope], comp. adj., *nearer*. Superl., **proximus, -a, -um**, *nearest; nearest to, next to, along; next, last; shortest*. Subst., **proximī, -ōrum**, m., *those nearest, those next*.

propius, see prope.

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *set forth; display; set or keep before, offer; point out, call attention to, relate, describe*.

propter [prope], prep. with acc., *near; on account of, because of, from*.

propterea [propter + eā], adv., *for this reason; propterea quod, because, for the reason that*.

prō-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *go forth to fight, make sorties; fight in defence, repel an assault*.

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of prōpellō], tr., *repel, drive back*.

prōra, -ae, f., *pro, bow*.

prō-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum [ruō, *tumble down*], tr., *tear down, demolish*.

prō-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., tr., *follow up, pursue; address*.

prōspectus, -ūs [prōspiciō], m., *view, sight*.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [prō + -spiciō, *look,*

spy], intr., *look forward; provide for; guard against, try to prevent*.

prō-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, tr., *cover over; shield, protect*.

prōtinus [prō + *tenuis*, *as far as*], adv., *right on, straight on; forthwith, at once*.

prō-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [turbō, *confuse*], tr., *drive in confusion, drive away, repel, rout*.

prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum [vehō, *convey*], tr., *carry forward. Passive, advance, proceed*.

prō-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., *come forth; be produced, grow*.

prō-vidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, tr., *foresee; make provision for, provide, make ready; take precautions*.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *a province*, used particularly in Caesar of the Transalpine province.

prō-volō, -āre, -āvī, — [volō, *fly*], intr., *fly forth, rush forth*.

proximē, see prope.

proximus, -a, -um, see propior.

prūdētia, -ae [prūdēns, *foreseeing*], f., *foresight, sagacity, practical wisdom*.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, m. (ti-ā'-ni-i), *a tribe in Aquitania*. III. 27. D 5.

pūbēs, -eris, adj., *adult*. Subst., **pūberēs, -um**, m., *adults, men*.

pūblicē [pūblicus], adv., for the state, in the name of the state, officially; from the standpoint of the state.

pūblicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pūblicus], tr., convert to public use, confiscate.

pūblicus, -a, -um [cf. populus], adj., of the people or state, official; common, public. **rēs pūblica**, the state, commonwealth; public interests, the common weal; matters of state, matters of common interest, official matters.

pudor, -ōris [pudet, it shames], m., sense of shame, shame, honor.

puer, -eri, m., boy, child.

pūgnā, -ae, f., battle, combat, fight, fighting.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pūgna], intr., fight, contend, engage in battle, fight a battle. Passive, impers., **pūgnātum est**, the battle was fought, they fought, the battle lasted.

Pullō, -ōnis, m. (pŭl'-lō), Titus Pullo, a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 44.

pulsus, -ūs [pellō], m., impulse, stroke.

pulvis, -veris, m., dust.

puppis, -is, f., stern of a ship.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pūrus, clean, + agō], tr., excuse, free from blame.

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [putus, clean], tr., (clear up); think, consider, believe.

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., with

montēs, the Pyrenees Mountains. I. 1. D E 5.

Q

Q., abbr. for the praenomen Quintus.

quā [abl. f. of **quī**], adv., where, by which, along which.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a [quadrāgintā], distrib. num. adj., forty each.

quadrāgintā [quattuor], indecl. num., forty.

quadringentī, -ae, -a [quattuor + centum], num. adj., four hundred.

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, tr., seek, look for; ask, inquire, make inquiry.

quaestor, -ōris [for quaesitor, from quaerō], m., quaestor, a Roman magistrate.

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., what kind of? of what nature?

quam [quī], adv., how; than, as. With superlatives, indicating the highest degree, e.g., **quam māximus**, the largest possible; **quam diū potest**, as long as possible.

quam-quam, conj., although.

quam-vīs [vīs, you wish, from volō], adv., however much, however; **quamvīs pauci**, however few.

quandō, adv., at any time, ever.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., rel., as much as, as great as. Subst., **quantum, -ī, n.**, so much of as. Correl., **tantus . . . quantus**, as

great . . . as. Subst., tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as. Abl., tantō (with comp.) . . . quantō (with comp.), the . . . the. Interrog., how great? how much? how powerful? Subst., **quantum**, **4**, n., *how much?* **quantum boni**, *how much good.*

quantus-vis, **-tavis**, **-tumvis** [**vis**, *you wish*, from **volō**], adj., *as great as you wish, however great.*

quā-rē [**rē**, abl. of **rēs**], adv., rel., *on account of which, for which; therefore, accordingly. Interrog., why? wherefore?*

quārtus, **-a**, **-um** [**quattuor**], num. adj., *fourth.*

quattuor, indecl. num., *four.*

quattuordecim [**quattuor** + **decem**], indecl. num., *fourteen.* **-que**, conj., enclitic, *and.*

queror, **-ī**, **questus sum**, dep., tr. and intr., *complain, complain of, lament.*

quī, **quae**, **quod**, gen. **cūius**, rel. pron. and adj., *who, which, what, that, as.* Antecedent omitted, *he who, those who, such as, those things which, such things as.*

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, gen. **cūiuscumque**, indef., rel. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever, any one who, anything which; any or every . . . which.*

quid [acc. n. of **quis**], interrog. adv., *why?*

quidam, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, gen. **cūiusdam**, indef.

pron. and adj., *a certain one, pl. certain ones, some; a certain, certain.*

quidem, adv., emphasizing a word immediately preceding, *assuredly, indeed, in fact; at any rate, at least; for his part, as for him.* Adversative, *on the other hand, but; nē . . . quidem, not even, not either.*

quīēs, **-ētis**, f., *rest, repose; sleep.*

quīētus, **-a**, **-um** [p.p. of **quīēscō**, *become quiet*], adj., *at rest, peaceful.*

quīn [old abl. **quī**, *how, why*, + **ne**], conj., *without, that . . . not.* After expressions of doubting, *that; of hesitating or refusing, to (do so and so); hindering, from (doing so and so); quīn etiam, see etiam.*

quīnam, **quaenam**, **quodnam** [**quī** + **nam**], interrog. pronom. adj., *what, pray? what, really?*

quīndecim [**quīnque** + **decem**], indecl. num., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, **-ae**, **-a** [**quīnque** + **centum**], num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, **-ae**, **-a**, [**quīnque**], distrib. num. adj., *five each.*

quīnquāgīntā [**quīnque**], indecl. num., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num., *five.*

quīntus, **-a**, **-um** [**quīnque**], num. adj., *fifth.*

quīs, **quae**, **quid**, gen., **cūius**, interrog. pron., *who? which? what? quī*, *quae*, *quod*, gen.

cūius, interrog. pronom. adj., *which? what?*

quis, **quid**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*; **nē quis**, *in order that no one, that no one, that no*; **sī quis**, *if any one, if any*; **quī qua(e)**, **quod**, indef. pronom. adj., *any*; **nē quī**, *that no*; **sī quī**, *if any, whatever*.

quisplam, **quaeplam**, **quodplam**, indef. pron. and adj., *any one, anything, any*.

quis-quam, **quicquam** (for **quidquam**), indef. pron., generally used after negatives, *any one, anything*.

quis-que, **quaeque**, **quidque**, gen. **cūiusque**, indef. pron. and adj., *each one, each man*; *each, any, every*; **quisque** **decimus**, *every tenth man*; **nōbilissimus quisque**, *all the most prominent men*.

quis-quis, **quicquid** (for **quidquid**), indef. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

quī-vīs, **quaevis**, **quidvis**, gen. **cūiusvis** [**vīs**, *you wish*, from **volō**], indef. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever, any whatever, any possible*.

quō [**quī**], adv., rel., *where, whither, the point or place to which; to whom*. Correl., **quō** (with comp.) . . . **eō** or **hōc** (with comp.), *the . . . the*. Interrog., *whither? in what direction? where?* Indef., **sī quō**, *if to any place, if anywhere*. Conj., with comp., = **ut eō**, *in order that*. Without a comp., after **quam**, = *because*.

quo-ad, conj., *as long as; until*.

quod [acc. n. of **quī**], conj., *because, since, so far as; that, the fact that, in that; as to the fact that, whereas, as to, in (doing so and so)*; **propterea quod**, *because, for the reason that*; **quod sī**, *but if, now if*.

quō-minus, conj., *in order that not; from (doing so and so)*.

quoniam [**quom** = **cum**, + **iam**], conj., *since, because, in view of the fact that*.

quoque, adv., *also, too*.

quōque = **et quō**, *and whither*, see **versus**.

quot, indecl. adj., pl., *how many? as many as, a number which*.

quot-annis, adv., *annually, year after year*.

quotiēns [**quot**], adv., *how often? as often as, whenever*.

R

rādix, **-icls**, f., *root*. Pl., (of mountains and hills), *lower part, foot, base*.

rādō, **-ere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, tr., *shave*.

raeda, **-ae**, f., *carriage, wagon* (four wheeled).

rāmus, **-ī**, m., *branch, bough*.

rapiditās, **-ātis** [**rapidus**, *swift*], f., *swiftness, rapidity*.

rapīna, **-ae** [**rapīō**, *seize*], f., *plundering, pillage*.

rārus, **-ā**, **-um**, adj., *thin; far apart, scattered, few; few at a time, in small detachments*.

ratīō, -ōnis [reor, reckon], f., *reckoning, computation, account; record, list; reasoning, theory, theoretical knowledge, art, science; plan, design; arrangement, manner, way; condition, state; reason, cause, consideration; explanation, justification; habere ratiōnem*, with gen., *have regard for; habere ratiōnem*, ut, *see to it that*.

ratis, -is, f., *raft*.

Rauraci, -ōrum, m. (rau'-ra-si), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 5, 29. H 3.

re or **red-**, inseparable particle used in composition, *again, back, anew*.

rebelliō, -ōnis [rebellis, insurgent], f., *a renewal of war, revolt, rebellion*.

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., *fall back, retire*.

recēns, gen. -entis, adj., *recent, fresh; vigorous, unexhausted*. Subst., **recentēs**, -ium, m., *fresh troops*.

receptus, -ūs [recipiō], m., *retreat, way of retreat*.

recessus, -ūs [recēdō], m., *retreat, means or chance of retreat*.

reclidō, -ere, -clidi, -cāsūrus [re + cadō], intr., *fall back; be reduced*.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [re + capiō], tr., *take back; receive, admit, welcome; receive in surrender; sē recipere*, withdraw, retire, retreat; *recover, regain composure*.

re-cltō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

[citō, call forth], tr., *read out, read aloud*.

recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re-, cf. capiō], tr., *recover, regain, win back*.

recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [re + causa], tr. and intr., *give up, repudiate; object to, refuse, shun; make objections*.

red-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., *give back, restore; render, make*.

red-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr., *go back, come back, return; slope down*.

redigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum [red- + agō], tr., *reduce, bring; bring under (one's power); make, render*.

redimō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptum [red- + emō], tr., *buy back, get in return; buy up, purchase, take a contract for*.

red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [integrō, make whole], tr., *renew, refresh, revive*.

reditiō, -ōnis [redeō], f., *a returning, return*.

reditus, -ūs [redeō], m., *a returning, return*.

Redonēs, -um, m. (rēd'-o-nēz), cf. French Rennes: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34. D 2, 3.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., *lead or bring back; draw back, draw inside*.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, tr., *bring or carry back; deliver, report*. See grātia, pēs.

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum

[re- + faciō], tr., *rebuild, repair; refresh, rest.*

refringō, -ere, -frēgi, -frāctum [re- + frangō], tr., *break open, break down.*

re-fuglō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, intr., *flee back, fall back.*

regiō, -ōnis [regō], f., *direction, line; region, district.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [rēgnum], intr., *rule, reign.*

rēgnum, -ī [regō], n., *royal or supreme power, sovereignty; kingdom, realm, state.*

regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, tr., *keep straight; guide, control, manage; preside over, rule.*

rēiciō, -icere, -lēci, -lectum [re- + iaciō], tr., *hurl back, drive back; beat back, repulse; throw aside; cut off, separate.*

re-languēscō, -ere, -guī, — [languēscō, become weak], intr., *become enfeebled or enervated, relax.*

re-lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [lēgō, despatch], tr., *send away, detach.*

relligiō, -ōnis, f., *religious principles or scruples; religious beliefs or superstitions.*

re-liquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum [linquō, leave], tr., *leave behind, leave; abandon, desert; let escape. Passive, be left, remain; be afforded.*

reliquus, -a, -um [cf. relinquo], adj., *remaining, all other; the remainder of, rest of. Subst., reliquī, -ōrum, m., *the others, the rest of them; reliquum, ī*,*

n., *remainder, e.g., nihil reliquī, nothing left; reliqua, -ōrum*, all other things, conditions, or circumstances.

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, —, intr., *stay behind, remain.*

rēmex, -igis [rēmus, cf. agō], m., *rower, oarsman.*

rēmigō, -āre, —, — [rēmus + agō], intr., *to row.*

re-migrō, -āre, -āvī, — [migrō, remove], intr., *go back, return.*

reminiscor, -ī, —, dep., intr., *recall, remember.*

remissus, -a, -um [p.p. of remittō], adj., *mild, not severe.*

re-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, tr., *send back, restore; hurl back; send in reply; relax, abate, lose.*

re-mollēscō, -ere, —, — [mollēscō, become soft], intr., *grow weak, become enervated.*

remōtus, -a, -um [p.p. of removeō], adj., *remote, out-of-the-way.*

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr., *move back, withdraw, remove; lure away.*

re-mūneror, -āri, -ātus sum [mūneror, reward], tr., *reward, recompense.*

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi. II. 6. Pl., the Remi (rē'-mī)*, cf. French Reims: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 3-7, 9, 12; III. 11; V. 3, 24, 53, 54, 56. G 2.

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [novō, make new], tr., *renew.*

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *bring back word, report.*

re-pellō, -ere, reppuli, repulsum, tr., *drive back, repulse; deprive of, disappoint in.*

repente [repēns, sudden], adv., *suddenly, without warning.*

repentīnus, -a, -um [repēns, sudden], adj., *sudden, unexpected, hasty.*

reperiō, -ire, repperi, reperitum [re- + pariō], tr., *find, discover; invent, hit upon; find out, learn, ascertain.*

re-petō, -ere, -petivī, -petitum, tr., *seek or demand again, ask or demand back; demand in return; visit upon in return.*

re-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *carry back, transport back.*

re-poscō, -ere, —, —, tr., demand back, *require.*

re-praesentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [praesentō, place before], tr., *do or carry out at once.*

re-prehendō, -ere, -prehendi, -prehensum, tr., *hold back; censure, find fault with.*

re-primō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum [re- + premō], tr., *check, restrain, prevent.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [repudium, a putting away], tr., *reject, disdain.*

re-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., *fight back, defend one's self, offer resistance, oppose.*

rēs, rei, f., thing, matter, affair; event, fact, circumstance, undertaking, exploit, measure,

arrangement, etc., according to the context.

re-scindō, -ere, -scidi, -scissum, tr., *cut or break down, destroy.*

re-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum [sciscō, approve], tr., *learn, find out.*

re-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., *write again or anew; transfer, promote.*

re-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *hold back, reserve.*

re-sistēns, gen. -entis [pr. p. of resistō], adj., *firm, enduring.*

re-sistō, -ere, -stīti, — [sistō, set, stand], intr., *stop, halt, remain; make a stand, offer resistance; resist, oppose, withstand.*

respicō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [re- + spiciō, look, spy], *look back; have regard for, consider.*

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondi, spōnsum [spondeō, promise], tr., *reply, respond, answer.*

respōnsum, -ī [p. p. of respondeō], n., *answer, reply.*

rēs publica, see publicus.

re-spuō, -ere, -spuī, — [spuō spit], tr., *reject, refuse.*

restituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum [re- + statuō], tr., *restore, rebuild, renew.*

retineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum [re- + teneō], tr., *hold back; retain, keep, detain, restrain; maintain, not abandon.*

re-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr., *bring back by force.*

re-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vul-

sum [vellō, *tear*], tr., *pull away; tear down*.

re-vertor, -i, -verti [vertō, *turn*], semi-dep., intr., *return, come back*.

re-vinciō, -ire, -vīxi, -vinc-tum, tr., *bind, fasten, make fast*.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *call back, recall, summon to return*.

rēx, rēgis [regō], m., *king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the river Rhine*. I. 1 and often. G H I 1, 2, 3.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the river Rhone*. I. 2 and often. G H 3, 4, 5.

ripa, -ae, f., *bank (of a river)*.

rivus, -ī, m., *small stream, brook*.

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak, oak timber*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *ask, question; request, solicit, beg*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*. I. 31.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*. Subst., Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman*; pl., *the Romans*.

Rōscius, -ī, m. (rōsh'-(i)us), *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. V. 24, 53.

rōstrum, -ī [rōdō, *gnaw*], n., *beak; ship's beak*.

rota, -ae, f., *wheel*.

rubus, -ī, m., *bramble-bush*.

Rūfus, -ī, m. (roo'-fus), see Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report*.

rūpēs, -is [cf. rumpō, *break*], f., *rock, cliff*.

rūrsus [for reversus, *turned back*], adv., *again, anew, once more; in turn; on the other hand*.

Rutēni, -ōrum, m. (roo-tē'-ni), a tribe whose territory lay partly in the Transalpine province, partly in Celtic Gaul. I. 45. F 4, 5.

S

Sabinus, -ī, m. (sa-bī'-nus), see Titūrius.

Sabis, -is, m. (sā'-bis), a river in Belgic Gaul, *the Sambre*. II. 16, 18. G 1.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently, many times; saepe numerō, oftentimes, again and again*.

saepēs, -is, f., *a hedge*.

saeviō, -īre, -īi, -itum [sae-vus, *raging*], intr., *be violent, rage; blow hard*.

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

sagittārius, -ī [sagitta], m., *archer, bowman*.

sagulum, -ī [dim. of sagum, *cloak*], n., *military cloak*.

salūs, -ūtis [salvus, *well*], f., *health; safety, preservation*.

Samarobrīva, -ae, f. (sām'-a-ro-brī'-va), chief city of the Ambiani, in Belgic Gaul, now Amiens. V. 24, 47, 53. F 2.

sanciō, -īre, sānxi, sānc-tum, tr., *make sacred or inviolable; decree; inter sē sancīre, bind one another*.

sānctus, -a, -um [p.p. of sancīō], adj., *sacred, inviolable*.

sānitās, -ātis [sānus], f., soundness; good sense, good judgment; ad **sānitātem** reverti, come to one's senses.

Santonī, -um, m. (sān'-to-nī), cf. French *Saintes* and *Saintonge*: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 10, 11; III. 11. E 4.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound, sane, sensible; **prō sānō**, like a sane person, rational.

sapiō, **sapere**, -ivī, —, tr. and intr., taste of; be wise, have discernment, understand.

sarcina, -ae, f., bundle. Pl., soldiers' packs, light baggage; **sub sarcinis**, in heavy marching order.

sarmentum, -i [sarpō, cut, prune], n., twig. Pl., fagots, brushwood.

satis, adv., sufficiently, enough, quite, very. Indecl. adj., enough, sufficient. Subst., enough, a sufficiency; **satis causae**, reason enough.

satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, intr., make reparation, make apology.

satisfaciō, -ōnis [satisfaciō], f., apology, excuse.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded. Subst., **saucius**, -i, m., a wounded man.

saxum, -i, n., a large stone, a rock.

scālae, -ārum [cf. **scandō**, climb], f., ladder, scaling-ladder.

scapha, -ae, f., skiff.

scelus, -eris, n., wickedness, wrong-doing.

scientia, -ae [sciēns, knowing], f., knowledge, skill.

scindō, -ere, **scidi**, **scisum**, tr., tear, tear up, tear down.

sciō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr., know.

scribō, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, tr., write.

scūtum, -i, n., shield.

sē, **sēd**, inseparable prep., used in composition, apart, from.

sē, see **sul**.

sēcrētō [abl. n. of **sēcrētus**, separate, secret], adv., separately, in secret.

sectiō, -ōnis [secō, cut], f., (a dividing for sale), sale; booty.

sectūra, -ae [secō, cut], f., a cutting, excavation.

secundum [secundus], prep. with acc., next to, along; besides, in addition to; in accordance with.

secundus, -a, -um [sequor], adj., following; second; favoring, fair, favorable, successful, prosperous; **rēs secundae**, prosperity.

sed, conj., but, however, yet.

sēdecim [sex + decem], indecl. num., sixteen.

sēdēs, -is [sedeō, sit], f., seat; dwelling-place, abode.

sēditōsus, -a, -um [sēditō, mutiny], adj., mutinous, seditious.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m. (se-dū'-nī), a tribe in the Alps. III. 1, 2, 7. H I 3.

Sedusli, -ōrum, m. (se-dū'-

shi-I), a tribe in Germany. I. 51. I 2.

Segontiaci, -orum, m. (se-gôn''-shi-ā'-si), a tribe in Britain. V. 21. DE 1.

Segovax, -actis, m. (sēg'-o-vāks), a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

Seguslāvi, -orum, m. (se-gū''-shi-ā'-vi), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 10. FG 4.

semel, adv., at one time, once. See iterum.

sēmentis, -is [sēmen, seed], f., a sowing, crop; **sēmentēs facere, sow crops.**

sēmīta, -ae, f., lane, path.

semper, adv., always, continually, constantly.

senātor, -ōris [senex], m., senator.

senātus, -ūs [senex], m., senate.

senex, gen. senis, old, advanced in years. Subst., old man.

sēni, -ae, -a [sex], distrib. num. adj., six each.

Senonēs, -um, m. (sēn'-o-nēz), cf. French Sens: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 2; V. 54, 56. FG 2.

sententia, -ae [sentiō], f., opinion, view; decision, determination.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsi, sēnsus, tr. and intr., perceive, see, notice, become aware; know; think, hold an opinion, be of the opinion, be of a mind.

sentis, -is, m., brier, bramble.

sēparātīm [sēparātus], adv.,

separately, individually, severally.

sēparātus, -a, -um [p.p. of sēparō, divide], adj., separate, individual.

septem, indecl. num., seven.

septentrīō, -ōnis, m., usually pl. [septem + triōnēs, the plough-oxen], (the seven stars of the Great Bear), the north.

septimus, -a, -um [septem], num. adj., seventh.

septingenti, -ae, -a [septem + centum], num. adj., seven hundred.

septuāgintā [septem], indecl. num., seventy.

sepultūra, -ae [sepeliō, bury], f., burial.

Sēquana, -ae, f. (sēk'-wa-na), the river Seine. I. 1. EF 2.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of the Sequani, Sequanian. Subst., **Sēquanus, -i, m.,** a Sequanian, I. 3. Pl. the Sequani (sēk'-wa-ni), Sequanians, a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 1, 2, etc.; IV. 10. GH 3.

sequor, -i, secūtus sum, dep., tr. and intr., follow, accompany; follow up, pursue; ensue, succeed.

Ser., abbr. for the praenomen Servius (sēr'-vi-us).

sermō, -ōnis [cf. serō, entwine, weave], m., conversation, discourse.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, plant.

sērō [abl. of sērus, late], adv., late, too late.

Sertōrius, -i, n. (sēr-tō'-ri-us), *Quintus Sertorius*, a Roman general. See note on III. 23.

servills, -e [servus], adj., of or with slaves, servile.

serviō, -ire, -ivī, -itum [servus], intr., be a slave to, be governed by.

servitūs, -ūtis [servus], f., slavery, subjection.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., keep safe, save; pay attention to, observe, watch; keep, maintain, keep in order.

servus, -i, m., a slave.

sēscentī, -ae, -a [sex + centum], num. adj., six hundred.

sēsē, see suī.

sēsqui-pedālis, -e [sēsqui-, one-half, + pedālis, of a foot], adj., of a foot and a half, a foot and a half in measure.

sētilus, comp. adv., less. See nihilō.

seu, see sive.

sē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call aside, interview privately; withdraw; tempt away.

sex, indecl. num., six.

sexāgintā [sex], indecl. num., sixty.

Sextius, -i, m. (sēks'-ti-us), *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army, distinguished for bravery. II. 25; III. 5.

sī, conj., if; whether; sī modo, if only, provided.

sibi, see suī.

Sibusātēs, -um, m. (sīb-ū-sā'-

tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D 5.

sic, adv., thus, in this way, so; as follows; sic ut, so that, in such a way that, to such an extent that; ut . . . sic, just as . . . so, although . . . yet.

siccitās, -ātis [siccus, dry], f., dryness, drought.

sic-ut or **sic-uti**, adv., just as, just as if.

signifer, -eri [signum + ferō], m., standard-bearer.

significātiō, -ōnis [significō], f., sign, signal, indication.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [signum, cf. faciō], tr., show by signs; indicate, make known, give notice.

signum, -i, n., sign, signal; (military) standard. **ad signa cōsistere**, take one's place in line; **signa convertere**, face about; **ab signis discēdere**, leave one's place in line, break ranks; **signa ferre**, advance to the attack, charge, advance; **conversa signa inferre**, face about and charge.

Sillus, -i, m. (sīl'-i-us), *Titus Silius*, a tribune in Caesar's army. III. 7, 8.

silva, -ae, f., forest, wood, woods.

silvestris, -e [silva], adj., wooded.

similis, -e, adj., like, similar. **vērī simile**, likely, probable.

simul, adv., at the same time; also, then too, in addition, likewise. With or without atque,

as soon as; **simul** . . . **et**, both . . . and; **simul** . . . **simul**, both . . . and.

simulatiō, **-ōnis** [**simulō**], f., pretence, show, deceit.

simulō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [**similis**], imitate, feign, pretend.

simultās, **-ātis** [**simul**], f., dissension, jealousy, rivalry.

sin [**sī + ne**], conj., if however, but if.

sine, prep. with abl., without.

singillatim [**singulī**], adv., one by one, individually.

singulāris, **-e** [**singulī**], adj., one by one, single, individual; unusual, remarkable, extraordinary.

singuli, **-ae**, **-a**, adj., one at a time, single, separate, individual, the several.

sinister, **-tra**, **-trum**, adj., on the left, left. Subst., **sinistra**, **-ae**, f., left hand.

situs, **-ūs** [**sinō**, leave, fix], m., situation, position, site.

sī-ve or **seu**, conj., or if; **sive** . . . **sive**, if . . . or if, whether . . . or, either . . . or.

socer, **-eri**, m., father-in-law.

socius, **-i**, m., associate; ally, confederate.

sōl, **sōlis**, m., the sun. See **occāsus**, **orior**.

soldūri, **-ōrum**, m. (Celtic word), retainers, vassals.

sōlitudō, **-dinis** [**sōlus**], f., solitude; wilderness.

sollicitō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [**sollicitus**, aroused], tr., dis-

turb; stir up, arouse, incite to revolt; incite, urge.

sollicitūdō, **-dinis** [**sollicitus**, aroused], f., apprehension, anxiety.

solum, **-i**, n., lowest part, bottom; ground, soil.

solum [**sōlus**], adv., alone, only, merely. See **etiam**.

sōlus, **-a**, **-um**, gen. **sōlius**, adj., alone, only.

solvō, **-ere**, **solvī**, **solūtum** [**sō- + luō**, loose], tr., loosen, release. With or without **nāvēs**, set sail.

soror, **-ōris**, f., sister; **soror ex mātē**, half-sister.

sors, **sortis**, f., a lot, casting of lots.

Sotiatēs, **-lum**, m. (**sō-shi-ā'-tēz**), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 20-23. D E 4, 5.

spatium, **-i**, n., space, room; distance; interval; time, length (of time).

speciēs, **-ēi** [**-spiciō**, look], f., appearance, form; aspect; spectacle, sight; ad or in **speciem**, to make a show, for effect.

spectō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum** [freq. of **spiciō**, look], tr. and intr., look, face, lie, be situated; regard, look to.

speculātor, **-ōris** [**speculor**], m., scout, spy.

speculātōrius, **-a**, **-um** [**speculātor**], adj., for scouting purposes. See **nāvigium**.

speculor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** [cf. **specula**, watch-tower], dep., intr., to spy, play the spy.

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [*spēs*], tr., *hope, hope for, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, ground of hope, expectation*; in *māgnam spem venire*, *begin to have high hopes.*

spiritus, -ūs [*spīrō, breathe*], m., *breathing, breath.* Pl., *pride, haughtiness, airs.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [*spolium, booty*], tr., *strip, deprive, despoil.*

(*spōns, spōntis*), f., only in abl.; *suā sponte*, *of one's own accord, voluntarily*; *by one's self, without aid.*

stabilitās, -ātis [*stabilis, firm*], f., *steadiness, stability.*

statim [*stō*], adv., *at once, immediately.*

statiō, -ōnis [*stō*], f., *post, station*; *guard, outpost, picket*; *detachment*; in *statiōnem succēdere*, *go on guard, relieve guard.*

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [*status, a station*], tr. and intr., *set up, place*; *decide, decide upon, pass sentence*; *judge, deem, conclude.*

statūra, -ae [*stō*], f., *height, size, stature.*

stipendiārius, -a, -um [*stīpendium*], adj., *tributary, subject to tribute.*

stipendium, -i [*stips, contribution, + pendō, pay*], n., *tax, tribute.*

stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus, intr., *stand, be upright.*

strāmentum, -ī [*sternō,*

spread out], n., *a covering; thatching.*

streptus, -ūs [*strepō, make a noise*], m., *din, clatter.*

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., *pay attention to, be bent upon, strive after*; *favor, desire.*

studium, -i [*studeō*], n., *eagerness, eager desire, zeal, fondness, alacrity*; *energy*; *good-will, devotion.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc., *under, up to*; *just before, towards.* With abl., *under, beneath*; *at the foot or base of*; *near, just outside*; *under, subject to*; *in, during.*

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., *withdraw*; *draw up*; *nāvēs subducere* (in *āridum*), *to beach ships.*

subductiō, -ōnis [*subducō*], f., *drawing up, beuching.*

sub-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., *go under, enter under*; *enter, venture into*; *come up, advance*; *undergo, endure, submit to.*

sub-fodiō, -ere, -fōdi, -fossus [*fodiō, dig*], tr., *stab underneath.*

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [*sub + iaciō*], tr., *throw under, cast from below*; *expose.*

subitō [abl. n. of *subitus*], adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

subitus, -a, -um [*subeō*], adj., *sudden, unexpected, quickly contrived.*

sub-levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *lift up*; *hold up, support*; *help, assist.*

sublica, -ae, f., a *pile*.
sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ministrō, serve], tr., furnish, afford, supply.

sub-mittō, -ere, -misi, -misus, tr., send up, send to the aid or relief of, send as reinforcements.

sub-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr., drive back, repulse, dislodge.

sub-ruō, -ere, -ui, -utum [ruō, tumble down], tr., tear up, undermine, demolish.

sub-sequor, -i, -secūtus sum, dep., tr. and intr., follow after, follow, keep up with.

subsidiūm, -ī [subsīdō, sit down, remain behind], n., help, aid, relief, support. Pl., reserve troops, reserves, reinforcements; **subsidiūm ferre**, to aid, support, go to the assistance of.

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī, — [sistō, set, stand], intr., stop, make a stand.

sub-sum, -esse, —, intr., be at hand, be near, be near by.

sub-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, tr., take away, withdraw.

sub-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vec-tum [vehō, convey], tr., bring up; transport.

sub-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-tum, intr., come or go to the support of, succor.

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-sum [sub + cēdō], intr., come up, advance, approach; be near, adjoin; take some one's place, relieve. See **statiō**.

succendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēn-

sum [sub + candeō, be bright], tr., set on fire.

succidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum [sub + caedō], tr., cut down, fell.

succurrō, -ere, -curri, -cur-sum [sub + currō, run], intr., run up, run to the support of.

sudis, -is, f., stake, pile.

Suēba, -ae, f., a Suebian woman. I. 53.

Suēbī, -ōrum, m. (swē'-bī), a powerful German people comprising a number of tribes. I. 37, 51, 54; IV. 1-7, 8, 16, 19. I J 2.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m. (swēs-i-ō'-nēs), cf. French Soissons: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 3, 4, 12, 13. F 2.

Sugambri, -ōrum, m. (sū-gām'-brī), a tribe in Germany. IV. 16, 18, 19. H 1.

suī (gen.), dat. **sibi**, acc. and abl. **sē** or **sēsē**, 3d person reflexive pron., sing. and pl., himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Sulla, -ae, m. (sūl'-a), **Lucius Cornelius Sulla**, consul in 88, dictator 81-79. I. 21.

Sulpicius, -ī, m. (sūl'-pish'-i)us), **Publius Sulpicius Rufus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV. 22.

sum, esse, **fui**, **futūrus**, intr., be; lie, be situated.

summa, -ae [summus], f., chief place, leadership, control, conduct; **sum total**, the whole; **summa imperī**, supreme command or authority.

summus, see **superus**.

sūmō, -ere, **sūmpsi**, **sūmp-**

tum [sub + emō], tr., *take; assume, arrogate, put on; spend, consume; dē . . . supplicium sūmere, inflict punishment on.*

sūmptus, -ūs [sūmō], m., *cost, expense.*

super, adv., and prep. with acc. and abl., *above, over; in addition.*

superbē [superbus, proud], adv., *haughtily, arrogantly.*

superior, see **superus**.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [superus], tr. and intr., *tower or rise above; be superior, be victorious, prevail; exceed, excel, put at a disadvantage; overcome, conquer, defeat, vanquish.*

super-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sesum [sedēo, sit], intr., *refrain from, avoid.*

super-sum, -esse, -fui, intr., *be left, remain; survive.*

superus, -a, -um [super], adj., *upper.* Comp., **superior**, -ius, *higher, upper; former, past, previous, preceding; superior, stronger; victorious.* Superl., **summus**, -a, -um, or **suprēmus**, -a, -um, *highest, topmost; the top or summit of; greatest, supreme, utmost, utter; most important, of the greatest moment; chief, most honorable.* Subst., **summum**, -i, n., *the top.*

suppetō, -ere, -petīvi, -petitum [sub + petō], intr., *be in store, be on hand.*

supplex, -icis [cf. supplicō, kneel, entreat], adj., *(kneeling); entreating, suppliant.* Subst., m., *a suppliant.*

suppliciter [supplex], adv., *as a suppliant, submissively.*

supplicātiō [supplicō, kneel, entreat], f., *(a festival of) thanksgiving.*

supplicium, -i [supplex], n., *punishment.* See **sūmō**.

supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [sub + portō], tr., *bring up, convey.*

suprā [superus], adv., *before, previously.* Prep. with acc., *above; before.*

susciplō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [sub + capiō], tr., *take up, undertake, begin.*

suspectus, -a, -um [p.p. of suspiciō, suspect], adj., *mis-trusted, suspected.*

suspiciō, -ōnis [cf. suspiciō, suspect], f., *suspicion.*

suspleor, -āri, -ātus sum [cf. suspiciō, suspect], dep., tr., *suspect, conjecture, surmise.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of sustineō], tr. and intr., *hold up; hold out; endure, withstand, meet.*

sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum [sub + teneō], tr. and intr., *hold up, carry, support, sustain; hold back, check; endure, submit to; meet, withstand; hold out, hold one's ground.*

suus, -a, -um [cf. suī], possess. reflexive adj., 3d person, *his, her, its, their; his (etc.) own; his well-known, his usual.* Subst., **suī**, -ōrum, m., *his (their) own men, troops, or people.* **suum**, -i, n., *his (their)*

own property; *sua*, -ōrum, n., *his (their) property or possessions*; *sē suaque*, *themselves and their property*.

T

T., abbr. for the praenomen **Titus** (tī'-tus).

tabernāculum, -ī [taberna, hut], n., *tent*.

tabula, -ae, f., *a board*; *writing-tablet*; *list*.

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr. and intr., *be silent, keep silent about*.

tacitus, -a, -um [p.p. of taceō], adj., *silent*.

tālea, -ae, f., *rod, bar*.

tālis, -e, adj., *such*.

tam, adv., *so, so very*.

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, however, yet*.

Tamesis, -is, m., *the river Thames*. V. 11, 18. D E 1.

tametsī [for tamen-etsī], conj., *although, though, despite the fact that*.

tandem [tam], adv., *at length, at last, finally*. In questions, *pray, one would like to know*.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, tr., *touch*; *reach, border on*.

tantopere [tantō + opere], adv., *so greatly, so earnestly, so much, very greatly, etc.*

tantulus, -a, -um [dim. of tantus], adj., *so small, so slight; unimportant, trivial*.

tantum [acc. n. of tantus], adv., *so much, so greatly; only so much, merely*.

tantum-modo, adv., *only, merely*.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, such a great, such great, such, so much; very great*. Correl., **tantus . . . quantus**, *as great . . . as*. Subst., **tantum**, -ī, n., *so much, as much*; **tantī esse**, *to be worth so much*; correl., **quantō** (with comp.) . . . **tantō** (with comp.), *the . . . the*.

Tarbelli, -ōrum, m. (tār-bēl'-ī), cf. French Tarbes: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 27. D 5.

tardē [tardus], adv., *tardily, late*.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [tardus], tr., *hinder, impede, delay, check*.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow; without spirit, wavering*.

Tarusātēs, -ium, m. (tār-ū-sā'-tēz), cf. French Tartas: a tribe in Aquitania. III. 23, 27. D 4, 5.

Tasgetius, -ī, m. (tās-gē'-sh(i)-us), a prince of the Car-nutes. V. 25, 29.

Taximagulus, -ī, m. (tāk-si-māg'-ū-lus), a king of Cantium, in Britain. V. 22.

tēctum, -ī [p.p. of tegō], n., *roof; house*.

tegimentum, -ī [tegō], n., *a cover, covering*.

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, tr., *cover; roof over; hide, conceal*.

tēlum, -ī, n., *missile, weapon, spear, javelin*.

temerārius, -a, -um [te-

merē, adj., *rash, heedless, reckless.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, heedlessly, recklessly, without good reason.*

temeritās, -ātis [temerē], f., *rashness, recklessness, indiscretion.*

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *a pole, tongue (of a wagon or chariot).*

temperantia, -ae [temperāns, moderate], f., *moderation, self-control, discretion.*

temperātus, -a, -um [p.p. of temperō], adj., *moderate, temperate.*

temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [tempus], intr., *refrain, restrain.*

tempestās, -ātis [tempus], f., *season; weather, storm.*

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of tendō], tr., *try, attempt; attack, assail; try to entice, allure.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time, season, period; circumstances, occasion; crisis, emergency; ad tempus, on time, promptly; in reliquum tempus, for the future.*

Tencteri, -ōrum, m. (tēngk'le-ri), *a tribe in Germany.* IV. 1 ff., 18; V. 55. H 1.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, tr., *stretch, stretch out.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., *hold, have, occupy, control; keep, maintain; hold back, restrain; bind, obligate; extend; sē tenere, remain.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *soft, tender; young.*

tenuis, -e, adj., *slender, thin; weak, poor.*

tenuiter [tenuis], adv., *thinly, thin.*

ter [trēs], adv., *three times.*

tergum, -i, n., *the back; rear; post tergum, in the rear; tergum vertere, turn and flee, turn in flight.*

ternī, -ae, -a [ter], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three at a time.*

terra, -ae, f., *the earth; land, country; the ground.*

Terrasidius, -ī, m. (tēr-a-sīd'-i-us), *Titus Terrasidius, an officer in Caesar's army.* III. 7, 8.

terrēnus, -a, -um [terra], adj., *of earth, earthen.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., *frighten, terrify, alarm.*

territō, -āre, —, — [freq. of terreō], tr., *frighten, terrify, fill with terror.*

terrōr, -ōris [terreō], m., *alarm, terror, panic.*

tertius, -a, -um [ter], num. adj., *third.*

testāmentum, -ī [testor, call to witness], n., *a will.*

testimōnium, -ī [testis], n., *testimony, evidence, proof.*

testis, -is, m. and f., *a witness.*

testūdō, -dinis [testa, a tile], f., *a tortoise; testudo, (1) an engine of war, a shed for defence; (2) a formation in which the shields overlapped.*

Teutoni, -um, m. (tū'-to-ni), *the Teutons*, a people of northern Germany. See note on I. 33. I. 33, 40; II. 4, 29.

tignum, -i, n., a beam, timber.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., of the *Tigurini*. Subst., **Tigurini**, -orum, m. (tīg-ū-ri'-ni), the *Tigurini*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetii. I. 12. H 3.

timeō, -ēre, -ui, —, tr. and intr., *fear, fear for, be afraid*; **nihil timēre**, have no fears.

timidē [timidus], adv., *fearfully, timidly*.

timidus, -a, -um [timeō], adj., *afraid, faint-hearted*.

timor, -ōris [timeō], m., *fear, dread, panic*.

Titūrius, -i, m. (tū-tū'-ri-us), *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, defeated and slain along with Cotta by the Eburones. II. 5, 9, 10; III. 11, 17-19; IV. 22, 38; V. 24 ff.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [cf. tollō], tr., *bear, endure, sustain*.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, tr., *lift, raise; take aboard; take away, remove, relieve of; prevent, frustrate; destroy, wipe out; lift up, elate*.

Tolōsa, -ae, f. (to-lō'-sa), a city in the Transalpine province, now *Toulouse*. III. 20. E 5.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m. (tōl-o-sā'-tēz), the people of *Tolosa*. I. 10.

tormentum, -i [torqueō, twist], n., a machine for hurling large missiles. Pl., *artillery*.

torreō, -ēre, -ui, tostum, tr., *scorch, burn*.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many*.

totidem [tot], indecl. adj., *just as many, the same number of*. Subst., *the same number*.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. **tōtius**, adj., *all, all the, the whole, the whole of, entire*; translated adverbially, *wholly, entirely, along the whole, throughout*.

trabs, **trabis**, f., *beam, timber*.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [trāns + dō], tr., *give up, deliver up or over, surrender; intrust, intrust the command of; hand down, transmit; teach, impart*.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [trāns + dūcō], tr., *lead across, through, or along, bring across or over, transport*.

trāgula, -ae, f., a light javelin or lance used by Caesar's Gallic cavalry.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, tr., *draw, drag, drag along*.

trāciō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum [trāns + iaciō], tr., *throw across or through; pierce, transfix*.

trālectus, -ūs [trāciō], m., a crossing over, passage.

trānō, -āre, -āvi, —, [trāns + nō, swim], intr., *swim across*.

tranquillitās, -ātis [tranquillus, quiet], f., *quietness; calm (at sea)*.

trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over; on the other side of, beyond*.

trānscondō, -ere, -scendī, — [trāns + scandō, *climb*], tr. and intr., *climb over; board* (a ship).

trāns-eō, -ire, -li, -itum, tr. and intr., *go across, go over, cross over, cross; pass through, pass over; desert; pass, elapse.*

trāns figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum [figō, *fix*], tr., *pierce through, transfix.*

trāns-gredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [trāns + gradior, *step*], dep., tr. and intr., *step across; cross.*

trānsitus, -ūs [trānseō], m., *a crossing, passage.*

trānsmissus, -ūs [trāns-mittō, *send across*], m., *a crossing, passage.*

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., *carry across, bring over, transport.*

Trāns-rhēnānus, -a, -um [trāns + Rhēnus], adj., *across or beyond the Rhine.* V. 2. Subst., **Trānsrhēnāni, -ōrum, m.,** *people beyond the Rhine.* IV. 16.

trānstram, -ī [trāns], n., *cross-limber.*

trāns-versus, -a, -um [versus, *turned*], adj., *transverse, at right angles.*

Trebius, -ī, m. (trē'-bi-us), *Marcus Trebius Gallus, an officer in Caesar's army.* III. 7, 8.

Trebōnius, -ī, m. (tre-bō'-ni-us), *Gaius Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.* V. 17, 24.

trecentī, -ae, -a [trēs + centum], num. adj., *three hundred.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [trepidus, *alarmed*], intr., *be alarmed, be in confusion.*

trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., *three.*

Trēvir, -ī, m., *one of the Treveri.* Subst., **Trēveri, -ōrum, m.** (trēv'-e-rī), cf. modern Trier: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. I. 37; II. 24; III. 11; IV. 6, 10; V. 2-4, 24, 47, 53-58. H 2.

Triboci, -ōrum, m. (trib'-o-sī), a German tribe established in Celtic Gaul. I. 51; IV. 10. H 2.

tribūnus, -ī [tribus, *tribe*], m., *a tribune.*

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [tribus, *tribe*], tr. and intr., *assign, bestow; attribute, credit to.*

triduum, -ī [trēs + diēs], n., *a period of three days, three days.*

triennium, -ī [trēs + annus], n., *a period of three years, three years.*

trigintā, indecl. num., *thirty.*

triui, -ae, -a [trēs], distrib. num. adj., *three each; threefold, triple, three.*

Trinovantēs, -um, m. (trīn-o-vān'-tēz), a tribe in Britain. V. 20, 21, 22. E 1.

tripertitō [abl. n. of triper-titus, from ter + partiō, *divide*], adv., *in three parts or divisions.*

triplex, -icis [trēs, cf. plicō, *fold*], adj., *threefold, triple.*

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., *triangular.*

tristis, -e, adj., *sad, dejected*.
tristitia, -ae [tristis], f., *sadness, dejection*.

Troucillus, -i, m. (troo-sil'-us), see **Valerius**.

truncus, -i, m., *tree-trunk, log*.

tū, gen. **tuī**, pl. **vōs**, gen. **vestrum** or **vestri**, pers. pron., *you*.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.

tueor, -ēri, **tūtus sum**, dep., tr., *look at, watch; protect, defend*.

Tulingi, -ōrum, m. (too-lin'-ji), a tribe in Germany. I. 5, 25, 28, 29. H I 3.

Tullius, -i, m. (tūl'-i-us), see **Cicero**.

tum, adv., *then, at that time, on that occasion; thereupon, next; then too, besides*. See **cum**.

tumultus, -ūs [cf. **tumeō**, *swell; be excited*], m., *uproar, commotion, disorder; insurrection, rebellion*.

tumulus, -i [cf. **tumeō**, *swell*], m., *mound, hillock*.

turma, -ae, f., *a squadron of cavalry*.

Turonī, -ōrum, m. (tū'-ro-nī), cf. French Tours and Touraine: a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 35. E 3.

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly; disgraceful, shameful*.

turpitudō, -dinis [turpis], f., *unsightliness; disgrace*.

turris, -is, f., *a tower*.

tūtō [abl. n. of **tūtus**], adv., *safely, securely*.

tūtus, -a, -um [p.p. of **tueor**], *safe, secure*.

tuus, -a, -um [tū], possess. adj., *your, yours*.

U

ubi, adv., *where; when, whenever; ubi primum, as soon as*.

Ubi, -ōrum, m. (ū'-bi-i), a tribe in Germany. I. 54; IV. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19. H I 1.

ubique [ubi + que], adv., *anywhere, everywhere*.

ulciscor, -i, **ultus sum**, dep., tr., *take vengeance on, punish, requite*.

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, adj., *any*. Subst., **ūllus**, m., *any one*.

ulterior, -ius [ultrā], comp. adj., *farther, more distant, more remote*. Superl., **ultimus**, -a, -um, *farthest, most distant, most remote*. Subst., **ultimī**, -ōrum, m., *those farthest away, those in the rear*.

ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond, past*.

ultrō [cf. **ultrā**], adv., *to the farther side; in addition, even, actually; of one's own accord, voluntarily; spontaneously, without provocation*. See **citrō**.

ululātus, -ūs [ululō, *howl*], m., *a howl, whoop, yell*.

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever*.

ūnā [ūnus], adv., *at the same time, together, along; ūnā cum, along with*.

unde, adv., *from which place,*

from which, whence; where? whence?

undecimus, -a, -um [undecim, eleven], num. adj., *eleventh*.

undēviginti [ūnus + dē + viginti], indecl. num., *nineteen*.

undique [unde + que], adv., *from or on all sides*.

ūniversus, -a, -um [ūnus + versus], adj., *all, all the, the entire, all together*. Subst., **ūniversi**, -ōrum, m., *all, everybody, the whole body*.

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnūs**, num. adj., *one; one only, the only, the sole, a single, alone; one and the same, the same, identical; a certain*. Subst., **ūnus**, m., *one, one man; ad ūnum omnēs, all to a man, all without exception; ūnum, n., *one thing; the same thing*.*

urbs, **urbis**, f., *city; the city = Rome*.

urgeō, -ēre, **ursi**, —, tr., *press, press hard*.

Usipetēs, -um, m. (ūsīp'etēs), a tribe in Germany. IV. 1, 4-16, 18. G H 1.

usque, adv., *all the way; usque ad, right up to, as far as; up to, until*.

ūsus, -ūs [ūtor], m., *use, enjoyment; control, management; practical knowledge, experience, training, practice; need, necessity; ūsuī esse, be of service or use; ex ūsū, to the advantage of; advisable, advantageous*.

ut or **utī**, adv. and conj., *as, just as; as if, as it were; inas-*

much as, since; how, when. In clauses of plan or purpose, *that, in order that, in order to, so as to, to*. In clauses of result, *that, so that*. In concessive clauses, *although, even if*. In subst. clauses, *that, to; after verbs of fearing, that not*. With relatives, e.g., *ut quī, as being one who, since he*. Correlative, see *ita, sic*.

uter, -tra, -trum, gen. **utrius**, pronom. adj., *which of two? which one? which? whichever*.

uter-que, -traque, -trumque, gen. -triusque, pronom. adj., *each, either, both*. Pl., **utrīque**, m., *both sides, both parties*.

ūtilis, -e [ūtor], adj., *useful, serviceable*.

ūtilitās, -ātis [ūtilis], f., *advantage; practical purpose*.

ūtor, -ī, **ūsus sum**, dep., intr., *use, make use of, employ; enjoy, have, take advantage of, avail one's self of; accept; adopt; find in; show, display*.

utrimque [uterque], adv., *on both sides*.

utrum [n. of uter], conj., introducing a double question, direct or indirect, *whether*. See **an, necne**.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

V

Vacalus, -ī, m. (vāk'a-lus), *the Waal, an arm of the Rhine*. IV. 10. G 1.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., *be empty, be unoccupied, lie waste*.

vacuus, -a, -um [vacō], adj., empty, unoccupied, stripped of.

vadum, -i, n., a shallow place, shoal, ford.

vāgina, -ae, f., scabbard, sheath.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum [vagus, wandering], dep., intr., wander about, range, rove.

valeō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, intr., be strong, have strength; be influential, have influence.

Valerius, -i, m. (va-lē'-ri-us), (1) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul, presented with Roman citizenship by no. 2. I. 47. (2) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, governor of the Transalpine province in 83. I. 47. (3) *Lucius Valerius Praecontinus*, a Roman general defeated by the Aquitani. III. 20. (4) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of no. 1 and one of Caesar's envoys to Ariovistus. I. 47, 53. (5) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul of the Transalpine province, interpreter between Caesar and Diviciacus. I. 19.

valētūdō, -dinis [valeō], f., health (good or bad).

vallēs, -is, f., valley.

vāllum, -i [vāllus, stake], n., intrenchment, rampart.

Vanglonēs, -um, m. (vān-jl'-o-nēz), a German tribe. I. 51. I. 2.

varius, -a, -um, adj., varying, various.

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [vāstus], tr., lay waste, devastate, ravage.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste, desert; vast, boundless.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vāticinor, prophesy], f., prophecy.

vectigal, -ālis [cf. vehō, carry], n., tax, import, tribute.

vectigālis, -e [vectigal], adj., paying tribute, tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um [vector, bearer], adj., for carrying, transport-. See *nāvigium*.

vehementer [vehemēns, violent], adv., violently, fiercely, severely; greatly, strongly, exceedingly.

vel [volō], conj., or, or else; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.

Velānius, -i, m. (ve-lā'-ni-us). *Quintus Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army. III. 7, 8.

Vellocassēs, -um, m. (vē''-li-o-kās'-ēz), a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4. E 2.

vēlōciter [vēlōx], adv., swiftly, quickly.

vēlōx, gen. -ōcis, adj., swift, fleet.

vēlum, -i, n., a sail.

vel-ut, adv., just as.

vēnātiō, -ōnis [vēnor, hunt], f., hunting, hunting expedition.

vēndō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [vēnum, sale, + dō], tr., sell.

Venellī, -ōrum, m. (ve-nēl'-i), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 3, 4; III. 11, 17-19. D 2.

Venetī, -ōrum, m. (vēm'-e-tī), a tribe in Celtic Gaul. II. 34; III. 7, 17, 18. C 3.

Venetia, -ae, f. (ve-nē'-

sh(i)-a), *the country of the Veneti*. III. 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *of or with the Veneti*. III. 18; IV. 21.

veniō, -ire, **vēni**, **ventum**, intr., *come, go, arrive*; **ventum** est, impers., *they came, they arrived*.

ventitō, -āre, -āvi, — [freq. of **veniō**], intr., *come often, keep coming*.

ventus, -i, m., *wind*; *sē ventō dare*, *run before the wind*.

Veragri, -ōrum, m. (vēr'-a-grī), a Gallic tribe in the Alps. III. 1-6. H 3, 4.

Verbigenus, -i, m. (vēr-bij'-e-nus); **pāgus Verbigenus**, one of the four divisions of the Helvetii. I. 27. H I 3.

verbum, -i, n., *a word*; **contumēlia verbōrum**, *taunting words, taunts*; **verba facere**, *speak, act as spokesman*; **cum plūribus verbis**, *at some length*.

vereor, -ērī, **veritus sum**, dep., tr. and intr., *respect, reverence; fear, be fearful, be anxious*.

vergō, -ere, —, —, intr., *be inclined; slope; lie, be situated*.

vergobretus, -i [Celtic word, *judgment-dealer*], m., *vergobret*, the chief magistrate of the Haedui. I. 16.

vērō [abl. n. of **vērus**], adv., *in truth, indeed; however, but, while, on the other hand; tum vērō*, *then indeed, then at last*.

versō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of **vertō**], tr., *shift about; deal with, play with*. Passive as dep., *move about; be busy, employed, or engaged; engage, take part, be involved; dwell, remain*.

versus [p.p. of **vertō**], adv., *towards; quōque versus*, *in every direction*.

Verticō, -ōnis, m. (vēr'-ti-kō), a Nervian noble. V. 45, 49.

vertō, -ere, -tī, **versum**, tr., *turn*. See **tergum**.

Verucloetius, -i, m. (vēr-ū-klē'-sh(i)-us), a Helvetian envoy to Caesar. I. 7.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, correct; fair, just*. For n. subst., see **similis**.

verūtum, -i [verū, *a spit*], n., *dart, javelin*.

Vesontio, -ōnis, m. (ve-sōn'-shi-ō), capital of the Sequani, now *Besançon*. I. 38, 39. G 3.

vesper, -erī or -eris, m., *the evening star; evening*.

vestigium, -i [cf. **vestigō**, *to track*], n., *footprint, track; spot, place; in vestigiō*, *forthwith, immediately*.

vestiō, -irē, -ivī, -itum [vestis, *clothing*], tr., *cover, clothe, dress*.

vestitus, -ūs [vestiō], m., *clothing*.

veterānus, -a, -um [vetus], adj., *old, veteran*.

vetō, -āre, **vetui**, **vetitum**, tr., *forbid*.

vetus, gen. -eris, adj., *old, of*

long standing, ancient; former, previous.

vexillum, -i [cf. *vēlum*], n., a flag.

vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of *vehō*, carry], tr., harry, molest, persecute; overrun, lay waste, plunder.

via, -ae, f., way, road; journey, march.

viātor, -ōris [via], m., traveler.

viciēs [vīgintī], num. adv., twenty times.

(*viciis*), -is, f., change, succession; in vicem, in turn.

victor, -ōris [vincō], m., victor, conqueror. As adj., victorious.

victōria, -ae [victor], f., victory.

victus, -ūs [vivō], m., mode of living, life; food, provisions.

vicus, -i, m., village, hamlet.

videō, -ēre, vidī, visum, tr., see, catch sight of; perceive, observe. Pass., be seen; seem, appear, be thought, be considered; seem best or necessary.

vigilia, -ae [vigil, awake], f., a watching, watch; a watch, a division of the night.

vīginti, indecl. num., twenty.

vīmen, -inis, n., twig, wither, osier.

vincio, -ire, vīnxi, vincitum, tr., bind, fetter.

vincō, -ere, vici, victum, tr. and intr., conquer, defeat, vanquish, be victorious; have one's way.

vinculum, -i [vinciō], n., bond. Pl., chains, fetters.

vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [vindex, defender], tr. and intr., act as avenger; claim, demand; assert; in aliquem vindicāre, punish some one.

vīnea, -ae [vīnum], f., vine-arbor. Pl., sheds for defence, mantlets.

vīnum, -i, n., wine.

vīr, vīrī, m., a man.

virgō, -ginis, f., maid, maiden.

virgulta, -ōrum [cf. *virgula*, twig], n., brushwood.

Vīrdovix, -icis, m. (vi-rid'-o-vīks), commander of the Vennelli and their allies against Sabinus. III. 17-19.

Viromandui, -orum, m. (vi-ro-mān'-dū-I), cf. French Vermandois: a tribe in Belgic Gaul. II. 4, 16, 23. F 2.

virtūs, -ūtis [vir], f., manliness, high character, virtue, merit, good quality; bravery, valor, courage; vigor, energy.

vis, —, acc., vim, abl., vī, pl., **vīrēs**, -ium, f., strength, power, force, violence, fury. Pl., physical strength, strength; **vim facere**, use violence, offer resistance.

vīta, -ae [vivō], f., life, lifetime.

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., avoid, shun, seek to escape.

vitrum, -i, n., woad, dyer's-weed, a plant from which blue dye is obtained.

vivō, -ere, vixi, victum, intr., *live, subsist.*

vix, adv., with difficulty, hardly, barely, scarcely.

Vocātēs, -ium, m. (vo-kā'tēz), a tribe in Aquitania. III. 23, 27. F 4.

Vocclō, -ōnis, m. (vōk'-shi-ō), a king of the Norici. I. 53.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vōx], tr., *call, summon; invite, urge, challenge; name, designate.*

Vocontī, -ōrum, m. (vo-kōn'-shi-I), a tribe in the Transalpine province. I. 10. G 4.

volō, velle, volui, tr. and intr., *will, be willing, wish, want, desire; decide, decree, require.*

voluntārius, -a, -um [voluntās], adj., *willing, voluntary.* Subst., **voluntārīi, -ōrum, m.,** volunteers.

voluntās, -ātis [volō], f., *will, desire, wish; consent, approval; attitude, principle, purpose; good-will, favor.*

voluptās, -ātis [volō], f., *satisfaction, pleasure.*

Volusēnus, -ī, m. (vōl-ū-se'-nus), *Gaius Volusenus*, a tribune in Caesar's army. III. 5; IV. 21, 23.

Vorēnus, -ī, m. (vo-rē'-nus), *Lucius Vorenus*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army. V. 44.

Vosegus, -ī, m. (vōs'-e-gus), *mōns Vosegus, the Vosges Mountains*, in Celtic Gaul. IV. 10. H 2, 3.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone. Pl., *words, utterances; voices, cries, shouts.*

vulgō [abl. of *vulgus*], adv., *everywhere, commonly, generally.*

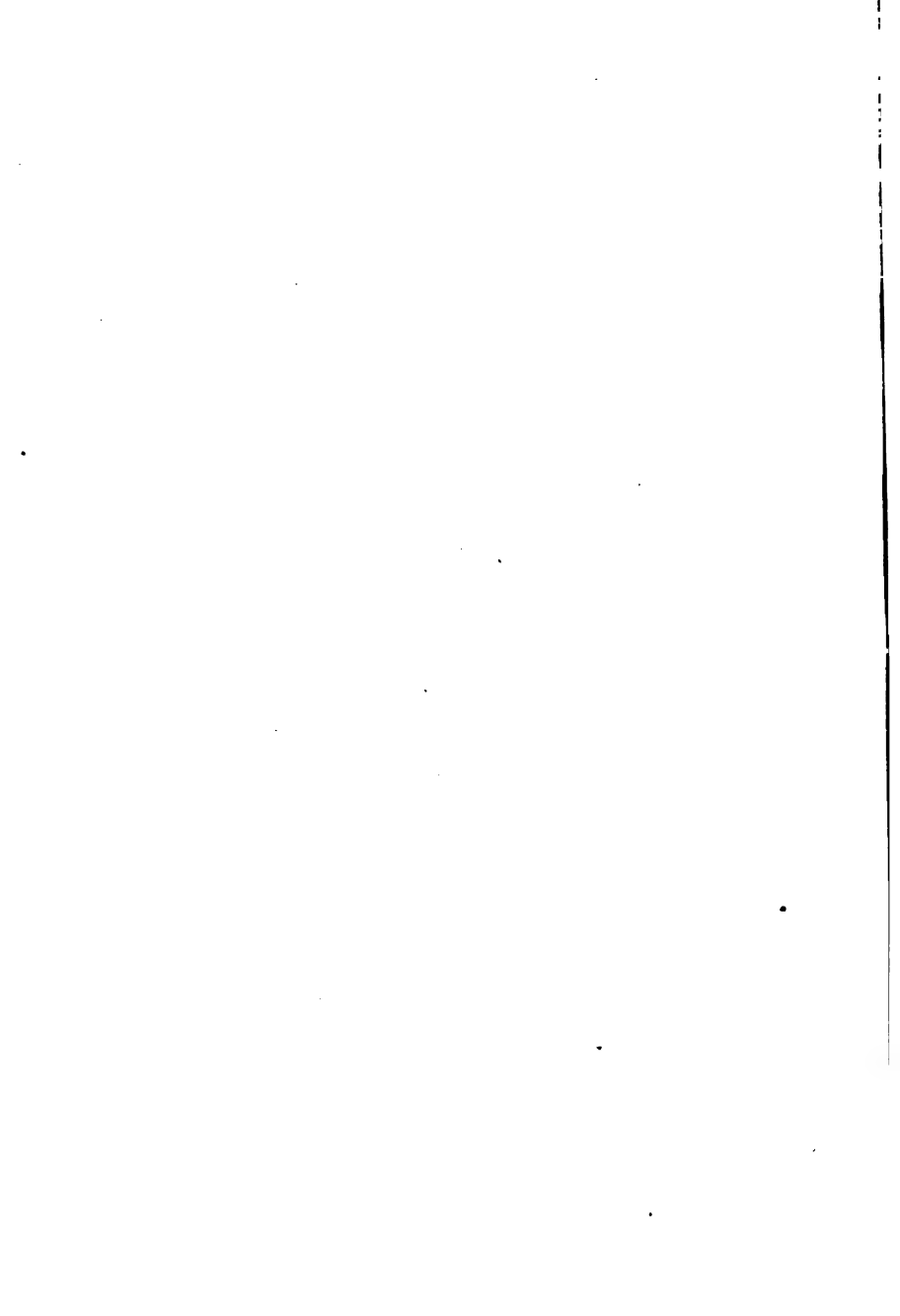
vulgus, -ī, n., the multitude, populace, people; common soldiers, rank and file,

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vulnus], tr., *wound, injure.*

vulnus, -eris, n., wound, injury.

vultus, -ūs, m., expression of countenance, mien, aspect, face. See *figō*.







Keep Your Card in this Pocket

530 ATLANTIC AVE., BOSTON

Made by Library Bureau

Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"

Acme Library Card Pocket

